



First Order Preservation Theorems in Finite Model Theory: Locality, Topology, and Limit Constructions

Aliaume Lopez

► To cite this version:

Aliaume Lopez. First Order Preservation Theorems in Finite Model Theory: Locality, Topology, and Limit Constructions. Computer Science [cs]. Université Paris-Saclay, 2023. English. NNT: 2023UPASG046 . tel-04534568

HAL Id: tel-04534568

<https://hal.science/tel-04534568>

Submitted on 5 Apr 2024

HAL is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L'archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire **HAL**, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d'enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.

First Order Preservation Theorems in Finite Model Theory : Locality, Topology, and Limit Constructions

*Théorèmes de préservation pour la logique au premier
ordre : localité, topologie et constructions limites.*

Thèse de doctorat de l'université Paris-Saclay

École doctorale n°580 sciences et technologies de l'information et de la
communication (STIC)
Spécialité de doctorat : Informatique
Graduate School : Informatique et sciences du numérique. Référent : ENS
Paris-Saclay

Thèse préparée au Laboratoire Méthodes Formelles (Université Paris-Saclay, CNRS, ENS
Paris-Saclay), et à
l'Institut de Recherche en Informatique Fondamentale (Université Paris-Cité, CNRS)
sous la direction de **Jean Goubault-Larrecq**, Professeur des Universités, et
le co-encadrement de **Sylvain Schmitz**, Professeur des Universités

Thèse soutenue à Paris, le 12 septembre 2023, par

Aliaume LOPEZ

Composition du jury

Membres du jury avec voix délibérative

| | |
|--|------------------------|
| Serenella Cerrito Professeure des Universités, Université Paris Saclay, Univ EVRY, France | Présidente |
| Anuj Dawar Professor, University of Cambridge | Rapporteur & Examineur |
| Arnaud Durand Professeur des Universités, Université Paris-Cité | Examineur |
| Patrice Ossona de Mendez Chargé de Recherche, EHESS | Rapporteur & Examineur |
| Daniela Petrisan Maîtresse de Conférences, Université Paris-Cité | Examinatrice |
| Luca Reggio Senior Fellow Researcher, University College London | Examineur |

I would like to express my sincere gratitude to the following individuals and organizations who have supported me during my time as a PhD student.

It feels more natural to start with Sylvain and Jean, who did not just supervise me, but taught me, guided me, encouraged me, and even left me to my own choices, making me grow as a better researcher every step of the way. I can confidently say that I would not have gotten this far without them.

I also would like to thank the members of my thesis committee: Anuj, Arnaud, Daniela, Luca, Patrice, and Serenella. Not only they were the best fitted to evaluate my thesis (as illustrated by the numerous suggestions that significantly improved this document), but also met the complex requirements for a jury to be validated by the administration.

J'aimerais aussi remercier mes collègues et amis qui m'ont soutenu dans ce travail, ont toujours été à l'écoute, et m'ont encouragé dans les moments de doute qui accompagnent toute thèse. En particulier, j'éprouve une certaine mélancolie en me remémorant la parenthèse enchantée que le programme EIG m'a fait vivre, dans une époque troublée par les différentes restrictions sanitaires, et l'accueil qui m'a été réservé par des personnes formidables : merci à Dominique, Julien et tout le quatrième étage ! Plus encore, merci à Pierre-Étienne d'avoir été mon compagnon sur le projet SIANCE, d'être devenu un ami cher, et de l'être resté après mon retour à la science académique. Cela ne me fait pas oublier les origines de ma thèse au LSV, en compagnie d'Émilie et Gabriel, avec lesquels j'ai commencé cette aventure entre mots croisés, discussions passionnées et cuisine maison. Au LSV j'ai bien sûr une pensée pour Simon, d'abord chargé de TD puis collègue. Dans la liste de mes bureaux, il en manque un, et ce n'est pas des moindres : je remercie tous les membres de l'IRIF d'avoir été si chaleureux, et d'avoir fourni un environnement si stimulant intellectuellement. Plus particulièrement, je remercie Thomas pour ses interventions régulières et toujours passionnantes, Pierre-Évariste pour avoir toujours répondu à mes questions, même les moins intéressantes, avec la plus grande précision et un soutien sans faille. Je ne sais pas quelle sera ma destinée dans le monde académique (ou ailleurs), mais je peux déjà affirmer que vous allez me manquer. Bien entendu, j'ai une pensée pour Mickaël pour son aide au déménagement, sa patience sans faille quand il s'agit de discuter de tooling, et d'avoir accepté la lourde responsabilité de référent technique de ma soutenance. Finalement, j'aimerais aussi remercier Alexandra d'avoir été une source de force, de stabilité, de calme, et de restaurants qualitatifs depuis son arrivée.

Durant ces années de doctorat, j'ai déménagé plusieurs fois, et c'est souvent l'occasion de mesurer la chance que l'on a d'avoir des amis aussi fiables et généreux que Sébastien, Lucas et Rémi. J'espère un jour vous rendre la pareille. À eux s'ajoutent Kostia et Claire, que je ne pourrais pas remercier assez d'aimer jouer à tetriz avec les cartons. Pour mes amis chers à mon cœur, mais qui n'ont pas eu la chance de faire partie du club très sélectif des déménageurs de l'extrême, je pense à vous : de la primaire à l'ENS en passant par la prépa, je ne vous ai jamais oubliés, et j'espère ne jamais le faire. Je profite de cet encart pour remercier particulièrement Gaëtan, qui m'a montré que d'autres horizons étaient possibles, et n'a jamais hésité à m'embarquer dans ses aventures : j'espère que les vents te porteront aux sommets, et que tu t'y plairas.

Je déclare formellement Pablo comme le meilleur colocataire, ami et être humain avec qui j'aurais pu espérer partager une partie de ma vie. Merci.

Enfin, je voudrais remercier ma famille pour leur soutien sans faille, et particulièrement Hélène.

Cette thèse n'aurait pas existé sans la présence simultanée des individus mentionnés ci-dessus, mais aussi de tous ceux qui n'ont pas leur nom dans cette liste.

Résumé en Français

Cette thèse est dédiée à l'étude des théorèmes de préservation en logique du premier ordre et leur relativisation à des classes de structures finies. Les théorèmes de préservation font partie d'une famille de résultats de la logique classique qui sont découverts durant la seconde moitié du XX^{ème} siècle, et sont motivés par leur rôle de liant entre les propriétés syntaxiques des théories, et leur réalisation en termes de classes de modèles. Ces résultats s'inscrivent donc dans la mouvance de la *Model Theory* qui perdure aujourd'hui. L'exemple archétypique d'un tel théorème est celui de Łoś-Tarski [15, Corollary 3.2.5]. Ce dernier fait correspondre l'ensemble des formules closes φ dites *universelles* à l'ensemble des formules closes ψ qui sont *décroissantes*. Ces considérations théoriques trouvent un intérêt en informatique où la terminaison de certains algorithmes (comme l'algorithme de *Chase* en bases de données) se réduisent à des questions de définissabilité au premier ordre par l'application d'un théorème de préservation idoine.

Une autre raison pour laquelle ces théorèmes “simples,” car conséquences de la compacité de la logique au premier ordre, sont encore étudiés en informatique est la suivante : les modèles en informatique sont souvent supposés finis car représentables sur une machine. Or, la transposition de la *Model Theory* aux modèles finis, ingénieusement nommée *Finite Model Theory* (théorie des modèles finis), plus adaptée aux besoins de l'informatique théorique, s'est vite heurtée à des problèmes majeurs : les théorèmes qui sous-tendent la première s'avèrent presque tous devenir faux une fois transposés dans la seconde. La théorie des modèles finis a par conséquent eu recours à des méthodes combinatoires (jeux, localité, décompositions, paramètres de densité) pour appréhender les phénomènes nouveaux qui apparaissent dans le cas fini. Au cours de cet effort de formalisation, certains théorèmes de la théorie des modèles *classique* sont longtemps restés dans un entre deux : si la preuve classique ne peut pas se traduire *verbatim* dans le cas fini, il n'est pas impossible qu'une autre technique de preuve, potentiellement plus combinatoire, puisse être utilisée pour le démontrer. Les théorèmes de préservation font office de cas d'école de théorèmes tombant dans cette catégorie, puisque leur preuve classique est très courte, et repose essentiellement sur des arguments de compacité (théorème qui ne relativise pas aux structures finies). Si certains ont vite été invalidés (le théorème de Łoś-Tarski a été invalidé dans le cas fini en 1959 par Tait), d'autres se sont finalement vu démontrés dans le cas fini (le théorème de préservation par homomorphismes a été démontré dans le cas fini en 2008 par Rossman).

Ainsi, cette thèse s'inscrit dans la lignée des recherches en théorie des modèles finis qui tentent de cartographier les théorèmes de préservation qui relativisent au cas fini. Cependant, plutôt que de se contenter d'étudier quel théorème résiste à la traduction au cas fini, cette thèse suit le modèle inverse (déjà présent dans d'autres travaux) : fixer un théorème de préservation, et cartographier les classes de modèles (finis) pour lesquelles ce théorème relativise. Cette question est intéressante, car elle permet de mieux comprendre et d'affiner les outils de la théorie des modèles finis, mais aussi, car elle correspond à une approche plus “pratique” de l'informatique : les modèles en informatique sont souvent contraints (ou modélisés avec des contraintes), et cela correspond à restreindre l'étude à une sous-classe de modèles.

L'objet principal de cette thèse est la proposition d'un cadre théorique basé sur la topologie pour déterminer la relativisation des théorèmes de préservation sur des classes de structures finies. La première contribution est la généralisation des schémas de preuve basés sur la localité de la logique au premier ordre, et la mise en lumière du rôle joué par les formules existentielles locales. La seconde contribution est l'introduction des *espaces préspectraux logiquement présentés* qui sont des espaces topologiques généralisant les arguments de compacité sur lesquels reposent certains schémas de preuve. L'avantage de ces espaces est qu'ils possèdent des propriétés de stabilité qui permettent par l'étude de la relativisation de théorèmes de préservation par des méthodes *compositionnelles*. Une dernière contribution est l'étude d'un sous ensemble des espaces préspectraux logiquement présentés, les espaces Noéthériens, pour lesquels une propriété de stabilité par construction limite est démontrée.

Contents

| | |
|---|------------|
| 1. Preliminaries | 1 |
| 1.1. SIANCE and Science | 1 |
| 1.2. How to Read this Thesis | 3 |
| 1.3. You Might Also Like... | 5 |
| | |
| I. Introduction | 9 |
| | |
| 2. From Databases To First Order Logic and Back | 11 |
| 2.1. Real Databases and Query Languages | 11 |
| 2.2. First Order Logic | 13 |
| 2.2.1. Choosing a Query Language | 14 |
| 2.3. Incompleteness in Databases | 17 |
| 2.3.1. Incomplete Databases and Fragments | 18 |
| 2.4. Discussion | 26 |
| | |
| 3. Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries | 29 |
| 3.1. Classical Preservation Theorems | 30 |
| 3.2. Preservation Theorems do not Relativise | 34 |
| 3.3. Order and Topology | 42 |
| 3.3.1. The Finite Case: Well Quasi Orderings | 42 |
| 3.3.2. The Infinite Case: Compactness. | 47 |
| 3.4. Discussion | 55 |
| | |
| II. Preservation Theorems in Finite Model Theory | 61 |
| | |
| 4. Locality and Preservation | 67 |
| 4.1. Locality of first order logic | 69 |
| 4.2. A Positive Locality Theorem | 74 |
| 4.2.1. From Existential Local Sentences to Asymmetric Basic Local Sentences | 77 |
| 4.2.2. From Asymmetric Basic Local to Basic Local Sentences | 85 |
| 4.3. An Existential Local Preservation Theorem | 93 |
| 4.3.1. Failure in the finite | 98 |
| 4.3.2. Undecidability | 106 |
| 4.3.3. Generalisation to Weaker Quasi-Orders | 109 |
| 4.4. Discussion | 113 |
| | |
| 5. A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem | 117 |
| 5.1. Leveraging Locality | 118 |
| 5.2. The Missing Square | 126 |
| 5.3. Discussion | 133 |
| | |
| 6. Logically Presented Spaces | 137 |
| 6.1. Topological Preservation Theorems | 140 |
| 6.2. Connection with Other Spaces | 145 |
| 6.2.1. Noetherian Spaces and WQO | 146 |
| 6.2.2. Spectral Spaces | 146 |
| 6.3. Stability Properties | 150 |
| 6.3.1. Subspaces and Morphisms | 151 |

| | | |
|-------------|---|------------|
| 6.3.2. | Closure under Finitary Operations | 152 |
| 6.3.3. | Colouring Structures | 158 |
| 6.3.4. | Limit Constructions | 174 |
| 6.4. | Discussion | 175 |
| 7. | Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies | 177 |
| 7.1. | “Commentaire Comparé” | 180 |
| 7.1.1. | Inductively Defining the Ordering | 180 |
| 7.1.2. | The Minimal Bad Sequence Argument(s) | 181 |
| 7.2. | Inductive Constructions of Noetherian Spaces | 184 |
| 7.2.1. | Topology Refinements | 184 |
| 7.2.2. | Topology Expanders | 187 |
| 7.2.3. | The (Generic) Topological Minimal Bad Sequence Argument | 191 |
| 7.3. | Variations Around the Main Theorem | 197 |
| 7.3.1. | When is a Refinement Function a Topology Expander? | 197 |
| 7.4. | Discussion | 200 |
| 8. | Inductive Constructions | 207 |
| 8.1. | Applications | 207 |
| 8.1.1. | Finite Words and Trees | 208 |
| 8.1.2. | Ordinal Datatypes | 209 |
| 8.2. | Divisibility Topologies | 214 |
| 8.2.1. | Handling Inductively Defined Datatypes | 215 |
| 8.2.2. | A Correctness Result | 224 |
| 8.3. | Discussion | 228 |
| III. | Outlook | 231 |
| 9. | Concluding Remarks | 233 |
| IV. | Cheat-Sheets | 237 |
| A. | Set Theory Cheat Sheet | 241 |
| A.1. | Sets | 241 |
| A.2. | Relations | 242 |
| A.3. | Functions | 243 |
| B. | Order, Algebras, and Rings Cheat-Sheet | 245 |
| B.1. | Orders | 245 |
| B.2. | Lattices | 246 |
| B.3. | Boolean Algebras | 247 |
| B.4. | Rings | 248 |
| C. | Well-Quasi-Orderings Cheat Sheet | 249 |
| D. | Topology Cheat Sheet | 251 |
| D.1. | Basic Topology | 251 |
| D.2. | Building New Topologies | 252 |
| D.3. | Topological Maps | 253 |
| D.4. | Compactness | 253 |
| D.5. | Separation | 253 |
| D.5.1. | Ordinal Invariants | 254 |
| D.6. | Noetherian Spaces | 254 |

| | |
|--|------------|
| D.7. Strange Topologies | 255 |
| D.8. Topology of the Real Line | 255 |
| E. Logic Cheat Sheet | 257 |
| E.1. Master Theorems of Model Theory | 257 |
| E.2. Monadic Second Order Logic | 257 |
| E.3. Structural Properties | 258 |
| E.4. Positive Sentences | 259 |
| F. Category Theory Cheat Sheet | 261 |
| F.1. Basic Category | 261 |
| F.2. Functors | 262 |
| F.3. Liftings | 263 |

Every good thesis in theoretical computer science starts with a small introduction on the importance of theoretical knowledge in some relevant practical system. This thesis will not pretend to do better, but at least will start from a real-life experience.

1.1. SIANCE and Science

After the first year of my PhD, I took time to go and see for myself what was the concrete, day-to-day application of databases, data ingestion, ontology creation and software deployment. This experience was made possible thanks to Etalab’s [Entrepreneur d’Intérêt Général](#) project, and allowed me to work for the French “Autorité de Sûreté Nucléaire” as a fullstack developer.¹

If you are wondering how this might be even remotely tied to the title of this thesis, this is completely natural. The goal of this little section is to illustrate in a concrete situation the kind of theoretical objects that will be of interest in this manuscript. In particular, it should also justify that the problems that are studied are...interesting.

How does a safety authority works? In full generality, a safety authority is an organisation that will monitor the behaviour of a system. The authority reports whether the given system satisfies correctness properties, preferably in a quantitative and qualitative way. If possible, the authority can report whether the system is likely to violate some correctness property in the near future. Due to budgetary constraints, the authority should be much cheaper to run than the monitored system. The last mission of a safety authority is to build knowledge on the system, in the form of guidelines, scenarios, and improved control efficiency.

In the particular case of the [Nuclear Safety Authority](#), the system consists in *everything that can emit radiations*. This includes hospitals, food factories, paper factories, dentists, and of course nuclear power plants. The information on the state of the system is mainly obtained via direct inspections (a team of inspectors goes on site), and “instructions” (data is given to the inspectors and is checked for consistency). In both cases, the constant flux of incoming data (internal reports, values of some indicators) is a key component in the inspection work.

What is expected from computer scientists? Concretely, I was asked to build with my co-worker ([Pierre-Étienne Devineau](#)) a service that allows the inspectors to simplify their access to the “knowledge inside the ASN.” This means improving the existing workflows (easy access to some documents, aggregate statistics to prepare evaluations, etc.) but also allowing completely new instruction procedures (that were

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1.1 SIANCE and Science . . . | 1 |
| 1.2 How to Read this Thesis . | 3 |
| 1.3 You Might Also Like... . . | 5 |



Figure 1.1.: The EIG logo.

1: I must put some emphasis on the highly non-standard and fresh way the EIG program was managed by Etalab, and thank (again) Soizic Pénicaud for her amazing work. Unfortunately, this initiative (along with Etalab altogether) will be permanently shut down from 2024 and replaced with a more “corporate” funding of startups, focusing on high-impact projects rather than public service and development of [numerical commons](#).



Figure 1.2.: The ASN logo.

2: Note that this is partially done in a human way by “remembering” previous inspections, and talking to coworkers at the coffee break.

3: How these views are constructed range from simple “select the non-null field” to a more complex ontology driven construction such as “if the inspection was made before this date, and the inspected site was a REP nuclear reactor, then select the value of field X, otherwise use Y.”

4: For instance, could the same industrial site not be owned by two different companies? Can a restaurant be subject to an inspection? Can a food factory be inspected? What about a paper factory? A soccer club? Legislation evolves, companies merge, sites get reassigned, and techniques change.

discarded because of the manpower needed to perform them). A common dream was to be able to cross-check every inspection report ever written and discover previously unseen correlations between the employer/location/type of equipment and incident reports.²

Practically, the computer science part would be a three-step process: ingest data, analyse data, and expose a query language for the data. From a theoretical point of view, nothing has to be done; it suffices to build a database, use the robust SQL language and ask the data-scientist to add tags via suitable natural language processing. The actual work should be defining a robust pipeline architecture, continuous integration and deployment, a well-defined archive mechanism, proper documentation and upgrade plans, together with tutorials and presentations to the teams for which the product is designed.

What really happened? After 10 month of intermittent development, the real core of **SIANCE** had emerged: we had built a complete pipeline to cross-check data against several databases, and manually defined ontologies with the inspectors of the **ASN**. This situation is easy to explain a posteriori, but every discovery was made at the cost of a disappointing pre-production launch.

Partial Data. This should be obvious to anyone that ever filled an administrative form: most of the fields are left blank. This is a minor inconvenience, but it basically means that one has to build suitable *database views* to answer even basic queries³.

External Inconsistencies. This should also not be surprising. However, this poses another level of inconsistencies when the primary keys of one dataset are built using a secondary dataset that does not guarantee consistency.

Internal Inconsistencies. This should be more surprising. It can be explained by the fact that some datasets are shared in the form of Excel files, which do not enforce the given integrity constraints. Conversely, some databases that were used enforced “strong” integrity constraints that would push users towards duplicating data in the face of a poorly designed interface.

Constraint Evolution. I assumed that we had a notion of what a consistent dataset would be, but it does not exist outside the collective wisdom of the inspectors.⁴

Data History. Because the consistency constraints evolve, old data would often be updated to fit the current state of knowledge. If a company is split in two, then one would retroactively check which part would have been concerned in previous inspections. This allows historical data to be queried and not simply discarded.

Dreaming of verification. This is the paragraph where I pretend that theoretical computer science is useful, so bear with me the minor gaps between theory and practice. Given a complex pipeline trying to address the problem, how does one statically check that it is well-behaved? Here are some properties that we would like:

- The consolidated database is consistent throughout the run
- For every ingested document, a set of simple constraints hold

- Check that predictions are only run when some criterion is met

Even the most trivial pipelines of the form ingest, then consolidate, then update, are hard to verify.⁵ The theoretical reader might have some buzzwords in mind right now: ontology mediated query, consistent answering over incomplete databases, schema mappings. These will be presented in time. For now, this is the end of the short story, and the retained solution was simple: horn clauses to complete databases, represented via the all-mighty Excel Spreadsheet. These are simple to write, easy to understand by non-expert users, can be model checked, and above all, the result is *explainable*.

However, from this experience I learned that verification of systems that dynamically update some kind of database is both *necessary* (as designing such system is error-prone) and at the same time *not possible* with the current tooling in a reasonable coding environment.⁶

5: By hard, I mean checking whether such a pipeline models a non-trivial property is generally undecidable.

6: For a data-scientist, this basically means the Python programming language.

1.2. How to Read this Thesis

This thesis aims at providing a theoretical background that might eventually be used to study data-centric systems such as [SIANCE](#). Bear in mind that there are no clear industrial strength solutions yet, and that this thesis is first and foremost of theoretical nature. As a consequence, even when algorithms are described, they remain far from any kind of practical implementation.

Furthermore, this research work takes place at the crossroads of several fields of computer science. This implies that most readers will, at some point, see definitions coming from an area of computer science they are not familiar with. To mitigate this, we will often (re-)introduce folklore results, sometimes in a non-canonical fashion, so that nobody ever gets lost.⁷

7: Even though this is obviously a vain attempt, it is worth trying.

A daring wager. This thesis was co-supervised by [Jean Goubault-Larrecq](#) and [Sylvain Schmitz](#). This should already arise suspicions as their only common paper⁵² is from 2016. However, both worked on the [MPRI](#) course on [well-quasi-orderings](#) [23], and separately work on this topic. However, we are going to bridge the “topological” enterprise of Jean [45] together with the more “combinatorial” areas of computer science that are [well-quasi-orderings](#) and database theory. This thesis will be at the (surprising?) intersection of Finite Model Theory, Non Hausdorff Topology, and Well-Quasi-Orderings.

⁵² Goubault-Larrecq and Schmitz (2016)

[23]: Demeri, Finkel, Goubault-Larrecq, Schmitz and Schnoebelen (2012), ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’

[45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

Le fond et la forme. A lot of effort has been put in this document to ensure that it is both readable, pedagogical, can be printed, and leverages the benefits of the PDF file format. Non exhaustively, we will now discuss and demonstrate some features that might make reading this document more pleasant.

The use of the [knowledge package](#) allows the reader to immediately jump⁸ to the definition of most of the terms used in this manuscript. Concretely, one can go to the definition of a [relational structure](#), a [topological space](#), or even a [bad sequence](#). A complement of this for

8: Or even preview without jumping, using a recent version of the [evince](#), [skim](#) or [sioyek](#). Anyway, it is a good idea to look at the “go back to last position” key binding on your pdf viewer.

printed versions is the presence of an index at the end of the document on page 265.

Because this is quite helpful, the use of the `knowledge package` was also pushed into the mathematical definitions. For instance, it is possible to click on the different symbols of the following equation to jump to their corresponding definitions:⁹

9: And of course, the import symbols appear in a separate command index.

$$\llbracket \exists_r^{\geq k} x. P(x) \wedge Q(x) \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$$

In parallel, the thesis template is based on the `kaobook LATEX` template, which advocates for a two-third view, allowing to place comments, figures, and references in a large left or right margin. This not only simplifies the reading process, but also allows us to correctly cite all the authors in place.

Because this thesis aims at being self-contained (even though this is impossible), a lot of results are imported from the literature. To make a clear distinction between those imported statements and newly introduced ones, we will use the following convention: imported statements will not use italic, and they will not be coloured. On the contrary, newly introduced statements will use the italic shape, and will have colours according to the “level” of the statement. Furthermore, we will often use the margin to give proof sketches of results. All of this is illustrated hereafter.

Definition 1.2.1. This is a foreign definition that we import.

Definition 1.2.2. *This is a new definition.*

Lemma 1.2.3. *This is a new lemma.*

Proof. This is a normal proof ■

Proof Sketch. This is a side proof of the proposition. ■

Proposition 1.2.4. *This is a new proposition.*

Corollary 1.2.5. *This is a new corollary.*

Theorem 1.2.6. *This is a new theorem.*

Fact 1.2.7. This is a new fact.

Example 1.2.8. This is a new example.

Exercise 1.2.9. This is a new exercise.

Finally, because some of the background knowledge needed does not fit the narration of the document, we provide in appendix several “cheatsheets” that list definitions and folklore results on different topics. These can be used in complement of the index and list of symbols. The available cheatsheets are listed hereafter:

- ▶ [Chapter A \(Set Theory Cheat Sheet\)](#) on page 241.
- ▶ [Chapter B \(Order, Algebras, and Rings Cheat-Sheet\)](#) on page 245.
- ▶ [Chapter C \(Well-Quasi-Orderings Cheat Sheet\)](#) on page 249.
- ▶ [Chapter D \(Topology Cheat Sheet\)](#) on page 251.
- ▶ [Chapter E \(Logic Cheat Sheet\)](#) on page 257.
- ▶ [Chapter F \(Category Theory Cheat Sheet\)](#) on page 261.

However, the “cheatsheets” will not contain duplicates of the results that are presented in the body of the manuscript, and therefore cannot be read as separate entities.

As opposed to the “cheatsheets,” the body of the document is split in Chapters that behave as self-contained entities, with their own bibliography, introduction, and concluding remarks.

The document contains three preliminary chapters: [Chapter 1 \(Preliminaries\)](#),¹⁰ [Chapter 2 \(From Databases To First Order Logic and Back\)](#), and [Chapter 3 \(Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries\)](#). These should ideally be read before the rest of the document and in the recommended order.

The contributions are gathered in the following chapters: [Chapter 4 \(Locality and Preservation\)](#), [Chapter 5 \(A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem\)](#), [Chapter 6 \(Logically Presented Spaces\)](#), [Chapter 7 \(Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies\)](#), and [Chapter 8 \(Inductive Constructions\)](#). The reader is not forced to read those in a particular ordering, and a few pages are dedicated to the interdependencies and important results in each of these chapters (see page 63). However, some chapters may not be readable before having understood the preliminary chapters.

10: You are currently reading this one.

1.3. You Might Also Like...

I will now use the advertising space available in this document to talk about some of the projects that I think deserve attention.

The Knowledge Package. As every Ph.D student, I spend too much time refining my “tooling” and “writing setup.” While most of these efforts lead to unreproducible scripts that are used only once, some of the ideas were actually beneficial in writing this document, and may even be usable by other human beings. Even though the original author of the package may disagree about the following presentation, I believe that the [knowledge package](#) of L^AT_EX is a useful *tool* to write long documents. Abstractly, it provides a name resolution service, paired with



Figure 1.3.: The knowledge package

11: Yes, the `knowledge` package is a \LaTeX DNS.

12: I like to call it `knowledges.kl`, but the file is really a plain `.tex` document.

13: I like to call this one `mathdefs.tex`, because it contains \LaTeX macros outside the knowledge system.

14: This information is outputted in a file called `name-of-the-document.diagnose`.

custom commands that leverage this ability to call the same “entity” using different names.¹¹

Concretely, it allows us to tag parts of the document’s text (or maths commands) as being “knowledges,” that can later on be referred to. As a best practice, one creates two extra files along with its text document: one is the DNS table for textual knowledges,¹² and the other one is the DNS table for mathematical knowledges.¹³

There are three main benefits to using such a setup:

- A poor-man’s debugger,¹⁴ telling you what notions are used, whether you are using a notion that is not defined in your document, or worse, that was defined several times.
- An easier way to create indexes.
- A document that is easier to read due to cross-references between notions at the sentence level, rather than cross-referencing between numbered blocks.

It may be particularly useful to use the `knowledge-clustering` program to have a programmatic help when adding knowledges to a document. Finally, for commands related to maths, I cannot recommend enough the `xparse` package that allows the writer to design easy-to-use commands. Hereafter you will find a short demonstration of the coding style used to write this thesis.

```
%% -- in the knowledges.kl file --
\knowledge{notion,
    index parent key=word orderings,
    index key=subword,
    index=subword ordering}
| subword embedding
| subword ordering
| word embedding
| Higman's word embedding
| embedding@word
%% -- in the mathdefs.tex file --
\NewDocumentCommand{\DiagFormula}{ 0{\exists\AFrag} m }{
    \kl[\DiagFormula]{\Delta_{#2}^{\#1}}
}
\knowledge{\DiagFormula}{notion,
    index name=commands,
    index key=diagram formula,
    index={\DiagFormula{\AModel}}$
    -- diagram formula of
        $\AModel$ in fragment $\Frag$}
}
%% -- in the body of the document
We can refer to the \kl{subword embedding},
and to the \kl(word){embedding}, and
they all mean the same thing as
\kl{Higman's word embedding}. It is also
possible to use $\DiagFormula{A}$
command, or to use $\DiagFormual[\EFO]{A}$ to
specify the optional argument.
```

Some Thoughts About the PhD. This part is complete self-promotion, and mainly targeting French citizens, so you can feel free to skip it and go to the actual content of this thesis. For the readers that are interested however, a joint work with Gaëtan Douéneau-Tabot and Laurent Proserpi on the insertion of PhDs inside the French administration (excluding teaching and research positions) is quite fun to look at [29]. As a teaser, one over ten PhD students ends up being a civil servant that does not teach nor does academic research. This raises a question: what are they doing? [28]

The “akl” project. It may be a little early to advertise this project, but it is mature enough to run on both Linux and Windows systems. The AKL program¹⁵ allows PDF documents to (transparently) refer to other PDF documents, and works out-of-the box for any PDF. It was primarily designed to make the exploration of bibliographies enjoyable.

Combined with the knowledge package, it allows us to write “wikipedia-like” documents that refer to custom sections or results of other documents, which makes easier to create higher quality citations in research papers.

[29]: Douéneau-Tabot, Lopez and Proserpi (2021), ‘Recrutement et emploi des docteurs dans les administrations publiques’

[28]: Douéneau-Tabot and Lopez (2022), ‘Rejoindre l’administration publique après un doctorat’

15: <https://github.com/AliaumeL/akl>

Part I.

Introduction

From Databases To First Order Logic and Back

2.

For anybody schooled in modern logic, first-order logic can seem an entirely natural object of study, and its discovery inevitable.

William Ewald

Outline of the chapter

This chapter serves as an opinionated introduction to a key technical element of this thesis, namely first order logic. The introduction is motivated by its relationship to database theory, which is used to provide a “computer science oriented” introduction to the field.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of the chapter, I hope to have convinced the reader that [relational structures](#) are a good abstraction for databases, and first order logic can be used both as a query language and specification language of database constraints. Specific semantic properties of relational structures and syntactic fragments of first order logic will also be pointed out as particularly relevant in practice.

Reading notes. This chapter introduces well known folklore results about databases and can safely be skipped. Most of the technical content stems from a well established connection between databases and (finite) model theory [31, 54, 68]. As a consequence, no definitions or theorems are new in this chapter.

2.1. Real Databases and Query Languages

Most of the current digital databases are based on the so-called relational model proposed by Codd in [17]. In this model, the central element is the data table, described by a fixed number of named columns, where rows represent the data. From this point of view, most of the world’s digital databases are relational¹ because they are represented as sheets in spreadsheets. A very simple example of a tabular representation of data in two spreadsheets is given in [Figure 2.1](#). Although no additional information is given, tables in [Figure 2.1](#) are implicitly connected via the columns **ID** and **Student**. In the relational model, these connections can be specified: it is expected that every student **ID** is unique, and that one cannot grade an exam of a non-existing student.

| | | |
|-------|--|----|
| 2.1 | Real Databases and Query Languages | 11 |
| 2.2 | First Order Logic | 13 |
| 2.2.1 | Choosing a Query Language | 14 |
| 2.3 | Incompleteness in Databases | 17 |
| 2.3.1 | Incomplete Databases and Fragments | 18 |
| 2.4 | Discussion | 26 |

[17]: Codd (1970), ‘A relational model of data for large shared data banks’

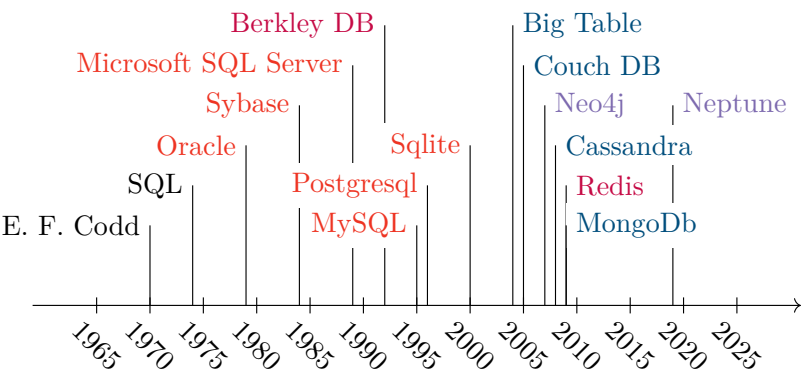
1: This is not as great as it might sound, as these spreadsheets do not (easily) enforce database constraints, do not prevent data corruption, do not come with a reasonable query language, do not allow for transactional modifications, do not support concurrent access, and the list goes on forever...

Figure 2.1.: Two spreadsheets representing students and their grades in different exams. The table with columns **ID**, **Name** and **Surname** represents a relation that we will call `HasName(id, name, surname)`, while the second table represents a relation that we will call `HasGrade(exam, student, grade)`. Note that some names are misspelled on purpose in the tables.

| ID | Name | Surname | Exam | Student | Grade |
|------|--------|---------|------|---------|-------|
| 1034 | Pierre | Jacques | 0 | 1034 | 10 |
| 1010 | Piere | Jacques | 1 | 1029 | 16 |
| 1029 | Frank | Paul | 0 | 1027 | 11 |
| 1030 | Jeanne | Rosalie | 1 | 1034 | 15 |

- Key-Value Databases
- Relational Databases
- Relational Model
- Graph Databases
- NoSQL Databases

Figure 2.2.: Creation date of widely used commercial and open-source databases since 1970. Extracted from the different websites and Wikipedia pages of the projects.



[13]: Chamberlin and Boyce (1974), ‘SEQUEL: A Structured English Query Language’

2: The library’s primitives are so obviously related to SQL that the library `Pandasql` allows us to mix both syntaxes.

3: This is actually blurred by the newly introduced `GraphQL` language.

[92]: Vianu (1997), ‘Databases and finite-model theory’

4: For some applications, the relational model may not be the best abstraction. This is the case for “document oriented databases,” or for “geographic information systems.”

Together with the stored data, one needs a query language to retrieve the desired information. The most famous query language is SQL, introduced in 1974 by Chamberlin et al. [13]. The SQL language is therefore 48 years old at the time of writing this thesis. Note that SQL coexists with other query languages. Tabular data stored in simple text files is typically queried using AWK (introduced in 1977), while data-scientists that use the Python programming language commonly import the Pandas library to manipulate data.²

In the 21st century, so-called NoSQL databases were re-introduced as a reaction to the hegemony of the relational model, where NoSQL has to be read as “Not Only SQL.” These databases answer the issues of scalability, distribution and highly nested structures of large data warehouses that flourished between 2000 and 2010, which can be seen in Figure 2.2. All of these models behave quite differently, and most of the differences come from the set of operations that are allowed, together with their respective expected cost.³ However, they all fall into the umbrella of the term “database,” because they store structured data that can then be queried.

In this thesis, the complexity issues together with the concrete data presentation will essentially be ignored. As a consequence, most of the aforementioned models will essentially look the same, and will all be translated to the generic framework of “First-order finite model theory,” from which relational databases take their roots [92].⁴

2.2. First Order Logic

It is difficult to introduce a domain that is central to computer science and mathematics. Logic is so crucial, and so deeply incorporated into the curriculum of the modern day computer scientist, that it is easy to forget that it is not as old as humanity itself. To counter this intuition, I strongly suggest the reading of [32] for a historical contextualisation of the birth of the core concepts in today's logic. As a first step towards first-order logic, let us introduce the abstract mathematical representation of databases.

Definition 2.2.1. A *relational signature* σ is a non-empty collection R_1, \dots, R_n of distinct symbols together with a map *arity* associating to every symbol a *non-zero* natural number. When the collection of symbols is finite, we say that σ is a finite relational signature.

Unless stated otherwise, signatures will always be assumed to be finite. To model the example database of Figure 2.1 consisting of two tables, one can define σ as two relations R_1 and R_2 of arity 3. In that sense, translating from a database to a relational signature consists in creating a relation symbol per table, and defining its arity to be the number of columns in the corresponding table. Now that we have defined the abstract notion of “table headers,” let us introduce the analogue of a database.

Definition 2.2.2. A *relational structure* \mathfrak{A} over a signature σ is a non-empty⁵ set $A = \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ together with relations $R^{\mathfrak{A}} \subseteq A^k$ for every relation symbol $R \in \sigma$ of arity k .

The relational structure is said to be *finite* whenever $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ is a finite set.

Because most databases considered in computer science are finite, we will give a particular name to the class⁶ of finite relational structures: $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. However, nice mathematical theorems will in general consider arbitrary structures (that is, finite or infinite), whose class we denote by $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$.

One can translate a database into a relational structure by considering as domain A the set of all values appearing in the database, and placing them in the corresponding relations. We provide in Figure 2.3 a graphical representation of the relational structure shown in Figure 2.1.

As seen in the depiction from Figure 2.3, the specific column in which a value appears is forgotten in the translation and seen as irrelevant. This implicitly merges data from different tables and performs some kind of “join” operation. This behaviour exhibits several advantages: the mathematical description is simpler, and this naturally captures the so-called “graph databases.”

Definition 2.2.3. Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{E\}$ where $\text{arity}(E) = 2$. The class of

[32]: Ewald (2019), ‘The Emergence of First-Order Logic’

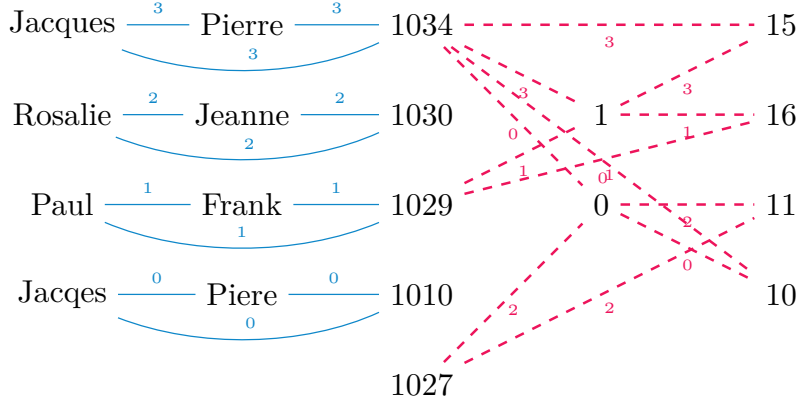
We will often just write $\{(R_1, n_1), \dots, (R_k, n_k)\}$ for the relational signature with symbols R_1, \dots, R_k , and arities n_1, \dots, n_k .

5: It is not only “zerology”: empty models really do change the theory.

We will often use \mathfrak{A} instead of $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ or A when it is clear from the context that we are talking about the domain. For instance, we will write $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ rather than $a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$.

6: We do not wish to dwell on the technicalities related to the notion of classes and sets, and will generally assume that the cardinality of the domains of the considered structures are all bounded by some cardinal κ . This will not be a problem since we will either focus on finite structures up to isomorphisms, or the class of all structures, where the *descending Löwenheim-Skolem theorem* essentially shows that we can work with countable structures without getting worried.

Figure 2.3.: A graphical representation of the relational structure associated with Figure 2.1. The relation **HasName** is depicted using the blue colour, and the relation **HasGrade** is depicted using the red colour, with tick and dashed edges. Relations are drawn as edges, together with a number to help realise that **HasGrade**(1034, 1, 16) is not a valid relation, but **HasGrade**(1029, 1, 16) is.



finite relational structures over σ is called the class of *directed graphs* and written **DiGraphs**.

The restriction of **DiGraphs** to structures where the relation E is symmetric and has no self-loop (i.e. $E(a, a)$ never holds) is called the class of *undirected graphs* **FinGraphs**.

In a real database setting, the proposed model is unsatisfactory because it lacks a way to talk about constants. For instance, the number 10 that appears in Figure 2.3 should be considered as a “constant” that can be identified inside various relational structures. This issue will become more apparent when talking about the query language.

Example 2.2.4. The field of real numbers can be described over the signature $\{ (+, 3), (\times, 3), (\leq, 2) \}$. The structure \mathfrak{A} with $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbb{R}$, and relations defined via

- ▶ $(x, y, z) \in +^{\mathfrak{A}} \iff (x + y = z),$
- ▶ $(x, y, z) \in \times^{\mathfrak{A}} \iff (x \times y = z),$
- ▶ $(x, y) \in \leq^{\mathfrak{A}} \iff (x \leq y),$

is an infinite (uncountable) relational structure.

One major issue in this setting is that it lacks a language to describe integrity constraints. This is problematic because not every relational structure is of interest: in mathematical terms, we want to add axioms. It turns out that the language used to query relational structures can also be used to specify constraints.

2.2.1. Choosing a Query Language

Up until this point, there was no particular reason to specify that we are interested in “first order logic,” and in fact, the term “logic” did not even appear apart from the title of the section. Note that we implicitly assume that equality is a relation symbol that is interpreted as the equality relation over the domain of the structure, unless explicitly stated otherwise.

In the upcoming [Definition 2.2.5](#), we will use the notation \vec{x} to denote a tuple (x_1, \dots, x_n) of elements, for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. This notation will be overloaded in several ways. First, we allow ourselves to index the tuples with arbitrary sets. For instance, we will write $\vec{x} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}$, to denote the function $\vec{x}: a \mapsto x_a$. Furthermore, we will implicitly cast tuples \vec{x} into sets by considering the set of elements in the tuple when necessary. These notations will be particularly helpful when manipulating [free variables](#).

Definition 2.2.5. Let σ be a finite relational signature, and \mathbb{V} be a [countable](#) set of [free variables](#). We define for every finite subset $\vec{x} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{V}$ the [formulas](#) with [free variables](#) in \vec{x} inductively as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(\vec{x}) ::= & \varphi(\vec{x}') \wedge \varphi(\vec{x}'') && \text{when: } \vec{x} = \vec{x}' \cup \vec{x}'' \\ & R(\iota(1), \dots, \iota(n)) && \text{when: } R \in \sigma, \text{arity}(R) = n, \iota \in \vec{x}^n \\ & \neg \varphi(\vec{x}) \\ & \exists y. \varphi(\vec{x} \cup \{y\}) \\ & \top \end{aligned}$$

We call $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ the collection of [first order formulas](#), and omit σ when the signature is irrelevant or clear from the context.

Furthermore, we define $\text{fv}(\varphi)$ to be the minimal set \vec{x} of [free variables](#) needed to define φ .

A [first order formula](#) is said to be a [closed formula](#) or a [first order sentence](#), when it has no [free variables](#). We often omit the empty set and write φ instead of $\varphi(\emptyset)$. Now that we have a language to talk about queries, it remains to provide a concrete execution model that evaluates a query over a given database.⁷

⁷: This is also referred to as Tarskian semantics.

Given a function $f: A \rightarrow B$, we write $f[a \mapsto b]$ for the function f' defined by $f'(x) = b$ when $x = a$, and $f'(x) = f(x)$ otherwise.

Definition 2.2.6. The [satisfaction relation](#) \models is defined by induction on the formulas as follows: given $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, $\vec{x} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{V}$, $v: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{A}, v \models R(\vec{y}) & \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} (v(y_1), \dots, v(y_n)) \in R^{\mathfrak{A}} \\ \mathfrak{A}, v \models \psi_1(\vec{y}) \wedge \psi_2(\vec{z}) & \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, v \models \psi_1(\vec{y}) \text{ and } \mathfrak{A}, v \models \psi_2(\vec{z}) \\ \mathfrak{A}, v \models \neg \psi(\vec{y}) & \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, v \not\models \psi(\vec{y}) \\ \mathfrak{A}, v \models \exists z. \psi(\vec{y}z) & \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{there exists } a \in \mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{A}, v[z \mapsto a] \models \psi(\vec{y}z) \\ \mathfrak{A}, v \models \top & \text{always holds} \end{aligned}$$

Fact 2.2.7. One can extend the language of first-order logic with disjunction $\psi_1(\vec{x}) \vee \psi_2(\vec{y}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg(\psi_1(\vec{x}) \wedge \psi_2(\vec{y}))$, universal quantification $\forall y. \psi(\vec{x}y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg \exists y. \neg \psi(\vec{x}y)$, “falsum” $\perp \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg \top$, and implication $\psi_1(\vec{x}) \Rightarrow \psi_2(\vec{y}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg a \vee b \neg \psi_1(\vec{x}) \vee \psi_2(\vec{y})$.

As promised, this query language can also be used to formalise the axioms ensuring the integrity constraints.

Example 2.2.8. Following up on the example of Figure 2.1, one could ask that every student is graded. This constraint is expressible in FO as $\forall s. \exists e. \exists g. \text{HasGrade}(e, s, g)$.

8: This is called “views” in the database world, and they are crucial in real-life programs.

Note that we distinguish the syntax and semantics of first order interpretations, exactly as for first order formulas.

Be careful that in the literature, “first order interpretations” are more general than what is described in Definition 2.2.9. We restricted our attention to first order interpretations that are parameter free, do not copy the input, do not restrict domain, and do not quotient the domain of their image.

Query Results

1034

Table 2.1.: The result of the query described Example 2.2.11 run over the database Figure 2.1.

Example 2.2.11 is not a real example. Indeed, the formula contains the term 10, which is a constant and does not appear in the syntax of formulas.

One of the great successes of the relational model is that queries can be seen as building new relations.⁸ This allows us to nest queries. Given a query $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ and a relational structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, one can construct a new relational structure $\mathfrak{A}' \in \text{Struct}(\sigma \uplus \{(S, |\vec{x}|)\})$, by simply defining $S^{\mathfrak{A}'} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\vec{a}: \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a_x \models \varphi(\vec{x})\}$. Let us generalise this construction to define how first order queries can be leveraged to build “first order programs,” taking relational structures as input, and outputting relational structures.

Definition 2.2.9. Let σ and σ' be two relational signatures. A (simple) first order interpretation \mathfrak{I} is given by:

- a domain formula $\varphi_{\text{dom}}(x) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$
- a collection of first-order formulas $(\varphi_R)_{R \in \sigma'}$, where $\varphi_R(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ and has $|\vec{x}| = \text{arity}(R)$ free variables.

Definition 2.2.10. Let σ and σ' be two relational signatures, let \mathfrak{I} be a first order interpretation, and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$. The image $\mathfrak{I}(\mathfrak{A})$ is a relational structure with domain $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{I}\mathfrak{A})$ defined as $\{a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}): \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \varphi_{\text{dom}}(x)\}$, and relations $R^{\mathfrak{I}(\mathfrak{A})}$ defined as the tuples of $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{I}(\mathfrak{A}))$ satisfying $\varphi_R(\vec{x})$.

In particular, any formula $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ defines a first-order interpretation with domain $\varphi_{\text{dom}}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$, and a single relation.

Example 2.2.11. The following query selects elements x from Figure 2.1 such that x is the student ID of a student that had a grade of 10 at one of his exams.

$$\varphi(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists y. \exists z. \exists t. \text{HasName}(x, y, z) \wedge \text{HasGrade}(t, x, 10)$$

The result of the evaluation is depicted in Table 2.1.

Let us now introduce a simple but crucial first order interpretation that is somehow canonical. It will serve both as an example, and will allow “graph” reasoning on databases in technical developments. Informally, the Gaifman graph of a relational structure is obtained by drawing it as in Figure 2.3, and forgetting the labels on the edges: that is, two elements are connected whenever they participate together in some tuple of some relation of the structure. An example is depicted in Figure 2.4.

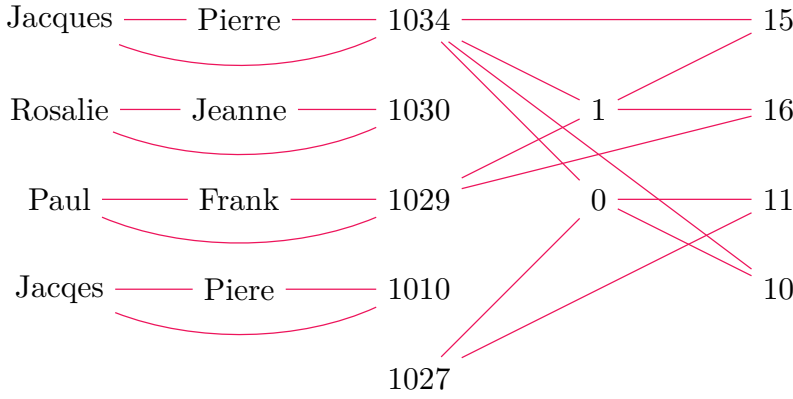


Figure 2.4.: The Gaifman graph of the relational structure described in Figure 2.3. Informally, we simply removed any extra information on the edges of the graphical representation.

Definition 2.2.12. Let σ be a finite relational signature. The *Gaifman graph* first order interpretation $\text{Gaif}(\cdot)$ is defined via:

- ▶ $\varphi_{\text{dom}}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$,
- ▶ $\varphi_E(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{(R, n) \in \sigma} \exists z_1, \dots, z_n. R(z_1, \dots, z_n) \wedge \bigvee_{1 \leq i, j \leq n} z_i = x \wedge z_j = y$.

Other choices of query languages. Now that we have a formal definition of first order logic, it is possible to compare it to other potential choices of query languages. The first candidate should be SQL, that was already mentioned. It is known that the two languages are *equi-expressive*⁹ since [17].

9: Although one must be careful about this statement!

[17]: Codd (1970), ‘A relational model of data for large shared data banks’

2.3. Incompleteness in Databases

The goal of this section is to introduce problems that, once formalised using first order logic, will have a direct connection with the title of this thesis, namely *preservation theorems*. This will also be the occasion to introduce useful fragments of first-order logic.

Before that, let us briefly recall that some decision problems are non-trivial (and in fact, undecidable) when considering first order logic. This will also be the occasion to illustrate the distinction that arises when considering arbitrary models ($\text{Struct}(\sigma)$) or restricting our attention to finite models ($\text{Fin}(\sigma)$).

Satisfiability. One natural question that arises when considering a database constraint $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ is whether this constraint is *satisfied* by at least one database. This should guide the user that writes the constraints: it allows us to detect specification errors, but also to check whether the given specification ensures some desired property.

One would typically add a minimal constraint φ that is easy to state and to check, and then ask “do all databases satisfying φ also have the extra property ψ ?” This specific query will be written $\varphi \models \psi$. Note that $\varphi \models \psi$ is the same as $\top \models \varphi \Rightarrow \psi$, also written as $\models \varphi \Rightarrow \psi$, or $\varphi \wedge \neg\psi \models \perp$.

Table 2.2.: Algorithmic properties of the decision problem regarding the entailment $\varphi \models \psi$, over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

| | semi-decision | co-semi-decision |
|-------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ | ✓[43] | ✗[43] |
| $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ | ✗[91] | ✓(folklore) |

10: To keep the focus on logic and relational structures, we do not focus on the notions of decidability, semi-decidability, and co-semi-decidability. Here, we can understand semi-decidable as the existence of an effective method that given a formula φ and a formula ψ , answers 'YES' if $\varphi \models_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \psi$, and can fail to terminate, or answer anything, if $\varphi \not\models_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \psi$. A problem is co-semi-decidable when its complement is semi-decidable, and decidable when it is both semi-decidable and co-semi-decidable.

11: This can happen because \mathfrak{A} comes from an external untrusted source, because of a bug in a program managing the database, or because \mathfrak{A} is obtained by “consolidation” of several heterogeneous sources of information.

12: That is, we represent an incomplete database as the collection of its valid completions.

13: The naming convention may be counter-intuitive, so let us spell out what we mean by “completions.” When $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$, we say that \mathfrak{B} seen as a *completion* of \mathfrak{A} for the *induced substructure* relation. The same holds for the relation \subseteq : if $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}$, then \mathfrak{B} is a *completion* of \mathfrak{A} for the *substructure* relation.

14: Note that in the literature, this word is mostly used to refer to subsets of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$. However, most of the fragments enjoy extra properties that we will actually need later on to develop our theory of preservation theorems.

One could technically write σ to specify that we see it as a fragment of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, but we find more pleasant to only state $\mathbf{F} \subseteq \text{FO}[\sigma]$ to avoid cluttered notations.

Assuming that $x = y$ is a valid formula is the natural continuation of the hypothesis that the equality relation is always in the signature: it should always be possible to talk about equality of datum.

In Definition 2.3.1, we use the term α -renaming, but it will not be defined in this document. Informally, it consists in freely renaming bound variables without introducing name clashes.

It turns out that checking if $\varphi \models \psi$ is undecidable, but (as promised) the nature of this roadblock differs in the finite case. Whether $\varphi \models_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \psi$ is semi-decidable¹⁰ but not co-semi-decidable [43]. On the contrary, when restricting our attention to finite models, $\varphi \models_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)} \psi$ is co-semi-decidable, but not semi-decidable [91]. This is summarised in Table 2.2, and illustrates the discrepancy between the two models.

Let us seize the opportunity to introduce a new notation connected to \models : two formulas φ and ψ are equivalent on a class \mathcal{C} , which is written $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \psi$ whenever $\models_{\mathcal{C}} (\varphi \iff \psi)$ holds. One benefit of this notation is that it allows us to concretely state over which class of models this equivalence is considered, for instance $\varphi \equiv_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)} \psi$ means that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ if and only if $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$.

Recovering from bad states. Assuming that the given specification φ is not absurd, it might be that a given database of interest \mathfrak{A} is such that $\mathfrak{A} \not\models \varphi$.¹¹ A key property that one wants to achieve in these settings is to somehow recover from this bad state. This can be done in two ways: one is to patch the model so that it satisfies the constraints, the other is to patch the query evaluation procedure to incorporate a notion of “invalid tuples.”

We will restrict our attention to a useful specialisation of this database recovery setting, namely the case of “incomplete databases,” where the problem is that some information is lacking in the model.

2.3.1. Incomplete Databases and Fragments

To represent “incompleteness” in databases, we will take the dual approach of describing how a database can be “completed.” This will be done by describing which kind of maps between databases are considered as valid completions.¹² Different choices of completion can be chosen to model different real world situations, and we will restrict our attention to the three simplest forms: *induced substructures*, *substructures*, and *homomorphisms*.¹³

In a setting where the database at hand is incomplete, it is natural to adapt the query evaluation procedure to account for the potential missing information. This is not what we will do in this section. Instead, we will search syntactic criteria over sentences of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ that will imply that the usual evaluation procedure is compatible with the missing information.

It will be useful to refer to specific sets of sentences in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ as a whole when interested in a particular semantic property (such as, allowing the naïve evaluation to work). This is the motivation behind our definition of a *fragment* of first order logic.¹⁴

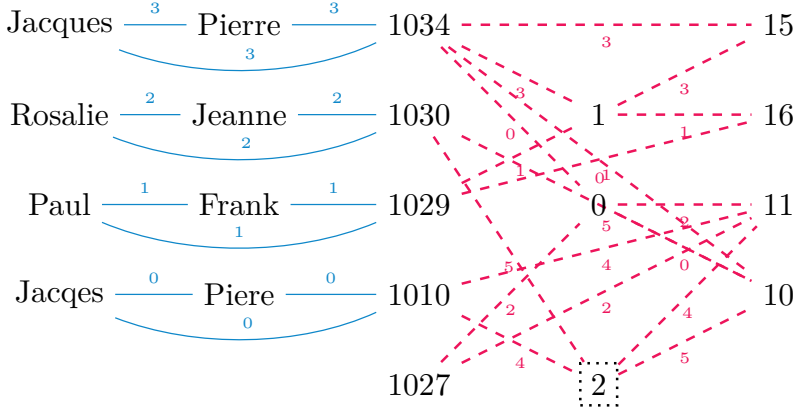


Figure 2.5.: Graphical representation of the extension of Figure 2.3 described in Example 2.3.2. The extra exam (number 2) is represented using a dotted box.

Definition 2.3.1. Let σ be a *relational signature* (potentially infinite). A *fragment* F of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ is a subset of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ that contains the equality relation $x = y$, and that is stable under the following operations:

1. *Finite conjunction:* $\varphi, \psi \in F$ implies that $\varphi \wedge \psi \in F$.
2. *Finite disjunction:* $\varphi, \psi \in F$ implies that $\varphi \vee \psi \in F$.
3. *Renaming:* $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in F$ implies that $\varphi'(\vec{y}) \in F$, for any α -renaming φ' of φ , and (arbitrary) renaming of \vec{x} as \vec{y} using variables in \mathbb{V} .

Induced Substructures. One way to think about incomplete databases is to consider that some elements of the domain might be missing. Concretely, in our example shown in Figure 2.3, we have a student (Marc Francis, with student id 1010) that has no grade. In this case, a reasonable completion ensuring that the database constraint of Example 2.2.8¹⁵ holds, is to assume that there is a missing exam in our system.

The extra assumptions are not problematic as one can always complete a subset $S \subseteq \text{FO}[\sigma]$ into the smallest fragment containing S .

15: Stating that every student should have a grade.

Example 2.3.2. One can complete the database Figure 2.3 by adding an exam 2 and two relations:

- $\text{HasGrade}(2, 1010, 10)$,
- $\text{HasGrade}(2, 1030, 11)$.

After this addition, the database satisfies the constraint that every student has a grade. A graphical representation is given in Figure 2.5.

Let us now provide a formal definition of what “adding missing elements” to our database means in terms of maps.

Definition 2.3.3. A database \mathfrak{B} is an *extension* of a database \mathfrak{A} when there exists an injective map $f: \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}) \rightarrow \text{dom}(\mathfrak{B})$ such that for every relation symbol $R \in \sigma$, every tuple $\vec{a} \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$:

$$\vec{a} \in R^{\mathfrak{A}} \text{ if and only if } f(\vec{a}) \in R^{\mathfrak{B}} \quad .$$

We call the map f an *embedding*, and we also say that \mathfrak{A} is an *induced substructure* of \mathfrak{B} . We use the special notation $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$ for the quasi-ordering that the *induced substructure* relation defines.

16: Beware that universal quantification is not really in the syntax of first order formulas, and arises as the interaction between the negation and the existential quantification. A formal definition will be given in Definition 2.3.7.

We will often write \mathbf{QF} without specifying over which signature.

Queries using universal quantifiers will not play well with this notion of completion: if there are missing elements, how can we say that “all the elements” satisfy something?

It turns out that prohibiting the use of the universal quantification¹⁶ is sufficient to guarantee that the naïve evaluation algorithm works as expected. Before proving this fact, let us first consider an easier subset of *formulas* without any kind of quantification.

Definition 2.3.4. A first order formula $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$ is a *quantifier free formula* whenever it does not contain universal quantifiers ($\forall x$) nor existential quantifiers ($\exists x$). We write $\mathbf{QF}[\sigma]$ for the subset of *quantifier free formulas* of $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$.

Fact 2.3.5. Let σ be a finite relational signature, let $\varphi(\vec{x})$ be a quantifier free formula, let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$, and let $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ be an embedding.

Then, whenever $\mathbf{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ is such that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$, we have that $\mathfrak{B}, f \circ \mathbf{v} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$.

In this example, we understand why constants could be a useful addition to the language. Indeed, the notion of *embedding* allows us to replace every 10 by a 11 and claim that this is the same database: in the relational model, only relations count. Adding constants, such as 10 to the query language would account to the *data* that is stored.

We illustrate in Example 2.3.6 how Fact 2.3.5 concretely applies in a database setting.

Example 2.3.6. Let $\varphi(s_1, s_2, e, g)$ be defined as the following query:

$$\varphi(s_1, s_2, e, g) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{HasGrade}(e, s_1, g) \wedge \text{HasGrade}(e, s_2, g) \quad .$$

This query asks whether the two students s_1 and s_2 had the same grade g at a given exam e . Observe that in Figure 2.3, no two students had the same grade at a given exam.

Assume that in some database \mathfrak{A} , there exists a quadruplet of elements (s_1, s_2, e, g) that satisfies φ . Then, for every embedding $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$, the tuple $(f(s_1), f(s_2), f(e), f(g))$ satisfies φ .

Similarly, we define *universal formulas* as negations of *existential formulas*.

Generalising Example 2.3.6 and Fact 2.3.5, one can ask “positive properties” stating the existence of some tuple of elements that *satisfy* a given *quantifier free formula*. Concretely, we are defining the existential fragment of first order logic.

Definition 2.3.7. A first order formula is an *existential formula* whenever it can be written using the restricted syntax: $\wedge, \vee, \top, \perp, \neg R(\vec{x}), R(\vec{x})$, and $\exists x$. The collection of *existential formulas* is written $\mathbf{EFO}[\sigma]$.

It is worth noting that the collection of *existential sentences*¹⁷ is as expressive as the fragment of existential closure of *quantifier free formulas*, that we write $\exists\text{QF}$.¹⁸ While it is true that Fact 2.3.5 generalises to *EFO*, we will simply state its consequence on $\exists\text{QF}$, i.e., the *sentences* in *EFO*, because it avoids the use of *free variables*.

Fact 2.3.8. Let σ be a finite *relational signature*, let $\varphi \in \exists\text{QF}$ be an *existential sentence*, and let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be such that $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$. Then, $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ implies $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$.

In general, Facts 2.3.5 and 2.3.8 state that a subset of *formulas* are compatible with a given notion of completion. Let us formally define this notion of compatibility, enabling us to later on compare these notions of completions.

Definition 2.3.9. A first order sentence φ is *preserved under* a relation $\leq \in \text{Struct}(\sigma) \times \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ if and only if for all $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \leq \mathfrak{B}$, $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ implies $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$.

Using Definition 2.3.9, we can restate Fact 2.3.8 as follows: “*existential sentences* are *preserved under extensions*.” Furthermore, this is the “correct” *fragment* of sentences because for every finite model \mathfrak{A} , there exists an *existential sentence* that characterises its *extensions*.

Fact 2.3.10. Let σ be a finite *relational signature*, and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. There exists a first order formula $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}}((x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}) \in \text{QF}[\sigma]$ such that the following are equivalent for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $\nu: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$.

1. $\mathfrak{B}, \nu \models \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$
2. $(\nu \circ (a \mapsto x_a)): \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ is an *embedding* of *relational structures*.

As a consequence, there exists a first order sentence $\theta_{\mathfrak{A}} \in \text{EFO}$,¹⁹ such that the following are equivalent for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$:

1. $\mathfrak{B} \models \theta_{\mathfrak{A}}$,
2. $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$.

Substructures. ‘Missing entries’ is a natural framework, which motivates the use of *extensions* of structures. However, this framework fails to capture the most common case of incomplete data: databases where some rows are only partially filled.²⁰ Concretely, this means that we may not know all the elements present in the database, and furthermore may even not know all the facts about the elements that we do know about. Formally, this is the notion of a *substructure*.²¹

Definition 2.3.11. A database \mathfrak{A} is a *substructure* of a database \mathfrak{B} when there exists an injective map $f: \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}) \rightarrow \text{dom}(\mathfrak{B})$ such that for every relation symbol $R \in \sigma$, every tuple $\vec{a} \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$, $f(\vec{a}) \in R^{\mathfrak{B}}$. We call such a map a *substructure embedding*, and write $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}$ when such a map exists.

17: first order sentences that are also *existential formulas*

18: Beware that equi-expressiveness can hide other parameters, such as the minimal size of a sentence expressing a given property.

Formally, $\exists\text{QF}$ is not a *fragment*. However, every sentence φ in the smallest *fragment* containing $\exists\text{QF}$ is equivalent to an $\exists\text{QF}$ sentence. To simplify notations and reasoning, we will talk about $\exists\text{QF}$ as a *fragment*.

In the Fact 2.3.10, the sentence $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$ is essentially stating the existence of all the elements in $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ and listing the relations (or lack thereof) between these elements.

19: Namely, $\theta_{\mathfrak{A}} = \exists \vec{x}. \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$.

20: This will happen every time a field is set as optional in a form.

21: Note that in classical model theory textbooks, the notion of “substructure” actually refers to what is called *induced substructure* in this thesis.

Note that [Example 2.3.12](#) builds a model that is not an [extension](#) of [Figure 2.3](#).

Continuing on our example [Example 2.3.2](#), we can now find new ways to “repair” the database to satisfy our constraint, without adding any new exam!

Example 2.3.12. One can complete the database shown in [Figure 2.3](#) by adding two relations:

- [HasGrade](#)(0, 1010, 11), and
- [HasGrade](#)(1, 1030, 11).

After this addition, the database satisfies the constraint that every student has a grade.

Quite naturally, the [quantifier free formulas](#) and [existential sentences](#) are now too powerful to be naïvely evaluated. For instance, the sentence stating that “there exists a student that has no grade” holds in [Figure 2.3](#), but does not hold in the completion of [Example 2.3.12](#), even though this is an [existential sentence](#).

We define $\text{PQF}^\neq[\sigma]$ for the subset of [quantifier free formulas](#) that do not use the negation operator \neg , except when checking the inequality of two variables via $x \neq y$, that is written $\neg(x = y)$ in our syntax.²² Enriching these formulas by allowing the use of existential quantifiers, we obtain the subset $\text{EPFO}^\neq[\sigma]$, which is as expressive as $\exists\text{PQF}^\neq[\sigma]$ when restricted to [first order sentences](#).

Preventing the use of negations allows us to state an analogue of the preservation property described in [Fact 2.3.8](#). As for [EFO](#), an analogue of [Fact 2.3.10](#) holds for EPFO^\neq , showing how the [fragment](#) is large enough to describe all the possible completions of a finite model.

Fact 2.3.13. Let φ be a [first order sentence](#). If $\varphi \in \text{EPFO}^\neq$, then it is [preserved under](#) \subseteq .

Fact 2.3.14. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. There exists a first order formula $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}}((x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}) \in \text{PQF}^\neq[\sigma]$ such that the following are equivalent for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $\nu: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$.

1. $\mathfrak{B}, \nu \models \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$
2. $(\nu \circ (a \mapsto x_a)): \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ is a [substructure embedding](#) of [relational structures](#).

Furthermore, there exists a sentence $\theta_{\mathfrak{A}} \in \text{EPFO}^\neq[\sigma]$,²³ such that the following are equivalent for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$:

1. $\mathfrak{B} \models \theta_{\mathfrak{A}}$
2. $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}$.

22: Formally, we allow formulas that are built using $\wedge, \vee, \top, \perp, R(\vec{x})$, and $x \neq y$.

23: Namely, $\theta_{\mathfrak{A}} = \exists \vec{x}. \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$.

24: Ironically, this typically happens when the input form tries to enforce uniqueness constraints, and users just invent new identifiers to get bypass the restriction and continue their day.

Homomorphisms. While the notion of [substructure](#) already allowed us to insert new relations to “complete” the databases, we argue that one useful completion method is still missing. Whenever data is filled in by human users (which happens quite often) there is a risk that the same entity is given different names in the database.²⁴ As a con-

sequence, a reasonable additional operation is to merge elements rather than add new ones. Such an operation can be formally defined as a **homomorphism**.

Definition 2.3.15. A *homomorphism* between two relational structures \mathfrak{A} and \mathfrak{B} is a map $h: \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}) \rightarrow \text{dom}(\mathfrak{B})$ such that for every relation symbol $R \in \sigma$, and every tuple $\vec{a} \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$, $f(\vec{a}) \in R^{\mathfrak{B}}$.

We write $\mathfrak{A} \preceq_h \mathfrak{B}$ when such a map exists.

Continuing with our running example of Examples 2.3.2 and 2.3.12, let us illustrate how the ability to merge elements allows us to repair our database.

Example 2.3.16. One can complete the database shown in Figure 2.3 by merging “Jacques” with its misspelled counterpart “Jacques,” merging “1034” with the identifier “1010”, and merging “Pierre” with its misspelled counterpart “Piere.”

After this modification, the database satisfies the constraint that every student has a grade.

Note that Example 2.3.16 builds a model that is neither an *extension* of Figure 2.3, nor contains it as a *substructure*.

Remark that because we lack constants, we were already able to “re-name” the stored data, even in the case of *extensions*. However, it was not possible to collapse several values into a single one, due to the presence of \neq .

Following what was done for *induced substructure* and *substructures*, we now want to characterise a suitable *fragment* of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ that corresponds to this new notion of incompleteness. Because completions can merge data, queries that use the non-equality test $x \neq y$ are probably badly behaved.²⁵

We define $\text{PQF}[\sigma]$ for the subset of *quantifier free formulas* that do not use the negation operator \neg , nor the inequality $x \neq y$. As per usual, we introduce $\text{EPFO}[\sigma]$ for the *fragment* of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ obtained when allowing to use existential quantifiers inside PQF formulas, and remark that $\exists \text{PQF}[\sigma]$ is as expressive as the restriction of $\text{EPFO}[\sigma]$ to *sentences*. Sentences in $\text{EPFO}[\sigma]$ are called *existential positive sentences*.

The following two results should not be surprising, as they state the role of EPFO with respect to *homomorphisms* as analogue to EFO for *induced substructures* and EPFO^\neq for *substructures*.

Fact 2.3.17. Let φ be a first order sentence. If $\varphi \in \text{EPFO}$, then it is *preserved under* \preceq_h .

Definition 2.3.18 [14]. Let σ be a finite relational signature, and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. There exists a first order formula $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}}((x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}) \in \text{PQF}[\sigma]$ such that the following are equivalent for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $\nu: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$.

1. $\mathfrak{B}, \nu \models \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$
2. $(\nu \circ (a \mapsto x_a)): \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ is a *homomorphism* of relational structures.

Furthermore, there exists a sentence $\theta_{\mathfrak{A}} \in \text{EPFO}[\sigma]$,²⁶ such that the

25: Note that using “unique identifiers” also becomes problematic in a setting where data can be merged arbitrarily.

26: Namely, $\theta_{\mathfrak{A}} = \exists \vec{x}. \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$.

following are equivalent for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$:

1. $\mathfrak{B} \models \theta_{\mathfrak{A}}$
2. $\mathfrak{A} \preceq_h \mathfrak{B}$.

It turns out that **PQF** is exactly the fragment of “unions of conjunctive queries” that plays a key role in database theory as corresponding to the “SELECT-PROJECT-JOIN” SQL queries [2].

We will now spend a little more time explaining how [Definition 2.3.18](#) introduces a nice complexity measure on finite [relational structures](#). To the best of my knowledge, it was first noticed by Rossman that the formulas expressing the class of completions of a model can be inspected to extract a complexity measure for the structure [83]. Prior to the work of Rossman, an analysis of the quantifier rank needed to distinguish finite structures was carried out in [79], but this analysis is focused on separating finite structures, rather than describing embeddings.

Definition 2.3.19. The *quantifier rank* of a first order formula is defined inductively as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rk}(\exists x.\psi) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 1 + \text{rk}(\psi) \\ \text{rk}(\psi_1 \vee \psi_2) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max(\text{rk}(\psi_1), \text{rk}(\psi_2)) \\ \text{rk}(\neg\psi) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{rk}(\psi) \\ \text{rk}(R(\vec{x})) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 0 \\ \text{rk}(\top) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 0 \end{aligned}$$

Using this notion of [quantifier rank](#), we can now look at the minimal quantifier rank that can be used to talk about a given (finite) structure. We use as a definition of [tree depth](#) a consequence of two lemmas in [83], because it highlights the role of [diagram sentences](#).

Definition 2.3.20 [83, Lemmas 2.13 and 2.14]. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), and let $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$. The *tree depth* of \mathfrak{A} , written $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A})$ is defined as the minimum of $\text{rk}(\psi)$ among all sentences $\psi \in \mathbf{EPFO}[\sigma]$ such that $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi$ if and only if $\mathfrak{A} \preceq_h \mathfrak{B}$ for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$.

Beware that in [Definition 2.3.20](#), it is necessary to talk about **EPFO** and to avoid sentences in $\exists\mathbf{PQF}$. The sentence $\exists x.\exists y.E_1(x, y) \wedge \exists z.E_2(x, z)$ is in **EPFO** and has [quantifier rank](#) 2, but any equivalent sentence in $\exists\mathbf{PQF}$ has [quantifier rank](#) at least 3.

This definition given in terms of logic can be translated in combinatorial terms.²⁷ Beware that the combinatorial definition is stated over [undirected graphs](#), and only then transported to arbitrary structure via the [Gaifman graph](#) construction.

[2]: Abiteboul, Hull and Vianu (1995), *Foundations of Databases*

[83]: Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

[79]: Pikhurko and Verbitsky (2005), ‘Descriptive complexity of finite structures: Saving the quantifier rank’

Recall that \wedge , \vee , and \perp are not part of the syntax of first order formulas. We deduce from [Definition 2.3.19](#), that $\text{rk}(\forall x.\psi) = \text{rk}(\neg\exists x.\neg\psi) = 1 + \text{rk}(\psi)$.

[83]: Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

27: Which was the original definition of [tree depth](#) in the literature.

Definition 2.3.21 [78, Chapter 6]. The **tree depth** of a graph $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{FinGraphs}$ can be computed inductively as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{td}(\{a\}) &= 1 \\ \text{td}(\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{A}') &= \max(\text{td}(\mathfrak{A}), \text{td}(\mathfrak{A}')) && \text{if } \mathfrak{A} \text{ not connected} \\ \text{td}(\mathfrak{A}) &= \min \{ \text{td}(\mathfrak{A} \setminus \{a\}) + 1 : a \in \mathfrak{A} \} && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

If σ is a finite **relational signature**, the **tree depth** of $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ can be computed as $\text{td}(\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A}))$.

This notion of **tree depth**, has numerous theoretical applications [78]. For an example of **tree depth** computation, we show in Figure 2.6 how the computational description given in Definition 2.3.21 can be applied to produce a “tree decomposition” of Figure 2.3.

[78]: Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez (2012), *Sparsity: Graphs, Structures, and Algorithms*

Wrapping up. We have introduced three different ways to allow “database repairs”, associated with different scenarios, that we illustrate in Figure 2.7.

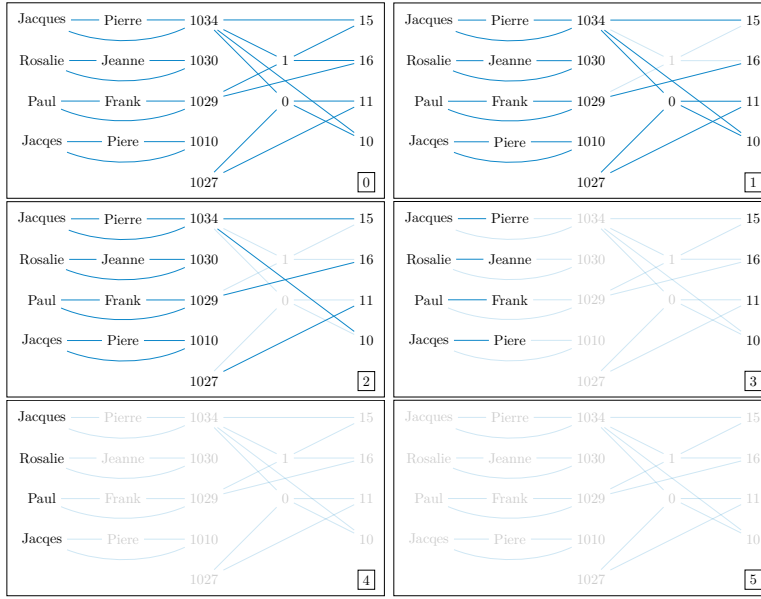


Figure 2.6.: Computation of the **tree-depth** of Figure 2.3. Every step removes one node per connected component, together with the relation these nodes belongs to.

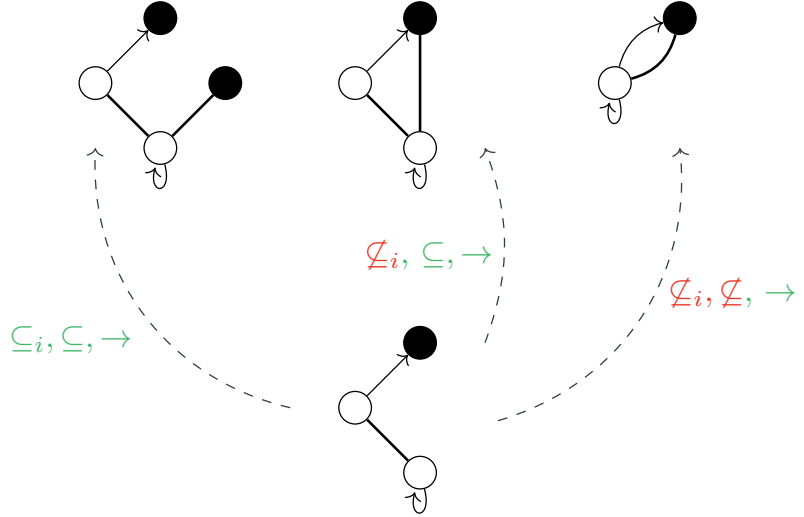


Figure 2.7.: Examples and non-examples of completions (with respect to \subseteq_i, \subseteq and \preceq_h) of a given model with two binary relations $-$ and \rightarrow , and one unary relation that colours vertices in black or not.

2.4. Discussion

Certain Answers. The approach of restricting the logic to be well-behaved with respect to the chosen notion of completion is not sound in general. Indeed, we only obtain an under-approximation of the valid answers when using the naïve evaluation, because of the presence of database constraints. Concretely, the running example of the chapter was to study completions (with respect to $\subseteq_i, \subseteq, \preceq_h$) of a given database *such that a constraint was satisfied*. In particular, it can happen that some sentence does not hold on the database, but must become true in every *valid* completion.

This is the setting of certain answers. Given a relational structure \mathfrak{A} , a formula $\varphi(\vec{x})$, and a type of morphisms over structures, one can build the set

$$\{ (v: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}) : \forall \mathfrak{B}, \forall h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{B}, h \circ v \models \varphi(\vec{x}) \} .$$

These are the tuples that certainly satisfy the query, whatever data is missing in the database. By considering certain answers over $\varphi(\vec{x}) \wedge \Sigma$, where Σ is a fixed first order constraint, one obtains the answers over every correct completion of the database.

Note that even though the original query φ belongs to a fragment F , the new query $\varphi \wedge \Sigma$ will not *a priori*.

Chase-like Algorithms. One of the known algorithms that can be used to compute certain answers is known as *the chase algorithm*. Assuming that the constraints are of the form $\Sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall \vec{x}. \exists \vec{y}. \psi(\vec{x}) \Rightarrow \theta(\vec{x}\vec{y})$, where both ψ and θ are in PQF, the (pseudo)-algorithm proceeds as follows:

1. Check if the current database \mathfrak{A} satisfies Σ .
2. If not, there exists \vec{a} in the database such that $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \forall \vec{y}. \psi(\vec{x}) \wedge \neg \theta(\vec{x}\vec{y})$.
3. We update the model \mathfrak{A} by merging it with a model of $\psi(\vec{x}) \wedge \theta(\vec{x}\vec{y})$.
4. Go back to step 1.

Of course, this algorithm might not terminate, and there is a wide variability on how to perform the different steps. We refer the reader to [25] for a definition of the “core chase” and the notion of “chase-like” algorithm.

[25]: Deutsch, Nash and Rummel (2008), ‘The chase revisited’

Completeness of the Fragments. A natural question is whether the provided fragments, which are guaranteed to be safely evaluated in the absence of database constraints are the “largest possible ones.” This will be answered in the next chapter.

References

- [2] Serge Abiteboul, Richard Hull and Victor Vianu. *Foundations of Databases*. Addison-Wesley, 1995 (cit. on p. 24).
- [13] Donald D. Chamberlin and Raymond F. Boyce. ‘SEQUEL: A Structured English Query Language’. In: (1974), pp. 249–264. DOI: [10.1145/800296.811515](https://doi.org/10.1145/800296.811515). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/800296.811515> (cit. on p. 12).
- [14] Ashok K. Chandra and Philip M. Merlin. ‘Optimal implementation of conjunctive queries in relational databases’. In: *Proceedings of STOC’77*. 1977, pp. 77–90. DOI: [10.1145/800105.803397](https://doi.org/10.1145/800105.803397) (cit. on p. 23).
- [17] Edgar F. Codd. ‘A relational model of data for large shared data banks’. In: *FIXME Conference of the ACM* 13 (1970), pp. 377–387. DOI: [10.1145/362384.362685](https://doi.org/10.1145/362384.362685) (cit. on pp. 11, 17).
- [25] Alin Deutsch, Alan Nash and Jeffrey B. Remmel. ‘The chase revisited’. In: *Proceedings of PODS’08*. 2008, pp. 149–158. DOI: [10.1145/1376916.1376938](https://doi.org/10.1145/1376916.1376938) (cit. on pp. 27, 33, 35, 234, 235).
- [31] Heinz-Dieter Ebbinghaus and Jörg Flum. *Finite Model Theory*. Springer, 1995 (cit. on p. 11).
- [32] William Ewald. ‘The Emergence of First-Order Logic’. In: *The Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy*. Ed. by Edward N. Zalta. Metaphysics Research Lab, Stanford University, 2019. URL: <https://plato.stanford.edu/archives/spr2019/entries/logic-firstorder-emergence/> (visited on 07/11/2022) (cit. on p. 13).
- [43] Kurt Gödel. ‘Über formal unentscheidbare Sätze der Principia Mathematica und verwandter Systeme’. In: *Monatshefte für Mathematik und Physik* 38 (1931), pp. 173–198. DOI: [10.1007/BF01700692](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01700692) (cit. on p. 18).
- [54] Erich Grädel, Phokion G. Kolaitis, Leonid Libkin, Maarten Marx, Joel Spencer, Moshe Y. Vardi, Yde Venema and Scott Weinstein. *Finite Model Theory and its Applications*. Springer, 2007 (cit. on p. 11).
- [68] Leonid Libkin. *Elements of finite model theory*. Springer, 2012. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-662-07003-1](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-07003-1) (cit. on pp. 11, 68, 239).
- [78] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. *Sparsity: Graphs, Structures, and Algorithms*. Springer, 2012. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-27875-4](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-27875-4) (cit. on pp. 25, 120).
- [79] Oleg Pikhurko and Oleg Verbitsky. ‘Descriptive complexity of finite structures: Saving the quantifier rank’. In: *The Journal of Symbolic Logic* 70 (2005), pp. 419–450 (cit. on p. 24).
- [83] Benjamin Rossman. ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 55 (2008), 15:1–15:53. DOI: [10.1145/1379759.1379763](https://doi.org/10.1145/1379759.1379763) (cit. on pp. i, 24, 35, 37, 38, 40, 42, 55, 74, 175, 177, 235).
- [91] Boris Avraamovitch Trakhtenbrot. ‘The impossibility of an algorithm for the decision problem for finite classes’. In: *Doklady Akademii Nauk SSSR. Novaya Seriya* 70 (1950), pp. 569–572. DOI: [10.1090/trans2/023](https://doi.org/10.1090/trans2/023) (cit. on p. 18).
- [92] Victor Vianu. ‘Databases and finite-model theory’. In: *Proceedings of a DIMACS Workshop on Descriptive Complexity and Finite Models*. Ed. by Neil Immerman and Phokion G. Kolaitis. Vol. 31. AMS, 1997, pp. 97–148 (cit. on p. 12).

Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries

3.

Outline of the chapter

We leverage the language of [Chapter 2 \(From Databases To First Order Logic and Back\)](#) to introduce the main topic of this thesis and its connection with practical problems.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of this chapter, I hope you will be convinced that the [relativisation of preservation theorems](#) to classes of finite structures (actual databases) is a non-trivial problem that is worth studying.

| | | |
|-------|---|----|
| 3.1 | Classical Preservation Theorems | 30 |
| 3.2 | Preservation Theorems do not Relativise | 34 |
| 3.3 | Order and Topology | 42 |
| 3.3.1 | The Finite Case: Well Quasi Orderings | 42 |
| 3.3.2 | The Infinite Case: Compactness. | 47 |
| 3.4 | Discussion | 55 |

[Chapter 2](#) was devoted to the introduction of [first order formulas](#) and their semantics both in the finite and infinite case. We finished the chapter by matching [fragments of FO\[σ\]](#) with different notions of completions.¹ While these matches were justified by a two-way relationship,² a question remains: were the selected fragments “the largest ones” for which a naïve evaluation procedure would yield correct answers in the incomplete setting?

The typical answer to this last question takes the form of a “preservation theorem” that asserts the maximal expressiveness of a given fragment with respect to a notion of incomplete database. Historically, preservation theorems were studied during the 1950s by mathematicians in the field of Model Theory. We provide in [Table 3.1](#) a list of the three preservation theorems corresponding to our previous notions of incompleteness, carefully selected³ from [15, Section 5.2]. As an example, [Table 3.1](#) asserts that every [first order sentence](#) that whose naïve evaluation is compatible with [embeddings](#) can be rewritten as an [existential sentence](#).

Organisation of the chapter. First, in [Section 3.1](#), we will precisely define what a “preservation theorem” is beyond the list of examples given in [Table 3.1](#). This precise definition will actually take the form of a generic result in [Theorem 3.1.9](#).

Then, in [Section 3.2](#), we will explore the relativisation of [preservation theorems](#) to classes of structures $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$, with a particular attention for the class $\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ of finite structures. We will see how the

1: Namely, the notions of completion associated with [induced substructures](#), [substructures](#), and [homomorphisms](#).

2: One way, every sentence in the given fragment can be evaluated naïvely. The other way, the fact of being a completion of a given model is expressible in the given fragment, provided that the model is finite.

3: We omitted lesser known variants such as “dual Lyndon” or “strong onto homomorphism” preservation theorems for the purpose of a pedagogical introduction.

[15]: Chang and Keisler (1990), *Model Theory*

Table 3.1.: Three classical preservation theorems. For a given [quasi-ordering](#) \leq and [fragment](#) F , a preservation theorem reads as follows: every [first order sentence](#) φ that is [preserved under](#) \leq is equivalent to a [first order sentence](#) in the fragment F .

| Preservation Theorem | Quasi-Ordering \leq | Fragment F |
|--|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Homomorphism Preservation Theorem</i> | \preceq_h | EPFO |
| <i>Tarski-Lyndon</i> | \subseteq | EPFO [≠] |
| <i>Łoś-Tarski</i> | \subseteq_i | EFO |

tools of classical Model Theory cannot apply in the finite, and explore a (tiny portion of) the tool set of Finite Model Theory.

Finally, in Section 3.3, we will bridge the notion of [preservation theorem](#) to more combinatorial and topological areas of computer science, namely the theory of [well-quasi-orderings](#), and the notion of [topological compactness](#).

3.1. Classical Preservation Theorems

The goal of this section is to move from a simple list of examples (Table 3.1) to an actual definition of a “preservation theorem,” which is the central notion of this document.

In Table 3.1, the column considering a [fragment of first-order logic](#) is well understood.⁴ However, it is unclear how to generically define “well-behaved” quasi orderings on $\mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$. While those quasi-orderings were introduced in Chapter 2 (From Databases To First Order Logic and Back) in terms of morphisms of structures in a very simple and direct fashion, they actually come from a generic family of “embeddings” associated with a given [fragment](#).

4: Recall that a [fragment of first-order logic](#) as a set $F \subseteq \mathbf{FO}$, stable under finite disjunctions, finite conjunctions and renaming of free variables.

Definition 3.1.1. Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ be two structures, and F be a [fragment](#) of \mathbf{FO} . An F -embedding $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_F \mathfrak{B}$ is a map $f: \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}) \rightarrow \text{dom}(\mathfrak{B})$ such that for every formula $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in F$, every valuation $\nu: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, \nu \models \varphi(\vec{x})$ implies $\mathfrak{B}, f \circ \nu \models \varphi(\vec{x})$.

Remark that the notion of \mathbf{QF} -embedding can actually be replaced by the one of \mathbf{EFO} -embedding, because the maps that respects \mathbf{QF} also respects $\exists \mathbf{QF}$ by construction, and therefore respect \mathbf{EFO} .

Example 3.1.2. A \mathbf{QF} -embedding f between \mathfrak{A} and \mathfrak{B} is an injective map such that for every relation symbol $R \in \sigma$, for every $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\text{arity}(R)}$, $\vec{a} \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$ if and only if $f(\vec{a}) \in R^{\mathfrak{B}}$.

That is, a \mathbf{QF} -embedding is a map witnessing that \mathfrak{A} is an [induced substructure](#) of \mathfrak{B} .

Table 3.2.: Correspondence between [fragments](#) and usual quasi-orderings.

| $\exists F$ | \leq_F | Order |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| \mathbf{EFO} | $\leq_{\mathbf{QF}}$ | \subseteq_i |
| \mathbf{EPFO}^\neq | $\leq_{\mathbf{PQF}^\neq}$ | \subseteq |
| \mathbf{EPFO} | $\leq_{\mathbf{PQF}}$ | \preceq_h |
| \mathbf{FO} | $\leq_{\mathbf{FO}}$ | \rightarrow_e |

The introduction of F -embeddings naturally leads to a quasi-order over $\mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ by stating that $\mathfrak{A} \leq_F \mathfrak{B}$ holds if and only if there exists an F -embedding from \mathfrak{A} to \mathfrak{B} . Following Example 3.1.2, one notices that we actually have a clear correspondence between [fragments](#) $\{\mathbf{EFO}, \mathbf{EPFO}^\neq, \mathbf{EPFO}\}$ and their associated quasi-orderings in Table 3.1, which is witnessed by Table 3.2. We took the liberty of adding to this presentation the largest [fragment](#), that is $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$ itself. This is meaningful because it demonstrates how the classical notion of “elementary embedding” naturally arises in this setting.

The preservation theorems listed in Table 3.1 are somehow incomparable with the “guarantees” that were given in Facts 2.3.10 and 2.3.14 and Definition 2.3.18, and asserted that a finite incomplete database was definable in these fragments. Let us restate, to be exhaustive, what this former completeness statement looked like.

Definition 3.1.3. Let σ be a finite relational signature, F be a fragment of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$. A *diagram sentence* for \mathfrak{A} is a first order sentence $\Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^F \in \exists F$ such that for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$

$$\mathfrak{B} \models \Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^F \text{ if and only if } \mathfrak{A} \leq_F \mathfrak{B} \quad .$$

We will refine the notion of *diagram sentence* to consider free variables (hence the name, diagram “formula”). This other definition will only be used once in this manuscript, namely in the proof of [Theorem 6.3.46](#).

Definition 3.1.4. Let σ be a finite relational signature, F be a fragment of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$. A *diagram formula* for \mathfrak{A} is a first order formula $\hat{\Delta}_{\mathfrak{A}}^F((x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}) \in F$ such that for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$

$$\mathfrak{B}, \nu \models \hat{\Delta}_{\mathfrak{A}}^F \text{ if and only if } (\nu \circ (a \mapsto x_a)) : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_F \mathfrak{B} \quad .$$

Lemma 3.1.5. Let $F \in \{ \text{QF}, \text{PQF}^\neq, \text{PQF} \}$. For every $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, there exists a corresponding *diagram sentence* $\Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\exists F} \in \exists F$, and *diagram formula* $\hat{\Delta}_{\mathfrak{A}}^F \in F$.

Proof. Combine [Facts 2.3.10](#) and [2.3.14](#) and [Definition 2.3.18](#). ■

We are going to provide a generic proof of the preservation theorems listed in [Table 3.1](#) by showing that for every fragment F of first-order logic, *sentences preserved under \leq_F* over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ are equivalent to sentences in $\exists F$.

To that end, our first step is to provide a weak separation result: if a structure \mathfrak{A} satisfies a *first order sentence* φ that is *preserved under \leq_F* , there exists a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ that lies “between” \mathfrak{A} and φ , which is depicted in [Figure 3.1](#).

Up to this point, none of the fundamental theorems of first order logic were used. It is time to introduce one of the main tools of the classical Model Theory: the compactness theorem of first order logic. Unsurprisingly, the statement of [Theorem 3.1.7](#) contains references to “theories,” which we swiftly define hereafter.

Definition 3.1.6. A *first order theory* T is a collection of *first order sentences*. A structure \mathfrak{A} satisfies a theory T , written $\mathfrak{A} \models T$ whenever $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ for all $\varphi \in T$.

One concludes from [Definition 3.1.6](#) that, semantically, a *first order theory* is an arbitrary conjunction of *first order sentences*. In general, such an arbitrary conjunction is not a *first order sentence*, and the following theorem states that, even though it is not, it behaves as a “limit” of sentences.

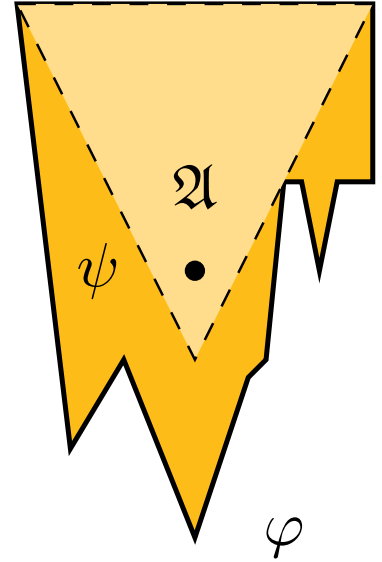


Figure 3.1.: A model \mathfrak{A} of a first order sentence φ that is *preserved under \leq_F* , and a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ in pale yellow that contains \mathfrak{A} and is contained in φ .

We did not define what a constant symbol is: it is a symbol s , and every structure \mathfrak{A} should associate a unique element of the domain to the symbol s . In particular, this symbol can be leveraged in the logic, for instance stating that $\exists x.E(x, s)$.

Theorem 3.1.7 [15, Corollary 1.2.12]. Let σ be a (potentially infinite, and potentially with constant symbols) **relational signature**. The following properties are equivalent for a **theory** T :

1. There exists $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models T$.
2. For all $T' \subseteq_{\text{fin}} T$, there exists $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models T'$.

This is called the *compactness theorem of first order logic*.

An equivalent formulation of the **compactness theorem of first order logic** can be given in terms of *consistency*. A **theory** T is said to be *consistent* whenever there exists $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models T$. In this setting, the **compactness theorem of first order logic** can be restated as: for all **theory** T that is not *consistent*, there exists a finite subset $T' \subseteq_{\text{fin}} T$ that is not *consistent*.

Leveraging this theorem, we can prove our separation result, that is a simple generalisation of the first step in the proofs classical preservation theorems [15, Section 5.2].

We state the lemma as “foreign” even though we could not find a reference providing the result with this level of generality, probably because it is folklore.

Lemma 3.1.8. Let F be a **fragment** of **FO**, φ be a sentence preserved under **F-embeddings**, and \mathfrak{A} be a countable model of φ . There exists a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$ and $\psi \models \varphi$.

Proof. This requires the exceptional addition of constants, which will not appear in the rest of this manuscript. Namely, we add a constant c_a for all $a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$. In this extended signature σ' defined as σ plus the constants $(c_a)_{a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})}$, one can build the following **theory**:

$$T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ \psi[x \mapsto c_{v(x)}] : \psi(\vec{x}) \in F \wedge \mathfrak{A}, v \models \psi(\vec{x}) \}$$

That is, the **theory** composed of **first order sentences** over the signature σ' that are obtained by collecting the F formulas, and *naming* the variables using the constants c_a of the extended language. Notice that we transformed a **first order formula** into a **first order sentence** in this process using the constants.

Let us now argue that the **theory** $T \cup \{ \neg \varphi \}$ is *inconsistent*. Indeed, whenever $\mathfrak{B} \models T$, we can build $\hat{\mathfrak{B}}$ for the model \mathfrak{B} without the additional constants. Because $\mathfrak{B} \models \neg \varphi$, which does not contain the additional constants, $\hat{\mathfrak{B}} \models \neg \varphi$. Furthermore, the map h that sends $a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ to the interpretation of the constant c_a in \mathfrak{B} is well-defined from \mathfrak{A} to $\hat{\mathfrak{B}}$, is an **F-embedding** by construction. As a consequence, $\mathfrak{A} \leq_F \hat{\mathfrak{B}}$ and $\hat{\mathfrak{B}} \models \varphi$. This is absurd.

Using the **compactness theorem of first-order logic**, there exists a finite subset of $T' \subseteq_{\text{fin}} T$ such that $T' \cup \{ \neg \varphi \}$ is *inconsistent*. Let us write $\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists \vec{x}. \bigwedge_{\theta \in T'} \theta[c_a \mapsto x_a]$, i.e., the existential closure of the conjunction of the formulas in T' , obtained by transforming back the constants $(c_a)_{a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})}$ into distinct variables $(x_a)_{a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})}$.

Notice that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$. Furthermore, for all \mathfrak{B} such that $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi$, there exists a valuation v such that $\mathfrak{B}, v \models \bigwedge_{\theta \in T'} \theta[c_a \mapsto x_a]$. In particular,

one can assign to the constant c_a the element $v(x_a)$ to obtain a structure $\hat{\mathfrak{B}}$ in the language extended with constants, such that $\hat{\mathfrak{B}} \models T'$. Finally, $\hat{\mathfrak{B}} \models \varphi$, which implies that $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$ since φ does not use these additional constants in the first place.

We have proven that there exists a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$ and $\psi \models \varphi$. ■

Theorem 3.1.9. Let F be a fragment of FO . The *F-preservation theorem* states that every sentence φ preserved under F -embeddings is equivalent to an $\exists F$ sentence over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$.

Proof. Let us consider for every countable model \mathfrak{A} of φ a sentence $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}} \in \exists F$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}} \models \varphi$, as provided by Lemma 3.1.8.

Let us write $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\neg\psi_{\mathfrak{A}} : \mathfrak{A} \models \varphi\}$. It is clear that $T \cup \{\varphi\}$ is *inconsistent*, hence there exists a finite subset $T' \subseteq_{\text{fin}} T$ such that $T' \cup \{\varphi\}$ is *inconsistent*. Therefore, $\varphi \equiv \bigvee_{\psi_{\mathfrak{A}} \in T'} \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$. This last *first order sentence* is in $\exists F$ because of the equivalence $(\exists \vec{x}. \psi_1(\vec{x})) \vee (\exists \vec{y}. \psi_2(\vec{y})) \equiv_c \exists \vec{x}. \exists \vec{y}. \psi_1(\vec{x}) \vee \psi_2(\vec{y})$ up to α -renaming, and because F is closed under \vee . ■

Notice that Theorem 3.1.9 does not provide a concrete characterisation of the F -embeddings. In order to claim that this result generalises Table 3.1, it remains to prove that the preorders correspond to their respective notions of F -embeddings. This was done for specific instances in Table 3.2.

An interesting example of preservation theorem that may seem out of the reach of Theorem 3.1.9 is the *Chang-Łoś-Suszko* Theorem. This preservation theorem is also important as an illustration of preservation theorems that have quantifier alternation, and is particularly meaningful in the database setting because the $\forall\exists QF$ sentences⁵ model most of the constraints that one can place on a database [25]. For instance, the constraint in Example 2.2.8 was of this shape.

We will first formally state the *Chang-Łoś-Suszko* theorem, and then explain how a simple reformulation puts it on the tracks of Theorem 3.1.9. The *Chang-Łoś-Suszko* theorem considers “unions of chains” of models, that need to be carefully formalised.⁶

Definition 3.1.10 ([15, p. 140]). Let σ be a *relational signature*, α be an ordinal. A *chain of models* of length α is a family $(\mathfrak{A}_{\beta})_{\beta < \alpha}$ of *relational structures* of $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$, such that $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}_{\beta}) \subseteq \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}_{\gamma})$, and $R^{\mathfrak{A}_{\beta}} \subseteq R^{\mathfrak{A}_{\gamma}}$ for all $\gamma \leq \beta < \alpha$ and for every relation $R \in \sigma$.

The *union of a chain*, written $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} \mathfrak{A}_{\beta}$ is the *relational structure* with domain the union $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}_{\beta})$, and relations $R^{\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} \mathfrak{A}_{\beta}}$ defined as the union $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} R^{\mathfrak{A}_{\beta}}$.

Beware that Theorem 3.1.9 does not provide any information on the equivalent sentence. In particular, parameters such as the *quantifier rank* can vastly differ between the original sentence and the equivalent one.

5: That is, sentences of the form $\forall \vec{x}. \exists \vec{y}. \psi(\vec{x}\vec{y})$ where $\psi \in QF$.

6: In particular, one cannot simply use the relation \subseteq_i , as it does not put any constraint on the domain of the *relational structures*.

The knowledgeable reader might notice that *sentences preserved under unions of chains* are precisely those defining *closed subsets* in the *d-topology* associated with the ordering $\mathfrak{A} \leq \mathfrak{B}$ whenever $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}) \subseteq \text{dom}(\mathfrak{B})$ and $R^{\mathfrak{A}} \subseteq R^{\mathfrak{B}}$ for every relation symbol $R \in \sigma$.

[86]: Sankaran, Adsul, Madan, Kamath and Chakraborty (2012), ‘Preservation under substructures modulo bounded cores’

We will have another viewpoint in the conclusion of the thesis, where we will be interested in the ability to talk about free variables. This is meaningful because a sentence preserved under $\leq_{\forall\text{QF}}$ corresponds to a preservation under \leq_{QF} over “pointed structures.”

Theorem 3.1.11 [15, Theorem 5.2.6]. A sentence ϕ is said to be *preserved under unions of chains* if $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} \mathfrak{A}_\beta \models \phi$ for every chain of models $(\mathfrak{A}_\beta)_{\beta < \alpha}$ of length α such that $\mathfrak{A}_\beta \models \phi$ for every $\beta < \alpha$. The *Chang-Łoś-Suszko* Theorem states that first-order sentences *preserved under unions of chains* are equivalent to $\forall\exists\text{QF}$ sentences.

The reformulation that follows is heavily inspired by the results of [86], but we restate the results together with its proof using the newly introduced language to keep this document self-contained.

Lemma 3.1.12 [86, Theorem 2]. Let $\varphi \in \text{FO}$ be a first order sentence. The following are equivalent:

1. φ is *preserved under unions of chains*,
2. $\neg\varphi$ is *preserved under $\leq_{\forall\text{QF}}$* .

Proof. Let us first check that if $\varphi \in \forall\exists\text{QF}$, then it is *preserved under unions of chains*. For that, consider a chain of models $(\mathfrak{A}_\beta)_{\beta < \alpha}$ for some ordinal α , such that $\mathfrak{A}_\beta \models \varphi$ for every $\beta < \alpha$. Let us define $\mathfrak{A} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} \mathfrak{A}_\beta$, and prove that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. By assumption, $\varphi = \forall x_1 \dots x_k, \exists y_1, \dots, y_l, \theta(\vec{x}, \vec{y})$ where θ is *quantifier-free*.

Let $a_1, \dots, a_k \in \mathfrak{A}$, by definition of \mathfrak{A} there exists $i_1, \dots, i_k < \alpha$ such that $a_1 \in \mathfrak{A}_{i_1}, \dots, a_k \in \mathfrak{A}_{i_k}$. In particular, all the elements belong to \mathfrak{A}_i , where $i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max\{i_1, \dots, i_k\}$. Now, $\mathfrak{A}_i \models \varphi$, hence there exists $b_1, \dots, b_l \in \mathfrak{A}_i$ such that $\mathfrak{A}_i, (x_j \mapsto a_j, y_j \mapsto b_j) \models \theta(\vec{x}, \vec{y})$. Because θ is *quantifier-free* and $\mathfrak{A}_i \subseteq \mathfrak{A}$, we conclude that $\mathfrak{A}, (x_j \mapsto a_j, y_j \mapsto b_j) \models \theta(\vec{x}, \vec{y})$, and we have proven that for all $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^k$, there exists $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{A}^l$ such that θ is satisfied, that is, $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

Let φ be *preserved under unions of chains*. Thanks to the *Chang-Łoś-Suszko* theorem, there exists $\psi \in \forall\exists\text{QF}$ such that $\varphi \equiv_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \psi$. Therefore, $\neg\varphi \equiv_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \neg\psi \in \exists\forall\text{QF}$. This entails that $\neg\varphi$ is *preserved under $\leq_{\forall\text{QF}}$* .

Conversely, let φ be a sentence such that $\neg\varphi$ is *preserved under $\leq_{\forall\text{QF}}$* . Leveraging [Theorem 3.1.9](#), there exists $\psi \in \exists\forall\text{QF}$ such that $\neg\varphi \equiv_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \psi$. As a consequence, $\varphi \equiv_{\text{Struct}(\sigma)} \neg\psi \in \forall\exists\text{QF}$, which as mentioned in the beginning of the proof, is *preserved under unions of chains*. ■

This nice presentation of *preservation theorems* hides two key points in database theory: the first one (that will not be considered in this manuscript) is that queries have parameters, the second one is that databases are finite structures, and therefore we need for the results to hold on the class of finite *relational structures* (or subclasses thereof).

3.2. Preservation Theorems do not Relativise

Because this section studies the relativisation of *preservation theorems*, let us first define what “relativisation” means in this context. Let

$\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be a class of structures. The **F-preservation theorem relativises** to \mathcal{C} when, for every sentence φ that is preserved under \leq_F when restricted to relational structures in \mathcal{C} , there exists a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ such that ψ is equivalent to φ when restricted to \mathcal{C} , i.e., $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \psi$.

One might think that, because \mathcal{C} contains fewer models than $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$, preservation theorems always relativise. However, it is not the case for most of the fragments introduced so far, as witnessed in Table 3.3. As a matter of fact, understanding to what extent preservation theorems can be leveraged in the finite is a complex problem [81, 82], that remains an active field of study [22].

This study is partially motivated by the implications of such results. For instance, the termination of the Chase has deep connection with the Homomorphism Preservation Theorem [25].

| Name | Relativises to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| H.P.T. | yes [83] |
| Tarski-Lyndon | no [5, Theorem 10.2] |
| Łoś-Tarski | no [22, 56, 90] |
| dual Lyndon | no [4, 89] |
| strong onto homomorphism | no [12] |
| Chang-Łoś-Suszko | no [86] |

[81]: Rosen (1995), ‘Finite model theory and finite variable logics’

[82]: Rosen (2002), ‘Some aspects of model theory and finite structures’

[25]: Deutsch, Nash and Rummel (2008), ‘The chase revisited’

Table 3.3.: Classical preservation theorems and their relativisations to the finite case. We have taken the liberty of adding other classical preservation theorems to the list to better convey the feeling that the Homomorphism Preservation Theorem is an outlier.

Finite Model Theory strikes back. Let us discuss the negative results of Table 3.3 in the light of a simple example. Given a quasi ordering \leq over a set X and a subset $E \subseteq X$, we define $\downarrow_{\leq} E$ as the set $\{m \in X : \exists m' \in E, m \leq m'\}$, this is the *downward closure* of E in X with respect to \leq .

We are now going to introduce the main source of counterexamples in this manuscript: finite cycles. Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(E, 2)\}$, we define **Cycles** to be the class of finite undirected cycles in $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. Furthermore, we write C_n for the finite cycle with n vertices. Notice that $C_i \not\subseteq_i C_j$ whenever $i \neq j \geq 3$.

Example 3.2.1. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$.

Proof. The sentence φ stating that every vertex is connected to at least 2 other vertices is expressible in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ as follows:

$$\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x, \exists y_1 y_2, E(x, y_1) \wedge E(x, y_2) \wedge y_1 \neq y_2 \quad .$$

Observe that if $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$, $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Cycles}$ and $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Cycles}$, then $\mathfrak{A} = \mathfrak{B}$. Furthermore, if $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \in \downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$, then $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Cycles}$.

As a consequence, whenever $\mathfrak{B} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$, and $\mathfrak{A} \in \downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$, we have $\mathfrak{B} = \mathfrak{A}$, hence $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. The sentence φ is therefore preserved under \subseteq_i when restricted to the class $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$.

The following example is developed using rudimentary tools on purpose. We will have finer and finer explanation for the failure of the EFO-preservation theorem in this manuscript, but it is always useful to have a suboptimal proof using only basic knowledge.

Assume by contradiction that there exists an **existential sentence** ψ such that $\psi \equiv_{\downarrow \subseteq_i \text{Cycles}} \varphi$. Without loss of generality, one can assume that $\psi = \exists \vec{x}. \theta(\vec{x})$ where $\theta(\vec{x}) \in \text{QF}$.

If $\mathfrak{A} \in \downarrow \subseteq_i \text{Cycles}$ and $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$, then there exists a substructure $\mathfrak{A}' \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}$ of size at most $|\vec{x}|$ that satisfies ψ : it suffices to restrict the domain of \mathfrak{A} to the witnesses of the existential quantifiers of ψ . Remark that \mathfrak{A}' remains in the same class $\downarrow \subseteq_i \text{Cycles}$.

As a consequence, the \subseteq_i -minimal models of ψ are of bounded size in $\downarrow \subseteq_i \text{Cycles}$, hence there can only be finitely many of them. This is absurd, because C_n is a \subseteq_i -minimal model of φ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. ■

While [Example 3.2.1](#) is convincing, it remains unclear why the proof of [Theorem 3.1.9](#) does not work in the finite. As per usual in computer science, the breaking change does not occur in the displayed proof, but in one of its dependencies: the **compactness theorem of first order logic**.

For a short illustration of the failure of the **compactness theorem** in the case of $\mathcal{C} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \downarrow \subseteq_i \text{Cycles}$, it suffices to consider the sentence ψ_n stating that there exists more than n elements. The theory $\{\psi_n : n \in \mathbb{N}\}$ has no model in \mathcal{C} ,⁷ but every finite subset has a model in \mathcal{C} .

7: And actually in $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

Because we lost the main tool that was used twice to prove [Theorem 3.1.9](#), one might now be surprised (but in the other direction this time) that the **Homomorphism Preservation Theorem** relativises to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ in [Table 3.3](#).

A new hope. There are numerous classes of structures for which **preservation theorems relativise**. And a first simple example is to consider classes $\mathcal{C} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, i.e., finite classes of finite structures. Let us sketch the proof that **preservation theorems** naturally **relativise** to such classes.

A “simple cycle” is also called a chordless cycle.

Fact 3.2.2. Let σ be a finite **relational signature**, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a finite set of finite structures. Then, the **Łoś-Tarski Theorem** relativises to \mathcal{C} .

Proof. Let $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be **preserved under** \subseteq_i over \mathcal{C} . Let S be the set of models $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

Because \mathcal{C} is finite, the sentence $\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{\mathfrak{A} \in S} \Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\text{EFO}}$ is an **existential sentence**. Furthermore, if $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$, then $\mathfrak{B} \in S$, hence $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi$.

Conversely, if $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi$, there exists $\mathfrak{A} \in S$ such that $\mathfrak{B} \models \Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\text{EFO}}$. As a consequence, $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$, and $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, which implies that $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$ since φ is **preserved under** \subseteq_i . ■

The immediate consequence of [Fact 3.2.2](#) is that whether a **preservation theorem relativises** or not to a given class \mathcal{C} is a non-monotone property: **preservation theorems** are true for $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$, fail to **relativise** $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ most of the time, and do **relativise** for finite classes of finite structures (at least for $F \in \{\text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO}\}$, where **diagram sentences** exist).

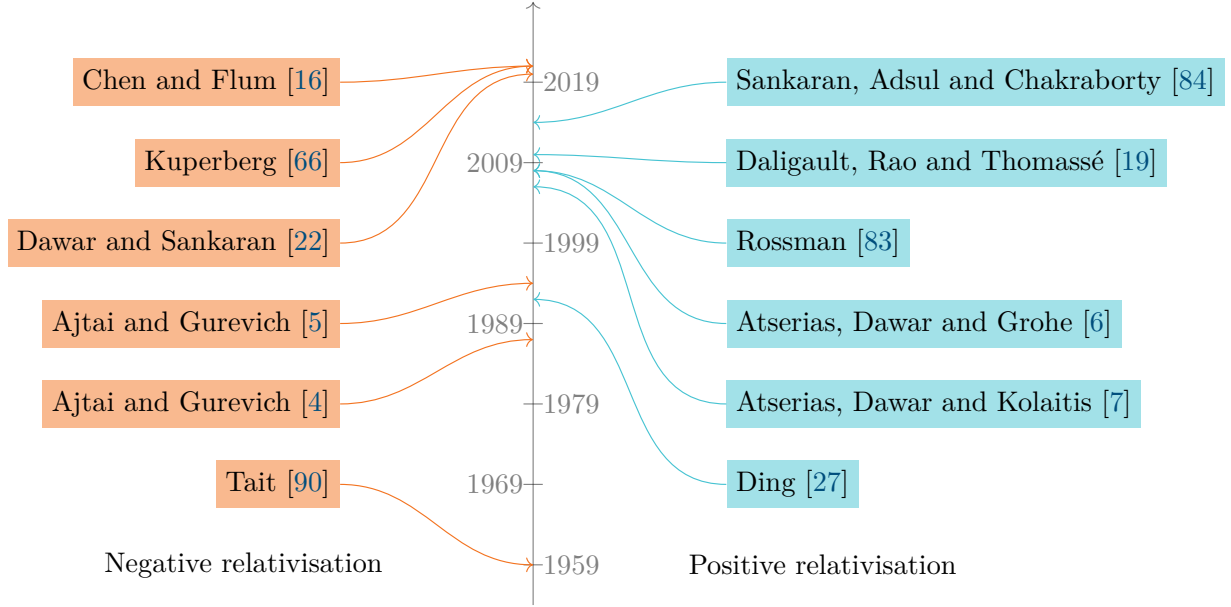


Figure 3.2.: A short history of preservation results considering $\text{FO}[\sigma]$. Negative results are placed on the left-hand side of the timeline, while positive results are placed on its right-hand side.

Therefore, the landscape of *relativisation* will somehow look like an onion, with layers of classes trying to balance the two opposing variances in the statement of a *preservation theorem*: the more models you get, the less likely you are to be *preserved under* a given preorder, but the more complicated it is to produce an equivalent sentence. On that scale, *preservation theorems* over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ hold because “it is very hard to be *preserved under* \leq_F ,” while *preservation theorems* will *relativise* to finite classes of finite structures because “it is very easy to find equivalent *sentences* in $\exists F$.”

A duel of fates. The *relativisation* problem is non-trivial, and there has been a vast literature dedicated to understand both positive and negative results. We provide a brief and incomplete history of this line of research in Figure 3.2. It is quite interesting to notice that the authors of negative and positive examples are mostly disjoint, which can be explained by the difference in the required tool sets.

We will not focus too much on the details of Figure 3.2, because the specific statements will be introduced in a call-by-need fashion in the rest of the document.

Typical proof of non-relativisation. Let us go back to our first “simple proof” of non-*relativisation* that was done in Example 3.2.1. This is a prototypical example that will help us introduce the notions leveraged in the literature.

A key ingredient in Example 3.2.1 was the notion of “minimal model” of a given sentence φ over a class \mathcal{C} , that is, the models $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ and such that for all $\mathfrak{B} \leq_F \mathfrak{A}$, if $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$, then $\mathfrak{A} \leq_F \mathfrak{B}$. We say that such a model is a *F-minimal model* of φ .⁸

⁸: It is a *minimal element* for \leq_F over \mathcal{C} .

9: Beware that this set could be empty even though $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is not, i.e., φ may not have *minimal* elements. This will however not happen for reasonable *quasi-orders* on $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

Item 1 is another way of stating the equivalence $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \psi$.

It is necessary to consider finiteness up to the equivalence relation in Item 2, as the fragment $\mathbf{F} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\top, \perp\}$ will immediately illustrate.

Typically, sentences in $\exists\mathbf{F}$ will be described using finitely many of those *F-minimal models*, which provides a semantic counterpart to the otherwise syntactic presentation of the fragments.

To have a better grasp on the objects at hand, let us introduce the notation $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ to represent the collection of $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. Using this notation, the set of *$\leq_{\mathbf{F}}$ -minimal models* is simply $\min_{\leq_{\mathbf{F}}} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$.⁹ Let us also say that a subset $S \subseteq \mathcal{C}$ is *first order definable* whenever there exists a sentence $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$ such that $S = \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$.

A folklore result that is leveraged throughout both the positive and negative *relativisation* proofs is the following semantic characterisation.

Lemma 3.2.3 (folklore). Let σ be a finite *relational signature*, $\mathbf{F} \in \{\mathbf{EFO}, \mathbf{EPFO}^{\neq}, \mathbf{EPFO}\}$, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathcal{C} = \downarrow_{\leq_{\mathbf{F}}} \mathcal{C}$. Then, for all $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$ the following are equivalent:

1. There exists $\psi \in \exists\mathbf{F}$ such that $\llbracket \psi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$,
2. The set $\min_{\leq_{\mathbf{F}}} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ of *$\leq_{\mathbf{F}}$ -minimal models* for φ is finite up to $\leq_{\mathbf{F}}$ -equivalence.

Furthermore, Item 2 implies Item 1 even when \mathcal{C} is not *downwards closed*.

In the light of Lemma 3.2.3, a typical proof of non-relativisation starts by considering a class \mathcal{C} of finite structures that is *downwards closed*, i.e., such that $\mathcal{C} = \downarrow_{\leq_{\mathbf{F}}} \mathcal{C}$. This is precisely the reason why $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$ was considered in Example 3.2.1.

Beware that in Lemma 3.2.3 the hypothesis that \mathcal{C} is *downwards closed* is necessary for the implication Item 1 \Rightarrow Item 2 to hold. This is illustrated in the following example.

Example 3.2.4. The sentence \top is an *existential sentence* that has infinitely many non-equivalent \subseteq_i -minimal models in *Cycles*.

[83]: Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

Because the orderings \subseteq_i , \subseteq , and \preceq_h are abundantly used in the literature, specific names for their respective notions of “*downwards closed classes*.” A class \mathcal{C} that is *downwards closed* for \preceq_h is called *co-homomorphism closed* in [83, Section 7.1.2 on page 50]. A class \mathcal{C} that is *downwards closed* for \subseteq is called *monotone*. Finally, a class \mathcal{C} that is *downwards closed* for \subseteq_i is called *hereditary*.

The next step to disprove *relativisation* over a given subclass \mathcal{C} is to produce a sentence $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$ such that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ has infinitely many non-equivalent *minimal models*, but is *preserved under $\leq_{\mathbf{F}}$* . In terms of subsets, this means finding a *first order sentence* φ such that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is *upwards closed*: $\uparrow_{\leq_{\mathbf{F}}} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$.¹⁰

Concretely, this search focuses on finding large subsets S of structures such that $\forall \mathfrak{A} \neq \mathfrak{A}' \in S, \mathfrak{A} \not\leq_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{A}'$, and $\mathfrak{A}' \not\leq_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{A}$. This kind of subsets is commonly known as an *antichain* for $\leq_{\mathbf{F}}$. We will often use the notation $a \perp_{\leq} b$ as a shorthand for $\neg(a \leq b) \wedge \neg(b \leq a)$.

10: We define the *upward closure* of a subset $S \subseteq \mathbf{X}$ with respect to a quasi-order \leq similarly as the *downward closure* via: $\uparrow_{\leq} S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{m' \in \mathbf{X} : \exists m \in S. m \leq m'\}$.

Example 3.2.5. Whenever $i \neq j \geq 3$, $C_i \perp_{\subseteq_i} C_j$.

Let us provide a complete example of this technique by restating the original non-relativisation result of [90] where the different steps are clearly highlighted.

Theorem 3.2.6 [90]. Let σ be the finite relational signature composed by two binary relation symbols $(R_1, 2)$, $(R_2, 2)$. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

Proof Scheme. We start by an informal construction, that you can skip if you don't like informal introductions. Let L_n be a finite total ordering with n elements, and LinOrd be the collection of such linear orderings. We will turn L_n into a cycle¹¹ for the relation R_2 by defining R_2 as the successor-or-equal relation associated with \leq , plus the edge connecting the maximal element of L_n with the least element of L_n .

Formally, let us define the FO-interpretation $\mathbb{I}: \text{LinOrd} \rightarrow \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ with domain $\varphi_{\text{dom}}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$, $\varphi_{R_1}(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} x \leq y$, and $\varphi_{R_2}(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (x = y) \vee (y = x + 1) \vee (\min y \wedge \max x)$.¹²

It is immediate that the image $\text{Im}(\mathbb{I})$ of LinOrd is an infinite antichain for \subseteq_i . Leveraging Lemma 3.2.3,¹³ it suffices to propose a first order sentence $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ such that $\uparrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Im}(\mathbb{I}) = \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$ to conclude the desired non-relativisation.¹⁴

A structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ contains $\mathbb{I}(L_n)$ for some n as an induced sub-structure if and only if there exists $(x, y) \in \mathfrak{A}$, such that R_1 defines a total ordering \leq between x and y , $R_2(y, x)$ holds in \mathfrak{A} , and R_2 is the successor-or-equal relation for element between x and y , except for the pair (x, y) . All of this is expressible in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$. ■

Theorem 3.2.6 serves as an illustration of a more general proof scheme, that has been instantiated with various levels of technicality: the correspondence between a semantic characterisation and a first order definable subset may be highly non-trivial.¹⁵

Furthermore, the technique can be generalised to not only obtain non-relativisation results, but also obtain undecidability properties [16, 66]. One way to obtain such theorems is to encode a grid-like structure instead of cycles, where the runs of a Turing machine can be encoded. In this setting, deciding whether a sentence φ is equivalent to a sentence ψ in the desired fragment $\exists F$ amounts to checking the emptiness of $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$, which corresponds to the Turing machine not having a finite run. This paragraph is purposely vague, because such techniques will be explained and developed in Chapter 4 (Locality and Preservation).

[90]: Tait (1959), ‘A counterexample to a conjecture of Scott and Suppes’

11: Which is by now a recurrent source of counter examples.

12: We have used $x = y \vee y = x + 1$ as a shorthand notation for the sentence $\forall z. (x \leq z \leq y) \Rightarrow (z = y \vee z = x)$. Similarly, we used $\min x$ to denote $\forall z. x \leq z$, and $\max y$ to denote $\forall z. z \leq y$.

13: Because $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is downwards closed for \subseteq_i inside $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$.

14: We write $\uparrow_{\subseteq_i} S$ for the upward closure of S with respect to \subseteq_i , but did not specify in which “superset” the upward closure is considered. Here, we implicitly consider the upward closure with respect to \subseteq_i inside the class $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

15: This will be the case in Subsection 4.3.1.

[16]: Chen and Flum (2021), ‘Forbidden Induced Subgraphs and the Łoś-Tarski Theorem’

[66]: Kuperberg (2021), ‘Positive First-order Logic on Words’

Typical proof of relativisation. Let us now turn our attention to the positive side of Figure 3.2. The typical proof in these case leverages the semantic characterisation using *minimal models* of Lemma 3.2.3, but also the expressiveness of the fragments in the finite described by Lemma 3.1.5.

Concretely, one proves that every first order sentence φ that is *preserved under F-embeddings* has the semantic property of having finitely many non \leq_F -equivalent *minimal models*. Then, an equivalent sentence in $\exists F$ is obtained as follows:

$$\varphi \equiv \bigvee_{\mathfrak{A} \in \min_{\leq_F} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_C} \Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\exists F}.$$

Example 3.2.7. Let us define *Paths* to be the collection of finite undirected paths, and P_n to be a finite undirected path with n vertices for $n \geq 1$. Then, the *Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises* to *Paths*.

Proof. Notice that $(\text{Paths}, \subseteq_i)$ is *order-isomorphic* to (\mathbb{N}, \leq) . We use the proof scheme mentioned above: a sentence φ has at most one *minimal model* for \subseteq_i because all paths are comparable. ■

Now, the big question is of a combinatorial nature: how does one control the shape/number of \leq_F -*minimal models* of a given *first order sentence*? There are three main answers in the literature:

- Understand the combinatorial nature of \leq_F (for a degenerate example, \subseteq_i on *Paths* which was illustrated in Example 3.2.7 [19, 27].
- Understand the combinatorial nature of subsets definable $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ (for a degenerate example, $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ on finite classes of finite structures, which was illustrated in Fact 3.2.2) [6, 7].
- Understand the interplay between \leq_F and $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ [83].

The typical combinatorial tool will be the notion of *well-quasi-ordering* which will be explored in Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces), while the logic approach will usually leverage of the *Gaifman Locality Theorem* and will be explored in Chapter 4 (Locality and Preservation). For completeness, we also list the proof scheme developed by Rossman that lies at the frontier of the two extreme approaches. This interplay is materialised by an attention to the *quantifier rank* of the involved formulas.

[83]: Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

One of the main ideas of [83] is to take a dual point of view and transform the existence of *F-embeddings* between structures into inclusion of their *theories*. This is materialised by the following Lemma 3.2.8, which then allows us to “stratify” embeddings.

For that, let us associate a *theory* to every structure as follows $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$ is defined as the set of all *first order sentences* $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

Lemma 3.2.8. *Let σ be a finite relational signature, F a fragment*

of $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$. Then,

$$\mathfrak{A} \leq_F \mathfrak{B} \iff \mathbf{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap \exists F \subseteq \mathbf{Th}(\mathfrak{B}) \cap \exists F$$

Proof. The only hard part is going from a theory inclusion to build an embedding. Let $\vec{x} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}$, and $v: x_a \mapsto a$. Because F is countable, let us enumerate its formulas $(\phi_i(\vec{y}_i))_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \in F^{\mathbb{N}}$ such that $\vec{y}_i \subseteq \vec{x}$ and such that $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \phi_i$. Now, consider $\psi_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists \vec{x}. \bigwedge_{j \leq i} \phi_j$. By definition, $\psi_i \in \exists F$, and $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi_i$. Hence, $\psi_i \in \mathbf{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap \exists F$.

As a consequence, $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi_i$, and this provides a map¹⁶ $h_i: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$, that sends the existential witnesses of ψ_i in \mathfrak{A} to their counterpart in \mathfrak{B} , and sends every other point of \mathfrak{A} to some element in \mathfrak{B} (this is possible because \mathfrak{B} is non-empty).

Now, there are but finitely many maps from \mathfrak{A} to \mathfrak{B} . As a consequence, there exists $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $h_i = h_j$ for infinitely many $j \in \mathbb{N}$. Let us prove that h_i is an **F-embedding**. Let $\theta(\vec{y})$ in F , and $v': \vec{y} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ be such that $\mathfrak{A}, v' \models \theta(\vec{y})$. Because free variables in formulas of F can be renamed, the formula $\theta' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \theta[y \mapsto x_{v'(y)}]$ belongs to F .¹⁷ Then, $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \theta'$, whose **free variables** are in \vec{x} . As a consequence, there exists $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\phi_k = \theta'(\vec{x})$. Furthermore, there exists a $j > k$ such that $h_i = h_j$. By construction of h_j , $\mathfrak{B}, h_j \circ v \models \phi_k$. Therefore, $\mathfrak{B}, h_i \circ v \models \theta[y \mapsto x_{v'(y)}]$, and we conclude that $\mathfrak{B}, h_i \circ v' \models \theta(\vec{y})$. We have proven that h_i is a **F-embedding**.

We have proven that $\mathfrak{A} \leq_F \mathfrak{B}$. ■

Lemma 3.2.8 allows us to refine the ordering \leq_F by considering **theories** up to a certain **quantifier rank**. Let us write $(F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$ for the restriction of F to **first order formulas** of **quantifier rank** at most q .

This leads to the definition of $\mathfrak{A} \leq_F^q \mathfrak{B}$ as $\mathbf{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap (\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q} \subseteq \mathbf{Th}(\mathfrak{B}) \cap (\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$, which is meaningful because of the following remark.

Lemma 3.2.9. *Let σ be a finite **relational signature**, $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a class of finite structures, F be a **fragment** of $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$, a **quantifier rank** $q \in \mathbb{N}$, and φ be a **first order sentence**. The following are equivalent:*

- The **sentence** φ is **equivalent over \mathcal{C}** a finite positive Boolean combination of **sentences** in $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$,
- The **sentence** φ is **preserved under \leq_F^q** over \mathcal{C} .

Proof. If φ is equivalent to a **sentence** in $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$, then in particular it is **preserved under \leq_F^q** .

Conversely, assume that φ is **preserved under \leq_F^q** . Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. Notice that $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$ contains finitely many non-equivalent **sentences**. Let us write $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$ for the (finite) conjunction of a choice of representatives of the equivalence classes of $\mathbf{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap (\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$. By construction, $\psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$ is a positive Boolean combination of sentences in $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$. We argue that $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \bigvee_{\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi} \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$, and that the disjunction is finite. The latter holds because there are finitely many non-equivalent sentences in $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$, hence finitely many non-equivalent conjunctions of finitely many sentences in $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$. Furthermore, if $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, then

16: Note that the existence of h_i as a *function* relies on the fact that $x_1 = x_2$ is expressible in every **first order fragment**. Otherwise, one would simply obtain a *correspondence* which is not enough to conclude.

17: We use the fact that we can *arbitrarily* rename **free variables** of formulas in F . Indeed, it may be that $v'(y_1) = v'(y_2) = a$ for some $y_1 \neq y_2 \in \vec{y}$ and $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, in which case we are introducing a name clash by mapping both y_1 and y_2 to x_a .

$\mathfrak{A} \models \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$ by construction. Lastly, if $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi_{\mathfrak{A}}$ for some $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, then $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap (\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q} \subseteq \text{Th}(\mathfrak{B}) \cap (\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$, and $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$. We have effectively rewritten φ as a finite positive Boolean combination of sentences in $(\exists F)^{\text{rk} \leq q}$. ■

[83]: Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

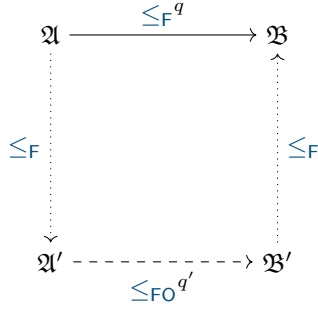


Figure 3.3.: The combinatorial lemma of Rossman leading to the Homomorphism Preservation Theorem

In the original paper [83, Corollary 5.14], the lemma is stated using the equivalence relations induced by \leq_F , \leq_F^q , and \leq_{FO}^q rather than the orderings themselves. However, it immediately implies Lemma 3.2.10.

We now have the necessary tools to understand the main combinatorial lemma from [83] that relates \leq_F and the notion of **quantifier rank** in the specific case of $F \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{EPFO}$.

Lemma 3.2.10 [83, Corollary 5.14]. Let σ be a finite **relational signature**, and $q' \in \mathbb{N}$. There exists a $q \in \mathbb{N}$, such that for all $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ satisfying $\mathfrak{A} \leq_{\text{EPFO}}^q \mathfrak{B}$, there exists $\mathfrak{A}', \mathfrak{B}' \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ such that:

1. $\mathfrak{A} \leq_{\text{EPFO}} \mathfrak{A}'$,
2. $\mathfrak{B}' \leq_{\text{EPFO}} \mathfrak{B}$,
3. $\mathfrak{A}' \leq_{FO}^{q'} \mathfrak{B}'$.

A graphical depiction of Lemma 3.2.10 is given in Figure 3.3. Notice that it implies the **relativisation** of the **Homomorphism Preservation Theorem** to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. Indeed, let φ be a **first order sentence** that is **preserved under \leq_h** ; since φ has a given **quantifier rank** $q' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{rk}(\varphi)$, one can leverage Lemma 3.2.10 to conclude that φ is **preserved under $\leq_{\text{EPFO}}^{\text{rk} \leq q}$** ; hence equivalent to some $\text{EPFO}^{\text{rk} \leq q}$ sentence by Lemma 3.2.9.

All of these three approaches are an invitation to a formalisation and generalisation. This is what we will try to explore in the upcoming section.

3.3. Order and Topology

This section connects the study of typical proofs carried out in Section 3.1 (**Classical Preservation Theorems**) and Section 3.2 (**Preservation Theorems do not Relativise**) to well established fields of computer science and mathematics: **well-quasi-orderings** and **Noetherian spaces**.

We will start by exploring the proof schemes that were described when dealing with classes of finite structures, and connect the combinatorial properties of $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket$ with the notion of **well-quasi-order**.

Later, we will explore the meaning of the **compactness theorem of first order logic** in classes of structures $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, which will lead us towards the language of topology.

3.3.1. The Finite Case: Well Quasi Orderings

Because the typical study carried out to understand whether a given **preservation theorem relativises** to a given class uses so-called “minimal models”, we can ask ourselves what kind of properties this enforces on the ordering \leq_F . We argue that this places us in a setting that is very similar to the one of **well-quasi-orders** that we introduce hereafter.

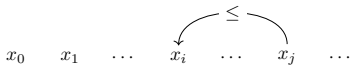


Figure 3.4.: Graphical representation of an increasing pair in a good sequence.

Definition 3.3.1. Let (P, \leq) be a **quasi-order**. A sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \in P^{\mathbb{N}}$ is **good** whenever there exists $i < j$ such that $x_i \leq x_j$.

A **quasi-ordered** set (P, \leq) is **well-quasi-ordered** if every sequence $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of elements in P is **good**.

By calling a sequence **bad** whenever it is not good, **well-quasi-orderings** are equivalently defined as having no infinite **bad sequences**.

Example 3.3.2. The set \mathbb{N}^2 , equipped with the pointwise ordering, is a **well-quasi-order**. This is illustrated in Figure 3.5, where we give a feel of why one cannot indefinitely choose elements that are not above the previous ones in \mathbb{N}^2 .

The theory of **well-quasi-orders** (abbreviated as **wqo** as of now), is a slight restriction of the maybe more familiar notion of **well-founded orderings**. When dealing with **quasi-orders**, it is not only important to control the **decreasing sequences**, but also to control sequences of elements that are incomparable, that is, **antichains**. The following Lemma 3.3.3 precisely states this connection.

Lemma 3.3.3. Let (P, \leq) be a **quasi-ordered** set. The following are equivalent:

1. (P, \leq) is a **well-quasi-ordering**,
2. The following infinite sequences do not occur in P : infinite **antichains**, and infinite **decreasing sequences**.

There is an immediate connection between Lemma 3.3.3 and the proof schemes to study the **relativisation** of **preservation theorems** to classes of finite structures. Recall that a key ingredient was the study of infinite **antichains**¹⁸ and answering the question of whether or not such **antichains** were definable.

We can actually get closer to our original interests by leveraging another characterisation of **well-quasi-orders** in terms of **upwards closed** sets.

Lemma 3.3.4. Let (P, \leq) be a **quasi-order**. The following are equivalent:

1. (P, \leq) is a **wqo**,
2. For all **upwards closed subsets** H of P , there exists $S \subseteq_{\text{fin}} H$ such that $\uparrow_{\leq} S = H$.

The above Lemma 3.3.4 is almost the statement that we used when studying **preservation theorems** via Lemma 3.2.3: sentences in $\exists F$ as those being described via finitely many **minimal** models!

We have now a first “logic-free” way to prove the **relativisation** of **preservation theorems**: prove that the class (\mathcal{C}, \leq_F) is a **well-quasi-order**.

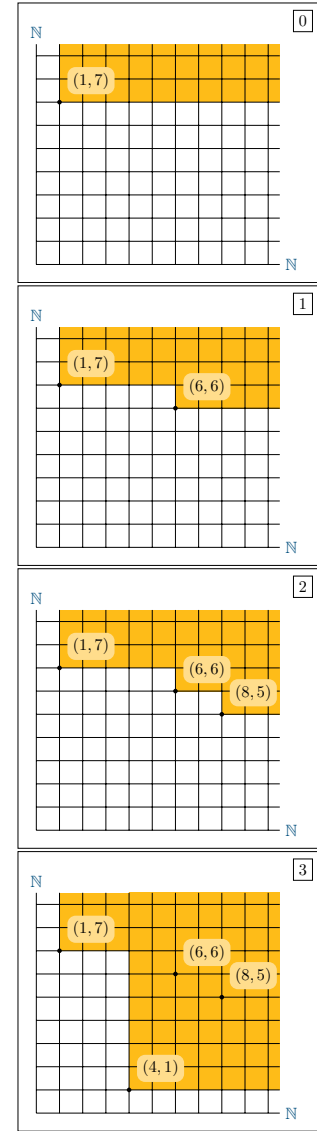


Figure 3.5.: Every infinite sequence in \mathbb{N}^2 with the pointwise ordering is **good**. We describe an example of a **bad sequence** in \mathbb{N}^2 and colour in orange the regions of \mathbb{N}^2 that are forbidden if one wants to continue building a **bad sequence**.

18: For instance, the sequence of cycles for \subseteq_i .

Lemma 3.3.5 (folklore). Let σ be a finite relational signature, $F \in \{\text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO}\}$, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be such that (\mathcal{C}, \leq_F) is wqo. Then, the F -preservation theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} .

Proof. Let $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be preserved under \leq_F over \mathcal{C} . This precisely means that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is upwards closed in \mathcal{C} . Because \mathcal{C} is a wqo, there exists $S \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{C}$ such that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \uparrow_{\leq_F} S$. Then, Lemma 3.2.3 provides a $\psi \in \exists F$ such that $\llbracket \psi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$, and we have concluded. ■

Let us briefly place well-quasi-orderings in a historical context before continuing our journey. As a combinatorial tool, well-quasi-orderings appear frequently in varying fields of computer science, ranging from graph theory to number theory [19, 59, 64, 65]. Well-quasi-orderings have also been highly successful in proving the termination of verification algorithms, where one of their critical application is to the verification of infinite state transition systems, via the study of so-called Well-Structured Transition Systems (WSTS) [1, 35, 53].

Classes of models that are wqo. Let us now explore to which extent Lemma 3.3.5 explains the successes in proving the relativisation of preservation theorems in the finite.¹⁹

Remark that for $\leq \in \{\subseteq_i, \subseteq\}$, the set (\mathcal{C}, \leq) is well-founded as soon as $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. Therefore, the question of being a wqo boils down to the behaviour of antichains for these quasi-orders.

The specific case of finite graphs has been investigated by Ding already in 1992, where he provided a characterisation of monotone classes of graphs that are wqo for \subseteq_i (resp. \subseteq) [27, Theorem 2.7]. However, the provided characterisation in terms of forbidden subgraphs does not work in the presence of colours or directed edges, and fails *a fortiori* for general relational structures.

Let us formally define what we mean by “colouring” structures.²⁰ Let σ be a finite relational signature, L be a finite set of labels, and $\mathcal{C} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be a class of structures. One can build the class $\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C})$ of structures in \mathcal{C} labelled by elements in L as a subset of $\text{Struct}(\sigma \uplus L)$ obtained by freely assigning the unary predicates in L to elements in structures of \mathcal{C} .

Example 3.3.6. The class **Paths** of finite paths is wqo for \subseteq_i , but $\text{Lab}(L, \text{Paths})$ is not as soon as $|L| \geq 1$.

Proof. The class $(\text{Paths}, \subseteq_i)$ is isomorphic to (\mathbb{N}, \leq) which is wqo. However, the sequence of paths with labelled endpoints is an infinite antichain for \subseteq_i in $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \text{Paths})$, as explained in Figure 3.6. ■

In order to talk about signatures beyond finite graphs and unary predicates, let us leverage the notion of tree-depth that was already mentioned when defining \subseteq_i in Definition 2.3.20.

[19]: Daligault, Rao and Thomassé (2010), ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’

[59]: Higman (1952), ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’

[64]: Kříž and Thomas (1990), ‘On well-quasi-ordering finite structures with labels’

[65]: Kruskal (1972), ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’

[1]: Abdulla, Čerāns, Jonsson and Tsay (1996), ‘General decidability theorems for infinite-state systems’

[35]: Finkel and Schnoebelen (2001), ‘Well-structured transition systems everywhere!’

[53]: Goubault-Larrecq, Seisenberger, Selivanov and Weiermann (2016), ‘Well Quasi-Orders in Computer Science (Dagstuhl Seminar 16031)’

19: Because the lemma only provides a sufficient condition, it cannot be used to explain negative relativisation results.

[27]: Ding (1992), ‘Subgraphs and well-quasi-ordering’

20: For better compatibility with unary predicates, we consider “labels” rather than “colours” but the two are as expressive.

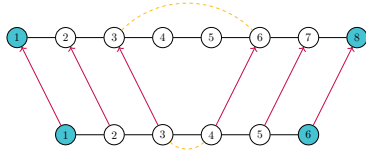


Figure 3.6.: Illustration of the impossibility to embed a path with 6 vertices into a path with 8 vertices when their endpoints are coloured. To build an embedding, one must send 1 and 6 of P_6 to the endpoints of P_8 , and this leads to a contradiction because there will be at least one pair of consecutive nodes in P_6 that are not consecutive in P_8 . We coloured the endpoints in blue, a potential embedding in thick red, and the contradiction arises from the presence/absence of the thick dashed yellow arcs.

Definition 3.3.7. Let σ be a finite relational signature. A class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ of structures has *bounded tree-depth* if and only if there exists $m \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A}) \leq m$ for all \mathfrak{A} in \mathcal{C} .

A first result present in Figure 3.2 is [27, Theorem 2.6], that characterises *monotone classes* of finite graphs that are *well-quasi-ordered* for \subseteq and \subseteq_i , when allowing colourings. We restate the theorem in terms of classes of finite structures which is an immediate generalisation.

Let σ be a finite relational signature, L be a non-empty finite set of labels, and \mathcal{C} be a *monotone class* of finite structures. Then, the following are equivalent:

Theorem 3.3.8 [27, Theorem 2.6]. The following are equivalent for a *monotone class* \mathcal{C} of finite undirected graphs.

1. \mathcal{C} has *bounded tree depth*,
2. $(\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq)$ is *wqo*,
3. $(\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq_i)$ is *wqo*.

While Theorem 3.3.8 only considers classes of undirected graphs, it can be lifted to *monotone classes* of finite structures over a finite relational signature, because of the lemma in [27, Lemma 2.5].

Fact 3.3.9. Let σ be a finite relational signature, let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a class of finite structures, and L be a finite set of labels. If \mathcal{C} has *bounded tree-depth*, then $(\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq_i)$ is a *well-quasi-order*.

We do not know if the following lemma is really folklore, but it is not really difficult to prove. However, as it is not central to the study carried out in this manuscript, we only give a brief intuition of the proof in the margin.

Lemma 3.3.10. Let σ be a finite relational signature, let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a *hereditary class* of finite structures, and L be a finite set of labels with $|L| \geq 1$. The following are equivalent:

- ▶ \mathcal{C} has *bounded tree depth*,
- ▶ $(\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq)$ is *wqo*,
- ▶ $(\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq_i)$ is *wqo*.

This only studies *monotone classes* of structures, but recent results on *hereditary classes* have been provided by [19, Theorem 3], that provides a criterion for tree-generated classes of graphs to be *wqo* with respect to \subseteq_i . These results that connect the property of being *wqo* to structural properties of the class of graph (having bounded *something*) are recapitulated in Figure 3.7. This illustrates how the *wqo* approach quickly reaches its limits: while structural properties such as having *bounded clique-width*, or *bounded tree-width* are ordinarily indicators of a favourable ground for finite model theory to thrive, only degenerate

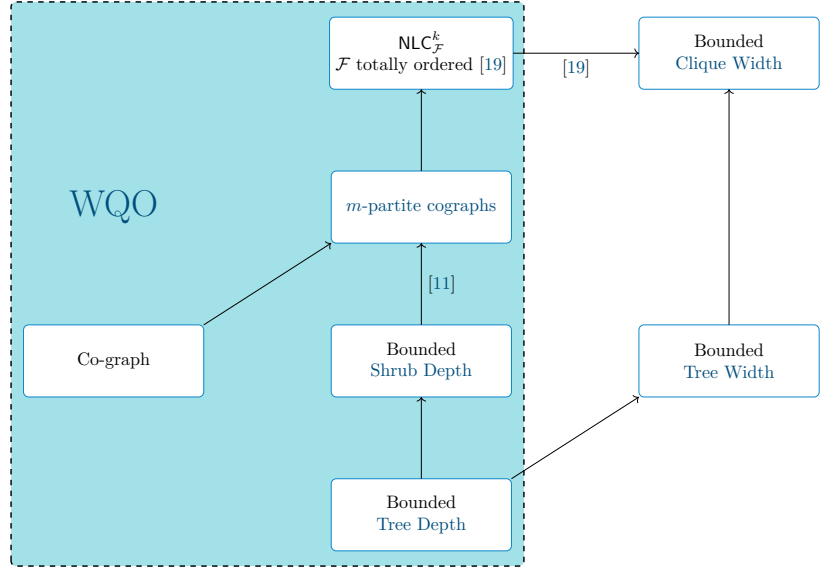
[27]: Ding (1992), ‘Subgraphs and well-quasi-ordering’

There is a slight overloading of notations when talking about *monotone classes* of finite undirected graphs. In graph theory, a subgraph of an undirected graph cannot be a directed graph, while our definition of finite graphs as elements in $\text{Fin}(\{ (E, 2) \})$ allows such behaviour. Hence, a monotone class of finite graphs must be empty using our definition, which is avoided by the common definition of a monotone class of undirected graphs as the restriction of a *monotone class* of directed graphs to those that are undirected. Note that there was no confusion about *hereditary classes* of undirected graphs, as a *induced substructure* of an undirected graph is undirected too.

The formal proof of Lemma 3.3.10 does not fit in the margin. The only difficult implication in Lemma 3.3.10 is to go from an unbounded *tree-depth* to an *antichain* for \subseteq . The idea is that for a *monotone class* of structures with relations of arity at most k , one can prove by induction on n that a structure with tree-depth at least $k \times n$ must contain some sort of long “path of cliques,” as a substructure for a good definition of “path” and “clique.” Adding colours automatically leads to an infinite *antichain*.

[19]: Daligault, Rao and Thomassé (2010), ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’

Figure 3.7.: Classes of (coloured) graphs that are structurally simple thanks to having tree decompositions of a specific shape. In green, the classes that are known to be well-quasi-ordered for \subseteq_i .



versions of these tree decompositions imply a property of **well-quasi-ordering**.

Another structural approach to the complexity of graph classes is the research program started by Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez that studies the “sparsity” of the graph classes, with a taxonomy described in [Figure 3.8](#). In this classification too, the realm of **wqo** is limited to a tiny subset of the classes of graphs that are considered as “simple.”

Let us conclude this introduction to **well-quasi-orderings** by a useful definition that leads to two (unsolved) conjectures.

In its usual formulations with “colourings,” the conjecture is formulated as the equivalence between being ∞ -wqo and being “2-wqo.”

Definition 3.3.11. Let σ be a finite **relational signature**, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. The class \mathcal{C} is ∞ -wqo for \subseteq_i if and only if $(\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq_i)$ is wqo for all finite L .

Conjecture 3.3.12 (Pouzet’s Conjecture). A class \mathcal{C} of finite graphs is ∞ -wqo if and only if $(\text{Lab}(\{P\}, \mathcal{C}), \subseteq_i)$ is wqo, where P is an arbitrary symbol.

There are good reasons for me to believe that the above conjecture can be strengthened by considering classes of structures, and explicitly encoding the infinite antichain of **Cycles**. The conjecture is due to Sylvain Schmitz.

Conjecture 3.3.13 (Sylvain’s Conjecture). Let σ be a finite **relational signature**, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. The class \mathcal{C} is not ∞ -wqo if and only if there exists an infinite subset $S \subseteq \text{Cycles}$, a finite set L , and a **first order interpretation** $\mathsf{I}: \text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C}) \rightarrow S$ such that I is **monotone**.

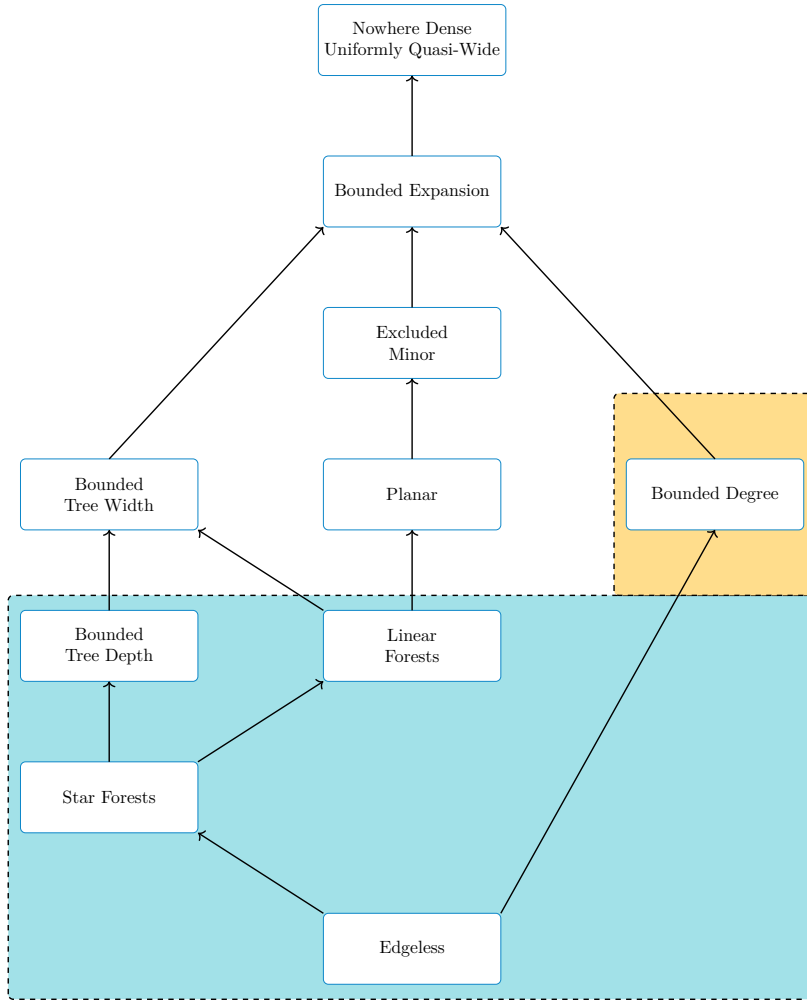


Figure 3.8.: What is known for *wqo* and *preservation theorems* with respect to the usual sparse classes that are *hereditary*. Beware that sparse “classes” depicted here are collections of classes of graphs. Arrows represent strict collection inclusion. Collections that are in the lower green rectangle contain classes that are *well-quasi-ordered* for \subseteq_i , and the others contain at least one class of graphs that is not well-quasi-ordered for \subseteq_i . Under the extra assumption that the classes are stable under disjoint unions, all the sparsity properties imply the *relativisation* of the *Homomorphism Preservation Theorem* [7, 20], and having bounded degree implies that the *relativisation* of the *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* [6].

3.3.2. The Infinite Case: Compactness.

Because of the limitations of “completely ignoring the logic” that the study of *wqos* imply, let us explore a different approach and try to get back the main tool that was missing and ask the following question: when does the *compactness theorem of first order logic* relativise to classes of finite structures?

To that end, let us first *define* the notion of compactness, for which we need to introduce a few notions of basic topology.

Definition 3.3.14. A *topological space* is a pair (X, τ) where $\tau \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X)$, τ is stable under finite intersections and τ is stable under arbitrary unions.

In particular, τ must contain both \emptyset and X , the first one being the empty union, and the second one being the empty intersection inside the *complete lattice* $\mathcal{P}(X)$.

In a topological space (X, τ) , the elements of τ are called *open subsets* while their complements are said to be *closed subsets*.

We warn the reader that the topological approach will not provide more information than the one using *well-quasi-orders* at the end of this section. However, we will gain intuitions and a better vocabulary to go beyond what was done using *wqos*.

Perhaps the most striking difference between [topological spaces](#) and the previously encountered algebraic structures such as [quasi-ordered sets](#), is the former's "second order" nature. However, this is particularly adapted to the study of first order logic, as a [first order sentence](#) defines a subset of \mathcal{C} via the map $\varphi \mapsto \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$.

21: Recall that we assume suitable cardinality restrictions so that the class is actually a set, and so is its powerset.

22: That is, the set of $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ where φ ranges over [sentences](#) of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$.

23: Which is therefore a [coarser topology](#)

From a logic to a topology. It is tempting to define over a class²¹ $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ a topology defined as $\tau \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \llbracket \text{FO}[\sigma] \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$.²² This would be the "definable topology." Similarly, one could define, given a [fragment](#) F the topology $\llbracket F \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ that contains fewer [open subsets](#).²³

However, the above paragraph is nonsensical, as none of the claimed topologies are actual [topologies](#). While it is true that $\llbracket \text{FO}[\sigma] \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is closed under finite intersections, finite unions, contains \mathcal{C} and contains \emptyset , this set is in general not closed under arbitrary unions.

This is a common problem when defining a [topology](#) over a given set, which we tackle as follows. For every set X and collection of subsets $B \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X)$, one can construct the [topology generated by \$B\$](#) as the smallest [topology](#) on X containing B , which we write $\langle B \rangle_{\text{topo}}$. This topology coincides with the one containing arbitrary unions of finite intersections of subsets in B . We say that B is a [subbasis](#) of τ when τ is the [topology generated by \$B\$](#) .²⁴

24: When τ is obtained by only considering arbitrary unions of elements in B , we say that B is a [basis](#) of τ . But this will not play a role in this document.

Let us provide an example of [topological space](#) obtained through a [subbasis](#) that may be more familiar to the reader.

Example 3.3.15. The set \mathbb{R} of real numbers has a natural topology generated by the [open intervals](#) $]a, b[$ for $a < b \in \mathbb{R}$.

In this topology, the interval $[a, b]$ is a [closed subset](#), and the interval $]a, b[$ is an [open subset](#). Furthermore, both $]a, b]$ and $[a, b[$ are neither [closed subsets](#) nor [open subsets](#).

Now that we have given an example of a topology with a definition that does not come from a logic, let us settle on our next task: associating topological spaces to fragments of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$.

Definition 3.3.16. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), \mathcal{C} be a class of finite structures, and F be a [fragment](#) of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$. We write $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ for the [topology generated by](#) the sets $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$, where φ ranges over elements of $\exists F$.

The space $(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ is therefore a [topological space](#).

Remark that, *a priori*, the topology $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ carries more information than the simple [quasi-ordering](#) \leq_F . In this setting, a sentence φ is [preserved under \$F\$ -embeddings](#) whenever it defines an [open subset](#).²⁵

25: This is the topological translation of [Lemma 3.2.8](#).

Remark 3.3.17. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, F be a [fragment](#) of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$. Then, the following are

equivalent:

1. φ is preserved under \mathbf{F} -embeddings,
2. $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is an open subset of $(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists \mathbf{F} \rangle_{\text{topo}})$.

It may help to think about the closed subsets in the topological space $(\text{Struct}(\sigma), \langle \mathbf{FO} \rangle_{\text{topo}})$: these are obtained as complements of open subsets, that is, arbitrary intersections of finite unions of subsets of the form $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket$. In other words, the closed subsets of this topological spaces are precisely the subclasses of structures that can be described by first order theories, i.e., that have a first order axiomatisation.

Compactness in topological spaces. One of the central topological properties that will arise in this thesis is the notion of “compactness.” Informally, this is the topological generalisation of a finite subset in the following sense: if union $\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} S_i$ contains a finite set S , then there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that S is included in the finite union $\bigcup_{i < n} S_i$.

Definition 3.3.18. An open cover of a subset E in a topological space (X, τ) is a family $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ in τ^I such that $E \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$.

Example 3.3.19. The collection of open intervals $] - n, n[$ $_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is an open cover of \mathbb{R} in its usual topology.

Definition 3.3.20. A subset K of a topological space (X, τ) is compact when for every open cover $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ of K , there exists a finite subset $J \subseteq_{\text{fin}} I$ such that K is covered by $(U_j)_{j \in J}$.

We say that (X, τ) is compact when X is a compact subset of X .

Let us reuse our nice topology on \mathbb{R} to have the first proof of compactness. This will illustrate the main technicalities that we face during those proofs.

Example 3.3.21. The set \mathbb{R} with its usual topology (given in Example 3.3.15) is not compact, but $[0, 1]$ is a compact subset of \mathbb{R} .

Proof. The sequence $] - n, n[$ $_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is an open cover of \mathbb{R} . Assume by contradiction that there exists $I \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{N}$ is such that $] - n, n[$ $_{n \in I}$ is a finite subcover of \mathbb{R} . The element $\max(I)$ belongs to \mathbb{R} but is not in $\bigcup_{n \in I}] - n, n[$.

There are several proofs that $[0, 1]$ is compact. The canonical way would be to use the notion of convergence, which does not fit well with the presentation of topological spaces we gave by avoiding the notion of convergence altogether. Let us provide a quick proof that only uses the Nested Intervals Theorem²⁶, and provide yet another proof leveraging Alexander’s subbase lemma later on.²⁷

We do not talk about sequences at all in this manuscript, therefore the following definition of compactness might not be the one that the reader is used to.

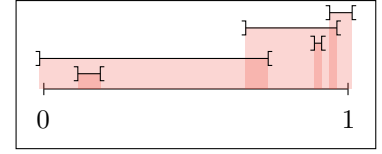


Figure 3.9.: Covering the unit interval $[0, 1]$ using open intervals of the form $]a, b[$ with $a < b$.

26: See Lemma D.8.3 p. 255

27: One other proof might be more to the liking of order theoreticians since it connects the notion of compactness to the existence of least upper bounds.

28: Notice that U_i is an open subset, which may not be an open interval. Furthermore, the sequence is indexed by a set I that might not be \mathbb{N} .

Assume by contradiction that $[0,1]$ is not compact. In particular, there exists an open cover $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ of $[0,1]$ that has no finite subcover.²⁸

Notice that $[0,1] = [0,1/2] \cup [1/2,1]$. At least one of them cannot be covered by finitely many elements in $(U_i)_{i \in I}$. Let us call this subset F_1 , which is a closed subset, of the form $[a,b]$ with $b - a = 2^{-1}$. One can continue the process of dividing this closed interval in two to obtain a sequence $(F_n)_{n \geq 1}$ with the following properties:

- For all $n \geq 1$, F_n is not covered by finitely many elements in $(U_i)_{i \in I}$.
- $(F_n)_{n \geq 1}$ is a decreasing sequence of closed intervals,
- For all $n \geq 1$, F_n has length 2^{-n} .

29: This is the topology generated by the open intervals $]a,b[$ with $a < b$.

Now, using the Nested Intervals Theorem, there exists $x \in \bigcap_{n \geq 1} F_n$. In particular, $x \in [0,1]$, and therefore there exists $i \in I$ such that $x \in U_i$. By definition of the topology on \mathbb{R} ,²⁹ there exists $a < b \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $x \in]a,b[\subseteq U_i$. Because \mathbb{R} is Archimedean, there exists $n \geq 1$ such that $2^{-n} < b - a$. Therefore, $x \in F_{n+1} \subseteq]a,b[\subseteq U_i$. This is absurd, because we have provided a finite subcover of F_n using exactly one element in $(U_i)_{i \in I}$. ■

The proof of Example 3.3.21 used non elementary properties of the space of real numbers to overcome several issues. The first one was the presence of an arbitrarily large set of indices I , which was circumvented through the definition of an actual \mathbb{N} -indexed sequence of subsets. The second problem was the uncontrolled shape of open subsets that are unions of finite intersections of open intervals. This was tackled by selecting a specific point x , allowing us to only talk about the subbasis of the topology later on.

30: This lemma requires a non-trivial proof and uses the axiom of choice. Be aware that it is “overpowered” to simply prove the compactness of the unit interval.

Let us now introduce a technical tool to avoid the complexities of Example 3.3.21 in more involved cases: Alexander’s subbase lemma reduces the compactness of a given subset as a property that only depends on a given subbasis³⁰.

Lemma 3.3.22 [45, Thm. 4.4.29]. Let (X, τ) be a topological space, B be a subbase of τ , and S be a subset of X . Then, the following are equivalent:

1. S is compact in X ,
2. For any family $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ of open subsets in B that covers S , there exists a finite subset $J \subseteq_{\text{fin}} I$ such that $(U_i)_{i \in J}$ covers S .

This is called *Alexander’s subbase lemma*.

Let us demonstrate how Alexander’s subbase lemma simplifies the proof of Example 3.3.21. While it is impossible to avoid using properties of the real line concerning the existence of infimum and supremum, the following proof does not require deep theorems and the only originality is in its choice of subbasis.

Example 3.3.23. The subset $[0,1]$ is compact in \mathbb{R} .

Proof. Let $(U_i)_{i \in I}$ be an open cover of $[0,1]$. Using Alexander's subbase lemma, one can assume without loss of generality that $U_i =]a_i, b_i[$ with $a_i < b_i$. One can even go further and assume that $U_i =]-\infty, b_i[$ or $U_i =]a_i, +\infty[$ since this is also a subbase of the topology.

Let us write I_- for the collection of $i \in I$ such that U_i is of the form $]-\infty, b_i[$, and I_+ for the collection of $i \in I$ such that U_i is of the form $]a_i, +\infty[$. Without loss of generality, one can assume that $0 < a_i < 1$ when $i \in I_+$ and $0 < b_i < 1$ when $i \in I_-$.³¹

Consider $b \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sup \{ b_i : i \in I_- \}$, and $a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \inf \{ a_i : i \in I_+ \}$. This construction is depicted in Figure 3.10, where the drawing should already convince you that the proof is finished. We claim that $a < b$, which immediately entails (by definition of the supremum and infimum) the existence of $k \in I_-$ and $l \in I_+$ such that $[0,1] \subseteq U_k \cup U_l$, i.e., of a finite subcover (of size two).

Assume by contradiction that $a \geq b$. There is a point $x \in [b, a] \subseteq [0,1]$. This point must be covered by U_i for some $i \in I$. If $i \in I_+$, this contradicts the definition of a as an infimum. If $i \in I_-$, this contradicts the definition of b as a supremum. ■

Now that we are acclimated to the notion of open cover, compactness and the technical tool of Alexander's subbase lemma, we are ready to recast the compactness theorem of first order logic into this topological setting.

Theorem 3.3.24. Let σ be a relational signature. The topological space $(\text{Struct}(\sigma), \langle \text{FO}[\sigma] \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ is compact.

Proof. Thanks to Alexander's subbase lemma, it suffices to consider an open cover of $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ using first order sentences.³² Let $(\varphi_i)_{i \in I}$ be a sequence of first order sentences such that $\text{Struct}(\sigma) \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} \llbracket \varphi_i \rrbracket$. In particular, the theory $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ \neg \varphi_i : i \in I \}$ has no model. Thanks to the compactness theorem of first order logic, there exists a finite subset $J \subseteq_{\text{fin}} I$ such that $\{ \neg \varphi_i : i \in J \}$ has no model. This proves that $\text{Struct}(\sigma) \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in J} \llbracket \varphi_i \rrbracket$, which is a finite subcover. ■

Preservation theorems and Noetherian Spaces. Let us now explore how the topological compactness can be leveraged to prove relativisation of preservation theorems to classes of structures.

The idea will be to replace the extra conditions placed on combinatorial lemmas using minimal models (see Lemma 3.2.3) by topological properties of the class of structures. At this point, we have reached a level of abstraction that makes the following Lemma 3.3.25 almost trivial.

Lemma 3.3.25. Let σ be a finite relational signature, $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, F be a fragment of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be such that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is a compact open subset of $(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$. Then, there exists a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ such that $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \psi$.

31: Otherwise, the open subset does not intersect $[0,1]$ and can be safely discarded, or contains $[0,1]$, and we have extracted a finite subcover.

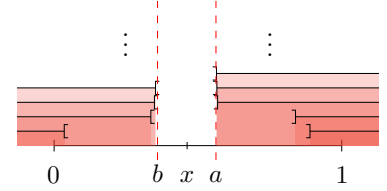


Figure 3.10. Illustrating the construction of a , b and x in the proof of Example 3.3.23.

The theorem is actually an equivalence: stating that the space $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ is compact directly implies the compactness of first order logic. Therefore, Theorem 3.3.24 should rather be understood as a formalisation that the “compactness of first order logic” really is a reformulation of the (more general) notion of topological compactness.

32: Formally, we consider subsets of $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ that are definable in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$.

Proof. Because $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is an **open subset** and $\exists F$ is a **subbasis** stable under finite intersections, there exists a sequence $(\psi_i)_{i \in I}$ of **sentences** in $\exists F$ such that

$$\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \bigcup_{i \in I} \llbracket \psi_i \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}.$$

Because $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is **compact**, there exists a finite subset $J \subseteq_{\text{fin}} I$ such that $(\psi_i)_{i \in J}$ defines an **open cover** of $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$. In particular, we have $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \bigvee_{i \in J} \psi_i$, the latter being an $\exists F$ **sentence**. ■

Because Remark 3.3.17 translates “ φ is preserved under F -embeddings” into “ φ is an **open subset** of $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ ”, Lemma 3.3.25 can be applied to prove **relativisation** as soon as one controls the **compactness** of **open subsets** that can be defined in $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ using **first order sentences**.

In particular, the collection of the subsets that are both **open** and **compact** will be at the heart of our investigations.

Definition 3.3.26. Given a topological space (X, τ) , we write $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ for the set of **compact open** subsets of X .

As in the case of **well-quasi-orderings**, a working technique is to forget that the subset was definable, and ask for the **compactness** of *all subsets*.

Definition 3.3.27 [45, Definition 9.7.1, Proposition 9.7.7]. A space (X, τ) is **Noetherian** whenever every subset of X is **compact**.

Equivalently, a space (X, τ) is **Noetherian** whenever $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X) = \tau$.

We immediately obtain the variant of Lemma 3.3.5 in this topological setting, stating that **Noetherian spaces** induce **preservation theorems**. While it does not seem to appear in the literature, it is an immediate consequence of known results hence appears as an external result.

Lemma 3.3.28. Let σ be a finite **relational signature**, F be a **fragment** of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ such that $(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ is **Noetherian**. Then, the **F-preservation theorem** relativises to \mathcal{C} .

Proof. Let $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be **preserved under** \leq_F over \mathcal{C} . This precisely means that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is an **open subset** via Remark 3.3.17. Because the latter is **Noetherian**, $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is also **compact**. Leveraging Lemma 3.3.25, there exists $\psi \in \exists F$ such that $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \psi$, and we have concluded. ■

33: That is, being a **hereditary class**, a **monotone class** or a **co-homomorphism closed class** of structures.

34: We redirect the reader to Figure 3.11 for a short reminder on the usual properties of rings.

We saw in the case of **wqos** that the assumption was not a reasonable one in most cases. There is some hope that Lemma 3.3.28 applies more broadly because it does not require structural properties such as being **downwards closed** for a suitable **quasi order**.³³ This illusion will not resist a historical perspective on **Noetherian spaces**.

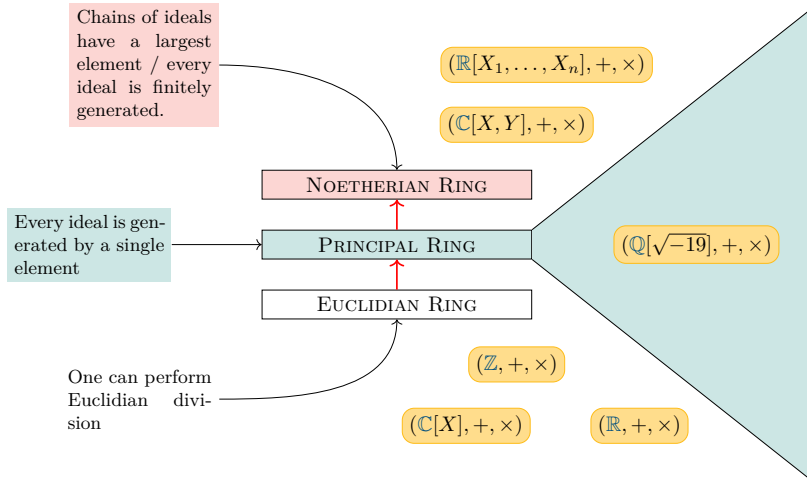


Figure 3.11.: Strict property inclusion for the usual notion of (commutative) ring. We refer the reader to Appendix B for a brief overview of ring properties.

Noetherian spaces and verification. Noetherian spaces arise from the corresponding notion of Noetherian Ring in classical algebra,³⁴ the idea to use them in the verification of transition system is mostly due to [44].

In the mindset of verifying infinite state transition systems, Noetherian spaces are seen as a topological generalisation of well-quasi-orderings, that solves two orthogonal limitations of the latter.

- The first one is that Noetherian spaces are stable under the powerset construction³⁵ [45, Exercise 9.7.14], which fails for wqos [80], and drove the introduction of a *restriction* of wqos called *better quasi orders* [75].
- The second property is the ability to consider state spaces that do not have interesting quasi-ordering, such as sets of complex vectors \mathbb{C}^n . Typical verification tools try to leverage polynomial invariants of such systems [60], where a natural topological presentation arises in the shape of the Zariski topology ...which is Noetherian precisely because $\mathbb{C}[X_1, \dots, X_n]$ is a Noetherian ring.

With this brief historical explanation, let us revisit the relativisation of Łoś-Tarski to the class Cycles of finite cycles using the topological tools that we developed. This will partially answer a natural question that was left untouched: what does it mean for a topology to *generalise* a quasi-order? Answering this question will in fact demonstrate how Noetherian spaces are as limited as wqos when talking about preservation theorems.

Example 3.3.29. Every first order sentence that excludes finitely many cycles is equivalent (over Cycles) to an existential sentence.

Proof. Recall that Cycles forms an infinite antichain for \subseteq_i . As a consequence, every subset is upwards closed, $(\text{Cycles}, \subseteq_i)$ is not a wqo, and techniques based on minimal models will not really help us here.

However, one can place over Cycles the topology composed of co-finite subsets of Cycles, i.e., the co-finite topology³⁶.

[44]: Goubault-Larrecq (2010), ‘Noetherian Spaces in Verification’

35: That is, the powerset of a Noetherian space is a Noetherian space in a suitable topology.

[45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

[80]: Rado (1954), ‘Partial well-ordering of sets of vectors’

[75]: Milner (1985), ‘Basic wqo-and bqo-theory’

[60]: Hrushovski, Ouaknine, Pouly and Worrell (2018), ‘Polynomial Invariants for Affine Programs’

36: See Definition D.2.1 p. 252

This topology is **Noetherian** almost by definition. And in particular, every **first order sentence** that excludes finitely many cycles defines a **compact open subset** of **Cycles** with the **co-finite topology**.

37: Hint: consider the **upward closure** of P_n for a sufficiently large n .

It is an easy check that every **co-finite** subset of **Cycles** can be described as an **existential sentence**.³⁷ As a consequence, every **first order sentence** that excludes finitely many cycles is equivalent (over **Cycles**) to an **existential sentence**. ■

Example 3.3.29 was an excuse to introduce a **Noetherian topology** that does not come from a logic or an ordering. In fact, it will also serve as an example of the connection between **Noetherian topologies** and **well-quasi-orderings**.

Given a topology τ over a set X , one can construct the **specialisation preorder** \leq_τ over τ by defining:

$$x \leq_\tau y \iff \forall U \in \tau, x \in U \Rightarrow y \in U \quad . \quad (3.1)$$

The topology of **Example 3.3.29** *generalises* the **quasi-order** \subseteq_i in the sense that \subseteq_i is the **specialisation preorder** of the **co-finite topology** over **Cycles**.

Notice that the topology $\langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ also has \subseteq_i for **specialisation preorder** over **Cycles**. This is a general pattern: a lot of topologies encode the same preorder. Let us briefly clarify the situation hereafter:

Lemma 3.3.30. Let X be a set, and \leq be a quasi-order on X . The collection of topologies over X with \leq as **specialisation preorder**

1. Is a non-empty **complete lattice** for inclusion.
2. Has a **maximum** for inclusion: the **Alexandroff topology** that we write $\text{Alex}(\leq)$, and is obtained by collecting the \leq -**upwards closed** subsets of X .
3. Has a **minimum** for inclusion: the **Upper topology** that we write $\text{Upper}(\leq)$, and is **generated by** the sets $X \setminus \downarrow_{\leq} x$ when $x \in X$.

Using the vocabulary of **Lemma 3.3.30**, one can better understand the difference between the **co-finite topology** over **Cycles** and the topology $\langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$. The former is the **Upper topology** of \subseteq_i and is **Noetherian**, while the latter is the **Alexandroff topology** associated with \subseteq_i and is not **Noetherian**.

38: That is, the **Lemma 3.3.28** that states the **relativisation** of the **F-preservation theorem** whenever the space is **Noetherian**.

39: This is the topological analogue of **Lemma 3.2.8**!

It is known that \leq is a **wqo** if and only if $\text{Alex}(\leq)$ is **Noetherian** [45, Proposition 9.7.17]. Since the connection³⁸ between **preservation theorems** and **Noetherian spaces** leverages $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$, which precisely generates the **Alexandroff topology** of \leq_F ,³⁹ we are no better off using **Noetherian spaces** rather than **well-quasi-orderings**.

The angry reader might think that all of this subsection on **Noetherian spaces** and topologies is therefore unnecessary and has been a waste of time. This is only true up to **Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces)**, where we leverage the intimate conviction that **compactness** is the real key to understand **preservation theorems** in a more meaningful way. In the meantime, it will make the plan of this manuscript readable.

3.4. Discussion

State of the art. Because the chapter was focused on giving a general definition for [preservation theorems](#), and illustrating the various proof scheme associated with their [relativisation](#), space was lacking for a “big picture” overview of what [preservation theorems](#) are known to [relativise](#) (or not).

As already mentioned, most preservation theorems (except for the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#)) do not [relativise](#) to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ (see Table 3.3). The actual statement of [83] is that the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#) [relativises](#) to every [co-homomorphism](#) closed subset of $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. An orthogonal result [7] later refined [20] states that the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#) [relativises](#) to [monotone classes](#) of finite structures $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ such that \mathcal{C} is [closed under disjoint unions](#)⁴⁰ and [nowhere dense](#) [20, Theorem 9].

For [induced substructures](#), the landscape is a bit darker. It is known that the [Łoś-Tarski theorem](#) [relativises](#) to [hereditary classes](#) $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ that are closed under disjoint unions and have bounded degree⁴¹ [6, Theorem 6]. The result can be extended to the class of *all* finite structures of [tree width](#) less than $k \in \mathbb{N}$ [6, Theorem 8], but it fails for some class of [planar graphs](#) even though it has bounded [tree width](#), is [monotone](#) and closed under disjoint unions [6, Section 6].

The study of classes of graphs (or structures) that are [well-quasi-ordered](#) for \subseteq_i or \preceq_h provide orthogonal results. For instance, the class of structures of [tree-depth](#) bounded by 2 is [hereditary](#), closed under disjoint union, but contains structures of unbounded degree: we have seen that this implies the [relativisation](#) of the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#), and clearly escapes the combinatorial results of the previous paragraph. Similarly, the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#) (trivially) [relativises](#) to the class of cliques, that is not sparse.

This summary should give the intuition of a landscape with a structure that is not well understood. Recall that the [relativisation](#) of a [preservation theorem](#) is not a property that transfers to arbitrary subsets (even assuming that those are suitably closed under substructures and disjoint unions), while all the aforementioned properties are, except for the full class of structures with bounded [tree width](#).

Other logics. We have chosen to focus on the queries written in first order logic, but it is not a requirement to talk about [preservation theorems](#). For instance, Datalog and first-order logics with infinite disjunctions are encountered in the literature [81] and [7, Section 7]. We argue that the topological presentation of preservation theorems given in Chapter 6 ([Logically Presented Spaces](#)) is (almost) agnostic to the underlying notion of logic, and that the other chapters are either focused on the locality of first order logic, or the study of [Noetherian spaces](#), hence do not apply to other kind of logical frameworks. This explains the opinionated presentation of preservation theorems that has been given.

However, there are interesting questions that are being answered as this manuscript is getting written. For instance, when restricting fragments

40: That is, $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C}$ for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ and $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$

41: There exists $d \in \mathbb{N}$ such that the maximal degree of vertices $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$ is bounded by d for all \mathfrak{A} in \mathcal{C} .

[10]: Bova and Chen (2019), ‘How Many Variables are Needed to Express an Existential Positive Query?’

[61]: Johnstone (1982), *Stone Spaces*

[26]: Dickmann, Schwartz and Tressl (2019), *Spectral Spaces*

of first-order logic that are not built using the notion of [quantifier rank](#), but by restricting the number of used variables [10].

Stone Duality. It is worth noting that the short introduction to topology and its relationship with logic does come from a long line of results and is not anecdotal in any way. We redirect the reader to the book of [61], or a dedicated chapter in the more recent book [26, Chapter 3]. While it is a comparative advantage to know some of this theory, it is not necessary to understand the technical developments in this manuscript.

Sequential Compactness. Even though the real line was used to illustrate the basic notions of compactness, we chose to avoid the notion of converging sequences. Most (if not all) of the spaces present in this thesis will have a countable set of open subsets, and the definition of compactness via converging sequences or open covers will coincide. However, the theorems of [Chapter 6](#) can be applied to general topological spaces, where the two notions may differ.

References

- [1] Parosh Aziz Abdulla, Karlis Čerāns, Bengt Jonsson and Yih-Kuen Tsay. ‘General decidability theorems for infinite-state systems’. In: *Proceedings of LICS’96*. IEEE, 1996, pp. 313–321. DOI: [10.1109/LICS.1996.561359](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS.1996.561359) (cit. on p. 44).
- [4] Miklós Ajtai and Yuri Gurevich. ‘Monotone versus positive’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 34 (1987), pp. 1004–1015. DOI: [10.1145/31846.31852](https://doi.org/10.1145/31846.31852) (cit. on pp. 35, 37, 113).
- [5] Miklós Ajtai and Yuri Gurevich. ‘Datalog vs first-order logic’. In: *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* 49 (1994), pp. 562–588. DOI: [10.1016/S0022-0000\(05\)80071-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-0000(05)80071-6) (cit. on pp. 35, 37, 113).
- [6] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Martin Grohe. ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’. In: *SIAM Journal on Computing* 38 (2008), pp. 1364–1381. DOI: [10.1137/060658709](https://doi.org/10.1137/060658709) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 64, 67, 68, 74, 97, 98, 117, 121, 127).
- [7] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Phokion G. Kolaitis. ‘On preservation under homomorphisms and unions of conjunctive queries’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 53 (2006), pp. 208–237. DOI: [10.1145/1131342.1131344](https://doi.org/10.1145/1131342.1131344) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 74).
- [10] Simone Bova and Hubie Chen. ‘How Many Variables are Needed to Express an Existential Positive Query?’ In: vol. 63. 2019, pp. 1573–1594. DOI: [10.1007/s00224-018-9884-z](https://doi.org/10.1007/s00224-018-9884-z). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00224-018-9884-z> (visited on 06/06/2023) (cit. on p. 56).
- [11] Robert Brignall, Michael Engen and Vincent Vatter. ‘A Counterexample Regarding Labelled Well-Quasi-Ordering’. In: *Graphs and Combinatorics* 34 (2018), pp. 1395–1409. DOI: [10.1007/s00373-018-1962-0](https://doi.org/10.1007/s00373-018-1962-0) (cit. on p. 46).
- [12] Florent Capelli, Arnaud Durand, Amélie Gheerbrant and Cristina Sirangelo. *A simple counter example of Lyndon’s Theorem in the finite*. 2020 (cit. on p. 35).
- [15] Chen Chung Chang and H. Jerome Keisler. *Model Theory*. Vol. 73. Elsevier, 1990 (cit. on pp. i, 29, 32–34, 68).
- [16] Yijia Chen and Jörg Flum. ‘Forbidden Induced Subgraphs and the Łoś-Tarski Theorem’. In: *2021 36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS)*. 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470742](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470742) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 98, 113).
- [19] Jean Daligault, Michael Rao and Stéphan Thomassé. ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’. In: *Order* 27 (2010), pp. 301–315. DOI: [10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0](https://doi.org/10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0> (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 44–46, 179, 235).
- [20] Anuj Dawar. ‘Homomorphism preservation on quasi-wide classes’. In: *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* 76 (2010), pp. 324–332. DOI: [10.1016/j.jcss.2009.10.005](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcss.2009.10.005) (cit. on pp. 47, 55, 74).
- [22] Anuj Dawar and Abhisekh Sankaran. ‘Extension Preservation in the Finite and Prefix Classes of First Order Logic’. In: *29th EACSL Annual Conference on Computer Science Logic (CSL 2021)*. Ed. by Christel Baier and Jean Goubault-Larrecq. Vol. 183. Schloss Dagstuhl–Leibniz-Zentrum für Informatik, 2021, 18:1–18:13. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.18](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.18). URL: <https://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2021/13452> (cit. on pp. 35, 37).
- [25] Alin Deutsch, Alan Nash and Jeffrey B. Remmel. ‘The chase revisited’. In: *Proceedings of PODS’08*. 2008, pp. 149–158. DOI: [10.1145/1376916.1376938](https://doi.org/10.1145/1376916.1376938) (cit. on pp. 27, 33, 35, 234, 235).
- [26] Max Dickmann, Niels Schwartz and Marcus Tressl. *Spectral Spaces*. Vol. 35. Cambridge University Press, 2019. DOI: [10.1017/9781316543870.003](https://doi.org/10.1017/9781316543870.003) (cit. on pp. 56, 146–148, 174, 239, 253).
- [27] Guoli Ding. ‘Subgraphs and well-quasi-ordering’. In: *Journal of Graph Theory* 16 (1992), pp. 489–502. DOI: [10.1002/jgt.3190160509](https://doi.org/10.1002/jgt.3190160509) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 44, 45, 122).
- [35] Alain Finkel and Philippe Schnoebelen. ‘Well-structured transition systems everywhere!’ In: *Theoretical Computer Science* 256 (2001), pp. 63–92. DOI: [10.1016/S0304-3975\(00\)00102-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-3975(00)00102-X). URL: <https://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S030439750000102X> (visited on 19/06/2023) (cit. on p. 44).

- [44] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Noetherian Spaces in Verification’. In: *Automata, Languages and Programming*. Ed. by Samson Abramsky, Cyril Gavoille, Claude Kirchner, Friedhelm Meyer auf der Heide and Paul G. Spirakis. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2010, pp. 2–21. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2) (cit. on pp. 53, 139, 178).
- [45] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*. Vol. 22. Cambridge University Press, 2013. DOI: [10.1017/cbo9781139524438](https://doi.org/10.1017/cbo9781139524438) (cit. on pp. 3, 50, 52–54, 139, 159, 178, 179, 185, 186, 192, 193, 203, 208, 224, 239, 254, 255).
- [53] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Monika Seisenberger, Victor L. Selivanov and Andreas Weiermann. ‘Well Quasi-Orders in Computer Science (Dagstuhl Seminar 16031)’. In: *Dagstuhl Reports* 6 (2016), pp. 69–98. DOI: [10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69](https://doi.org/10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69). URL: <https://doi.org/10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69> (cit. on pp. 44, 178).
- [56] Yuri Gurevich. ‘Toward logic tailored for computational complexity’. In: *Computation and Proof Theory, Proceedings of LC’84*. Vol. 1104. Springer, 1984, pp. 175–216. DOI: [10.1007/BFb0099486](https://doi.org/10.1007/BFb0099486) (cit. on p. 35).
- [59] Graham Higman. ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’. In: *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society* 3 (1952), pp. 326–336. DOI: [10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326](https://doi.org/10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 181).
- [60] Ehud Hrushovski, Joël Ouaknine, Amaury Pouly and James Worrell. ‘Polynomial Invariants for Affine Programs’. In: (2018), pp. 530–539. DOI: [10.1145/3209108.3209142](https://doi.org/10.1145/3209108.3209142). URL: <https://dl.acm.org/doi/10.1145/3209108.3209142> (cit. on p. 53).
- [61] Peter T Johnstone. *Stone Spaces*. Vol. 3. Cambridge university press, 1982 (cit. on p. 56).
- [64] Igor Kříž and Robin Thomas. ‘On well-quasi-ordering finite structures with labels’. In: *Graphs and Combinatorics* 6 (1990), pp. 41–49 (cit. on p. 44).
- [65] Joseph B. Kruskal. ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’. In: *Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series A* 13 (1972), pp. 297–305. DOI: [10.1016/0097-3165\(72\)90063-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/0097-3165(72)90063-5) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 179, 181).
- [66] Denis Kuperberg. ‘Positive First-order Logic on Words’. In: *36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science, LICS 2021, Rome, Italy, June 29 - July 2, 2021*. IEEE, 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 68, 98, 113, 137).
- [70] Aliaume Lopez. ‘Preservation Theorems Through the Lens of Topology’. In: *Proceedings of CSL’21*. Vol. 183. 2021, 32:1–32:17. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.32](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.32) (cit. on pp. 63, 138, 148, 174, 175).
- [71] Aliaume Lopez. ‘When Locality Meets Preservation’. In: *LICS’22* (2022), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 67, 117).
- [72] Aliaume Lopez. ‘Fixed Points and Noetherian Topologies’. In: *FOSSACS’23* (2023), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 180, 191).
- [75] Eric C Milner. ‘Basic wqo-and bqo-theory’. In: *Graphs and order*. Springer, 1985, pp. 487–502 (cit. on p. 53).
- [77] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. ‘On nowhere dense graphs’. In: *European Journal of Combinatorics* 32 (2011), pp. 600–617. DOI: [10.1016/j.ejc.2011.01.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejc.2011.01.006). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0195669811000151> (cit. on pp. 46, 121, 259).
- [80] R. Rado. ‘Partial well-ordering of sets of vectors’. In: *Mathematika* 1 (1954), pp. 89–95. DOI: [10.1112/S0025579300000565](https://doi.org/10.1112/S0025579300000565) (cit. on p. 53).
- [81] Eric Rosen. ‘Finite model theory and finite variable logics’. PhD thesis. 1995 (cit. on pp. 35, 55).
- [82] Eric Rosen. ‘Some aspects of model theory and finite structures’. In: *Bulletin of Symbolic Logic* 8 (2002), pp. 380–403. DOI: [10.2178/bsl/1182353894](https://doi.org/10.2178/bsl/1182353894) (cit. on p. 35).

- [83] Benjamin Rossman. ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 55 (2008), 15:1–15:53. DOI: [10.1145/1379759.1379763](#) (cit. on pp. [i](#), [24](#), [35](#), [37](#), [38](#), [40](#), [42](#), [55](#), [74](#), [175](#), [177](#), [235](#)).
- [84] Abhisekh Sankaran, Bharat Adsul and Supratik Chakraborty. ‘A generalization of the Łoś-Tarski preservation theorem over classes of finite structures’. In: *International Symposium on Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science*. 2014, pp. 474–485. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-662-44522-8_40](#) (cit. on p. [37](#)).
- [86] Abhisekh Sankaran, Bharat Adsul, Vivek Madan, Pritish Kamath and Supratik Chakraborty. ‘Preservation under substructures modulo bounded cores’. In: *International Workshop on Logic, Language, Information, and Computation*. 2012, pp. 291–305. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-32621-9_22](#) (cit. on pp. [34](#), [35](#)).
- [89] Alexei P. Stolboushkin. ‘Finitely monotone properties’. In: (1995), pp. 324–330. DOI: [10.1109/LICS.1995.523267](#) (cit. on pp. [35](#), [113](#), [137](#)).
- [90] William W. Tait. ‘A counterexample to a conjecture of Scott and Suppes’. In: *Journal of Symbolic Logic* 24 (1959), pp. 15–16. DOI: [10.2307/2964569](#) (cit. on pp. [i](#), [35](#), [37](#), [39](#), [97](#), [100](#), [113](#), [137](#)).

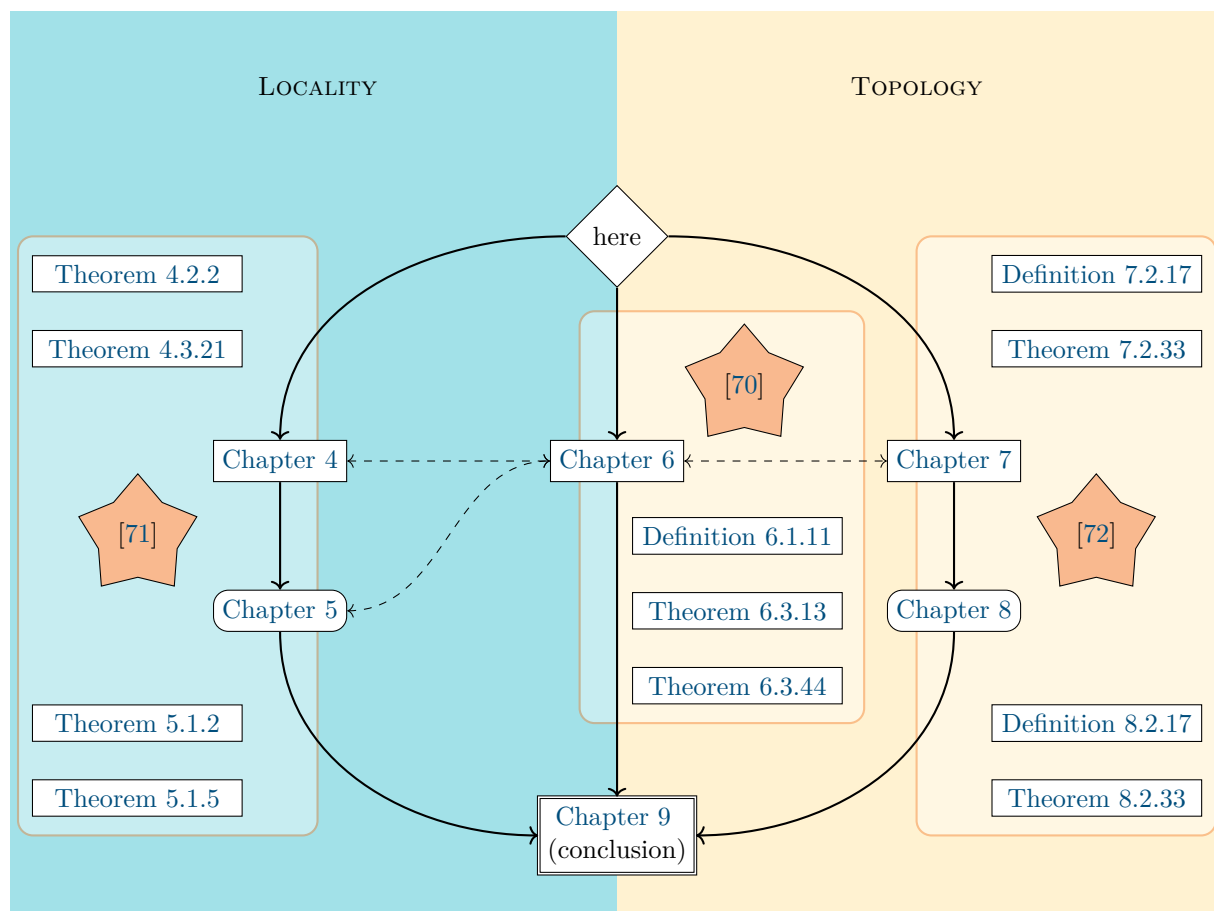
Part II.

**Preservation Theorems in Finite Model
Theory**

Layout of the Contributions. We provide hereafter a layout of the manuscript that may be helpful to skim the document, and prevents from reading the chapters in an order that does not respect the dependencies. Even though every chapter is self-contained enough to be printed and read independently of the others, the reading process will be smoother if one follows the inter-chapter dependencies.

The Hasse diagram of the inter-chapter dependencies is represented in bold directed arrows. Because the document tries to not repeat itself, there are also weak bidirectional interaction between chapters that are represented in dashed arrows. Furthermore, we selected for each chapter definitions and theorems that are both crucial and representative of the chapter's technical content. We also distinguished introduction chapters (with squared corners), that will be more theoretical, from application chapters (with rounded corners) that have more practical considerations. Finally, we made a separation between chapters that will mostly employ topological tools (Chapters 6 to 8) and those that will focus on the locality of first order logic (Chapters 4 to 5).

On the background layer of the diagram, one can also find boxes that group results and chapters together, following the three separate paths from this page to the conclusion: these correspond to the three published paper this manuscript is based upon, for which the references are placed inside stars with an orange background. Beware that the definitions and theorems presented in this manuscript can be formulated in a way that does not correspond to the associated paper. This is because the chosen ordering (from Chapter 4 to Chapter 8) does not respect the chronological ordering of the papers, that would lead to the sequence: 6–4–5–7–8. Moreover, the order of publication of the chapters does not reflect the order in which the main ideas were developed, which would most likely lead to the sequence: 6–7–5–4–8.



Content of the Chapters. Let us now give a brief description of each chapter, together with a justification of the distinguished definitions and results that were selected in the layout of the manuscript.

In [Chapter 4 \(Locality and Preservation\)](#), we try pushing the existing approaches to proving the relativisation of [preservation theorems](#) in the finite to the extreme. This means understanding how the locality of first-order logic can play a role when the [compactness theorem](#) fails. Because this chapter focuses on the existing tools, no interesting new definition is distinguished. However, two main results are obtained:

1. In [Theorem 4.2.2](#), we introduce a positive variant of the [Gaifman normal form](#), and prove that it is equivalent (over any class of structures) to the fragment of [existential local sentences](#).
This theorem has its own interest as a new variation around [Gaifman locality](#). However, it is distinguished because it provides an intuition on the proof schemes developed when studying [relativisation](#) properties: half of the work is often to remove negations from a [Gaifman normal form](#), which precisely corresponds to building an [existential local sentence](#). Only then, in a second proof, one moves from an [existential local sentence](#) (in $\exists\text{FOLoc}$) to a sentence of the desired fragment (in $\exists\text{F}$).
2. In [Theorem 4.3.21](#), we prove that there exists a first order sentence $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ that is [preserved under FOLoc-embeddings](#) over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, but that is not equivalent to an $\exists\text{FOLoc}$ sentence.
This result has two sides. On the one hand, it continues the long tradition of non-[relativisation](#) proofs in the finite, by treating the case of the [FOLoc-preservation theorem](#). On the other hand, it means that [Theorem 4.2.2](#) is not enough to explain why some [relativisations](#) occur in the finite, and more precisely, that the following line of reasoning does not hold: a sentence φ that is [preserved under QF-embeddings](#) is *a fortiori* preserved under [FOLoc-embeddings](#), hence equivalent to an [existential local sentence](#), and an [existential local sentence](#) preserved under [QF-embeddings](#) must be equivalent to an [existential sentence](#).

In [Chapter 5 \(A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem\)](#), we will continue the study of preservation theorems via locality that started with [Chapter 4 \(Locality and Preservation\)](#). While the latter left a bittersweet aftertaste, the goal here is to demonstrate that, in one specific configuration, one can leverage the locality of first order logic to prove that the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) [relativises](#) to a class \mathcal{C} of finite structures.

1. In [Theorem 5.1.2](#), we prove that under mild assumptions on a class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) [relativises](#) to \mathcal{C} if and only if it [locally relativises](#) to \mathcal{C} (for a suitable definition of “locally satisfying a property” that we leave out in this high level description).
This theorem is a way to leverage the knowledge gained on [existential local sentences](#) in the previous chapter to provide a suitable explanation of some [relativisation](#) results in the literature (for instance, [6]). Interestingly enough, the proof of [Theorem 5.1.2](#) *almost* follows the one that was invalidated by [Theorem 4.3.21](#), at the price of extra assumptions and a deeper understanding of the [induced substructure](#) ordering.
2. In [Theorem 5.1.5](#), we illustrate how [Theorem 5.1.2](#) actually leads to new [relativisation](#) results for the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#).
While this theorem is simply a collection of examples showing the strict implication of properties, it is distinguished because it proves the validity of the “local approach” to [relativisation](#) results. The result is powerful enough to go way beyond what is known in the literature for [hereditary classes](#) of finite structures [closed under disjoint unions](#).

In Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces), we introduce an algebraic and topological approach to preservation theorems, by pairing the definability notions from logic together with the topological notions of Noetherian spaces. This sparks the study of triples (X, τ, \mathcal{B}) where τ is a topology and \mathcal{B} a Boolean subalgebra of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The main motivation for this abstract study is to find a way around the non-compositionality of preservation theorems and the complexity of proving their relativisation.

1. In Definition 6.1.11, we provide the topological counterpart to preservation theorems, namely logically presented pre-spectral spaces (abbreviated as *lpps*).
This definition is distinguished because it provides a new way to think about preservation theorems in terms of topological compactness, in a way that connects them more clearly to Noetherian spaces (which was already done in the introduction), but also to more exotic spaces, such as spectral spaces. Furthermore, it abstracts the considered logic(s) as a Boolean subalgebra of the class of structures considered, opening the door to the study of non-FO preservation theorems, without any change in definitions.
2. In Theorem 6.3.13, we prove that the product of two such spaces remains an *lpps*.
This result is distinguished because it is a first non-trivial compositional result about *lpps* (and therefore preservation theorems). Furthermore, with a bit of work, one compositionally obtains classes that are out of reach from the local approach advocated in Chapters 4 and 5.
3. In Theorem 6.3.44, we go beyond simple products and tackle the case of coloured classes of structures. Namely, we prove that if \mathcal{C} is a ∞ -wqo, and X is a *lpps*, then $\mathcal{C} \rtimes_F X$ is a *lpps*.
This result is distinguished because it pushes the proof scheme of Theorem 6.3.13 to its limits and provide a truly powerful compositional technique. Furthermore, it is important to notice that it provides a positive answer to the *lpps*-variant of a conjecture by Pouzet, asking whether ∞ -wqo (that is, being wqo for any colouring with finitely many colours) implies “wqo-wqo” (that is, being wqo when coloured by any wqo).

In Chapter 7 (Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies), we try to understand what makes the limit constructions of *lpps* so complicated. In the continuity of the algebraic and topological approach that started in “Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces)”, we want to provide a systematic way to produce limits of pre-spectral spaces. It turns out that the question is already non-trivial when restricted to the subclass of Noetherian spaces, and this chapter focuses on this simpler setting.

1. In Definition 7.2.17, we define topology expanders as “well-behaved topology constructor.”
This definition is distinguished because it is an abstraction that captures all the examples and non-examples of limit constructions in Noetherian spaces that I know of. Furthermore, the interesting part of the definition is side-stepping from the study of inductive construction of spaces, to inductive constructions of a topology over a given (fixed) space. This change of perspective is what makes the definition sound, and gives such a flexibility to topology expanders.
2. In Theorem 7.2.33, we prove that the least fixed point of a topology expander is always Noetherian.
This theorem is distinguished because it demonstrates the correctness of Definition 7.2.17. Furthermore, its proof “generalises” as much as possible what is known as the *topological minimal bad sequence argument* (a “meta” proof scheme that usually has to be instantiated whenever a new result is needed), and wraps it into a theorem with a simple interface: all that is needed is a topology expander.

In Chapter 8 (Inductive Constructions), we will leverage the master Theorem 7.2.33 from Chapter 7 (Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies) to construct families of Noetherian spaces, and in particular recover the known Noetherian topologies over finite words, finite trees, infinite words, ordinal length words using Theorem 7.2.33. Furthermore, we will provide a generic way to build a topology expander from a suitable endofunctor, effectively answering to the original question of inductively defined spaces (and not only topologies).

1. In Definition 8.2.17, we define the divisibility expander associated with a (suitable) analytic functor over Set.

This definition is distinguished because it bridges the framework developed in Chapter 7 (Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies), with the original motivation of inductively defining Noetherian spaces.

2. In Theorem 8.2.33, we prove that the divisibility expander not only leads to the correct limit topology on selected examples, but is a (correct) topological generalisation of a whole theory over wqos. Namely, we prove a tight correspondence between the divisibility ordering over an inductively defined wqo, and the divisibility topology obtained as the least fixed point of the associated divisibility expander.

This result is distinguished because it grounds the framework of topology expanders: it correctly generalises what can be done over wqos. Furthermore, it provides an answer to a “lack of canonicity” that arises from the topological setting: over finite words, there is no finest topology that is Noetherian, but our framework provides one that is *naturally* derived from the inductive definition, and *correctly generalises* the subword ordering. In this specific example, it provides a justification as to why the subword topology can be called “the topological generalisation of” the subword ordering.

Locality and Preservation

4.

Outline of the chapter

The goal of this chapter is to push the existing approaches to proving the relativisation of [preservation theorems](#) in the finite to the extreme. This means understanding how the locality of first-order logic can play a role when the [compactness theorem](#) fails.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of this chapter, I hope you will be convinced that there is a deep connection between locality and preservation under extensions, that is embodied by the fragment of [existential local sentences](#).

Genesis. This chapter is stating results that are mostly coming from [71]. This research started during the pandemic, by looking at a paper from Atserias, Dawar and Grohe studying the relativisation of the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) to classes of finite structures with bounded degree [6, Theorem 4.3]. The technical proof was mysterious, but made apparent the need for a construction using disjoint unions of structures, the preference for [hereditary classes](#), and some kind of elimination of negations in the [Gaifman normal form](#). This started the search for a positive variant of the [Gaifman normal form](#), with the hope that the original proof of Atserias, Dawar and Grohe could be factorised as follows:

1. first order sentences that are [preserved under extensions](#) can be put in *positive* [Gaifman normal form](#), and
2. first order sentences in *positive* [Gaifman normal form](#) that are [preserved under extensions](#) (on well-behaved classes of finite structures) are equivalent to [existential sentences](#) (over the same class).

The benefits from this separation of concerns between a locality argument (item 1) and a combinatorial argument (item 2) would be multiple. We expected that the two lemmas/theorems should have simpler (or at least clearer proofs), and that both lemmas could be generalised to obtain the [relativisation](#) of the [Łoś-Tarski theorem](#) to new classes of structures that are “less well-behaved.”

Even though an [existential Gaifman normal form](#) had already been introduced [55], it did not correspond to my needs to factor out the proof of Atserias, Dawar and Grohe. It was hinted in [87] that the fragment corresponding to the notion of “positive” Gaifman normal form should be [existential local sentences](#), but the formal statement was lacking.

Eventually, the equivalence between [existential local sentences](#) and the [positive Gaifman normal form](#) (see [Theorem 4.2.2](#)) was proven in [71]. This reignited the hope to find a generic “localisation procedure” for [preservation theorems](#). Unfortunately, the proof techniques employed

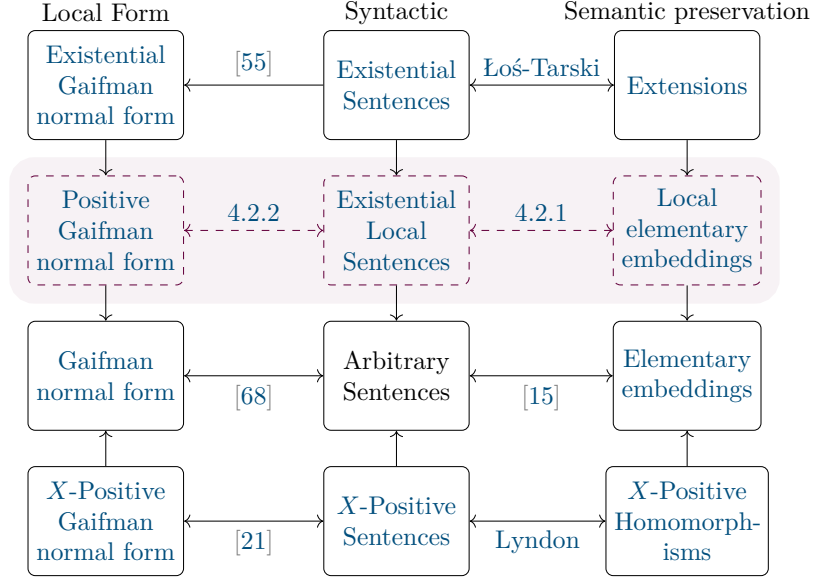
| | | |
|-------|--|-----|
| 4.1 | Locality of first order logic | 69 |
| 4.2 | A Positive Locality Theorem | 74 |
| 4.2.1 | From Existential Local Sentences to Asymmetric Basic Local Sentences | 77 |
| 4.2.2 | From Asymmetric Basic Local to Basic Local Sentences | 85 |
| 4.3 | An Existential Local Preservation Theorem | 93 |
| 4.3.1 | Failure in the finite | 98 |
| 4.3.2 | Undecidability | 106 |
| 4.3.3 | Generalisation to Weaker Quasi-Orders | 109 |
| 4.4 | Discussion | 113 |

[6]: Atserias, Dawar and Grohe (2008), ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’

[55]: Grohe and Wöhrle (2004), ‘An existential locality theorem’

[87]: Schwentick and Barthelmann (1999), ‘Local normal forms for first-order logic with applications to games and automata’

Figure 4.1.: Comparison of the expressiveness of different fragments of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$ over *general structures*. Local forms correspond to variants of the **Gaifman normal form**, while syntactic fragments correspond to restrictions on the syntax of sentences. Finally, “semantic preservation” correspond to the kind of embeddings that characterises the fragment through a **preservation theorem**. Dashed boxes correspond to the notions introduced in this chapter, double ended arrows represent equivalence, while single headed arrows represent strict implication of properties. For instance, having an **existential Gaifman normal form** strictly implies having a **positive Gaifman normal form**, which strictly implies having a **Gaifman normal form**, the latter being always true. Similarly, **preservation under extensions** strictly implies **preservation under local elementary embeddings**. Finally, notice that being equivalent to an **existential sentence** strictly implies having an equivalent **existential Gaifman normal form**, which is the only strict implication in terms of horizontal boxes.



[66]: Kuperberg (2021), ‘Positive First-order Logic on Words’

1: and providing undecidability of the associated decision problem

by [66] to prove that **Lyndon’s Positivity Theorem** fails for finite words¹ can be generalised to conclude that **Item 1** cannot be proven without extra assumptions, which put the research program to a (temporary) stop.

Contributions. The main contribution of this chapter is the correspondence between **existential local sentences** and the **positive Gaifman normal form** stated in **Theorem 4.2.2**, together with the light shed on the central role of the class of **existential local sentences** in **preservation theorems**, as shown in **Figure 4.1**. The role of disjoint unions in the original proof of [6] is The presence of **existential local sentences**, for which the quasi-order \leq_F property is that their set of models is **closed under disjoint unions**, justifies the presence of disjoint unions in [6].

The second main contribution is the *quantitative* study of the relativisation of **Figure 4.1** in the finite, via a parametrised family of quasi-orders $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$. In particular, we prove that relativisation fails in non-trivial cases, except for one...That is the core of **Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem)**. The failure results are accompanied by undecidability properties, definitely closing the door to a generic factorisation of the proofs into a first part using a positive locality result, and a second part relying on combinatorics of the local neighbourhoods of the considered structures.

We start the chapter with a gentle (and self contained) introduction to the locality of first-order logic in **Section 4.1**. The curious reader might look at the logic cheatsheet in **Chapter E (Logic Cheat Sheet)**. Most of this section can be found (in some way) in a classical book on the subject such as [68]. The added value of this section is the introduction of notations that will be handy throughout the document, together

[68]: Libkin (2012), *Elements of finite model theory*

with the direct connection with [preservation theorems](#), namely via [Example 4.1.16](#).

In [Section 4.2](#), we refine our understanding of the locality of first-order logic to study the connection between [existential local sentences](#), and a positive version of the [Gaifman normal form](#), culminating at [Theorem 4.2.2](#). Aside from the main theorem, we also use an elegant formalisation of the compositional techniques for first-order logic² in terms of “typed formulas”, based on discussions with [Thomas Colcombet](#).³ This formalism will be of particular use when studying the composition of [preservation theorems](#) in [Chapter 6](#) (Logically Presented Spaces).

In [Section 4.3](#), we study the [preservation theorem](#) associated with [existential local sentences](#), which provides in [Figure 4.1](#) an intermediate “order free” layer between the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) and arbitrary formulas. However, this [preservation theorem](#) does not [relativise](#) to the finite (see [Theorem 4.3.21](#)), which puts a stop to our original idea of a “localisation procedure.” However, a meticulous study of the parametrised version of the [FOLoc-preservation theorem](#) in the finite will open the door to a relativisation in a very specific case, which is at the heart of [Chapter 5](#) (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem).

4.1. Locality of first order logic

Recall that the [Gaifman graph](#)⁴ $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$ of a relational structure \mathfrak{A} over a finite relational signature σ has vertices \mathfrak{A} and an edge (a, b) whenever both a and b appear in a relation of \mathfrak{A} . For an example, see [Figure 2.1](#) and [Figure 2.3](#).

Definition 4.1.1. Let G be an undirected graph. The *shortest path distance* $d_{\text{spd}}(a, b)$ between two nodes $(a, b) \in G$ is the [minimum](#) length of a path from a to b in G , and $+\infty$ if such a path does not exist.

This notion of distance can be lifted to [relational structures](#) by defining for a structure \mathfrak{A} the distance $d_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, b)$ as the distance $d_{\text{spd}}(a, b)$ in the [Gaifman graph](#) $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$ of \mathfrak{A} . This notion of distance allows us to define “closed balls” inside graphs and structures, that are described by a centre a and a radius $r > 0$. Formally, the *r -local neighbourhood* of an element $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, written $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r)$, is the set $\{b \in \mathfrak{A} : d_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, b) \leq r\}$ of elements of \mathfrak{A} that are at distance at most r from a . We generalise the notion to tuples \vec{a} of elements by letting $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{a \in \vec{a}} \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r)$. For a graphical representation, see [Figure 4.2](#) and [Table 4.1](#). Beware that this union is not required to be disjoint.

Slightly abusing notations, we identify the set $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$ of $\text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ with the corresponding [induced substructure](#) of \mathfrak{A} , so that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}$. To describe the local behaviour of a given structure at a given radius r using tuples of at most k elements, one can build the set $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k)$ defined as $\{\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) : \vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^k\}$. For instance, we have computed $\text{Local}(G, 2, 1)$ for the graph G of [Figure 4.2](#) in [Table 4.2](#). We will also write $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for the set $\bigcup_{\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}} \text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k)$.

- 2: Understand, [Feferman-Vaught](#) like theorems
 3: To the best of my knowledge, this is the first time such a presentation has been written down formally.

- 4: See [Definition 2.2.12](#) p. 17

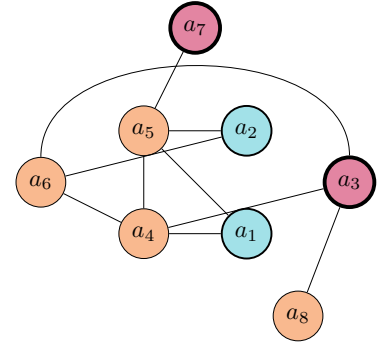


Figure 4.2.: A finite graph with two selected nodes (in red ■), two nodes at [shortest path distance](#) 1 of the selected nodes (in orange ■), and two nodes at [shortest path distance](#) 2 of the selected nodes (in blue ■).

Table 4.1.: The different neighbourhoods around the two selected points a_7, a_3 in the graph G described in [Figure 4.2](#).

| r | $\mathcal{N}_G(a_7 a_3, r)$ |
|-----|---|
| 0 | $\{a_7, a_3\}$ |
| 1 | $\{a_7, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6\}$ |
| 2 | $\{a_7, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6, a_1, a_2\}$ |

Table 4.2.: The list of 2-local neighbourhoods collected in $\text{Local}(G, 2, 1)$, where the graph G described in [Figure 4.2](#).

| Neighbourhoods |
|--|
| $\{a_3, a_4, a_6, a_8\}$ |
| $\{a_1, a_2, a_4, a_5, a_7\}$ |
| $\{a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6, a_8\}$ |
| $\{a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6, a_7, a_8\}$ |
| $\{a_1, a_2, a_3, a_4, a_5, a_6, a_7\}$ |

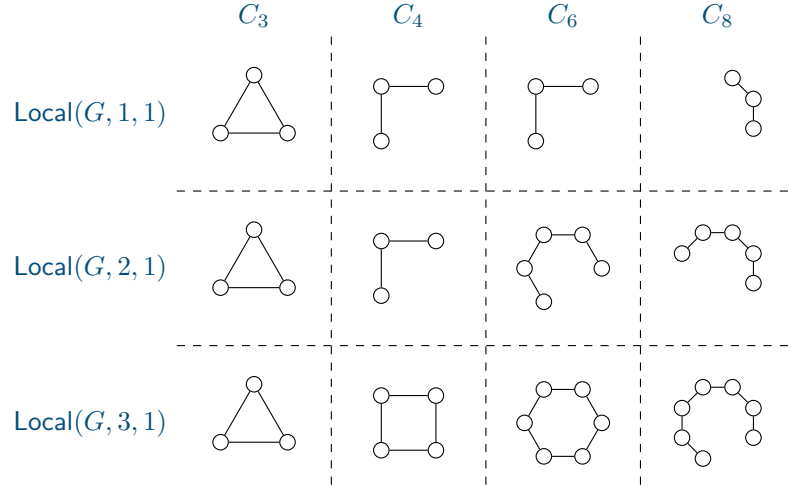


Figure 4.3.: Local neighbourhoods $\text{Local}(G, r, 1)$ of cycles C_3 , C_4 , C_6 and C_8 , computed for $r \in \{1, 2, 3\}$. Notice that $\text{Local}(C_n, r, 1)$ is a singleton for all $n \geq 3$, $r \geq 1$.

First, let us notice that if \mathfrak{A} is a finite structure and the parameters k and r are large enough, one can always find the structure \mathfrak{A} inside $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k)$. Let us briefly note that \mathfrak{A} can either be obtained using $r = 0$ and $k = |\mathfrak{A}|$, or using $r = |\mathfrak{A}|$ and k equal to the number of connected components in $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$, i.e., $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, 0, |\mathfrak{A}|)$ and $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, |\mathfrak{A}|, k)$ where k is the number of connected components in $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$. While this is not yet of importance, we will see later on that this has an impact in terms of the expressiveness of (local) first order sentences.

Let us illustrate how this local behaviour applies to various classes of structures. For that, we recall that C_n is a finite undirected simple cycle with n vertices, P_n is a finite undirected path with n vertices, and their collection is respectively written **Cycles** and **Paths**. To add new examples in terms of undirected graphs, we write K_n to denote an undirected clique of n vertices, and collect the cliques in a set **Cliques**.

Example 4.1.2. Let $n > 3$, $r > 0$ and $k > 0$. Then, $\text{Local}(C_n, r, k)$ contains a cycle if and only if $(2r + 1) \times k \geq n$.

Example 4.1.3. Let $r > 0$ and $k > 0$, and $m, n > (2r + 1) \times k$. Then, $\text{Local}(C_m, r, k) = \text{Local}(C_n, r, k)$.

Example 4.1.4. Let $r > 0$ and $k > 0$, and $m > n > 0$. Then, the sets $\text{Local}(K_m, r, k)$ and $\text{Local}(K_n, r, k)$ are disjoint.

Example 4.1.4 shows that even though cliques exhibit very regular behaviours in terms of neighbourhoods, our approach to locality (that considers the **local neighbourhoods** inside the structures) separates all cliques even with fixed parameters. This should be understood as the fact that local neighbourhoods over approximates the complexity of the structures. To further demonstrate this fact, remark that the class of cliques is in (quantifier-free definable) bijection with the class of independent sets. Let us write, I_n for the (undirected) graph with n

vertices and no edges. While independent sets have the same first-order complexity as cliques, their neighbourhoods behave quite differently as shown below.

Example 4.1.5. Let $r > 0$ and $k > 0$, and $m > n > 0$. Then, the local behaviours satisfy $\text{Local}(I_m, r, k) \supseteq \text{Local}(I_n, r, k)$.

Rather than changing the definition of locality so that cliques and independent sets have the same local behaviour,⁵ let us take the more pragmatic approach of restricting our attention to a so-called “local” fragment of first order logic.

Definition 4.1.6. A first-order formula $\varphi(\vec{x})$ is an *r -local formula* if its evaluation over a structure \mathfrak{A} and a tuple $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ only depends on the *r -local neighbourhood* of \vec{a} in \mathfrak{A} . Formally, given $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, a first-order formula $\varphi(\vec{x})$ is *r -local* if and only if the following holds:

$$\forall \mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}, \forall \vec{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{A}, \vec{v} \models \varphi \text{ if and only if } \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{v}(\vec{x}), r), \vec{v} \models \varphi.$$

In order to gain a little intuition about what *r -local formulas* can express, let us provide examples and non-examples of local formulas.

Example 4.1.7. Let *Grids* be the class of finite grids. Then, the formula $\forall y.E(x, y)$ is a *2-local formula* around x over *Grids*.

Example 4.1.8. The $\exists y.R(x, y)$ is a 1-local formula, while $\forall y.R(x, y)$ is not a local formula. Any r -local sentence (formula with no free variables) is equivalent to either \top or \perp .

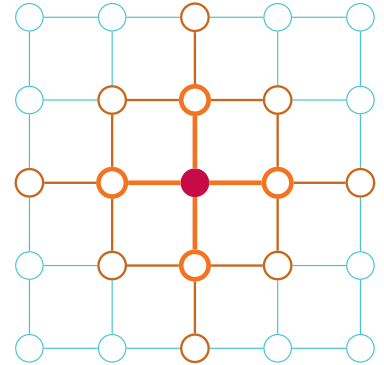


Figure 4.4.: Illustration of the 2-local neighbourhood of a point inside a grid. On this picture, one can understand that the first order formula $\forall y.E(x, y)$ holds at a given point $x \mapsto a$ if and only if the 2-local neighbourhood of a is a grid.

In the particular case of $r = 0$, *r -local formulas* are equivalent to *quantifier free formulas*. As a general rule, one can always syntactically ensure that a given formula is r -local, by suitably restricting its quantifiers. Indeed, one can define for any fixed r the predicate $\mathbf{d}(a, b) \leq r$ in **FO**, whose semantic is that $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{v} \models \mathbf{d}(a, b) \leq r$ if and only if $\mathbf{d}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, b) \leq r$, using $\log_2 \lceil r \rceil$ quantifiers. As a consequence, whenever σ is a finite relational signature, one can construct the first order formula $y \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{x}, r)$, such that for all (\mathfrak{A}, \vec{v}) , $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{v} \models y \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{x}, r)$ if and only if $\vec{v}(y) \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{v}(\vec{x}), r)$.

Definition 4.1.9. Let σ be a finite relational signature and $r \geq 0$. Then given φ with free variables included in \vec{x} , one defines $|\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r$ inductively as follows:

- ▶ $|\exists y.\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists y \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{x}, r). |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r;$
- ▶ $|\varphi \wedge \psi|_{\vec{x}}^r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r \wedge |\psi|_{\vec{x}}^r;$
- ▶ $|\neg \varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r;$
- ▶ $|R(\vec{y})|_{\vec{x}}^r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(\vec{y}).$

5: Which while non-trivial, has been studied in terms of differential games, see [38].

It is an easy check that for all $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in \mathbf{FO}$, for all $(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v})$, one has $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} \models |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r$ if and only if $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(\vec{x}), r), \mathfrak{v} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$. As a consequence, whenever $\varphi(\vec{x})$ is a r -local formula, then $|\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r$ is equivalent to φ . However, the transformation may increase the quantifier rank, as the subformula $y \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{x}, r)$ has a non-zero quantifier rank (if $r > 1$).

Example 4.1.10. Let $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists x. \forall y. E(x, y)$. Then,

$$|\varphi|_z^8 = \exists x \in \mathcal{N}(z, 8). \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(z, 8). E(x, y) \quad .$$

Because every quantifier in a transformed formula is guarded, one might think that 1-local formulas are related to the guarded fragment of first order logic. However, the two fragments differ, because $\forall y \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{x}, r)$ unfolds to $\forall y \in \bigcup_{x \in \vec{x}} \mathcal{N}(x, r)$ while extensions of the guarded fragment consider only quantifications of the form $\forall y \in \bigcap_{x \in \vec{x}} \mathcal{N}(x, r)$, which is a stronger syntactic restriction.

We are almost ready to state the main theorem of this section, namely the locality of first order logic, a combinatorial tool that will be used to replace compactness arguments when dealing with classes of finite structures. Notice that [Example 4.1.8](#) hints at a major issue when attempting to decompose first order sentences into *local* ones: locality only makes sense when free variables are involved.

To tackle this issue, let us introduce the notion of basic local sentences due to Gaifman. For that, let us write $\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$ as a shorthand for the formula $\bigwedge_{1 \leq i \neq j \leq |\vec{x}|} \mathcal{N}(x_i, r) \cap \mathcal{N}(x_j, r) = \emptyset$, which is easily expressed using the predicates $d(x_i, x_j) > 2r$. This formula expresses the fact that the vector \vec{x} is composed of points that are “far enough” from each other.

Using this construction, let us now define a variant of the existential quantifier that includes a notion of repetition and distance: we define $\exists_r^{\geq n} x. \psi(x)$ as a notation for $\exists x_1, \dots, x_n. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{i=1}^n \psi(x_i)$. In plain English, this states that there exists n points, whose r -local neighbourhoods do not intersect, and such that each of these points satisfies ψ .

Definition 4.1.11 [37]. An r -basic local first order sentence is of the form $\exists_r^{\geq n} x. \psi(x)$, where $\psi(x)$ is an r -local formula with a single free variable x .

Example 4.1.12. Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ (E, 2) \}$. The sentence stating that one can find two disjoint 2-local neighbourhoods N_1, N_2 and two points $x_1 \in N_1, x_2 \in N_2$ such that $N_1 = \mathcal{N}_{N_1}(x_1, 1)$ and $N_2 = \mathcal{N}_{N_2}(x_2, 1)$, is a basic local first order sentence that can be written:

$$\exists_2^{\geq 2} x. \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(x, 2). E(x, y) \quad .$$

Example 4.1.13. The sentence $\forall x. \forall y. E(x, y)$ cannot be rewritten as a basic local sentence.

[Example 4.1.13](#) uses the fact that basic local sentences are compatible with disjoint unions of structures. This will actually be a complete description of their specialisation pre-order over $\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$, as we will prove in [Proposition 4.3.10](#).

Proof Hint. Notice that if φ is a basic local sentence and $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, then for all $\mathfrak{B} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$, $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$. ■

The celebrated [Gaifman Locality Theorem](#) states the locality of first order logic: the evaluation of a first-order formula only depends on the first-order properties of the [local neighbourhoods](#) of that structure, which we formally restate below.

Theorem 4.1.14 ([37]). *Every first order formula is equivalent to a Boolean combination of [basic local sentences](#) and [local formulas](#).*

This is the [Gaifman Locality Theorem](#).

Even though [Theorem 4.1.14](#) does not prove the uniqueness of the Boolean combination of [basic local sentences](#) and [local formulas](#), it is usually said that such sentences are in [Gaifman normal form](#) (although, this is not a normal form).

One can add restrictions on the shape of [basic local sentences](#) and [local formulas](#) to build variants of the [Gaifman normal form](#). Some examples can be found in the leftmost column of [Figure 4.1](#).

Corollary 4.1.15. *For all sentences $\phi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$, there exists $r, k \geq 0$ such that for all structures $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, if $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k) = \text{Local}(\mathfrak{B}, r, k)$, then $\mathfrak{A} \models \phi$ if and only if $\mathfrak{B} \models \phi$.*

Notice that one can extend [Corollary 4.1.15](#) by considering first-order formulas with free variables, which requires to extend the construction of [r-local neighbourhoods](#) to structures with a valuation. In order to keep the notations simple and because such case will not appear, we will restrict ourselves to the current phrasing of [Corollary 4.1.15](#).

Let us illustrate how the locality of first-order logic can be used to prove the relativisation of [preservation theorems](#) to classes of finite structures. Recall that [Cycles](#) is the class of undirected finite cycles.

Example 4.1.16. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to [Cycles](#).

Proof. Let $\phi \in \text{FO}$ be a sentence preserved under [extensions](#) over [Cycles](#). Thanks to [Corollary 4.1.15](#), there exists $r, k \geq 0$ such that whether $\mathfrak{A} \models \phi$ holds is determined by $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k)$. Recall from [Example 4.1.3](#) that if $m, n > 2r \times k$, then the [local neighbourhoods](#) of the two cycles are identical, i.e., $\text{Local}(C_n, r, k) = \text{Local}(C_m, r, k)$. Let us build the equivalent existential sentence by case analysis, using the [diagram sentences](#) $\Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\text{EFO}}$ that exists for [EFO](#) thanks to [Lemma 3.1.5](#).

- If there exists $n > 2r \times k$ such that $C_n \models \phi$. Then for all $n > 2r \times k$, $C_n \models \phi$. Hence, ϕ is equivalent over [Cycles](#) to

$$\bigvee_{C_n \models \phi \wedge n \leq 2r \times k} \Delta_{C_n}^{\text{EFO}} \vee \exists_0^{\geq 2r \times k + 1} x. \top \quad .$$

- Otherwise, for all $n > 2r \times k$, $C_n \models \neg\phi$. Hence, ϕ is equivalent over [Cycles](#) to

$$\bigvee_{C_n \models \phi \wedge n \leq 2r \times k} \Delta_{C_n}^{\text{EFO}} \quad \blacksquare$$

One can also restate the [Gaifman Locality Theorem](#) as the fact that every [first order formula](#) has a [Gaifman normal form](#).

Beware that the “converse” of [Corollary 4.1.15](#) is not true. This is because the local neighbourhoods of a structure can have arbitrary size, and might not be [first-order definable](#) at a given $r, k \geq 0$. Formally, there exists a pair of structures $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$ such that \mathfrak{A} and \mathfrak{B} satisfy the same sentences but do not have the same local neighbourhoods.

[6]: Atserias, Dawar and Grohe (2008), ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’

[7]: Atserias, Dawar and Kolaitis (2006), ‘On preservation under homomorphisms and unions of conjunctive queries’

[20]: Dawar (2010), ‘Homomorphism preservation on quasi-wide classes’

[57]: Harwath, Heimberg and Schweikardt (2015), ‘Preservation and decomposition theorems for bounded degree structures’

6: We similarly define *universal local sentences* as sentences in $\forall\text{FOLoc}$, that are also the negations of *existential local sentences*.

7: As for $\exists\text{QF}$, the set of *existential local sentences* does not form a fragment of first order logic. We implicitly equate $\exists\text{FOLoc}$ with the smallest fragment. This is valid because every sentence in the closure of $\exists\text{FOLoc}$ is equivalent to some sentence in $\exists\text{FOLoc}$.

The technique presented is far from being an ad-hoc one, as it was already discussed in Chapter 3 (Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries). However, let us notice that we avoided the study of *minimal models* and the corresponding Lemma 3.2.3: here there are infinitely many non-equivalent *minimal models*! Note that using locality to study the combinatorial properties of *minimal models* is at the core of numerous proofs of *relativisation* [6, 7, 20, 57].

Quite noticeably, Rossman’s proof of the relativisation of the *Homomorphism Preservation Theorem* to the finite does not explicitly use Theorem 4.1.14, and builds upon custom Ehrenfeuch-Fraïsé games [83].

4.2. A Positive Locality Theorem

The astute reader might recall from Chapter 3 (Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries) and particularly in Section 3.1 that whenever a fragment of first order logic is given, a corresponding notion of embedding can be defined, and one has a corresponding preservation theorem.

Let us follow this pattern and write FOLoc for the fragment of local formulas, and FOLoc^r for the fragment of r -local formulas. Specialising Definition 3.1.1, let us define an *r -local elementary embedding* to be a map $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ such that for all $\phi \in \text{FOLoc}^r$, $\mathfrak{A}, \nu \models \phi$ implies $\mathfrak{A}, h \circ \nu \models \phi$. Similarly, a *local elementary embedding* is a map preserving FOLoc . Thanks to Theorem 3.1.9, every first order sentence preserved under *local elementary embedding* is equivalent over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ to an *existential local sentence*, that is, a sentence in $\exists\text{FOLoc}$. Concretely, a sentence $\phi \in \exists\text{FOLoc}$ is of the form $\exists \vec{x}. \psi(\vec{x})$ where ψ is a *local formula*⁶⁷.

The *local elementary embeddings* are the “local” counterpart to the usual notion of *elementary embedding* in Model Theory: a map $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ is an *elementary embedding* if and only if for all $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$, $\nu: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, \nu \models \varphi(\vec{x})$ implies that $\mathfrak{B}, h \circ \nu \models \varphi(\vec{x})$. By construction, *elementary embeddings* are the F -embeddings where F is chosen to be the full collection of first order formulas FO . In particular, every first order sentence is *preserved under elementary embeddings*.

In order to be able to refer to the specialisation of Theorem 3.1.9 in the case of *existential local sentences*, let us write the corollary hereafter.

Corollary 4.2.1. *Let φ be a sentence in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$. The following properties are equivalent over the class $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ of all structures.*

1. φ is equivalent to an *existential local sentence*.
2. φ is preserved under *local elementary embeddings*.

The similarity between Corollary 4.2.1 and Theorem 4.1.14 is not a coincidence. However, it is not yet clear to see how the two relate, since one talks about *existential local sentences* and the other one

Table 4.3.: Variations around locality and sentences in first order logic.

| Name | Shape | Hypothesis |
|------------------------|---|--|
| Existential local | $\exists \vec{x}.\psi(\vec{x})$ | ψ r -local formula |
| Almost basic local | $\exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^N(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \psi(\vec{x})$ | ψ r -local formula |
| Asymmetric basic local | $\exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^N(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_i \psi_i(x_i)$ | $(\psi_i)_{1 \leq i \leq \vec{x} }$ r -local formulas |
| Basic local | $\exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^N(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_i \psi(x_i)$ | ψ r -local formula |

considers the more constrained **basic local sentences**. Let us state the main theorem of this section.

Theorem 4.2.2. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be a class of structures and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be a first-order sentence. Then, the following properties are equivalent:*

1. φ is equivalent over \mathcal{C} to an **existential local sentence**
2. φ is equivalent over \mathcal{C} to a positive Boolean combination of **basic local sentences**, which we call a **positive Gaifman normal form**.

As a consequence of **Theorems 4.1.14** and **4.2.2**, every first-order sentence is equivalent to a finite conjunction of implications of the form $\psi_i \Rightarrow \varphi_i$ where both ψ_i and φ_i are **existential local sentences**. Notice that this can be seen as a variation of the normal form proposed by [87], who proved that every first order sentence is equivalent to a sentence of the shape $\exists \vec{x}.\forall y.\psi(x, y)$ where ψ is a **local formula**. From this point of view, the preservation under **local elementary embeddings** “removes the need for universal quantifications.”

[87]: Schwentick and Barthelmann (1999), ‘Local normal forms for first-order logic with applications to games and automata’

The rest of this section is devoted to proving **Theorem 4.2.2**, through a gradual understanding of the expressive power of local formulas. As **basic local sentences** form a subset of **existential local sentences**, the only difficulty is converting an existential local sentence into a positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences. We split this transformation into intermediate syntactic steps as described in **Table 4.3**. These intermediate steps are motivated as follows:

- Translating from **existential local sentences** to **almost basic local sentences** amounts to “separating” the variables into disjoint neighbourhoods;
- Translating from **almost basic local sentences** to **asymmetric basic local sentences** amounts to “separating” the properties checked on the variable, based on the fact that they are far away;
- Translating from **asymmetric basic local sentences** to **basic local sentences** amounts to “uniformizing” the local properties so that the same one is asked for every variable.

Exploring **Table 4.3** might seem daunting, but the introduced fragments arise quite naturally. For instance, **asymmetric basic local sentences** were already introduced by Grohe and Wöhrle in order to construct an **existential Gaifman normal form** see [55, Theorem 6]. Because they have similar definitions, we will first help the reader distinguish their respective “expressive power” in **Figure 4.5**.

[55]: Grohe and Wöhrle (2004), ‘An existential locality theorem’

Beware that in [55], “existential local sentences” do not refer to the existential closure of a local sentence, but to what is defined here as an **existential basic local sentence**. We take the time to introduce **existential basic local sentences** because of an analogue to [Theorem 4.2.2](#) has been proven by Grohe and Wöhrle, which we restate in [Theorem 4.2.4](#). Please note however that [Theorem 4.2.4](#) is not an equivalence, and it is unclear whether it could be used to prove [Theorem 4.2.2](#) (and vice-versa).

Definition 4.2.3 [55, Section 3]. Let σ be a finite relational signature. A first order sentence $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ is an *existential Basic local sentence* when it is of the form $\exists_{\vec{r}}^{\geq k} x. \psi(x)$ where ψ is an **existential formula** that is also *r-local*. I.e., φ is of the form:

$$\exists \vec{x}. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_i \psi(x_i) \quad .$$

Theorem 4.2.4 [55, Theorem 2]. Let σ be a finite relational signature. Every **existential sentence** $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of **existential basic local sentences**.

Such a positive Boolean combination of **existential basic local sentences** is called an *existential Gaifman normal form* of φ .

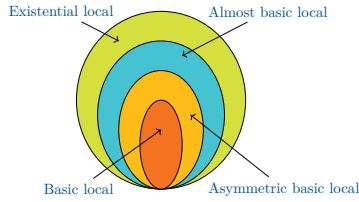


Figure 4.5.: Strict inclusions between the different set of local sentences described in Table 4.3. Witnessed by examples [Examples 4.2.5](#) to [4.2.7](#).

Example 4.2.5. Let \mathcal{C} be the class of coloured graphs, let $r \geq 2$. Let $\psi(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x \in \mathcal{N}(x, r). \text{green}(x)$ and $\theta(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x \in \mathcal{N}(x, r). \text{blue}(x)$. The sentence

$$\exists x_1, x_2. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \psi(x_1) \wedge \theta(x_2)$$

is **asymmetric basic local** but not **basic local**.

Example 4.2.6. Let \mathcal{C} be the class of coloured graphs, let $r \geq 2$. Let $\psi(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x \in \mathcal{N}(x, r). \text{green}(x)$ and $\theta(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x \in \mathcal{N}(x, r). \text{blue}(x)$. The sentence

$$\exists x_1, x_2. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge (\psi(x_1) \wedge \psi(x_2)) \vee (\theta(x_1) \wedge \theta(x_2))$$

is **almost basic local** but not **asymmetric basic local**.

Example 4.2.7. Let \mathcal{C} be the class of coloured graphs, let $r \geq 2$. Let $\psi(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x \in \mathcal{N}(x, r). \text{green}(x)$ and $\theta(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x \in \mathcal{N}(x, r). \text{blue}(x)$. The sentence

$$\exists x_1, x_2. \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(x_1 x_2, r). (E(x_1, y) \wedge \theta(y)) \iff (E(x_2, y) \wedge \psi(y))$$

is **existential local** but not **almost basic local**.

Remark that [Theorem 4.2.2](#) claims that positive Boolean combinations of [existential local sentences](#) are as expressive as positive Boolean combinations of [basic local sentences](#), hence that the “hierarchy” of local variations introduced [Table 4.3](#) and depicted in [Figure 4.5](#) collapses when considering their closure under finite disjunctions and finite conjunctions.

As noticed in the above examples, the variation of expressive power essentially depend on the repartition of the local neighbourhoods in a given structure. To perform the combinatorial study of “possible overlaps” of neighbourhoods, we first prove the following lemma.⁸ We encourage the reader to look at [Figure 4.6](#) while reading [Lemma 4.2.8](#) to understand the basic idea, which is to turn a tuple of points \vec{a} , into a tuple \vec{b} of points that are guaranteed to have non-intersecting neighbourhoods.

Lemma 4.2.8. *For every $k, r \geq 0$, for every structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k}$, there exists a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k}$ and a radius $r \leq R \leq 4^k r$ such that:*

1. *The R -local neighbourhood of \vec{b} contains the r -local neighbourhood of \vec{a} : $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$,*
2. *The R -local neighbourhoods of elements in \vec{b} are not intersecting: $\forall b \neq b' \in \vec{b}, \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b, 3R) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b', 3R) = \emptyset$.*

Proof. We proceed by induction over k .

- When $k \leq 1$ it suffices to take $R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} r$ and for every vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k}$ build $\vec{b} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \vec{a}$ and notice that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$.
- When $k \geq 2$, we proceed by a simple case analysis
 1. Either the balls $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 3r)$ are pairwise disjoint when a ranges over \vec{a} ; in which case it suffices to consider $\vec{b} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \vec{a}$ and $R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} r$ to conclude.
 2. Or at least two of the balls $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 3r)$ intersect when a ranges over \vec{a} , and we can assume without loss of generality that the neighbourhoods of a_1 and a_2 at radius $3r$ intersect. Let us consider $c \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, 3r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_2, 3r)$. Define $\vec{c} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (c, a_3, \dots, a_k)$, this vector is of size 1 when $k = 2$. Because $d(a_1, c) \leq 3r$ and $d(a_2, c) \leq 3r$, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1 a_2, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(c, 4r)$. By induction hypothesis, there exists a radius $4r \leq R \leq 4^{k-1}(4r)$ and a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k-1}$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{c}, 4r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$ and $\forall b \neq b' \in \vec{b}, \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b, 3R) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b', 3R) = \emptyset$. Since $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{c}, 4r)$ and $r \leq 4r \leq R \leq 4^k r$, the statement holds. ■

4.2.1. From Existential Local Sentences to Asymmetric Basic Local Sentences

In this section, we will do a first step towards proving [Theorem 4.2.2](#) by showing that [existential local sentences](#) are equivalent to disjunctions of [asymmetric basic local sentences](#). This transformation is split into two; in [Lemma 4.2.9](#) on the following page, we perform the first

8: Which holds in any given metric space, but is stated inside a given structure for clarity.

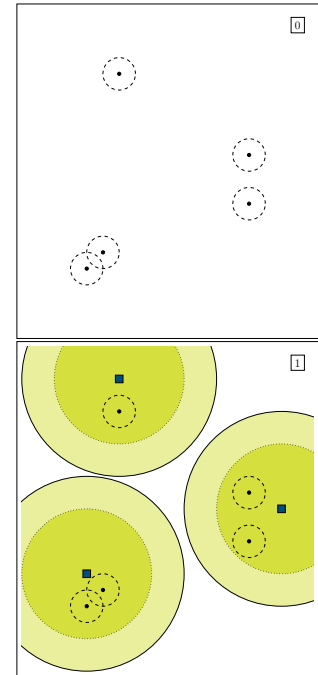


Figure 4.6.: Input (slide 0) and output (slide 1) of [Lemma 4.2.8](#). Black nodes are the input vector \vec{a} , with their r -neighbourhoods represented as dashed circles. Square blue nodes represent the output vector \vec{b} with their R -neighbourhoods represented as green circles, and $3R$ -neighbourhoods represented as light-green circles.

step of conversion by rewriting [existential local sentences](#) into [almost basic local sentences](#), leveraging the study of neighbourhoods intersections done in [Lemma 4.2.8](#). In [Lemma 4.2.20](#) on page 83, we continue by transforming an [almost basic local sentence](#) into a disjunction of [asymmetric basic local sentences](#). The second step is more involved and relies on the [Feferman-Vaught technique](#), which is a very convenient tool in finite model theory that will also come in handy in [Chapter 6 \(Logically Presented Spaces\)](#).

Lemma 4.2.9. *Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), and $\varphi(\vec{x})$ be an r -local formula. There exist $1 \leq n \leq 4^{|\vec{x}|}r$ and ψ_1, \dots, ψ_n [almost basic local sentences](#) such that $\exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$ is equivalent to the disjunction $\bigvee_{1 \leq i \leq n} \psi_i$ over [Struct](#)(σ).*

Proof. Let us define $\Delta \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ (k, R) : 0 \leq k \leq |\vec{x}| \wedge r \leq R \leq 4^{|\vec{x}|}r \}$, and for each $(k, R) \in \Delta$,

$$\psi_{(k,R)} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists b_1, \dots, b_k. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{b}, R) \wedge \exists \vec{x} \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{b}, R). \varphi(\vec{x}) \quad (4.1)$$

To conclude it suffices to prove that $\exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$ is equivalent to

$$\Psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{(k,R) \in \Delta} \psi_{(k,R)}.$$

- Assume that $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ satisfies $\exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$. Then there exists $\vec{a} \in A^{|\vec{x}|}$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \models \exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$ since φ is r -local around \vec{x} . Using [Lemma 4.2.8](#), there exists a size $0 \leq k \leq |\vec{a}|$ a radius $r \leq R \leq 4^{|\vec{a}|}r$, and a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{A}^k$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$ and the balls of radius $3R$ around the points of \vec{b} do not intersect. In particular, $\biguplus_{b \in \vec{b}} \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b, R) \models \exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$ since witnesses in $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$ can still be found and φ is r -local. This proves that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi_{(k,R)}$ hence that $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi$.
- Assume that $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ satisfies Ψ . Then there exists (k, R) such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi_{k,R}$ thus proving that there exists $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{A}^k$ such that $\biguplus_{b \in \vec{b}} \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b, R) \models \exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$. Since $r \leq R$ and φ is r -local this proves $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists \vec{x}.\varphi(\vec{x})$. ■

This proves that even though [existential local sentences](#) and [almost basic local sentences](#) do not have the same expressive power, disjunctions of such sentences are equi-expressive.

[33]: Feferman and Vaught (1959), ‘The first order properties of products of algebraic systems’

[74]: Makowsky (2004), ‘Algorithmic uses of the Feferman–Vaught Theorem’

9: For instance, a disjoint union of neighbourhoods.

10: Typically, the connected components of a disjoint union.

Transforming [almost basic local sentences](#) into positive Boolean combination of [asymmetric basic local sentences](#) requires a bit more work, and typically leverages what is known as [Feferman-Vaught style compositional techniques](#) [33, 74]. This technique/meta-theorem reduces the evaluation of a sentence over a complex structure,⁹ into an evaluation of (more-complex) sentences on simpler parts.¹⁰ It is quite clear how such theorems will transform [almost basic local sentences](#) into positive Boolean combinations of [asymmetric basic local sentences](#).

We present hereafter a suitably adapted version of the [Feferman-Vaught technique](#), following a syntactic proof due to [Thomas Colcombet](#). This syntactic proof avoids most of the problems arising from semantic ones, and is general enough so that it can be reused later when studying compositional properties of [preservation theorems](#) in [Chapter 6 \(Logically Presented Spaces\)](#).

The rough idea of the syntactic approach is to use a stricter language of “typed formulas” (Definition 4.2.10) to keep track of where variables are taken inside a complex structure. One can transform usual sentences into typed formulas preserving the semantics (Definition 4.2.14 and Lemma 4.2.17), and conversely discard the type annotations to turn a typed formula into a regular one. The main advantage of typed formulas is that they are easily rewritten into “monotyped formulas” (Lemma 4.2.19). Because types keep track of the components of a structure, this proves that one can transform a formula into a positive Boolean combination of formulas that only consider one connected component. A graphical representation of the proof scheme is given in Figure 4.7.

Definition 4.2.10. Let \mathbb{T} be a non-empty set, and σ be a *relational signature*. The \mathbb{T} -typed formulas are defined inductively as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \tau := x : T & \text{when } T \in \mathbb{T} \\ | R(x_1 : T, \dots, x_n : T) & \text{when } R \in \sigma, T \in \mathbb{T} \\ | \exists x : T. \tau & \text{when } T \in \mathbb{T} \\ | \forall x : T. \tau & \text{when } T \in \mathbb{T} \\ | \tau \wedge \tau \mid \tau \vee \tau \mid \neg \tau \mid \top & \end{array}$$

In this new language of \mathbb{T} -typed formulas, a relation can only be introduced using variables of the same type $T \in \mathbb{T}$, as shown in Example 4.2.11.

Example 4.2.11. The formula $\exists z : T_2. R(x : T_1, y : T_1) \wedge P(z : T_3)$ is a typed formula. While $\exists z : T_2. R(x : T_1, z : T_2)$ is not a typed formula.

Let us now define the semantics associated with \mathbb{T} -typed formulas. The idea is to follow the usual evaluation of first order sentences¹¹ with added “runtime type checking” when evaluating existential quantifiers. To perform (at runtime) that a variable $x : T$ is correctly typed, we define the evaluation over typed structures, namely structures $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ together with a function $\rho : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$.¹²

Definition 4.2.12. The \mathbb{T} -typed satisfaction relation $\models^{\mathbb{T}}$ is defined by induction on the \mathbb{T} -typed formulas follows: given $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$,

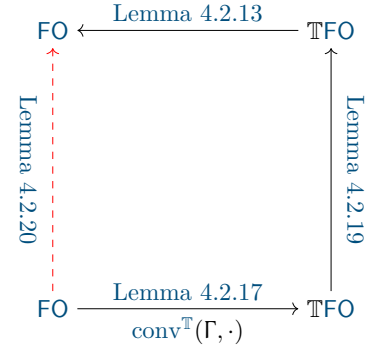


Figure 4.7.: The proof scheme of Lemma 4.2.20.

11: That was defined inductively in Definition 2.2.6.

12: This typed logic can actually be encoded in a subset of MSO, by considering types as (set) free variables that partition the structure. In this setting, $\exists x : T. \psi$ corresponds to the MSO formula $\exists x. x \in T \wedge \psi$. However, we prefer the syntactic approach because it makes the proof of Lemma 4.2.19 easier to follow.

$$\begin{aligned}
& \vec{x} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{V}, \mathbf{v} : \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}, \rho : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}, \text{ and } \varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma] \\
& \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} R(y_1 : T, \dots, y_n : T) \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \rho(y_1) = \dots = \rho(y_n) = T \text{ and} \\
& \quad (\mathbf{v}(y_1), \dots, \mathbf{v}(y_n)) \in R^{\mathfrak{A}} \\
& \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi_1(\vec{y}) \wedge \psi_2(\vec{z}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi_1(\vec{y}) \text{ and} \\
& \quad \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi_2(\vec{z}) \\
& \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \neg\psi(\vec{y}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \not\models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi(\vec{y}) \\
& \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \exists z : T. \psi(\vec{y}z) \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{there exists } a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\
& \quad \text{such that } \rho(a) = T, \text{ and} \\
& \quad \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[z \mapsto a] \models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi(\vec{y}z) \\
& \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \top \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{always} \quad .
\end{aligned}$$

One can convert a typed formula into an untyped one by removing all type annotations, which we write $\text{UT}(\psi)$. In general, this conversion is “lossy,” but let us remark that, when we restrict our attention to a universe with a single type T , the \mathbb{T} -typed satisfiability and the usual notion of satisfiability coincide.

Lemma 4.2.13. *For all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, for all sets \mathbb{T} , for all ρ maps every element to a single type $T \in \mathbb{T}$, for all \mathbb{T} -typed formulas ψ where all variables have the same type T , the following are equivalent:*

1. $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi$
2. $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \text{UT}(\psi)$.

Proof. We prove the result by induction on the formula ψ . Because the two semantics have the same definition except for the case of the existential quantification, we only treat this specific case.

Assume that $\psi = \exists x : T'. \theta$. Because every variable in ψ has type T , we conclude that $T = T'$. Furthermore, we know that $\rho(a) = T$ for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$. Now, remark that one can use the induction hypothesis on $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[z \mapsto a]$, and θ for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \exists z : T. \theta(\vec{y}z) & \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{there exists } a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\
& \quad \text{such that } \rho(a) = T, \text{ and} \\
& \quad \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[z \mapsto a] \models^{\mathbb{T}} \theta(\vec{y}z) \\
& \iff \text{there exists } a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\
& \quad \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[z \mapsto a] \models^{\mathbb{T}} \theta(\vec{y}z) \\
& \iff \text{there exists } a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\
& \quad \mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v}[z \mapsto a] \models \text{UT}(\theta(\vec{y}z)) \\
& \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \exists z. \text{UT}(\theta(\vec{y}z)) \\
& \iff \mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \text{UT}(\exists z : T. \theta(\vec{y}z)) \quad . \quad \blacksquare
\end{aligned}$$

Lemma 4.2.13 proves that it is possible to erase typing annotation of *monotyped formulas*, that is formulas using a single type T . Let us now provide a way to go the other direction and *add type annotations* to an untyped formula. This conversion will use \mathbb{T} -typing environments Γ , the

static counterpart to the “runtime environment” ρ , that is, functions from (finite subsets of) **free variables** to \mathbb{T} .

Definition 4.2.14. Let \mathbb{T} be a non-empty finite set, ψ be a first-order formula, and Γ be a typing environment. We define the \mathbb{T} -typed formula $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi)$ by induction on ψ as follows:

1. $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \exists x. \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{T \in \mathbb{T}} \exists x : T. \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma[x \mapsto T], \psi)$,
2. $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi_1 \vee \psi_2) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi_1) \vee \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi_2)$,
3. $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \neg \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi)$,
4. $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \top) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$,
5. $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, R(y_1, \dots, y_n)) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(y_1 : \Gamma(y_1), \dots, y_n : \Gamma(y_n))$ when $\Gamma(y_1) = \dots = \Gamma(y_n)$, and \perp otherwise.

We illustrate an example of conversion in [Example 4.2.15](#), where we highlight that atomic formulas containing different types are mapped to \perp , which may change the semantics. The purpose of [Lemma 4.2.17](#) is to show that a simple restriction on the choice of typing environment ensures that the translation is faithful.

Example 4.2.15. Let $\varphi(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists z. E(x, z) \wedge E(y, z)$, $\mathbb{T} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{T_1, T_2\}$, and Γ be such that $\Gamma(x) = T_1 \neq T_2 = \Gamma(y)$. Then,

$$\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi) = \bigvee \begin{cases} \exists z : T_1. E(x : T_1, z : T_1) \wedge \perp \\ \exists z : T_2. \perp \wedge E(y : T_2, z : T_2) \end{cases}.$$

Note that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, $v : \{x, y\} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, and $\rho : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$, $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, v \not\models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi)$. This proves that $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi)$ is not satisfiable, even though φ was satisfiable.

Because it is going to be crucial later on, let us highlight right now that the conversion $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi)$ does not create new free variables, and assigns the “correct” type to the free variables of φ .

Fact 4.2.16. Let $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be a first order formula, \mathbb{T} be a non-empty finite set of types, and Γ be a \mathbb{T} -typing environment. Then, $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi)$ has free variables \vec{x} , the type of \vec{x} is precisely $\Gamma(x)$, and the quantifier rank of $\text{UT}(\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi))$ is at most the quantifier rank of φ .

Lemma 4.2.17. Let σ be a relational signature, \mathbb{T} be a non-empty finite set, and $\psi(\vec{x})$ be a first-order formula. For all \mathbb{T} -typing environments Γ , for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, for all $\rho : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$, for all $v : \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, such that $d_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, b) \leq 1$ implies $\rho(a) = \rho(b)$ for all $a, b \in \mathfrak{A}$, and $\Gamma(x) = \rho(v(x))$ for all $x \in \vec{x}$, the following are equivalent:

- $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \psi$,
- $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, v \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi)$.

Proof. We prove the result by induction on the (untyped) formula ψ .

Beware that we must assume that \mathbb{T} is finite for the conversion below to be well-defined. This is not a problem for this section, but will become an obstacle when applying the [Feferman-Vaught technique](#) to linear orderings in [Lemma 6.3.35](#).

Notice that [Definition 4.2.14](#) not only adds types, but also performs a kind of “partial evaluation,” by statically replacing relations with \perp whenever there is a type mismatch.

In [Lemma 4.2.17](#), the hypothesis that $\Gamma(x) = \rho(v(x))$ ensures that the “static type” corresponds to the “runtime type” of the variable, which is a compatibility condition between Γ and ρ . This condition is crucially used when comparing the typed and untyped existential quantifications. On the other hand, the condition regarding distances is there to justify that the conversion is sound when it replaces $R(y_1, \dots, y_n)$ by \perp in case of a type mismatch.

The case of disjunction, negation, and the formula \top are immediate, and we focus on the two difficult cases: the base case of a relation $R(y_1, \dots, y_n)$ and the existential quantification.

For the base case, let $\psi = R(y_1, \dots, y_n)$. Assume that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \psi$. Then, $d_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(y_i), \mathbf{v}(y_j)) \leq 1$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq n$. In particular, there exists $T \in \mathbb{T}$ such that $T = \Gamma(y_i) = \rho(\mathbf{v}(y_i)) = \rho(\mathbf{v}(y_j)) = \Gamma(y_j)$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq n$. Therefore, $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi) = R(y_1 : T, \dots, y_n : T)$. Finally, $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} R(y_1 : T, \dots, y_n : T)$, because $(\mathbf{v}(y_1), \dots, \mathbf{v}(y_n)) \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$.

Conversely, assume that $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi)$. Then, $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi) \neq \perp$, and in particular there exists a type $T \in \mathbb{T}$ such that $\Gamma(y_1) = \dots = \Gamma(y_n) = T$, and $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi) = R(y_1 : T, \dots, y_n : T)$. By definition of the **typed satisfaction relation**, this means that $(\mathbf{v}(y_1), \dots, \mathbf{v}(y_n)) \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$, and therefore that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \psi$.

Let us now focus on the case of the existential quantification. That is, we assume that $\psi = \exists y. \theta(\vec{x}, y)$. In this case, we have that

$$\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi) = \bigvee_{T \in \mathbb{T}} \exists y : T. \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma[y \mapsto T], \theta) \quad .$$

Remark that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, one can apply the induction hypothesis on the formula θ , with $\mathbf{v}[y \mapsto a]$, ρ , and $\Gamma[y \mapsto \rho(a)]$, to conclude that

$$(\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[y \mapsto a] \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma[y \mapsto \rho(a)], \theta)) \iff (\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v}[y \mapsto a] \models \theta) \quad .$$

Now, we obtained the desired equivalence as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi) &\iff \exists T \in \mathbb{T}, \exists a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\ &\quad \rho(a) = T, \text{ and} \\ &\quad \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[y \mapsto a] \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma[y \mapsto T], \theta) \\ &\iff \exists a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\ &\quad \mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v}[y \mapsto a] \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma[y \mapsto \rho(a)], \theta) \\ &\iff \exists a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\ &\quad \mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v}[y \mapsto a] \models \theta \\ &\iff \mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \exists y. \theta \\ &\iff \mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \psi \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Corollary 4.2.18. *Let σ be a relational signature, $r > 0$, $\vec{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ be a finite tuple of variables. Let us define \mathbb{T} to be the set $\{T_1, \dots, T_n\}$. For all models $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and valuation $\mathbf{v} : \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$, for all $\psi(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$, the following are equivalent*

1. $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r), \mathbf{v} \models \psi(\vec{x})$
2. $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r), \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(x_i \mapsto T_i, \psi(\vec{x}))$.

Where ρ maps $a \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r)$ to T_i , where $1 \leq i \leq n$ is such that $a \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(x_i), r)$.

Now that we have studied the translation between ordinary formulas and typed ones, let us prove the main structural property of typed

formulas that is the reason for their introduction in the first place: one can separate types.

Lemma 4.2.19. *Let σ be a relational signature, and let \mathbb{T} be a set. Every \mathbb{T} -typed formula is equivalent over $\mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ to a positive Boolean combination of monotyped formulas, i.e., formulas using a single type $T \in \mathbb{T}$.*

Furthermore, the quantifier rank of the formulas obtained in the process is bounded by the original quantifier rank of the typed formula.

When we say that ψ and φ are equivalent typed formulas, we mean that both have the same set \vec{x} of free variables, and that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$, for all $\rho: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$, for all $v: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, v \models^{\mathbb{T}} \varphi$ if and only if $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, v \models^{\mathbb{T}} \psi$.

Proof Sketch. We prove the result by induction on the typed formula. The cases of disjunction, negation, and \top are easily handled by induction. Furthermore, for the base case of relational symbols, a typed formula $R(y_1 : T, \dots, y_n : T)$ is always a monotyped formula by definition. As a consequence, the only interesting case is the existential quantification.

Let $\psi = \exists x : T. \theta$. By induction hypothesis, θ can be rewritten as a finite positive Boolean combination of monotyped formulas. Notice that $\exists x : T. (\theta_1 \wedge \theta_2)$ is equivalent to $(\exists x : T. \theta_1) \wedge \theta_2$ whenever θ_2 does not contain the type T . Similarly, $\exists x : T. (\theta_1 \vee \theta_2)$ is equivalent to $(\exists x : T. \theta_1) \vee \theta_2$ whenever θ_2 does not contain the type T .¹³

As a consequence, ψ is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of monotyped formulas, where the $\exists x : T.$ quantification is applied to the monotyped formulas with type T , and the others are left untouched. ■

13: This is because a sentence that does not use the type T cannot contain the variable x of type T , and its evaluation does not depend on the value given to x .

Now, we are ready to state the first conversion lemma, that transforms an existential local sentence into a positive Boolean combination of asymmetric basic local sentences. This is done by following the proof scheme of Figure 4.7, which starts by “typing” the local formula inside the existential local sentence, uses the combinatorial tools developed on typed sentences to provide monotyped formulas, which are then turned into regular untyped formulas by erasing the type annotations.

Lemma 4.2.20. *Every almost basic local sentence is equivalent to a finite disjunction of asymmetric basic local sentences.*

Proof. Let $r > 0$. Let $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists \vec{x}. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \psi(\vec{x})$, where ψ is a r -local formula around \vec{x} , and let $\mathbb{T} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{T_x : x \in \vec{x}\}$.

Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$, and $v: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$. Let $\rho: \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(\vec{x}), r) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$ that associates with a the unique T_x such that $a \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(x), r)$. Thanks to Corollary 4.2.18, we obtain the following equivalence:

$$\begin{aligned} & (\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(\vec{x}), r), v \models \psi(\vec{x})) \\ \iff & (\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(\vec{x}), r), \rho, v \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(x \mapsto T_x, \psi(\vec{x}))) \end{aligned} \quad (4.2)$$

We are now going to use Lemma 4.2.19 to rewrite the \mathbb{T} -typed formula $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(x \mapsto T_x, \psi(\vec{x}))$ into a positive Boolean combination of monotyped formulas. Because every free variable of ψ is assigned a different

type in Γ , and the “type conversion” $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\cdot, \cdot)$ respects this property (see [Fact 4.2.16](#)), these [monotyped formulas](#) have at most one free variable! It is now possible to write:

$$\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(x \mapsto T_x, \psi(\vec{x})) \equiv \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \tau_{n,x}(x : T_x) \quad (4.3)$$

By definition, $\psi_{i,x} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\text{UT}(\tau_{i,x}(x : T_x))|_x^r$ is an r -local formula around its single free variable x .

To conclude, it suffices to prove that $\exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \psi(\vec{x})$ is equivalent over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ to the following disjunction of [asymmetric basic local sentences](#):

$$\bigvee_{i=1}^n \exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \psi_{i,x}(x) \quad .$$

To obtain such an equivalence, let us fix \vec{x} such that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$ and combine the results gathered so far as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} &\models \psi(\vec{x}) \\ \iff \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(\vec{x}), r), \mathfrak{v} &\models \psi(\vec{x}) && r\text{-local} \\ \iff \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(\vec{x}), r), \rho, \mathfrak{v} &\models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(x \mapsto T_x, \psi(\vec{x})) && (4.2) \\ \iff \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(\vec{x}), r), \rho, \mathfrak{v} &\models^{\mathbb{T}} \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \tau_{i,x}(x : T_x) && (4.3) \\ \iff \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} (\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(\vec{x}), r), \rho, \mathfrak{v} &\models^{\mathbb{T}} \tau_{i,x}(x : T_x)) && (\models^{\mathbb{T}}) \\ \iff \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} (\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(x), r), \rho, \mathfrak{v} &\models^{\mathbb{T}} \tau_{i,x}(x : T_x)) && (\models^{\mathbb{T}}) \\ \iff \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} (\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{v}(x), r), \mathfrak{v} &\models \text{UT}(\tau_{i,x}(x : T_x))) && (4.2.13) \\ \iff \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} (\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} &\models |\text{UT}(\tau_{i,x}(x : T_x))|_x^r) && (|\cdot|) \\ \iff \bigvee_{i=1}^n \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} (\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} &\models \psi_{i,x}) && (\psi_{i,x}) \\ \iff \bigvee_{i=1}^n \left[\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} &\models \left(\bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \psi_{i,x} \right) \right] && (\models) \end{aligned}$$

We conclude by noticing that $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \psi(\vec{x})$ if and only if there exists \mathfrak{v} such that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$, and $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} \models \psi$, which is equivalent to stating that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$, and that there exists $1 \leq i \leq n$, such that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{v} \models \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \psi_{i,x}(x)$. Hence, $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \psi(\vec{x})$ if and only if $\mathfrak{A} \models \bigvee_{1 \leq i \leq n} \exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \psi_{i,x}(x)$. ■

The combination of [Lemma 4.2.20](#) and [Lemma 4.2.9](#) states that every [existential local sentence](#) is equivalent to a finite disjunction of [asymmetric basic local sentences](#). This was previously known for [existential sentences](#)¹⁴ as a consequence of the [existential Gaifman normal form](#)

14: i.e., for existential 0-local sentences.

introduced in [55, Theorem 6].

4.2.2. From Asymmetric Basic Local to Basic Local Sentences

In order to prove that every **existential local sentence** is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of **basic local sentences** (Theorem 4.2.2), it suffices to prove it for **asymmetric basic local sentences** thanks to Lemmas 4.2.9 and 4.2.20. This setting is a generalisation of [55, Lemma 4] that deals with **existential sentences**.

Removing variables. The first step of our construction is to notice that if a local property appears frequently in a structure, then it can be selected independently of other local properties. This was already noticed in [55] and is a fairly standard argument. To make the above statement precise, let us first formally define how to remove a local property from an **asymmetric basic local sentence**.

Definition 4.2.21. Let $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \psi_x(x)$ be an **asymmetric basic local sentence**. For each $x \in \vec{x}$, the sentence φ / x is defined as $\exists \vec{y}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{y}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{y \in \vec{y}} \psi_y(y)$, where $\vec{y} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \vec{x} \setminus \{x\}$.

Example 4.2.22. Let ψ_1 and ψ_2 be two r -local formulas, and $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists x_1, x_2.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(x_1 x_2, r) \wedge \psi_1(x_1) \wedge \psi_2(x_2)$. Then, $\varphi / x_1 = \exists x_2.\psi_2(x_2)$, and $\varphi / x_2 = \exists x_1.\psi_1(x_1)$.

It is immediate that the sentences obtained by removing a local property to check are weaker than the original sentence. Let us state this fact formally so that we can refer to it later on.

Fact 4.2.23. Let φ be an **asymmetric basic local sentence** with existential variables \vec{x} . Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. Then, $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi / x$ for all $x \in \vec{x}$.

We now have all the tools needed to formally state what was hinted at earlier: frequent properties can be checked independently of the rest in an **asymmetric basic local sentence**. We restate the proof of the following result for readability.

Lemma 4.2.24 [55, Step 1 of Lemma 4]. Let φ be an **asymmetric basic local sentence** of the following form:

$$\exists x_1, \dots, x_k.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{x \in \vec{x}} \psi_x(x) \quad .$$

Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $x \in \vec{x}$ be such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi / x$ and $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} y.\psi_x(y)$. Then, $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

Proof. Let us write $\vec{z} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \vec{x} \setminus \{x\}$. Because $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi / x$, there exists a valuation $\mathbf{v}: \vec{z} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, such that the points in $\mathbf{v}(\vec{z})$ have non-intersecting r -neighbourhoods in \mathfrak{A} , and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(y), r), \mathbf{v} \models \psi_y(y)$ for all $y \in \vec{z}$. As a consequence, we only need to find a point $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{z}), r) = \emptyset$ and $\mathfrak{A}, y \mapsto a \models \psi_x(y)$ to conclude that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

Because $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} y. \psi_x(y)$, there exists k points $a_1, \dots, a_k = \vec{a}$ in \mathfrak{A} whose $2r$ -neighbourhoods do not intersect, and such that $\mathfrak{A}, y \mapsto a_i \models \psi_x(y)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$. Let us show that at least one of them is far from $\mathbf{v}(\vec{z})$.

Assume by contradiction that for all $a \in \vec{a}$, the point a is “too close” to the vector $\mathbf{v}(\vec{z})$, that is, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{z}), r) \neq \emptyset$. Since $|\vec{a}| = k$ and $|\mathbf{v}(\vec{z})| = k - 1$, there exists a pair of points $a_1 \neq a_2 \in \vec{a}$ and one variable $y \in \vec{z}$ such that, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(y), r) \neq \emptyset$ and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_2, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathbf{v}(y), r) \neq \emptyset$. As a consequence, $\mathbf{v}(y) \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_1, 2r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_2, 2r)$, and this contradicts the assumption on the vector \vec{a} . ■

Let us now take a step back and explain the proof scheme that we will employ in the upcoming [Lemma 4.2.38](#) that rewrites [asymmetric basic local sentences](#) into positive Boolean combination of [basic local sentences](#). The proof will be done by induction on the number of outer existential quantifiers as follows: given an asymmetric basic local sentence φ with outer existentially quantified variables \vec{x} , we will define $\varphi' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{x \in \vec{x}} [\varphi / x \wedge \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} y. \psi_x(y)]$. Thanks to [Fact 4.2.23](#), $\varphi' \Rightarrow \varphi$, and we can leverage the induction hypothesis to rewrite φ / x as a positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences. To conclude, it suffices to rewrite $\varphi \wedge \neg \varphi'$ as a positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences, which is easier because its models have a peculiar property: for all $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi \wedge \neg \varphi'$, the set $W \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in \mathfrak{A}: \exists x \in \vec{x}. \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \psi_x(x)\}$ is sparse, in that it is not possible to find more than $k(k-1)$ points in W whose $2r$ -neighbourhoods do not intersect.

For clarity, let us call r -local formulas with exactly one free variable [r-local properties](#).

Fact 4.2.25. Let $k, r > 0$, $\psi_1(x), \dots, \psi_k(x)$ be r -local properties, and \mathfrak{A} be such that for all $1 \leq i \leq k$, $\mathfrak{A} \not\models \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} x. \psi_i(x)$. Then, the set $W \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in \mathfrak{A}: \exists x \in \vec{x}. \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \psi_x(x)\}$ has the following property:

$$\begin{aligned} \forall \vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{k(k-1)+1}, \\ \exists 1 \leq l \neq p \leq k(k-1) + 1, \\ \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_l, 2r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a_p, 2r) \neq \emptyset. \end{aligned}$$

Abstractly, we will therefore be interested, given a finite (non-empty) set P_r of r -local properties, in the possible ways that the set $W \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in \mathfrak{A}: \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \bigvee_{p \in P_r} p(x)\}$ can be found in a structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ where $|W|$ is guaranteed to be bounded by some K (thanks to [Fact 4.2.25](#)). Intuitively, there are only finitely many possible ways that a structure \mathfrak{A} can represent a given set of witnesses W , and the rest of this section is devoted to formally proving this intuition.

Template Graphs. In order to represent sets of witnesses and their local relationship inside a given structure, we propose the following abstraction.

Definition 4.2.26. Let $r, R \geq 0$, $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, and P_r be a non-empty finite set of r -local properties. The (R, P_r) -template graph $G_{P_r}^R(\mathfrak{A})$ of \mathfrak{A} is an edge-labelled coloured graph whose vertices are the elements of \mathfrak{A} that satisfy at least one property in P_r . It has labelled edges $(u, v, d_{\mathfrak{A}}(u, v))$ whenever $d_{\mathfrak{A}}(u, v) \leq R$, and each vertex a is coloured by the set of $q_r(x) \in P_r$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models q_r(x)$.

In a **template graph**, an edge has exactly one label, but a vertex can have multiple colours. We write $\text{props}^{P_r}(v)$ for the collection of r -local properties that colour the vertex v , which happens to always be non-empty.

Example 4.2.27. Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(E, 2); (P, 1)\}$, $r = R = 2$, $\psi_1(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists y \in \mathcal{N}(x, 2). E(x, y) \wedge P(y)$, and $\psi_2(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(x, 2). \neg P(y)$. Let $P_2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\psi_1, \psi_2\}$. Let G be the relational structure in the first frame of Figure 4.8. Then, the associated template graph $G_{P_2}^2(G)$ is described in the last frame of Figure 4.8.

Because we will be interested in structures where the set of witnesses to the local properties is sparse, we will restrict our attention to **template graphs** that have a bounded number of vertices.

Definition 4.2.28. Let $K \in \mathbb{N}$, $R, r > 0$, and P_r be a finite set of r -local properties. Let us define $\text{Graphs}_{P_r}^R(K)$ to be the set of (R, P_r) -template graphs having at most K vertices.

Given a structure \mathfrak{A} , checking whether it satisfies some **asymmetric basic local sentence** amounts to computing the associated template graph and finding a tuple of vertices that have the right colouring and respect the distances imposed by the sentence. Therefore, one can collect, given an **asymmetric basic local sentence** φ the template graphs of models of φ . Notice that given a template graph of a model of φ , one “add new local properties” while remaining a witness that φ holds. This is the motivation for the following definition.

Definition 4.2.29. Let $K \in \mathbb{N}$, $R, r > 0$, and P_r be a finite set of r -local properties. We order **template graphs** $G, G' \in \text{Graphs}_{P_r}^R(K)$ using $G \leq G'$ if and only if there exists a **embedding** $h: G \rightarrow G'$ between the underlying graphs respecting the edge labels, and such that $\text{props}^{P_r}(v) \subseteq \text{props}^{P_r}(h(v))$ for all $v \in G$.

Given a structure \mathfrak{A} and a tuple $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$, we can build the **template graph** $G_{P_r}^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A})$ intersected with the vertex set \vec{a} . This is $G_{P_r}^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$.

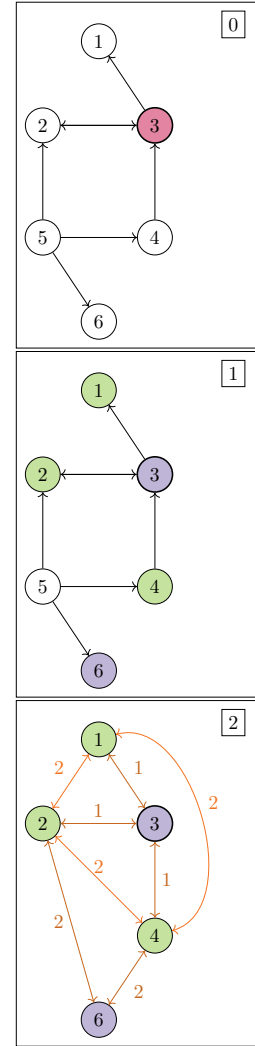


Figure 4.8.: An example of relational structure G in the first frame, and associated template graph $G_{\{\psi_1, \psi_2\}}^2(G)$ in the last frame. Black directed arrows represent the relation $E(x, y)$, while the red colour represents the relation $P(x)$. Nodes are coloured in green when they satisfy ψ_1 , and in violet when they satisfy ψ_2 of Example 4.2.27. The labelled edges of the template graph are represented by orange bidirectional arrows labelled with the distance d .

Definition 4.2.30. Let \mathfrak{A} be a structure. A *template graph* G is *represented* by a vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ whenever $G \leq \mathbf{G}_R^{\mathbf{P}_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$.

We refer to Figure 4.9 for an example of a *template graph* represented by a given vector. Let us put emphasis on the fact that we are allowed to add vertices and properties when representing a graph.

Our first lemma after that long series of definitions is that *template graphs* can be represented in first-order logic via a kind of *diagram sentence*. That is, there is a local formula checking whether a given template graph can be *represented* using some tuple in a given neighbourhood of a structure.

Because the collection of *template graphs* of bounded size is finite, we can build a sentence stating that we contain at least one of these patterns.

Lemma 4.2.31. Let $K, R, r > 0$, \mathbf{P}_r be a finite set of r -local properties, and $G \in \mathbf{Graphs}_R^K(\mathbf{P}_r)$. There exists an $(r + R)$ -local formula $\text{Diagram}_G^{\mathbf{P}_r, R}(x)$ such that, for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$, and for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ the following are equivalent:

1. $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \text{Diagram}_G^{\mathbf{P}_r, R}(x)$;
2. $\exists \vec{b} \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, R)$, $G \leq \mathbf{G}_R^{\mathbf{P}_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{b})$, and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, R)$.

Proof. Let us define the formula as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Diagram}_G^{\mathbf{P}_r, R}(x) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists v_1, \dots, v_{V(G)} \in \mathcal{N}(x, R). \\ &\bigwedge_{(v_i, v_j, h) \in \mathbf{E}(G)} d(v_i, v_j) = h \\ &\wedge \bigwedge_{v_i \in V(G)} \bigwedge_{p \in \mathbf{props}^{\mathbf{P}_r}(v_i)} p(v_i) \\ &\wedge \bigwedge_{v_i \in V(G)} \mathcal{N}(v_i, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}(x, R). \end{aligned}$$

It is immediate that this is an $(R + r)$ -local formula, moreover, the stated equivalence holds by definition. \blacksquare

It may be time to reflect on what has been done so far. Recall that we are trying to provide a combinatorial description of the ways in which witnesses of an *asymmetric basic local sentence* can be found in a structure, provided that these witnesses are “sparse.” We built *template graphs* to abstract the relationship between these witnesses inside real structures, and designed ways to talk about these templates using *local formulas*. The only remaining problem is that *basic local sentences* can only count the repetition of some local pattern, and a *template graph* can be composed of different connected components. We can tackle this problem by studying how the *template graph* of a union of a tuple $\vec{a}\vec{b}$ of points can be obtained by combining the *template graphs* of \vec{a} and \vec{b} , building towards an inductive construction of the *template graphs*.

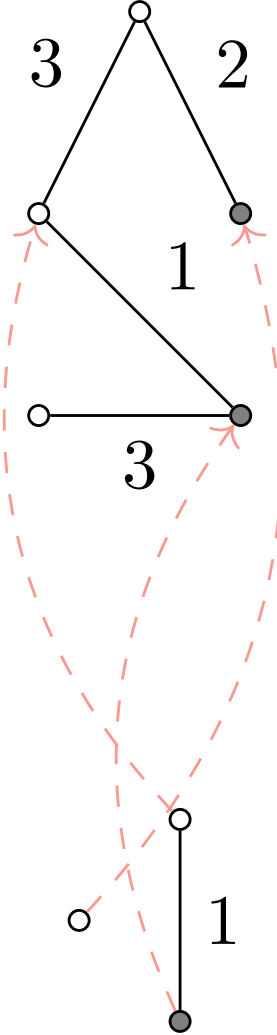


Figure 4.9.: A template graph (below) that is represented inside a bigger graph (above).

In general, it is not immediately clear how $G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$ and $G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{b})$ can be used to recover the template graph $G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a}\vec{b})$. However, the construction is quite simple if we assume that \vec{a} and \vec{b} are “far enough” apart.

Fact 4.2.32. Let $r, R > 0$, P_r be a non-empty finite set of r -local properties, $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, and \vec{a}, \vec{b} be vectors of elements of \mathfrak{A} , such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, R)$ and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$ do not intersect. Then,

$$G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a}\vec{b}) = G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a}) \uplus G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{b}) \quad .$$

The problem is now to state (using local formulas) that the template graphs that we extract in a given structure are far enough apart, so that we can use Fact 4.2.32 later on. To that end, let us introduce a sentence that does exactly this check in Definition 4.2.33. We will prove that this definition has the intended semantics, in Lemma 4.2.34.

Definition 4.2.33. Let $r, R > 0$, and P_r be a non-empty finite set of r -local properties. Let us define the security cylinder formula as the following $\max(3R, R+r)$ -local formula:

$$\text{Security}_R^{P_r}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(x, 3R). \left(\bigvee_{p \in P_r} p(y) \right) \Rightarrow \mathcal{N}(y, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}(x, R) .$$

Lemma 4.2.34. Let $R, r > 0$, P_r be a non-empty finite set of r -local properties, and $G \in \text{Graphs}_{P_r}^K(R)$. The following implication holds over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$:

$$\left(\text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(x) \wedge \text{Security}_R^{P_r}(y) \wedge d(x, y) \leq 2R \right) \Rightarrow \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(y)$$

Proof. Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $v: \{x, y\} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ be a valuation such that $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(x) \wedge \text{Security}_R^{P_r}(y) \wedge d(x, y) \leq 2R$.

By Lemma 4.2.31, there exists a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(x), R)$ such that $G \leq G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{b})$, and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(x), R)$.

In particular, every point of \vec{b} satisfies at least one property $p \in P_r$. As $d_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(x), v(y)) \leq 2R$, $\vec{b} \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(y), 3R)$.

Because, $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \text{Security}_R^{P_r}(y)$, we conclude that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(y), R)$.

Using Lemma 4.2.31, this time in the converse direction, we conclude that $\mathfrak{A}, v \models \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(y)$. ■

Putting it all together. We have partially solved the problem of the local presence of template graphs in a given structure, but basic local sentences have another restriction: we can only ask for the repetition of the *same* local property. Therefore, we have to “encode” the presence of some template graph as the repetition of identical local properties.

It is not strictly necessary to use $\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta)$ in the Definition 4.2.35 because the latter is finite, but the notation puts emphasis on the fact that everything we manipulate is finite.

To that end, we will consider finite multisets of template graphs. The collection of finite multisets with at most p elements over a set X is written $\mathbf{M}_p^\circ(X)$ and is a subset of functions $M: X \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ with finite support, and such that $\sum_{x \in X} M(x) \leq p$. We identify $\{a\}$ with the finite multiset M that maps a to 1 and every other element to 0, and write $M_1 + M_2$ for the pointwise addition of the two multisets.

Definition 4.2.35. Let $R, r, k, p > 0$, \mathbf{P}_r be a finite non-empty set of r -local properties, $\Delta \subseteq \mathbf{Graphs}_{\mathbf{P}_r}^k(R)$, and $M \in \mathbf{M}_p^\circ(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta))$ be a finite multiset with at most p elements. We define

$$\Theta_R^M \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigwedge_{S \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta)} \exists_{\geq M(S)}^{\geq M(S)} x, \text{Security}_{\mathbf{P}_r}^{\mathbf{P}_r}(x) \wedge \bigwedge_{G \in S} \text{Diagram}_G^{\mathbf{P}_r, R}(x) \wedge \bigwedge_{G' \in \Delta \setminus S} \neg \text{Diagram}_{G'}^{\mathbf{P}_r, R}(x).$$

Remark 4.2.36. The sentence Θ_R^M is a conjunction of basic local sentences.

The intuition behind Definition 4.2.35 is that we want to find enough witnesses of the subsets $S \subseteq \Delta$, in completely independent areas of the structure.

Imagine that a structure satisfies Θ_R^M for some multiset, then it must represent certain template graphs. Let us formally describe this set.

The pattern $\{S\} + M'$ may have several matches in Definition 4.2.37, however we claim that the order in which the sets S are selected does not change the output of obt .

Definition 4.2.37. Let $R, r, k, p > 0$, \mathbf{P}_r be a finite non-empty set of r -local properties, $\Delta \subseteq \mathbf{Graphs}_{\mathbf{P}_r}^k(R)$, and $M \in \mathbf{M}_p^\circ(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta))$ be a finite multiset with at most p elements. The set $\text{obt}(M)$ of graphs obtainable from M is defined inductively as follows:

- $\text{obt}(\emptyset) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset$, and
- $\text{obt}(\{S\} + M')$ is defined as the collection of graphs G , G' , and $G \uplus G'$ for $G \in S$, and $G' \in \text{obt}(M')$.

The next lemma finishes the conversion from existential local sentences to sentences in positive Gaifman normal form. The main technicality is proving that Definition 4.2.37 correctly represents the template graphs that are found inside the structures.

Lemma 4.2.38. Every asymmetric basic local sentence is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences.

Proof. Let φ be of the form $\exists x_1, \dots, x_k. \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r) \wedge \bigwedge_{i=1}^k \psi_i(x_i)$ where $(\psi_i)_{1 \leq i \leq k}$ is a sequence of r -local formulas. We prove by induction over k that φ is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences. When $k \leq 1$, φ is already a basic local sentence hence we assume $k \geq 2$.

For $1 \leq i \leq k$, we apply the induction hypothesis on φ / x_i , which has fewer existentially quantified variables, and call $\overline{\varphi / i}$ the obtained positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences.

Let us define $P_r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\psi_i : 1 \leq i \leq k\}$ which is a non-empty finite set of r -local properties, and $\Delta \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Graphs}_{4k^2 6r}^{P_r}(k)$.

Let us define \mathbb{M}_V as the set of multisets $M \in \mathcal{M}^\circ(\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta))k(k-1)$ such that $\text{obt}(M)$ contains some **template graph** G , which itself contains vertices v_1, \dots, v_k , at pairwise distance greater than $2r$, that are such that $\psi_i \in \text{props}^{P_r}(v_i)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$.

Let us prove that φ is equivalent to the positive Boolean combination of **basic local sentences** Ψ defined as

$$\Psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \underbrace{\left(\bigvee_{1 \leq i \leq k} \overline{\varphi / i} \wedge \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} x. \psi_i(x) \right)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Psi_1} \vee \underbrace{\left(\bigvee_{M \in \mathbb{M}_V} \bigvee_{6r \leq R \leq 4k^2 6r} \Theta_R^M \right)}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Psi_2}.$$

Direction $\varphi \Rightarrow \Psi$: Assume that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. Using [Fact 4.2.23](#), $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi / x_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$ and by the induction hypothesis this proves that $\mathfrak{A} \models \overline{\varphi / i}$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$.

If $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} x. \psi_i(x)$ for some $1 \leq i \leq k$, then $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi$ and we are done.

Otherwise, $\mathfrak{A} \not\models \exists_{2r}^{\geq k} x. \psi_i(x)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$, and the remaining goal is to show that for such a structure, $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi_2$.

In such a structure \mathfrak{A} , let us call W the set of elements in \mathfrak{A} that satisfy at least one ψ_i . It is not possible to find more than $k(k-1)$ points in W whose neighbourhoods of radius $2r$ do not intersect, thanks to [Fact 4.2.25](#). This implies that there exists a vector \vec{c} in A of size at most $k(k-1)$ such that $W \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{c}, 6r)$.¹⁵

Using [Lemma 4.2.8](#) over \vec{c} and $6r$ one obtains a radius $6r \leq R \leq 4k^2 6r$ and a vector \vec{b} such that $\mathcal{N}_A(\vec{c}, 6r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_A(\vec{b}, R)$ and the neighbourhoods of radius $3R$ around the points in \vec{b} do not intersect.

Let $b \in \vec{b}$. Let us define S_b as the set of **template graphs** $G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$ where \vec{a} ranges over the tuples of k points inside $W \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b, R)$.

Notice if $a \in W$, then $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 2r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{c}, 6r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$. As a consequence, the vector \vec{b} can be used to *partition* the elements in W . Furthermore, for all $b \in \vec{b}$, $S_b \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta)$.

Let us now write $M_{\vec{b}}$ for the multiset obtained by collecting all the S_b when b ranges over elements in \vec{b} . By construction, $\mathfrak{A} \models \Theta_R^{M_{\vec{b}}}$.¹⁶

Let us now prove that $M_{\vec{b}} \in \mathbb{M}_V$. Because $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, there exists a valuation $\mathbf{v} : \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, representing a tuple $\vec{a} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{v}(\vec{x})$ of points at pairwise distance greater than $2r$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \bigwedge_{i=1}^k \psi_i(x_i)$. Let us now prove that $G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a}) \in \text{obt}(M_{\vec{b}})$, which will prove that $M_{\vec{b}} \in \mathbb{M}_V$.

First, $\vec{a} \in W$, hence $\vec{a} \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, R)$. Because the $3R$ -neighbourhoods of elements in \vec{b} do not intersect, one can leverage [Fact 4.2.32](#) and notice that $G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a}) = \biguplus_{b \in \vec{b}} G_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a} \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(b, R))$, and conclude that this **template graph** belongs to $\text{obt}(M_{\vec{b}})$.

That is, \mathbb{M}_V is the collection of multisets from which one can **obtain** a **template graph** that can then be used as a witness that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

15: It suffices to consider a set \vec{c} of maximal size W with non-intersecting $2r$ -neighbourhoods. We know that $|\vec{c}| \leq k(k-1)$, and that for all $a \in W$, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 2r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{c}, 2r) \neq \emptyset$. As a consequence, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 2r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{c}, 6r)$.

16: Let us briefly sketch why in the margin. For every $S \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Delta)$, either $S \notin M_{\vec{b}}$, and there is nothing to check, or $S \in M_{\vec{b}}$, and we have proven that there exists precisely enough points in \vec{b} for which $S_b = S$, and with non-intersecting $3R$ -neighbourhoods. Notice that by definition of S_b , the only template graphs that occur in the neighbourhood of b are precisely those in S_b . The only property left to check is that b has a proper security cylinder, but this is precisely how the vector \vec{b} was constructed: every **template graph** is in the $6r$ -neighbourhood of some $c \in \vec{c}$, which is itself included in the R -neighbourhood of some $b \in \vec{b}$.

We have proven that $\mathfrak{A} \models \Theta_R^{S_{\vec{b}}}$ with $S_{\vec{b}} \in \mathbb{M}_V$ and $6r \leq R \leq 4^{k^2} 6r$, hence $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi_2$. In particular, $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi$.

Direction $\Psi \Rightarrow \varphi$: Assume conversely that $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi = \Psi_1 \vee \Psi_2$. If $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi_1$, then some local property appears frequently in \mathfrak{A} thanks to the induction hypothesis, and $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ via [Lemma 4.2.24](#).

Otherwise, $\mathfrak{A} \models \Psi_2$, hence $\mathfrak{A} \models \Theta_R^M$ for some $M \in \mathbb{M}_V$ and $6r \leq R \leq 4^{k^2} 6r$.

Because $M \in \mathbb{M}_V$, there exists a **template graph** $G \in \text{obt}(M)$ having k vertices v_1, \dots, v_k at pairwise distance greater than $2r$ such that $\psi_i \in \text{props}^{P_r}(v_i)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$. To conclude that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, it therefore suffices to find some vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $G \leq \mathbb{G}_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$. Indeed, this provides a map $h: G \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ such that for all $1 \leq i \leq k$, $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto h(v_i) \models \psi_i(x)$, and $d_{\mathfrak{A}}(h(v_i), h(v_j)) > 2r$ whenever $i \neq j$, i.e., $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$.

To find such a representative vector, let us prove a stronger result: for all $G \in M$, there exists $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $G \leq \mathbb{G}_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$.

Let us write $M = \{S_1, \dots, S_n\}$ where each S_i is repeated $m_i \leq k(k-1)$ times. By definition of Θ_R^M , there exists a sequence of points $b_i^j \in A$ with $1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m_i$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto b_i^j &\models \text{Security}_R^{P_r}(x) \\ \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto b_i^j &\models \bigwedge_{G \in S_i} \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(x) \\ \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto b_i^j &\models \bigwedge_{G \notin S_i} \neg \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(x) \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, for all fixed $1 \leq i \leq n$ the points b_i^j for $1 \leq j \leq m_i$ are at pairwise distance greater than $6R$.

Let us now prove that the points b_i^j are at pairwise distance greater than $2R$ when i varies. Assume by contradiction that there exists i, j and i', j' such that $i \neq i'$ and $d(b_i^j, b_{i'}^{j'}) \leq 2R$. Because of [Lemma 4.2.34](#), for all $G \in S_i \cup S_{i'}$, $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto b_i^j, y \mapsto b_{i'}^{j'} \models \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(x) \iff \text{Diagram}_G^{P_r, R}(y)$. This clearly implies $S_i = S_{i'}$, which is absurd.

Now that we have the guarantee that the elements b_i^j are far enough from each other, let us leverage the definition of $\text{obt}(M)$ and [Fact 4.2.32](#) to find a representative for every template graph if $\text{obt}(M)$.

Formally, we prove by induction on the definition of $\text{obt}(M)$, that for all $G \in \text{obt}(M)$, there exists $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $G \leq \mathbb{G}_R^{P_r}(\mathfrak{A}, \vec{a})$. The base case being trivial and the induction hypothesis holds because the R -neighbourhoods around the points b_i^j do not intersect, hence [Fact 4.2.32](#) applies. ■

Having completed the last step of our translation from **existential local sentences** to positive Boolean combinations of **basic local sentences**, let us restate the main theorem of [Section 4.2](#) ([A Positive Locality Theorem](#)), namely [Theorem 4.2.2](#) on page 75.

Theorem 4.2.2. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be a class of structures and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be a first-order sentence. Then, the following properties are equivalent:*

1. φ is equivalent over \mathcal{C} to an *existential local sentence*
2. φ is equivalent over \mathcal{C} to a *positive Boolean combination of basic local sentences*, which we call a *positive Gaifman normal form*.

Proof. This follows from Lemmas 4.2.9, 4.2.20 and 4.2.38 ■

Discussion. As mentioned at the beginning of the section, the combinatorics involved in proving Theorem 4.2.2 are similar to the *existential Gaifman normal form* stated in Theorem 4.2.4 and introduced in [55, Theorem 2]. Let us recall that an *existential basic local sentence* is a sentence of the form $\exists_{\geq r}^n x. \psi(x)$ for some $\psi(x)$ that is both an *existential formula* and an *r -local formula*.¹⁷

Since an *existential sentence* is in particular an *existential local sentence*, one would hope that a connection between Theorem 4.2.2 and Theorem 4.2.4 would exist. However, one cannot deduce the existence of the *existential Gaifman normal form* from a simple application of Theorem 4.2.2, since Lemma 4.2.38 does not produce *existential basic local sentences* when given an *existential sentence* as input. Already, the sentence $\text{Diagram}_R^{P_{r,G}}$ introduced in Lemma 4.2.31 contains a universal quantifier, and this is also true of *Security* and Θ_R^M respectively introduced in Definitions 4.2.33 and 4.2.35

Conversely, it does not seem that the existence of an *existential Gaifman normal form* for *existential sentences* implies Theorem 4.2.2 in any meaningful way¹⁸. Furthermore, we would like to point out that there are *existential basic local sentences* that are clearly not expressible using *existential sentences*¹⁹.

[55]: Grohe and Wöhrle (2004), ‘An existential locality theorem’

17: Remark that if $\psi(\vec{x}) \in \text{EFO}$, then its localisation $|\psi|_r^{\vec{x}} \in \text{EFO}$ too.

18: That is, apart from noticing that both are true, hence equivalent statements.

19: For instance, the sentence $\exists_{\geq 2}^2 x. \top$ stating that two points are at distance greater than 2.

4.3. An Existential Local Preservation Theorem

As shown in Figure 4.1 the two results of Corollary 4.2.1 and Theorem 4.2.2 presented in Section 4.2 (A Positive Locality Theorem) are fitting a nice picture where a semantic property (preservation under *local elementary embeddings*) coincide with both a syntactic fragment (*existential local sentences*) and a variant of the *Gaifman normal form* (*positive Gaifman normal form*).

Because Theorem 4.2.2 holds on any class \mathcal{C} of structures, and because *basic local sentences* are quite simple, one might be hoping to prove that Corollary 4.2.1 relativises to at least $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. As a direct application, one would obtain a new way to prove that *preservation theorems* for classes of finite structures, using this *positive Gaifman normal form* as a starting point.

Recall that we write $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k)$ for the collection of *r -neighbourhoods* of tuples of length at most k \mathfrak{A} . Furthermore, the notation is extended to classes of structures, so that $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ is the collection of *r -neighbourhoods* of tuples of length at most k inside some structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$.

Before going further into the analysis of [Corollary 4.2.1](#) in the finite, let us describe the semantic properties of [existential local sentences](#). The main idea is that [existential local sentences](#) check the presence of a certain [r-local neighbourhood](#) inside structures. Because an [existential local sentence](#) is written in [FO](#), it cannot check the isomorphism of such [local neighbourhoods](#). Therefore, we will not be interested in the local behaviours [Local](#)(\mathfrak{A}, r, k), but their equivalence classes up to formulas of a certain quantifier rank.

Definition 4.3.1. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), \mathfrak{A} be a structure, and \vec{a} be a tuple of elements from \mathfrak{A} . Let us write $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$ for the (q, r) -local type of \vec{a} , that is, the set of all formulas of quantifier rank at most q with at most $|\vec{a}|$ free variables that are r -local, and such that $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$.

Note that there are only finitely many possible local types for a given pair $(q, r) \in \mathbb{N}^2$ and a given number of variables $|\vec{a}|$. Therefore, given a structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, one can describe the local behaviour of \mathfrak{A} using the following finite set of local-types:

$$\text{Types}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) : \vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k} \}. \quad (4.4)$$

We will now reformulate the notion of r -local elementary embedding, that is the semantic property of [existential local sentences](#) in terms of (q, r) -local types as follows.

Definition 4.3.2. Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, $r, q, k \geq 0$. We say that $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$ if and only if for every $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$, there exists a tuple $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{B}$ such that \vec{a} and \vec{b} have the same the (q, r) -local types, i.e., $\text{Types}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A}) \subseteq \text{Types}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{B})$.

We generalise the definition to unbounded parameters r, q, k as follows:

$$\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{\infty, \infty} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{r \geq 0} \bigcap_{q \geq 0} \bigcap_{k \geq 0} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k}. \quad (4.5)$$

As a sanity check, [existential local sentences](#) are preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{\infty, \infty}$, and one can relate the [quantifier rank](#), locality radius, and number of outer existential variables of a given [existential local sentence](#) to the least $k, q, r \geq 0$ such that said sentence is preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$. This is formally stated in [Fact 4.3.3](#).

Fact 4.3.3. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$. Let $r, q, k \geq 0$, and $\phi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$. The following are equivalent:

1. ϕ is equivalent (over \mathcal{C}) to an [existential local sentence](#) $\exists \vec{x}. \psi(x)$ where $|\vec{x}| \leq k$, ψ has [quantifier rank](#) at most q , and ψ is r -local;
2. ϕ is preserved (over \mathcal{C}) under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$, i.e., whenever $\mathfrak{A} \models \phi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$, then $\mathfrak{B} \models \phi$.

To get a better grasp of this family of quasi-orders, let us first note

a few facts and play a bit with the definition over carefully selected examples. First, [Fact 4.3.4](#) demonstrates that increasing the parameters unsurprisingly refines the quasi-orders, i.e., that $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ gets finer as r, q, k increase. Second, we show in [Example 4.3.7](#) that the relation $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$ is indeed strictly coarser than checking the inclusion $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k) \subseteq \text{Local}(\mathfrak{B}, r, k)$. Finally, we illustrate in [Fact 4.3.6](#) the connection between our local quasi-orders and disjoint unions of finite structures.

Fact 4.3.4. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, and let $r \leq r'$, $q \leq q'$, and $k \leq k'$ be integers. Then, $\Rightarrow_{q'}^{r',k'} \subseteq \Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ as relations over \mathcal{C} .

Proof. Assume that $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{q'}^{r',k'} \mathfrak{B}$. Let $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) \in \text{Types}_{r,k}^q(\mathfrak{A})$. In particular, $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ has size $k \leq k'$, hence $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^{q'}(\vec{a}, r') \in \text{Types}_{r',k'}^{q'}(\mathfrak{A})$. By assumption, this provides a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{B}$ of length at most k' such that $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^{q'}(\vec{a}, r') = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^{q'}(\vec{b}, r')$.

Now, it is quite clear that it implies $|\vec{a}| = |\vec{b}| = k$. Furthermore, $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$ is completely determined²⁰ by $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^{q'}(\vec{a}, r')$ (and similarly for \vec{b}). As a consequence, $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^q(\vec{b}, r)$. ■

20: as the set of all r -local formulas with quantifier rank at most q in $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^{q'}(\vec{a}, r')$.

Example 4.3.5. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, and $r, q \in \mathbb{N}$. Then, $\Rightarrow_q^{0,\infty}, \Rightarrow_0^{r,\infty}$, and \subseteq_i are the same relations over \mathcal{C} .

Proof. Let us first prove that the locality based ordering imply \subseteq_i . Leveraging [Lemma 3.2.8](#), it suffices to prove that if $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_0^{0,\infty} \mathfrak{B}$, then $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap \text{EFO} \subseteq \text{Th}(\mathfrak{B}) \cap \text{EFO}$.

Let us consider $\varphi \in \text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap \text{EFO}$. Then, $\varphi = \exists \vec{x}. \psi(\vec{x})$ where ψ is quantifier-free. In particular, there is a tuple $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ that witnesses the truth of φ . Because $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_0^{0,|\vec{a}|} \mathfrak{B}$, there exists $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{B}$ such that $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^0(\vec{a}, 0) = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^0(\vec{b}, 0)$.

In particular, $\psi(\vec{x}) \in \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^0(\vec{b}, 0)$, and we conclude that $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$.

For the converse inclusion, assume that $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$, and in particular, let us call $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ the associated QF-embedding. Let us prove that $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_0^{r,\infty} \mathfrak{B}$, and that $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{0,\infty} \mathfrak{B}$. Let $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, 0) \in \text{Types}_0^{q,|\vec{a}|}(\mathfrak{A})$. We claim that $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, 0) = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^q(h(\vec{a}), 0)$.

This holds because a 0-local formula is equivalent to an existential formula. Similarly, a quantifier-free r -local formula is in fact, just a quantifier-free formula. ■

Fact 4.3.6. Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. The following are equivalent:

1. $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\infty}^{\infty,\infty} \mathfrak{B}$;
2. For all $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k) \subseteq \text{Local}(\mathfrak{B}, r, k)$;
3. There exists $\mathfrak{C} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, such that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C} = \mathfrak{B}$.

21: The following computations are only restating formally that a local formula only depends on the local behaviour of a structure, and that the local behaviour of the disjoint union is the disjoint union of the local behaviours.

22: This is a [diagram sentence](#) for the full [FO](#) fragment.

Proof. Let us first prove that [Item 3](#) implies [Item 1](#). Let $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^k$, then $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{B} = \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C}$. Furthermore, it is an easy check that $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$. Indeed,²¹ given an r -local formula $\varphi(\vec{x})$ the following are equivalent:

- $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$,
- $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r), \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$,
- $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C}}(\vec{a}, r), \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$, and
- $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \varphi(\vec{x})$.

Now, let us prove that [Item 1](#) implies [Item 2](#). Let $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^k$. Because \mathfrak{A} is finite, so is $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$. Hence, one can construct²² a [first order sentence](#) φ such that $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$ if and only if $\mathfrak{B} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$. By definition, $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r$. Hence, $|\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r \in \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$ for some $q \in \mathbb{N}$. Because $\mathfrak{A} \xrightarrow{\infty, \infty} \mathfrak{B}$, there exists a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{B}^k$ such that $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^q(\vec{b}, r)$. In particular, $|\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r \in \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^q(\vec{b}, r)$. This proves that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, r) = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$, and we have concluded.

Finally, let us prove that [Item 2](#) implies [Item 3](#). Because \mathfrak{A} is finite, $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, |\mathfrak{A}|, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1)$. By assumption, there exists a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{B}$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1) = \mathfrak{A}$. Let us conclude by showing that $\mathfrak{B} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1) \uplus [\mathfrak{B} \setminus \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1)]$. Assume by contradiction that there exists $c_1 \in \mathfrak{B} \setminus \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1)$, and $c_2 \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1)$, such that (c_1, c_2) are neighbours in \mathfrak{B} . Notice that every point of $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1)$ is actually at distance at most $|\mathfrak{A}|$ from \vec{b} (because this holds for \mathfrak{A} itself). Hence, $c_2 \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}|)$. This proves that $c_1 \in \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, |\mathfrak{A}| + 1)$, but this is absurd. ■

Example 4.3.7. Let $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$. Recall that $P_n \in \text{Paths}$ is a path of size n , and $C_m \in \text{Cycles}$ is a cycle of size m . Assume moreover that $m \leq k(2r + 1) < n$ and $k < m$. Then, $\text{Local}(C_m, r, k) \not\subseteq \text{Local}(P_n, r, k)$. However, $C_m \xrightarrow{r, k}_0 P_n$.

Proof Sketch. Let us notice that whenever $m \leq k(2r + 1)$, C_m is inside $\text{Local}(C_m, r, k)$. As $\text{Local}(P_n, r, k)$ contains only finite paths, this proves the non-inclusion of local neighbourhoods.

To prove that $C_m \xrightarrow{r, k}_0 P_n$, let us consider a vector \vec{a} of k points in C_m . The local type $\text{tp}_{C_m}^0(\vec{a}, r)$ is the collection of [quantifier free](#) formulas with k variables that hold in \vec{a} , which essentially describes a finite disjoint unions of paths. Because $k < m \leq k(2r + 1) < n$, it is an easy check that $\text{tp}_{C_m}^0(\vec{a}, r) \in \text{Types}_{r, k}^{q, k}(P_n)$. ■

Let us summarise all the results about infinite structures that we have obtained so far in the following proposition, which refines [Figure 4.1](#).

Proposition 4.3.8. *Let φ be a sentence in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$. The following properties are equivalent over the class $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ of all structures.*

1. φ is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of [basic local sentences](#).
2. φ is equivalent to an [existential local sentence](#).

3. There exists $r, q, k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$.
4. φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty, \infty}$.
5. φ is preserved under *local elementary embeddings*.

Proof. The equivalence between Item 1 and Item 2 is exactly Theorem 4.2.2. The equivalence between Items 2 and 5 follows from Corollary 4.2.1. The equivalence between Items 2 and 3 follows from Fact 4.3.3. Finally, remark that Item 3 implies Item 4, which itself implies Item 5, hence all of the above are equivalent to Item 2. ■

The connection between Proposition 4.3.8 and preservation theorems²³ might seem tenuous. Let us explain why the two are deeply connected in the case of the Łoś-Tarski Theorem. As proven by Tait, the Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. However, a combinatorial proof of Atserias, Dawar and Grohe shows that for hereditary classes of finite structures \mathcal{C} that have bounded degree, and that are closed under disjoint unions, the Łoś-Tarski theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} . As per our Example 4.1.16, the proof uses the Gaifman Locality Theorem, and one of the main obstacles to overcome is the presence of negations in this normal form. If Proposition 4.3.8 were to relativise in the finite, this would greatly simplify the proof of this result, and potentially allows us to weaken the hypotheses.

23: See Theorem 3.1.9 p. 33

First, the fine semantic characterisations of the existential local sentences and positive Gaifman normal forms remain true in the finite, as depicted in Proposition 4.3.9 hereafter. Moreover, the coarse semantic characterisations of existential local sentences are intimately related to disjoint unions, as shown right after in Proposition 4.3.10.

Proposition 4.3.9. *Let φ be a sentence in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. The following properties are equivalent over \mathcal{C} :*

1. φ is equivalent to a positive Boolean combination of *basic local sentences*.
2. φ is equivalent to an *existential local sentence*.
3. There exists $r, q, k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$.

Proof. The equivalence between the first two items follows from Theorem 4.2.2, while the equivalence between the last two items follows from Fact 4.3.3. ■

Proposition 4.3.10. *Let φ be a sentence in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. The following properties are equivalent over \mathcal{C} :*

1. φ is preserved under *local elementary embeddings*;
2. φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty, \infty}$.
3. φ is *preserved under disjoint unions*, i.e., if $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C} \in \mathcal{C}$, then $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{C} \models \varphi$;

Proof. The equivalence between the last two items is simply Fact 4.3.6. The equivalence between the first two items follows from Lemma 3.2.8 and the fact that if $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\infty, \infty} \mathfrak{B}$, then $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A}) \cap \text{EFO} \subseteq \text{Th}(\mathfrak{B}) \cap \text{EFO}$. ■

[6]: Atserias, Dawar and Grohe (2008), ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’

However, Proposition 4.3.8 does not *relativise* to finite structures: we show in Subsection 4.3.1 that Items 2 and 5 of Proposition 4.3.8 are not equivalent in the finite.

This seemingly puts an end to the attempted generalisation of [6], and naturally leads to a decision problem: given a sentence φ *preserved under disjoint unions* over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, can it be rewritten as an existential local sentence? We prove in Subsection 4.3.2 that this problem, and two other associated decision problems, are undecidable. This follows the line of negative results on preservation theorems in the finite [16, 66].

In order to understand why the proof of [6] works, while the *FOLoc-preservation theorem* does not *relativise*, we then carry out a fine-grained analysis of the local quasi-orders $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$. This analysis is performed in Subsection 4.3.3 and classifies the tuple of parameters (r, q, k) such that first-order sentences preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ are equivalent to an existential local sentence. It turns out that perseverance is a great quality, as this section conclude with an open question: what happens for $\Rightarrow_0^{0,\infty}$? A question interesting enough that Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem) is devoted to answering it.

4.3.1. Failure in the finite

In this subsection, our goal is to prove that Items 2 and 5 of Proposition 4.3.8 are not equivalent in the finite. This is what will be shown in Theorem 4.3.21 on page 106.

The main idea will be to use Fact 4.3.6, which characterises preservation under *local elementary embeddings* as *preservation under disjoint unions* in the finite.

To that end, let us define *2CC* as the set of finite structures whose *Gaifman graph* has at least two connected components (i.e., is disconnected).

The proof scheme will be the following:

1. First, provide a generic non-*relativisation* proof over classes $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, under the assumption that *2CC* is *first-order definable* over the class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$.²⁴ This is Lemma 4.3.12 on page 100.
2. Then, show that one can provide a finite list of *universal local sentences* that axiomatise a class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, where *2CC* is easily seen to be *first-order definable*. These are Lemmas 4.3.16, 4.3.18 and 4.3.19 on pages 101–103.
3. Finally, lift this non-equivalence to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. This is handled in Lemma 4.3.20 on page 105

A Generic Counter Example. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ where *2CC* is *first-order definable*, and assume that a unary predicate B is available in σ . It is then possible to define

$$\phi_{\text{bad}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [\forall x. \neg B(x)] \vee \text{2CC} \quad .$$

24: A set S is first order definable over a class \mathcal{C} when $S \subseteq \mathcal{C}$, and there exists a sentence $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ such that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = S$, i.e., $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket \cap \mathcal{C} = S \cap \mathcal{C} = S$.

By definition, ϕ_{bad} is **preserved under disjoint unions** over \mathcal{C} .

What remains to be proven is that whenever the class \mathcal{C} contains large enough structures, ϕ_{bad} cannot be expressed using an existential local sentence. The intuition behind this statement is that such an existential local sentence will not distinguish between a large connected component with one B node (not satisfying ϕ_{bad}) and two connected components with one B node (satisfying ϕ_{bad}). A prototypical example built using finite path is presented in [Example 4.3.11](#) to understand the proof in a very simple setting.

In order to build examples and non-examples, we will have to produce classes of finite structures that are **hereditary**, but also **closed under disjoint unions**. For the former, one can always consider the **downward closure** $\downarrow_{\leq} \mathcal{C}$, but we lack a similar closure operation for disjoint unions. Let us therefore introduce $\uplus \mathcal{C}$ for the closure of \mathcal{C} under disjoint unions inside $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. That is, $\uplus \mathcal{C}$ is the collection of finite disjoint unions of structures in \mathcal{C} .

Example 4.3.11. Let $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \uplus \text{Paths})$ be the class of disjoint unions of finite $\{B, \neg B\}$ -labelled paths. Then, 2CC is **first-order definable**, ϕ_{bad} is **preserved under disjoint unions**, and ϕ_{bad} is not expressible as an **existential local sentence** over $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \uplus \text{Paths})$.

Recall that we introduced the notion of **labelling** of structures in [Subsection 3.3.1](#). The notation $\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C})$ stands for the structures of \mathcal{C} freely coloured using elements of L as unary predicates.

Proof. One can detect the presence of two connected components using the fact that paths have at most two vertices of degree below 2, through the disjunction of the following sentences:

- Two distinct paths:

$$\exists x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4. \bigwedge_{1 \leq i \neq j \leq 4} x_i \neq x_j \wedge \bigwedge_{i=1}^4 (\deg(x_i) = 1) \quad ,$$

- Two isolated vertices:

$$\exists x_1, x_2. (x_1 \neq x_2 \wedge \deg(x_1) = \deg(x_2) = 0) \quad ,$$

- One path and one isolated vertex:

$$\begin{aligned} & \exists x_1, x_2, x_3. \\ & x_1 \neq x_2 \wedge x_2 \neq x_3 \wedge x_3 \neq x_1 \wedge \\ & \deg(x_1) = \deg(x_2) = 1 \wedge \deg(x_3) = 0 \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Assume by contradiction that there exists a sentence $\psi = \exists \vec{x}. \theta(x)$ where $\theta(x)$ is an r -local sentence of quantifier rank q such that ϕ_{bad} is equivalent to ψ over $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \uplus \text{Paths})$. Consider the family of structures P_k^{-B} that are paths of length k coloured by $\neg B$. It is clear that $P_k^{-B} \models \phi_{\text{bad}}$ for all $k \geq 1$. Consider $k > |\vec{x}| \cdot (2r + 1)$. Since $P_k^{-B} \models \psi$, there exists a valuation $\mathbf{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow P_k^{-B}$, such that $\mathcal{N}_{P_k^{-B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r), \mathbf{v} \models \theta(x)$ and $\mathcal{N}_{P_k^{-B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r) \subsetneq P_k^{-B}$. Consider a point $b \in P_k^{-B}$ that is not in $\mathcal{N}_{P_k^{-B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r)$, and build P_k^B as a copy of P_k^{-B} , except that b is coloured by B instead of $\neg B$. The structure P_k^B belongs to $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \uplus \text{Paths})$, and does not satisfy ϕ_{bad} . However, $P_k^B, \mathbf{v} \models \theta(\vec{x})$, thus $P_k^B \models \psi$, which is absurd. ■

It is not hard to generalise the proof of [Example 4.3.11](#) to other classes of structures, provided that they contain some structures “large enough” to not be covered by a finite number of [local neighbourhoods](#).

Lemma 4.3.12. *Let σ be a finite relational signature, $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a class of finite structures. Assume moreover that [2CC](#) is [first-order definable](#) over \mathcal{C} , and that for all $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists a structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that for all $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k}$, $\mathfrak{A} \setminus \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \neq \emptyset$. Then,*

- (i) Φ_{bad} is [first-order definable](#) over $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \mathcal{C})$,
- (ii) Φ_{bad} is [preserved under disjoint unions](#) over $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \mathcal{C})$,
- (iii) and Φ_{bad} is not equivalent to any [existential local sentence](#) over $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \mathcal{C})$.

Proof. The first two items follow from the definition of Φ_{bad} .

For the third point, assume by contradiction that there exists a sentence $\psi = \exists \vec{x}. \theta(x)$ where $\theta(x)$ is an r -local sentence such that Φ_{bad} is equivalent to ψ over $\text{Lab}(\{B\}, \mathcal{C})$.

Consider $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that for all $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{\leq k}$, $\mathfrak{A} \setminus \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \neq \emptyset$. Let us write \mathfrak{A}^{-B} to be the model \mathfrak{A} where all elements are coloured with $\neg B$. By construction, \mathfrak{A}^{-B} satisfies Φ_{bad} . Since $\mathfrak{A}^{-B} \models \psi$, there exists a valuation $\nu: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}^{-B}$, such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}^{-B}}(\nu(\vec{x}), r), \nu \models \theta(x)$.

By construction, there exists a point $b \in \mathfrak{A}^{-B} \setminus \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}^{-B}}(\nu(\vec{x}), r)$. Defining \mathfrak{A}^B to be the copy of \mathfrak{A} where all points except b are coloured with $\neg B$, we obtain a structure that satisfies ψ by construction, but does not satisfy Φ_{bad} , which is absurd. ■

Axiomatising A Bad Subclass. Note that the class $\oplus\text{Paths}$ disjoint unions of finite paths has no finite axiomatisation in $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. Thus, [Example 4.3.11](#) cannot be taken as a class to follow [Item 2](#) of the proof scheme outlined on page 98.

As a workaround, we find some inspiration in counter example provided by [90] in the case of [Łoś-Tarski’s preservation theorem](#), and leverage the idea given by the class of finite paths.²⁵ Before providing a concrete axiomatisation, let us semantically define the class of interest. The basic building bloc generalises paths by considering finite total orderings in [Definition 4.3.13](#). This total ordering will allow us to define complex sentences, but all nodes are at distance at most one. To avoid this problem, we introduce in [Definition 4.3.14](#) the “glueing” of such total orders, so that the new structures exhibit complex neighbourhoods.

Definition 4.3.13. *Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(\leq, 2), (S, 2), (E, 2)\}$. Define \mathcal{O}_n to be the structure with domain $\{1, \dots, n\}$, S interpreted as the successor relation, \leq as the usual ordering of natural numbers, and E the empty relation.*

[90]: Tait (1959), ‘A counterexample to a conjecture of Scott and Suppes’

25: Recall that the counter example of Tait was restated in [Theorem 3.2.6](#) on page 39.

Definition 4.3.14. Given a strictly increasing sequence of natural numbers $2 \leq n_1 < \dots < n_k$ (with $k \geq 1$) one can build a structure denoted by $\langle O_{n_1} + \dots + O_{n_k} \rangle$ by extending the disjoint union $\bigsqcup_{1 \leq i \leq k} O_{n_i}$ with new relations. We add the relations $S(a, b)$ whenever a is the last element of O_{n_i} and b the first of $O_{n_{i+1}}$, and $E(a, b)$ whenever $a \in O_{n_i}$, $b \in O_{n_{i+1}}$ and b is below a when interpreted as integers.

A graphical representation of O_4 is given in Figure 4.10, and similarly a representation of $\langle O_2 + \dots + O_5 \rangle$ is given in Figure 4.11.

Definition 4.3.15. We define then \mathcal{C}_{ord} to be the class of finite disjoint unions of structures of the form $\langle O_m + \dots + O_n \rangle$, with $2 \leq m \leq n$.

Because \mathcal{C}_{ord} essentially behaves as a union of paths, it is quite easy to define 2CC , following the same intuitions as for unions of finite paths.

Lemma 4.3.16. The property 2CC is first-order definable in \mathcal{C}_{ord} .

Proof. Define $2\text{CC} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists x_1, x_2. x_1 \neq x_2 \wedge \forall y. \neg S(y, x_1) \wedge \neg S(y, x_2)$. Remark that this definition is not only in **FO**, but also **existential local**, preserved under $\Rightarrow_1^{\infty, 2}$, and preserved under $\Rightarrow_\infty^{1, 2}$. This is not important right now, but will be crucial in Subsection 4.3.3 on page 109. ■

Corollary 4.3.17. There exists a first order sentence that is preserved under disjoint unions over \mathcal{C}_{ord} but not equivalent to any existential local sentence over \mathcal{C}_{ord} .

Proof. It suffices to apply Lemma 4.3.12 to conclude. For that, let $k, r \in \mathbb{N}$. Define $r' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2k \cdot (2r + 1) + 2$. Then, the structure $\langle O_2 +$

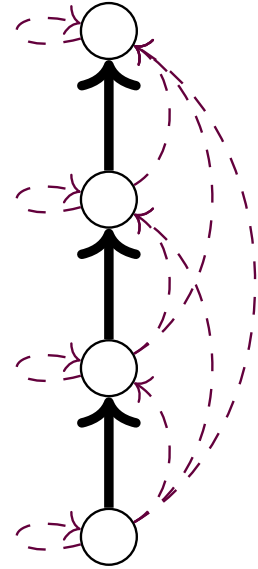
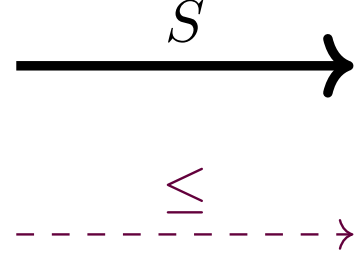


Figure 4.10.: The structure O_4 .

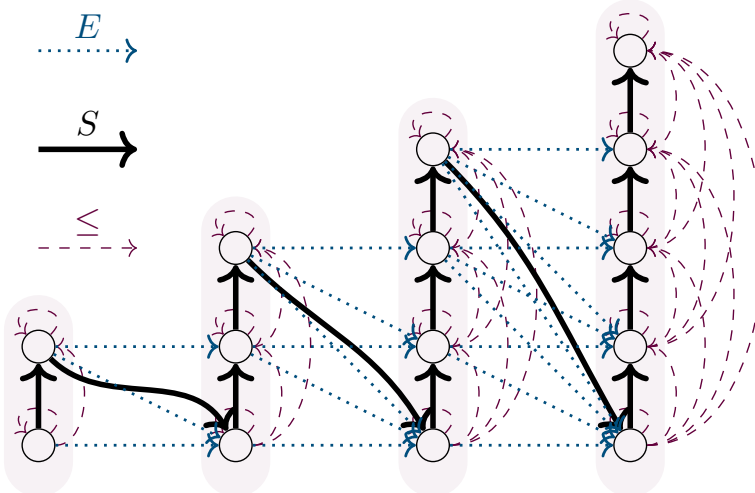


Figure 4.11.: The structure $\langle O_2 + \dots + O_5 \rangle$.

$\dots + O_{r'}\rangle$ satisfies that for every \vec{a} of size at most k , $\langle O_2 + \dots + O_{r'}\rangle \setminus \mathcal{N}_{(O_2+\dots+O_{r'})}(\vec{a}, r) \neq \emptyset$. ■

Let us now propose an axiomatisation of \mathcal{C}_{ord} . To simplify notations, let us consider for a structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ the structure (\mathfrak{A}, \leq) to be the structure \mathfrak{A} without the relations S and E . Using this convention, a \leq -component of a structure \mathfrak{A} is defined as a connected component of the Gaifman Graph $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A}, \leq)$.

We introduce in Figure 4.12 a list \mathcal{A}_{ord} of axioms that characterises \mathcal{C}_{ord} . The goal of the rest of this section is to prove that $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)} = \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$.

We start by noticing that \leq -components are total orderings, i.e., that \leq is transitive, reflexive and antisymmetric (Axioms 1 to 3). Moreover, the \leq -components have size at least 2 (Axiom 4). Furthermore, S is an injective partial function without fixed points (Axioms 5 to 7). Also, S and \leq cannot conflict (Axiom 8). There exists a proto-induction principle via (Axiom 9).

In order to characterise how \leq -components are connected via S and E , we notice the following properties. First, edges E can be factorised inside $(\leq)(S \setminus \leq)(\leq)$ (Axiom 10). Pre-images through E form a suffix of the ordering defined by S inside a \leq -component (Axiom 11). Images through E form a prefix of the S ordering inside a \leq -component (Axiom 12). Images through E are strictly increasing subsets (Axiom 13). Pre-images through E are strictly decreasing (Axiom 14). The last element for S of a \leq -component cannot be obtained as an image through E (Axiom 15). The relation $(\leq)(S \setminus \leq)$ is included in E (Axiom 16).

The following Lemma 4.3.18 is a simple check that we only witnessed true axioms and is quite boring. We propose that its proof is skipped and that the reader moves directly to the more interesting converse inclusion in Lemma 4.3.19 on the facing page.

Lemma 4.3.18. *The following inclusion holds: $\mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}} \subseteq \llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$.*

Proof. Before listing the axioms in \mathcal{A}_{ord} , notice that it suffices to prove that connected structures in \mathcal{C}_{ord} satisfies \mathcal{A}_{ord} as they are closed under disjoint unions of models. This is because the universal and existential quantifications in every axiom are guarded by the presence of a relation.

Let \mathfrak{A} be a connected structure in \mathcal{C}_{ord} , that is $\mathfrak{A} = \langle O_{n_1} + \dots + O_{n_k} \rangle$ with $2 \leq n_1 < \dots < n_k$.

1. Axioms 1 to 3 hold over each O_i , hence they remain true over their disjoint unions.
2. Axiom 4 holds because for all $1 \leq i \leq k$, $2 \leq n_k$.
3. Axioms 5 to 7 hold for every O_{n_i} . Furthermore, the maximal element of O_{n_i} is connected through S to the minimal element of $O_{n_{i+1}}$. Hence, the properties are true for \mathfrak{A} .
4. Axioms 8 and 9 hold because S is the successor relation over each O_{n_i} .

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{Ax. 1 } \frac{a \leq b \quad b \leq c}{a \leq c} \quad \text{Ax. 2 } \frac{}{a \leq a} \quad \text{Ax. 3 } \frac{a \leq b \quad b \leq a}{a = b} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 4 } \frac{}{\exists b.(a \neq b) \wedge (a \leq b \vee b \leq a)} \quad \text{Ax. 5 } \frac{S(a, b) \quad S(a, c)}{b = c} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 6 } \frac{S(a, c) \quad S(b, c)}{a = b} \quad \text{Ax. 7 } \frac{}{\neg S(a, a)} \quad \text{Ax. 8 } \frac{}{\neg(S(a, b) \wedge b \leq a)} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 9 } \frac{a \neq b \quad a \leq b}{\exists c.S(a, c) \wedge a \leq c \wedge c \leq b} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 10 } \frac{E(a, b)}{\exists c_1, c_2. a \leq c_1 \wedge S(c_1, c_2) \wedge \neg(c_1 \leq c_2) \wedge c_2 \leq b} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 11 } \frac{a \leq b \quad E(a, c) \quad S(a, b)}{E(b, c)} \quad \text{Ax. 12 } \frac{b \leq c \quad E(a, c) \quad S(b, c)}{E(a, b)} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 13 } \frac{S(a, b) \quad a \leq b \quad \exists c. E(b, c)}{\exists c. E(b, c) \wedge \neg E(a, b)} \quad \text{Ax. 14 } \frac{S(a, b) \quad a \leq b \quad \exists c. E(c, a)}{\exists c. E(c, a) \wedge \neg E(c, b)} \\
\\
\text{Ax. 15 } \frac{E(a, b)}{\exists c. S(b, c) \wedge b \leq c} \quad \text{Ax. 16 } \frac{}{\exists c. a \leq c \wedge S(c, b) \wedge \neg(c \leq b) \Rightarrow E(a, b)}
\end{array}$$

Figure 4.12.: The axioms of \mathcal{A}_{ord} . For the axioms to be clearer, they are written as inference rules, and outer universal quantifications are omitted. For instance, [Axiom 2](#) is representing the [universal local sentence](#) $\forall a. a \leq a$. We grouped the axioms to be easily understandable. For instance, [Axioms 1](#) to [3](#) state that \leq is a transitive, antisymmetric, reflexive relation, while [Axioms 5](#) to [7](#) state that S is an injective function without fixed points. However, this construction implies that some axioms are redundant: [Axiom 7](#) is a consequence of [Axiom 2](#) and [Axiom 8](#).

5. [Axiom 10](#) holds because edges E between O_{n_i} and O_{n_j} only appear if $j = i + 1$ and the maximal element of O_{n_i} for \leq is connected through S to the minimal element of O_{n_j} for \leq .
6. [Axioms 11](#) to [15](#) hold because edges $E(a, b)$ between O_{n_i} and O_{n_j} exists if and only if $a \leq b$ when considered as integers.
7. [Axiom 16](#) holds because edges $E(a, b)$ between O_{n_i} and O_{n_j} exists if and only if $a \leq b$ when considered as integers and O_{n_i} is of size n_i . ■

Now that we have checked that our axiomatisation \mathcal{A}_{ord} is sound, let us prove that it is complete, that is, the converse inclusion holds.

Lemma 4.3.19. *Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$. The following properties hold:*

1. *If \mathfrak{B} is a \leq -component of \mathfrak{A} then the substructure induced by \mathfrak{B} in \mathfrak{A} is isomorphic to a total ordering of size greater than two with no E relations, i.e., to some O_m with $m \geq 2$;*
2. *If \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are two \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} that are connected in \mathfrak{A} with the relation S , either the last element of \mathfrak{B}_1 is connected to the first one of \mathfrak{B}_2 or the last element of \mathfrak{B}_2 is connected to the first one of \mathfrak{B}_1 ;*
3. *If \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are two \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} connected through the relation E , then \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are connected through the relation S ;*

We invite the reader to consider the figure [Figure 4.11](#) to better follow the line of reasoning that will be taken.

4. If \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are two \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} connected through the relation S , the function $f: a \mapsto \max_{\leq} \{d: E(a, d)\}$ is a \leq -strictly increasing non-surjective function from \mathfrak{B}_1 to \mathfrak{B}_2 , mapping the \leq -minimal element of \mathfrak{B}_1 to the \leq -minimal of \mathfrak{B}_2 satisfying $f(S(a)) = S(f(a))$.
5. The connected components of $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$ are in \mathcal{C}_{ord} .

In particular, $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$.

Proof. Let \mathfrak{A} be a structure in $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$, without loss of generality, assume that the Gaifman graph of \mathfrak{A} has a single connected component.

Let us first prove [Item 1](#). Leveraging the “proto-induction axiom” [Axiom 9](#), one can use the fact that S is a partial injective function without fixed points ([Axioms 5 to 7](#)) to prove that whenever $a \leq b$ in \mathfrak{A} , there exists $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $S^k(a) = b$. Moreover, [Axiom 8](#) implies that for all $0 \leq i \leq k$, $a \leq S^i(a) \leq b$.

As a consequence, if $a \leq b_1$ and $a \leq b_2$, there exists $0 \leq k$ and $0 \leq l$ such that $S^k(a) = b_1$ and $S^l(a) = b_2$. Without loss of generality $k \leq l$ and $b_2 = S^{k-l}(b_1)$ and $b_1 \leq b_2$. Similarly, if $a_1 \leq b$ and $a_2 \leq b$ there exists $0 \leq k, l$ such that $S^k(a_1) = b$ and $S^l(a_2) = b$.

Combined with [Axioms 1 to 3](#), this proves that \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} are totally ordered for \leq , and the partial function S restricted to these \leq -components is the successor relation for \leq . Furthermore, [Axiom 4](#) proves that \leq -components have size at least 2.

Finally, assume by contradiction that some \leq -component of \mathfrak{A} contains a relation $E(a, b)$. Notice that [Axiom 10](#) provides c_1, c_2 such that $a \leq c_1$, $S(c_1, c_2)$, $c_2 \leq b$, and $\neg(c_1 \leq c_2)$. This is absurd since the \leq -component is a total ordering, where $S(c_1, c_2)$ and $c_2 \leq c_1$ are in conflict.

Let us now prove that [Item 2](#) holds. Assume \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are two \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} connected through the relation S . Because S is a partial injective function ([Axioms 5 to 7](#)) and is included in \leq inside each component, this can only happen by connecting an element that has no \leq -successor to an element that has no \leq -predecessor. As a consequence, it is only possible to connect the last element of \mathfrak{B}_1 to the first one of \mathfrak{B}_2 or vice-versa.

We are now ready to prove [Item 3](#). Assume that \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are two \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} connected through the relation E . By definition, there exists $a \in B_1$ and $b \in B_2$ such that $E(a, b)$ holds. [Axiom 10](#) provides c_1 and c_2 such that $a \leq c_1$, $S(c_1, c_2)$, $c_2 \leq b$ and $\neg(c_1 \leq c_2)$. As a consequence c_1 is in \mathfrak{B}_1 (connected to a through \leq), $c_2 \in \mathfrak{B}_2$ (connected to b through \leq) and therefore \mathfrak{B}_1 is connected to \mathfrak{B}_2 through the relation S .

Let us continue and prove [Item 4](#). Assume \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 are two \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} connected through the relation S . The function $g: a \mapsto \{b: E(a, b)\}$ from \mathfrak{B}_1 to $\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathfrak{B}_2)$ is well-defined since we proved that there cannot be edges E outside of \mathfrak{B}_2 . Remark that \mathfrak{B}_2 is a finite total ordering with respect to \leq and the image of g is non-empty thanks to [Axiom 16](#). Therefore, the function f is well-defined.

Whenever $a, b \in \mathfrak{B}_1$ and $S(a, b)$ holds, then $g(a) \subseteq g(b)$ by [Axiom 11](#) and thus $g(a) \subsetneq g(b)$ by [Axiom 13](#). Furthermore, [Axiom 12](#) that $g(a)$ is \leq -downwards closed in \mathfrak{B}_2 . As a consequence, f must be strictly increasing.

Similarly, by [Axioms 11](#) and [14](#), if $S(a, b)$ in \mathfrak{B}_1 , then $|g(a)| + 1 = |g(b)|$ and as a consequence $S(f(a)) = f(b)$. Indeed, $g(a) \subsetneq g(b)$; by contradiction, assume that there exists $c \neq d$ that are both in $g(b) \setminus g(a)$. Since $g(a)$ and $g(b)$ are downwards closed, we can assume without loss of generality that $S(c, d)$ holds. Then [Axiom 14](#) tells us that there exists e such that $E(e, c)$ holds but not $E(e, d)$. Because $\neg(b \leq e)$, and $\neg(e \leq a)$, this contradicts the assumption that b is the successor of a .

Finally, property [Axiom 15](#) states that g does not cover some last element of \mathfrak{B}_2 , which must be the \leq -max element by [Axiom 12](#). In particular, f is not surjective.

Let us now conclude by showing [Item 5](#). Recall that relations E can only appear between two \leq -components \mathfrak{B}_1 and \mathfrak{B}_2 . We have proven that $\mathfrak{B}_1, \mathfrak{B}_2$ are respectively isomorphic to O_{m_1} and O_{m_2} for some $m_1, m_2 \geq 2$. Let us write 0_1 and 0_2 their respective \leq -minimal elements. We showed that $f(S^k(0_1)) = S^k(0_2)$ whenever $S^k(0_1)$ is in \mathfrak{B}_1 . Moreover, if $a = S^k(0_1) \in \mathfrak{B}_1$ then $\{d: E(a, d)\} = \downarrow_{\leq} f(a) = \{S^l(0_2): l \leq k\}$. As a consequence, $|\mathfrak{B}_2| = m_2 > |\mathfrak{B}_1| = m_1$.

We have proven that a connected component of \mathfrak{A} is of the form $\langle O_{m_1} + \dots + O_{m_k} \rangle$, where k is the number of \leq -components of \mathfrak{A} , and $m_i \geq 2$ for all $1 \leq i \leq k$. Therefore, $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$. ■

Lifting Axiomatised Subclasses. Assume that \mathcal{C}_{ord} is a class of finite structures defined over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ through a finite axiomatisation \mathcal{A}_{ord} using [universal local sentences](#)²⁶. The following fact allows us to lift arguments over \mathcal{C}_{ord} to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

Lemma 4.3.20 (Relativisation to \mathcal{C}_{ord}). *Let $\varphi \in \text{FO}$. The sentence φ is equivalent over $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$ to an existential local sentence if and only if $\mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \Rightarrow \varphi$ is equivalent to an existential local sentence over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.*

Similarly, the sentence φ is preserved under disjoint unions over $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$ if and only if $\mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \Rightarrow \varphi$ is preserved under disjoint unions over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

Proof. It suffices to notice that $\neg(\mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}})$ is an existential local sentence, hence is preserved under disjoint unions.²⁷

As a consequence, if φ is equivalent over $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$ to an existential local sentence ψ , then $\varphi \vee \neg \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}}$ is equivalent over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ to $\psi \vee \neg \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}}$ which is existential local. Conversely, if $\varphi \vee \neg \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}}$ is equivalent to an existential local sentence ψ , then φ is equivalent to ψ over $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$.

The same arguments work for preservation under disjoint unions. ■

26: Recall that a [universal local sentence](#) is the negation of an [existential local sentence](#)

[Lemma 4.3.20](#) follows a more general pattern that will be described in [Chapter 6](#) ([Logically Presented Spaces](#)), where the relationship between classes satisfying preservation theorems is investigated in depth. In particular, one can generalise the lemma to various fragments F of FO and quasi-orderings \leq over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$.

27: Recall that on finite structures, being preserved under disjoint unions amounts to being preserved under local elementary embeddings, which is always true for an existential local sentence (see [Propositions 4.3.8](#) and [4.3.10](#)).

Through [Lemmas 4.3.18](#) and [4.3.19](#) we learn that \mathcal{C}_{ord} is [definable](#) using finitely many [universal local sentences](#). We can lift the counter example provided in [Lemma 4.3.12](#) using [Lemma 4.3.20](#).

Theorem 4.3.21. *Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ (B, 1); (S, 2); (E, 2); (\leq, 2) \}$. Then, the [FOLoc-preservation theorem](#) (re-introduced in [Corollary 4.2.1](#)) does not [relativise](#) to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.*

4.3.2. Undecidability

28: That is, we have positive and negative instances.

We have proven in [Theorem 4.3.21](#) that deciding whether a sentence preserved under [local elementary embeddings](#) is equivalent to an [existential local sentence](#) is a non-trivial problem in $\text{Fin}(\sigma)^{28}$. The goal of this subsection is to strengthen this result by proving that this problem is actually undecidable, which will be done in [Theorem 4.3.27](#) on page 108.

Because [Theorem 4.3.27](#) is proven by directly encoding the runs of a Turing machine, it can actually be slightly modified to conclude that two other decision problems are undecidable, respectively that the semantic property of being [preserved under disjoint unions](#) is undecidable (see [Theorem 4.3.28](#)), and that there exists no algorithm that, given a sentence φ produces an equivalent [existential local sentence](#) ψ , even under the promise that such a ψ exists (see [Theorem 4.3.29](#)).

29: We will represent configurations as words over the alphabet Σ starting with the symbol $\$$, padded to the right with blank symbols \square . The head of the machine is represented by a unary predicate q , that uniquely describes both the position of the head on the machine tape, together with its current state.

Coding a Universal Turing Machine. Let us fix for the remainder of this section a Universal Turing Machine \mathcal{U} over an alphabet Σ and with control states Q . We extend the signature of \mathcal{C}_{ord} with unary predicates $(q, 1)$ for $q \in Q$, $(P_a, 1)$ for $a \in \Sigma$, $(P_\$, 1)$ and $(P_\square, 1)$. This allows the encoding of configurations²⁹ of \mathcal{U} inside the \leq -components of structures in $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$. Without loss of generality, we assume that this Universal Turing Machine accepts only on a specific state $q_f^a \in Q$ and rejects only on a specific state $q_f^r \in Q$, those two states being the only ones with no possible forward transitions.

Given a structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$ and $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, we call $\mathbf{C}^{\leq}(a)$ the \leq -component of $a \in \mathfrak{A}$. This notation is handy because $\mathbf{C}^{\leq}(a)$ will also be the configuration of the encoded Turing Machine to which a belongs.

Since $\mathbf{C}^{\leq}(a)$ is exactly of the shape O_m for some $m \geq 2$, it is a total ordering of m elements with the successor relation. Because it is easily seen that one can check whether a total order represents a valid configuration, the following is left as an exercise.

Fact 4.3.22. There exists a 1-local formula $\theta_C(x)$ such that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$, for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \theta_C(x)$ if and only if $\mathbf{C}^{\leq}(a)$ represents a valid configuration of \mathcal{U} .

The only difficulty in representing runs of the machine \mathcal{U} is to map positions from one \leq -component to its successor. To that end, we exploit

the first-order definability of the function $f: a \mapsto \max_{\leq} \{ d: E(a, d) \}$ that links \leq -components.

Lemma 4.3.23. *There exists a 1-local formula $\theta_T^{\rightarrow}(x, y)$ such that for every structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$ and points $a, b \in \mathfrak{A}$ the following two properties are equivalent:*

1. *The \leq -components $C^{\leq}(a)$ and $C^{\leq}(b)$ are connected via the relation S , $C^{\leq}(a)$ represents a valid configuration of \mathcal{U} , $C^{\leq}(b)$ represents a valid configuration of \mathcal{U} , and the transition from $C^{\leq}(a)$ to $C^{\leq}(b)$ is a valid transition of \mathcal{U} .*
2. *$\mathfrak{A}, (a \mapsto x, b \mapsto y) \models \theta_T^{\rightarrow}(x, y)$.*

Proof Sketch. The only technical issue lies in relating the positions in the configuration $C^{\leq}(a)$ to positions in the configuration $C^{\leq}(b)$, which is done through the use of the function $f: a \mapsto \max_{\leq} \{ d: E(a, d) \}$, which is first-order definable as a 1-local formula as follows:

$$\phi_f(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} E(x, y) \wedge \forall z. y < z \Rightarrow \neg E(x, z) \quad .$$

As a shorthand, let us write $z \in C^{\leq}(x)$ instead of $z \leq x \vee x \leq z$.

Using the function f , one can for instance assert that every letter except those near the current position in the tape are left unchanged. To that end, one can first write a formula stating that the position of the head of the Turing Machine in $C^{\leq}(x)$ is not close to x itself as follows:

$$\phi_Q(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall z. (z \in C^{\leq}(x) \wedge (S(x, z) \vee S(z, x) \vee x = z)) \Rightarrow \bigwedge_{q \in Q} \neg q(x)$$

Using ϕ_f and ϕ_Q it is easy to write a formula stating that letters far from the head of the Turing Machine \mathcal{U} are unchanged in a transition:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(x, y) &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall z. z \in C^{\leq}(x) \wedge \phi_Q(z) \\ &\Rightarrow \exists z'. z' \in C^{\leq}(y) \wedge \phi_f(z, z') \wedge \bigwedge_{a \in \Sigma \cup \{\$, \square\}} P_a(z) \Leftrightarrow P_a(z') \end{aligned}$$

We leave the other checks as an exercise, as all of them follow the same pattern. ■

Following the ideas of Lemma 4.3.23, we leave as an exercise for the reader the definition of the following formulas: $\theta_I^w, \theta_N, \theta_F$ in Facts 4.3.24 to 4.3.26.

Fact 4.3.24. There exists a 1-local formula $\theta_N(x)$ such that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$ and $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \theta_N(x)$ if and only if $C^{\leq}(a)$ has no S -successor in \mathfrak{A} .

Fact 4.3.25. Given a word $w \in \Sigma^*$ there exists a 1-local formula $\theta_I^w(x)$ such that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$ and $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \theta_I^w(x)$ if and

only if $C^{\leq}(a)$ is the initial configuration of \mathcal{U} on the word w and has no S -predecessor in \mathfrak{A} .

Fact 4.3.26. There exists a 1-local formula $\theta_F(x)$ such that for $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$ and $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \theta_F(x)$ if and only if $C^{\leq}(a)$ is a final configuration of \mathcal{U} and has no S -successor in \mathfrak{A} .

Leveraging the Coding System. We now are able to simply use the coding system developed above to deduce that most of the problems we may be interested in are actually undecidable. To that end, let us first recall that in Lemma 4.3.16, we showed not only that $2CC$ is first-order definable in \mathcal{C}_{ord} , but also that it is definable as an existential local sentence.

Theorem 4.3.27. *It is in general not possible to decide, given a sentence φ , whether there exists an equivalent existential local sentence over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, even under the promise that φ is preserved under disjoint unions.*

Proof. Without loss of generality, thanks to Lemma 4.3.20, we only work over \mathcal{C}_{ord} , and we reduce from the halting problem.

Let \mathcal{T} be a Turing Machine and $\langle \mathcal{T} \rangle$ be its code in the alphabet of the Universal Turing Machine \mathcal{U} . Let $\varphi_{\mathcal{T}}$ be defined as the following existential local sentence: $\exists x. \theta_I^{\langle \mathcal{T} \rangle}(x) \wedge \forall x, y. S(x, y) \wedge \neg(x \leq y) \Rightarrow \theta_T^{\rightarrow}(x, y)$. We consider the sentence³⁰ $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \varphi_{\mathcal{T}} \vee 2CC$ that is closed under disjoint unions over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . This sentence is computable from the data $\langle \mathcal{T} \rangle$.

Assume that \mathcal{T} halts. Then, there exists a bound k for the run of the universal Turing Machine \mathcal{U} . Given a size $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we define $\varphi_{\mathcal{T}}^n$ to be the following existential local sentence: $\exists x_1, \dots, x_n. \theta_I^{\langle \mathcal{T} \rangle}(x_1) \wedge \theta_T^{\rightarrow}(x_1, x_2) \wedge \dots \wedge \theta_T^{\rightarrow}(x_{n-1}, x_n) \wedge \theta_N(x_n)$. It is a routine check that φ is equivalent to the following sentence over \mathcal{C}_{ord} :

$$\varphi' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2CC \vee \bigvee_{1 \leq n \leq k} \varphi_{\mathcal{T}}^n$$

Assume that \mathcal{T} does not halt. The universal Turing Machine \mathcal{U} does not halt on the word $\langle \mathcal{T} \rangle$. Assume by contradiction that φ is equivalent to a sentence $\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists x_1, \dots, x_k. \theta$ where θ is r -local. Find a run of size greater than $k \cdot (2r + 1)$ and evaluate ψ . It cannot look at all the configurations simultaneously; change the state of the one not seen: it still satisfies ψ but this is no longer a run of \mathcal{U} , which is absurd. ■

An analogous proof allows us to conclude that the semantic property of closure under disjoint unions is also undecidable. Theorem 4.3.27 is then strengthened to prove that equivalent existential sentences are uncomputable in general.

30: A more understandable definition is $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg 2CC \Rightarrow \varphi_{\mathcal{T}}$, but the one given clearly shows that it is preserved under disjoint unions.

Theorem 4.3.28. *It not possible, given a sentence φ , to decide whether or not it is **preserved under disjoint unions** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.*

Proof. Without loss of generality, thanks to Lemma 4.3.20, we only work over \mathcal{C}_{ord} , and we reduce from the halting problem. Consider the sentence $\varphi_{\mathcal{T}}$ defined as in the proof of Theorem 4.3.27: $\exists x.\theta_I^{(\mathcal{T})}(x) \wedge \forall x,y.S(x,y) \wedge \neg(x \leq y) \Rightarrow \theta_{\vec{T}}(x,y)$, and let now $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \varphi_{\mathcal{T}} \wedge \neg 2\text{CC}$.

Assume that \mathcal{T} halts. There exists exactly one model of φ , the unique run of the universal Turing machine \mathcal{U} , and this contradicts **preservation under disjoint unions**.

Assume that \mathcal{T} does not halt. The sentence φ has no finite model and is therefore (trivially) **preserved under disjoint unions**.

Hence, the sentence φ is **preserved under disjoint unions** if and only if \mathcal{T} does not halt. ■

Theorem 4.3.29. *There is no algorithm which, given a sentence φ that is equivalent to some **existential local sentence** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, computes such a sentence.*

Proof. Without loss of generality thanks to Lemma 4.3.20, we only work over \mathcal{C}_{ord} , and we reduce from the halting problem. Let \mathcal{T} be a Turing Machine, $\varphi_{\mathcal{T}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists x.\theta_I^{(\mathcal{T})}(x) \wedge \forall x,y.S(x,y) \wedge \neg(x \leq y) \Rightarrow \theta_{\vec{T}}(x,y)$, and $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \varphi_{\mathcal{T}} \vee 2\text{CC}$, as it was done in Theorem 4.3.27.

Assume that \mathcal{T} halts. Then φ is equivalent to an **existential local sentence** $\varphi' \vee 2\text{CC}$, as observed in the proof of Theorem 4.3.27. Assume that \mathcal{T} does not halt. Then φ is equivalent to 2CC , which is **existential local**. We have proven that φ is equivalent to an **existential local sentence** in all cases.

Assume by contradiction that there exists an algorithm computing an **existential local sentence** μ that is equivalent to $\varphi_{\mathcal{T}} \vee 2\text{CC}$ over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . Then, one can use μ to decide whether \mathcal{T} halts. Let us write k for the number of existential quantifiers of μ and r for the locality radius of its inner formula. If the sentence μ accepts the coding of a run of size greater than $2k \cdot (2r+1)$, then it accepts structures that are not coding runs of \mathcal{U} , and μ cannot be equivalent to φ . As a consequence, if \mathcal{T} terminates, it must terminate in at most $2k \cdot (2r+1)$ steps, which is decidable. ■

4.3.3. Generalisation to Weaker Quasi-Orders

Although the **FOLoc-preservation theorem**³¹ fails in the finite (as demonstrated in Theorem 4.3.21), recall that the refinement of the quasi-orders into $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ with finite parameters allowed to somehow get around this issue in Proposition 4.3.9. Namely, a sentence preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ for some finite $r, q, k \in \mathbb{N}$ is always equivalent to an **existential local sentence** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

31: That was restated in Corollary 4.2.1

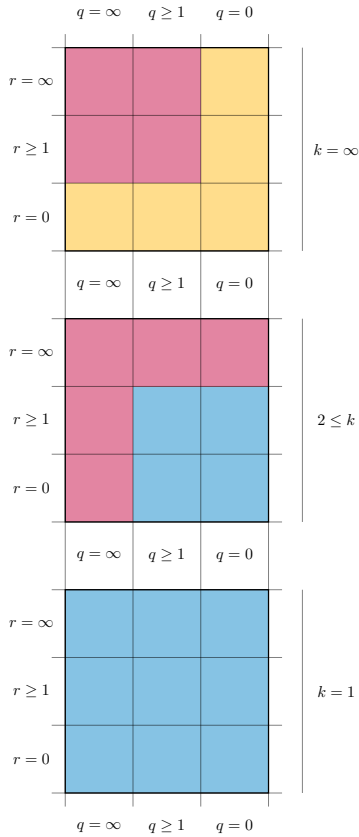


Figure 4.13.: The preservation cube: studying whether formulas preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ are equivalent over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ to existential local sentences. In red, the answer is ‘NO’, in blue, the answer is ‘YES’. In yellow, the answer is ‘YES’, but the proof is postponed to Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem).

Hence, it is natural to ask for $0 \leq r, q, k \leq \infty$, whether sentences preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ are always equivalent to **existential local sentences**. Proposition 4.3.9 answers this question positively for $0 \leq r, q, k < \infty$, and Theorem 4.3.21 answers negatively for $r = q = k = \infty$.

The main idea is that whenever a counter-example sentence can be build, it is because of our previous counter example $\llbracket \mathcal{A}_{\text{ord}} \rrbracket_{\text{Fin}(\sigma)}$. We provide in Figure 4.13 a panel of the existence of an existential local form for different values for r, q and k over the class of finite structures $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. This picture is obtained by compiling the earlier results of Proposition 4.3.9 and Theorem 4.3.21, with the yet to be proven results of Lemmas 4.3.30, 4.3.31 and 4.3.33. Furthermore, one particular instance of Figure 4.13 is postponed to the next chapter, Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem), because its proof tells a self-contained story about **induced substructures**.

We will first prove that if one allows arbitrary radius or arbitrary quantifier rank, then the counter example that was built for **existential local sentences** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ using the class \mathcal{C}_{ord} and the sentence 2CC can be re-encoded in this seemingly less powerful fragments. Typically, we will list the axioms of \mathcal{A}_{ord} and see that they can be suitably rewritten.

In the specific case of $k = 1$, such methods will not apply because the quasi-orders $\Rightarrow_q^{r,1}$ cannot distinguish a structure A from $A \uplus A$, even when $r = q = \infty$. And in fact, every sentence that is **preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,1}$** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is equivalent to an **existential local sentence** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, as proven in Lemma 4.3.33.

Lemma 4.3.30. *Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(\leq, 2), (S, 2), (E, 2), (B, 1)\}$. There exists a sentence ϕ_{bad} preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{\infty,k}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ for $k \geq 2$ and $q \geq 1$ that is not equivalent to an **existential local sentence** over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.*

Proof. Using Fact 4.3.4, it suffices to consider the case where $k = 2$ and $q = 1$ to conclude.

A first check is that the axiomatisation of \mathcal{C}_{ord} that was given in Figure 4.12 can be rewritten as a conjunction of sentences of the form $\forall x_1, \forall x_2, \forall y \in \mathcal{N}(x_1 x_2, 1), \theta(x_1, x_2, y)$ where θ is **quantifier-free**, and $Q \in \{\exists, \forall\}$. This is true for all but one axiom that needs to be rewritten carefully: **Axiom 10**, that states that the relation E “factorises” through $(\leq)(S)(\leq)$. For that particular axiom, we can equivalently state the following “compatibility” axiom:

$$\forall x, \forall y, [E(x, y) \wedge (\forall z. x \leq z \Rightarrow z = x) \wedge (\forall z. y \leq z \Rightarrow z = y)] \Rightarrow S(x, y)$$

Let us briefly sketch the proof that this new formulation implies (together with the other axioms) **Axiom 10**. The main idea is that whenever $E(a, b)$ holds, one can leverage axioms **Axioms 11** and **12** to conclude that the \leq -maximal element a' in the \leq -component of a is connected through E to the \leq -minimal element b' in the \leq -component of b . That is, $E(a', b')$ holds. The new axiom then proves that $S(a', b')$ holds, and in particular, $a \leq a' S b' \leq b$. Conversely, this new sentence clearly holds on structures of \mathcal{C}_{ord} .

This proves that \mathcal{C}_{ord} is definable and downwards closed for $\Rightarrow_1^{1,2}$. In particular, sentences preserved under $\Rightarrow_1^{\infty,2}$ over \mathcal{C}_{ord} are preserved under $\Rightarrow_1^{\infty,2}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, which is a strengthening of Lemma 4.3.20.

Using the same syntactical analysis, 2CC is preserved under $\Rightarrow_1^{\infty,2}$ over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . As a consequence it is an easy check that ϕ_{bad} ³² is preserved under $\Rightarrow_1^{\infty,2}$ over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . Moreover, it suffices to leverage Lemma 4.3.12 to conclude that ϕ_{bad} cannot be defined as an existential local sentence over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . ■

32: Recall that $\phi_{\text{bad}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x. \neg B(x) \vee 2\text{CC}$

Lemma 4.3.31. *Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(\leq, 2), (S, 2), (E, 2), (B, 1)\}$. For every $r \geq 1, k \geq 2$, there exists a sentence φ preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{r,k}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ but not equivalent to an existential local sentence over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.*

Proof. Using Fact 4.3.4 it suffices to consider the case $r = 1$ and $k = 2$. The proof follows the same pattern as Lemma 4.3.30, we enumerate the axioms from \mathcal{A}_{ord} and notice that they are of the form $\forall x. \theta(x)$ where $\theta(x)$ is a 1-local formula. As a consequence, sentences preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{1,2}$ over \mathcal{C}_{ord} are preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{1,2}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, which is a strengthening of Lemma 4.3.20.

Moreover, 2CC³³ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{1,2}$ using a simple syntactical analysis. We now check that ϕ_{bad} is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{1,2}$ over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C}_{\text{ord}}$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \phi_{\text{bad}}$ and $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\infty}^{1,2} \mathfrak{B}$.

33: As defined in Lemma 4.3.16.

- Let us first examine the case where A has a single connected component.

Let $a \in \mathfrak{A}$; since $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 1)$ is finite, there exists a 1-local formula $\psi_a(x)$ of quantifier rank less than $|\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 1)| + 1$ such that $\mathfrak{B}, x \mapsto b \models \psi_a(x)$ if and only if $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 1)$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(b, 1)$. In particular, if C is a \leq -component of \mathfrak{A} , it is of radius at most 1 and there exists C' a \leq -component of \mathfrak{B} isomorphic to C . Moreover, the 1-neighbourhood of a \leq -component contains the previous and next \leq -components for S .

If \mathfrak{B} has a single connected component, then two distinct \leq -components in \mathfrak{B} must have distinct sizes. Using the fact that the components of \mathfrak{A} are all found in \mathfrak{B} and that their relative position is preserved, this proves that \mathfrak{B} contains exactly the same \leq -components as \mathfrak{A} , which only happens if $\mathfrak{A} = \mathfrak{B}$.

If \mathfrak{B} has at least two connected components, then it satisfies 2CC which implies ϕ_{bad} .

- In the case where \mathfrak{A} has two connected components, $\mathfrak{A} \models 2\text{CC}$ but then $\mathfrak{B} \models 2\text{CC}$ and $\mathfrak{B} \models \phi_{\text{bad}}$.

Moreover, we know from Lemma 4.3.12 that ϕ_{bad} cannot be defined as an existential local sentence over \mathcal{C}_{ord} . ■

Before studying the case $k = 1$, let us describe the behaviour of $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ with respect to disjoint unions. In particular, we prove that for any fixed k , the quasi-order cannot distinguish between more than k copies of the same structure.

Lemma 4.3.32. *Let σ be a finite relational signature. Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. For all $0 \leq r, q \leq \infty$ and $1 \leq k < \infty$, $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}$ and $\biguplus_{i=1}^{k+n} \mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \biguplus_{i=1}^k \mathfrak{A}$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.*

Proof. Let us prove that $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}$. Consider a vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^k$; it is clear that this vector appears as-is in $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}$ and since the union is disjoint, thus $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}}(\vec{a}, r) = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$. In particular, $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) = \text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$ for all $q \geq 0$.

Let us write $\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \biguplus_{i=1}^k \mathfrak{A}$ and $\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k+n} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \biguplus_{i=1}^{k+n} \mathfrak{A}$. Remark that the previous statement shows $\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k+n}$. Let us now prove that $\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k+n} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k}$. Consider a vector $\vec{a} \in (\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k+n})^k$; this vector has elements in at most k copies of \mathfrak{A} , hence one can select one copy of \mathfrak{A} in $\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k}$ for each of those and consider the exact same elements in those copies. As the unions are disjoint, the obtained neighbourhoods are isomorphic to those in $\mathfrak{A}^{\uplus k+n}$ and in particular share the same local types. ■

Lemma 4.3.33. *Let σ be a finite relational signature. For every $0 \leq r, q \leq \infty$, for every sentence φ preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,1}$ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, there exists an existential local sentence ψ that is equivalent to φ over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.*

Proof. Without loss of generality thanks to Fact 4.3.4 we consider a sentence φ preserved under $\Rightarrow_{\infty}^{1,1}$. Let us prove that φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ where all parameters are finite. This property combined with Proposition 4.3.9 will prove that φ is equivalent to an existential local sentence.

Thanks to Gaifman's Locality Theorem, we can assume that φ is a Boolean combination of the following basic local sentences for $1 \leq i \leq n$: $\theta_i = \exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$, where each $\psi_i(x)$ is an r_i -local formula of quantifier rank q_i . Define $r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ r_i : 1 \leq i \leq n \}$, $q \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ q_i : 1 \leq i \leq n \}$ and $k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ k_i : 1 \leq i \leq n \}$.

Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$ be two finite structures such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$. Our goal is to prove that $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$. Let us write $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k}$ for the disjoint union of k copies of \mathfrak{B} , as in the previous proof.

Let us show that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \varphi$ if and only if $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \varphi$. To that end, let us fix $1 \leq i \leq n$ and prove that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$ if and only if $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$.

- Assume that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$, there exists a vector \vec{c} of witnesses of ψ at pairwise distance greater than $2r_i$ in $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k}$. If \vec{c} lies in $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k}$ then we conclude, otherwise some element of \vec{c} lies in \mathfrak{A} . In particular, $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists x. \psi_i(x)$, which is an existential r -local sentence of quantifier rank at most q . Since $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$, we know that $\mathfrak{B} \models \exists x. \psi_i(x)$ and as $k_i \leq k$, $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$.
- Conversely, whenever $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$ the structure $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k}$ satisfies $\exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$ as basic local sentences are preserved under disjoint unions (see Propositions 4.3.8 and 4.3.10).

Since $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{\infty,1} \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B} \Rightarrow_{\infty,1} \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k}$ (by Lemma 4.3.32), and since $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, we know that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \varphi$. This implies that $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \varphi$, and we deduce from Lemma 4.3.32 that $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k}$ is $\Rightarrow_{\infty,1}$ -equivalent to \mathfrak{B} . In particular $\mathfrak{B}^{\uplus k} \models \varphi$ implies $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$. ■

4.4. Discussion

Positive locality and existential sentences. The positive locality theorem in Theorem 4.2.2 can be thought of as a “local” variant of the existential Gaifman normal form of [55], hence can find similar applications in the optimisation of query evaluation. We stress that the two results are not comparable, even though they use similar combinatorial tools³⁴. Furthermore, Theorem 4.2.2 is actually a theorem stating the equi-expressiveness of two fragments of FO, while the existential Gaifman normal form clearly allows building formulas that are not expressible in EFO.

[55]: Grohe and Wöhrle (2004), ‘An existential locality theorem’

34: That is, the combinatorics behind the intersection patterns of local neighbourhoods

Failure in the finite. The proofs of undecidability and failure in the finite case closely follows the generic methods that have been employed for other preservation theorems [4, 5, 16, 66, 89, 90]. These results are incomparable, and there still lacks a “meta proof” that generalises the ad-hoc study that is performed. It could be that, on the opposite of well-quasi-orderings and Noetherian spaces that imply the relativisation, there is a simple property that implies the non-relativisation. Furthermore, the connection between relativisation and effective procedures remains unclear: experimentally the two are related, but there is no theoretical statement linking the two properties.

Relativisation in the finite. As for usual preservation theorems, a natural question after the failure to relativise the FOLoc-preservation theorem to $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is to find natural subclasses where the theorem relativises. This is still an open question, but note that this relativisation fails even in the simple case of disjoint unions of coloured paths (see Example 4.3.11).

References

- [4] Miklós Ajtai and Yuri Gurevich. ‘Monotone versus positive’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 34 (1987), pp. 1004–1015. DOI: [10.1145/31846.31852](https://doi.org/10.1145/31846.31852) (cit. on pp. 35, 37, 113).
- [5] Miklós Ajtai and Yuri Gurevich. ‘Datalog vs first-order logic’. In: *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* 49 (1994), pp. 562–588. DOI: [10.1016/S0022-0000\(05\)80071-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-0000(05)80071-6) (cit. on pp. 35, 37, 113).
- [6] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Martin Grohe. ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’. In: *SIAM Journal on Computing* 38 (2008), pp. 1364–1381. DOI: [10.1137/060658709](https://doi.org/10.1137/060658709) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 64, 67, 68, 74, 97, 98, 117, 121, 127).
- [7] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Phokion G. Kolaitis. ‘On preservation under homomorphisms and unions of conjunctive queries’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 53 (2006), pp. 208–237. DOI: [10.1145/1131342.1131344](https://doi.org/10.1145/1131342.1131344) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 74).
- [15] Chen Chung Chang and H. Jerome Keisler. *Model Theory*. Vol. 73. Elsevier, 1990 (cit. on pp. i, 29, 32–34, 68).
- [16] Yijia Chen and Jörg Flum. ‘Forbidden Induced Subgraphs and the Łoś-Tarski Theorem’. In: *2021 36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS)*. 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470742](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470742) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 98, 113).
- [20] Anuj Dawar. ‘Homomorphism preservation on quasi-wide classes’. In: *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* 76 (2010), pp. 324–332. DOI: [10.1016/j.jcss.2009.10.005](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcss.2009.10.005) (cit. on pp. 47, 55, 74).
- [21] Anuj Dawar, Martin Grohe, Stephan Kreutzer and Nicole Schweikardt. ‘Approximation schemes for first-order definable optimisation problems’. In: *21st Annual IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS’06)*. 2006, pp. 411–420. DOI: [10.1109/lics.2006.13](https://doi.org/10.1109/lics.2006.13) (cit. on pp. 68, 130, 131).
- [33] Solomon Feferman and Robert Vaught. ‘The first order properties of products of algebraic systems’. In: *Fundamenta Mathematicae* 47 (1959), pp. 57–103. DOI: [10.4064/fm-47-1-57-103](https://doi.org/10.4064/fm-47-1-57-103) (cit. on pp. 78, 155).
- [37] Haim Gaifman. ‘On local and non-local properties’. In: *Proceedings of the Herbrand Symposium*. Vol. 107. Elsevier, 1982, pp. 105–135. DOI: [10.1016/S0049-237X\(08\)71879-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0049-237X(08)71879-2) (cit. on pp. 72, 73).
- [38] Jakub Gajarsky, Maximilian Gorsky and Stephan Kreutzer. ‘Differential Games, Locality, and Model Checking for FO Logic of Graphs’. In: 216 (2022). Ed. by Florin Manea and Alex Simpson, 22:1–22:18. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2022.22](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2022.22) (cit. on pp. 71, 233).
- [55] Martin Grohe and Stefan Wöhrle. ‘An existential locality theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 129 (2004), pp. 131–148. DOI: [10.1016/j.apal.2004.01.005](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apal.2004.01.005) (cit. on pp. 67, 68, 75, 76, 85, 93, 113).
- [57] Frederik Harwath, Lucas Heimberg and Nicole Schweikardt. ‘Preservation and decomposition theorems for bounded degree structures’. In: *Logical Methods in Computer Science* Volume 11, Issue 4 (2015). DOI: [10.2168/LMCS-11\(4:17\)2015](https://doi.org/10.2168/LMCS-11(4:17)2015). URL: <https://lmcs.episciences.org/1618> (cit. on p. 74).
- [66] Denis Kuperberg. ‘Positive First-order Logic on Words’. In: *36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science, LICS 2021, Rome, Italy, June 29 - July 2, 2021*. IEEE, 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 68, 98, 113, 137).
- [68] Leonid Libkin. *Elements of finite model theory*. Springer, 2012. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-662-07003-1](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-07003-1) (cit. on pp. 11, 68, 239).
- [71] Aliaume Lopez. ‘When Locality Meets Preservation’. In: *LICS’22* (2022), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 67, 117).
- [74] Johann A. Makowsky. ‘Algorithmic uses of the Feferman–Vaught Theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 126 (2004), pp. 159–213. DOI: [10.1016/j.apal.2003.11.002](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apal.2003.11.002) (cit. on pp. 78, 155).

- [83] Benjamin Rossman. ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 55 (2008), 15:1–15:53. DOI: [10.1145/1379759.1379763](https://doi.org/10.1145/1379759.1379763) (cit. on pp. [i](#), [24](#), [35](#), [37](#), [38](#), [40](#), [42](#), [55](#), [74](#), [175](#), [177](#), [235](#)).
- [87] Thomas Schwentick and Klaus Barthelmann. ‘Local normal forms for first-order logic with applications to games and automata’. In: *Discrete Mathematics and Theoretical Computer Science* 3 (1999), pp. 109–124. DOI: [10.46298/dmtcs.254](https://doi.org/10.46298/dmtcs.254). URL: <https://www.dmtcs.org/dmtcs-ojs/index.php/dmtcs/article/view/101/234.html> (cit. on pp. [67](#), [75](#)).
- [89] Alexei P. Stolboushkin. ‘Finitely monotone properties’. In: (1995), pp. 324–330. DOI: [10.1109/LICS.1995.523267](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS.1995.523267) (cit. on pp. [35](#), [113](#), [137](#)).
- [90] William W. Tait. ‘A counterexample to a conjecture of Scott and Suppes’. In: *Journal of Symbolic Logic* 24 (1959), pp. 15–16. DOI: [10.2307/2964569](https://doi.org/10.2307/2964569) (cit. on pp. [i](#), [35](#), [37](#), [39](#), [97](#), [100](#), [113](#), [137](#)).

A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem

5.

Outline of the chapter

In this chapter, we will continue the study of preservation theorems via locality that started with [Chapter 4 \(Locality and Preservation\)](#). While the latter left a bittersweet aftertaste, the goal here is to demonstrate that, in one specific configuration, one can leverage the locality of first order logic to prove that the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises](#) to a class \mathcal{C} of finite structures.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of the chapter, I hope you will be convinced that the “local to global” guide to preservation is a powerful technique that can be applied to [relativise](#) the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) whenever the local behaviours of the structure are “simpler” than their global one. This also provides information about when this technique does not apply: when the local neighbourhoods are as complex as the structures themselves.

Genesis. This chapter is the original goal that led to the study of [Chapter 4 \(Locality and Preservation\)](#). Recall that the interest in the local behaviour of first-order logic was sparked in [Chapter 3 \(Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries\)](#) by the relativisation of the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) to hereditary classes of structures of bounded degree that are [closed under disjoint unions](#) [6]. Also recall that [Subsection 4.3.1](#) and [Subsection 4.3.3](#) put a stop to the original idea of a generic proof scheme that starts by applying a positive locality result (see [Figure 4.13](#)). We will see that the infinitesimal space that was not tackled¹ is enough to circumvent the failure of the [FOLoc-preservation theorem](#) in the finite. The resulting [Theorem 5.1.2](#) was already stated in [71], but its “generic” counterpart [Theorem 5.3.1](#) is an addition made while writing this thesis.

Contributions. The goal of this section is to prove the following “local to global” theorem, generalising the previously known results over [hereditary class](#) of structures that are [closed under disjoint unions](#) [6].

Theorem 5.1.2. *Let \mathcal{C} be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} if and only if the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for all $r \geq 0$ and $k \geq 1$.*

While the whole section is organised around [Łoś-Tarski’s Theorem](#) and [induced substructures](#), we have in fact a more general construction for fragments of EFO.

[5.1 Leveraging Locality . . . 118](#)

[5.2 The Missing Square . . . 126](#)

[5.3 Discussion 133](#)

[6]: Atserias, Dawar and Grohe (2008), ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’

1: That is, when $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ is precisely \subseteq_i .

[6]: Atserias, Dawar and Grohe (2008), ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’

Theorem 5.3.1. *Let \mathcal{C} be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions, and $F \in \{\text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO}\}$ be a fragment. The F -preservation theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} if and only if the F -preservation theorem relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for all $r \geq 0$ and $k \geq 1$.*

Even though Subsection 4.3.1 essentially closed the door to such a proof scheme we will actually leverage Chapter 4 (Locality and Preservation), and in particular the finitary version of the FOLoc-preservation theorem (Proposition 4.3.9) to prove Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.3.1.

As hinted in Figure 4.13, produced during the study of the “local preorders” $\Rightarrow_q^{r,k}$ in Subsection 4.3.3 (Generalisation to Weaker Quasi-Orders), the specific case of $k = \infty$, $r = 0 \vee q = 0$ has a wildly different behaviour than the rest of the “preorder cube.” In particular, it is quite easy to notice that $\Rightarrow_q^{0,\infty} = \Rightarrow_0^{r,\infty} = \subseteq_i$ for $0 \leq r, q < \infty$ (see Example 4.3.5).

We define a class \mathcal{C} to be *localisable* whenever first-order sentences preserved under \subseteq_i (over \mathcal{C}) are equivalent (over \mathcal{C}) to existential local sentences. In particular, every class \mathcal{C} over which the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises is localisable, since existential sentences are specific existential local sentences.

The first section of this chapter is devoted to proving Theorem 5.1.2, under the assumption that some classes are localisable. This is not a complicated task, and we will see that it actually encompasses most of the previously known relativisations in the finite, and even provides new examples of such classes (see Figure 5.2).

The second section of this chapter is devoted to proving that $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is actually localisable. We actually obtain a stronger result: every hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions is localisable.

Theorem 5.2.5. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions. Then, \mathcal{C} is localisable.*

5.1. Leveraging Locality

Because we assume Theorem 5.2.5, it suffices in order to prove Theorem 5.1.2 to show that every existential local sentence φ that is preserved under extensions is equivalent to an existential sentence.

Let us now explain why the hypotheses of Theorem 5.1.2 appear in the first place. Because existential local sentences talk about local neighbourhoods, and $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ explicitly appears in the statement of the theorem, it is very convenient to notice the following fact: if \mathcal{C} is hereditary, then $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k) \subseteq \mathcal{C}$ for all $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$.²

Lemma 5.1.1. *Let \mathcal{C} be a hereditary class of finite structures, the*

We left the proof of Theorem 5.2.5 in a separate section, after demonstrating its use because the proof is tedious and involved. Hence, it is best to know “what we are fighting for” to keep some motivation.

2: Beware that even though \mathcal{C} is hereditary, the localised classes $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ are not hereditary in general. A simple way to observe this fact is that an element in $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, 1)$ has a single connected component in its Gaifman graph, a property that is in general not stable when removing vertices.

following properties are equivalent:

1. The *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for all $r, k \geq 0$.
2. *Existential local sentences preserved under extensions over \mathcal{C} are equivalent (over \mathcal{C}) to existential sentences.*

Proof. Let us first prove that [Item 1](#) implies [Item 2](#). Let $\varphi = \exists \vec{x}. \psi(\vec{x})$ be an [existential local sentence preserved under extensions](#) over \mathcal{C} . Let us write $k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} |\vec{x}|$, and let r be the [locality radius](#) of ψ .

Because $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k) \subseteq \mathcal{C}$, the sentence φ is also [preserved under extensions](#) over $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. Hence, by [Item 1](#), there exists $\theta \in \text{EFO}$ such that $\varphi \equiv_{\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)} \theta$. Because, \mathcal{C} is [hereditary](#), [Lemma 3.2.3](#) provides a finite set of structures $M \in \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\mathcal{C})$ such that $\llbracket \theta \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \uparrow_{\subseteq_i} M$.

Let us define $n_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ |\mathfrak{A}| : \mathfrak{A} \in M \}$. We are going to prove that \subseteq_i -[minimal models](#) of φ are of size bounded by $n_0 + k + r \times n_0$. Thanks to [Lemma 3.2.3](#), this will provide a sentence $\theta' \in \text{EFO}$ such that $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \theta'$ and will allow us to conclude.

To that end, let us consider a \subseteq_i -[minimal model](#) \mathfrak{B} of φ in \mathcal{C} . Since $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$, there exists a valuation $\mathbf{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$, such that $\mathfrak{B}, \mathbf{v} \models \psi(\vec{x})$. Because ψ is an r -[local formula](#), this implies that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r), \mathbf{v} \models \psi(\vec{x})$, hence that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r) \models \varphi$. Because $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r) \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$ and the latter is an \subseteq_i -[minimal model](#) of φ , we conclude that $\mathfrak{B} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r)$, i.e., that $\mathfrak{B} \in \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$.

As $\varphi \equiv_{\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)} \theta$, we conclude that $\mathfrak{B} \models \theta$. Since $\llbracket \theta \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \uparrow_{\subseteq_i} M$, there exists $\mathfrak{A} \in M$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$. Let us write $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\text{QF}} \mathfrak{B}$ for the [QF-embedding](#) witnessing that $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$.

We will now define an [induced substructure](#) $\mathfrak{B}' \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$, by restricting the domain of \mathfrak{B} to the union of the following sets: $h(\mathfrak{A})$ (of size at most n_0), $\mathbf{v}(\vec{x})$ (of size at most k), and (just) enough points so that every element of $h(\mathfrak{A})$ is at distance at most r of $\mathbf{v}(\vec{x})$ inside \mathfrak{B}' . The latter is possible because $\mathfrak{B} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r)$, hence one can add to \mathfrak{B}' a path of at most r vertices connecting every element in $h(\mathfrak{A})$ to some element of $\mathbf{v}(\vec{x})$. As a consequence, one can assume that $|\mathfrak{B}'| \leq n_0 + k + r \times n_0$. We refer the reader to [Figure 5.1](#) for a graphical representation of this construction.

Notice that by definition, \mathfrak{B}' satisfies the following properties:

1. $\mathfrak{B}' \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$,
2. $\mathfrak{B}' = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}'}(\mathbf{v}(\vec{x}), r)$, hence $\mathfrak{B}' \in \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$,
3. $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\text{QF}} \mathfrak{B}'$ is a [QF-embedding](#), and $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, hence $\mathfrak{B}' \models \varphi$.

Because $\mathfrak{B}' \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$ and \mathfrak{B} is a \subseteq_i -[minimal model](#) of φ , the above properties entail $\mathfrak{B}' = \mathfrak{B}$. In particular, we have proven that $|\mathfrak{B}| \leq n_0 + k + r \times n_0$.

Let us now turn our attention to the converse implication from [Item 2](#) to [Item 1](#). Let φ be a sentence [preserved under extensions](#) over the class $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. Let us recall that $|\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r$ is the r -[local formula](#) obtained by relativising the quantifications in φ to the r -[neighbourhood](#) of \vec{x} , that are fresh variables here.

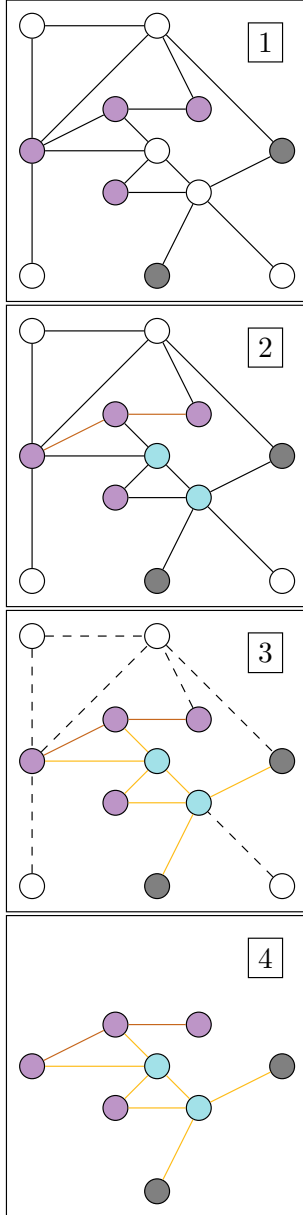


Figure 5.1.: Graphical representation of the induced substructure extraction done in Lemma 5.1.1. The first frame represents a finite structure with a violet induced substructure, and two selected centres. The second frame describes how to add intermediary points to ensure that there exists a path from the centres to the induced substructure. The third and fourth frame exhibit the extraction of the “enriched” induced substructure.

We are going to prove that the sentence $\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists \vec{x}. |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}^r$ is **preserved under extensions** over \mathcal{C} . Let $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C}$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$. By definition, there exists a map $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\text{QF}} \mathfrak{B}$ that is a **QF-embedding**. Since $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$, there exists $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \models \varphi$. Notice that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \subseteq_i \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(h(\vec{b}), r)$ (via the same map h). Because φ is **preserved under extensions** over $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$, we conclude that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(h(\vec{b}), r) \models \varphi$. By construction, this means that $\mathfrak{B} \models \psi$.

Thanks to the hypothesis (Item 2), ψ is equivalent to an **existential sentence** θ over \mathcal{C} . Remark that φ is equivalent to ψ over $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. As a consequence, φ is equivalent to the **existential sentence** θ over $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. ■

We are now ready to prove Theorem 5.1.2, admitting for now that Theorem 5.2.5 (recalled below) is proven.

Theorem 5.2.5. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions. Then, \mathcal{C} is localisable.*

Theorem 5.1.2. *Let \mathcal{C} be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} if and only if the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for all $r \geq 0$ and $k \geq 1$.*

Proof. Assume that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for $r, k \geq 0$. Let φ be a sentence **preserved under extensions** over \mathcal{C} . Because \mathcal{C} is hereditary and closed under disjoint unions, we can apply Theorem 5.2.5, and \mathcal{C} is **localisable**. Hence, φ is equivalent to an **existential local sentence** ψ over \mathcal{C} . Thanks to Lemma 5.1.1, ψ is equivalent to an **existential sentence**, and we have concluded.

Conversely, assume that **preservation under extensions** relativises to \mathcal{C} . In particular, **existential local sentences** preserved under **extensions** are equivalent over \mathcal{C} to **existential sentences**. Thanks to Lemma 5.1.1, this proves that $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ satisfies **preservation under extensions** for $r, k \geq 0$. ■

The Power of Locality. The rest of this section is an illustration of the power of Theorem 5.1.2. This demonstration is done by first showing how previously known results are (easy) consequences of our theorem, and how they can be (easily) generalised to construct new classes of finite structures where the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises. Finally, we also will discuss the two hypotheses of Theorem 5.1.2, and prove that both are necessary for the theorem to hold.

As a first hint that most of the heavy-lifting has already been done, let us point out that the spaces $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ already appear (although implicitly) in previous studies of **preservation theorems**. This notion of locality is itself well-studied inside the realm of so-called *sparse structures* [78]. To be precise, let us focus on one specific notion of sparsity: that of **wide** classes of structures.

Definition 5.1.3 [6, Definition 4.1]. A class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is *wide* whenever there exists a map $\rho: \mathbb{N}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, such that for all $r, m \in \mathbb{N}^2$, for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ of size greater than $\rho(r, m)$, there exists $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^m$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{a}, r)$.

Alternatively, one can think of a *wide* class \mathcal{C} as one where the sentences of the form $\exists \vec{x}.\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$ define *co-finite* subsets of \mathcal{C} . Borrowing the vocabulary of Section 4.2, the *basic local sentences* $\exists_k^{\geq r} x.\top$ define *co-finite* sets.³

Leveraging this notion of *wideness*, Atserias, Dawar and Grohe prove that the *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* relativises to *wide*, *hereditary*, classes \mathcal{C} that are *closed under disjoint unions* [6, Theorem 4.3].

We argue that this is a very simple consequence of Theorem 5.1.2, because hereditary wide classes are exactly those that are locally finite.

Exercise 5.1.4 ([77, Theorem 5.1]). For a *hereditary class* \mathcal{C} the following properties are equivalent:

- ▶ \mathcal{C} is *wide*,
- ▶ $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ is finite for all $r, k \geq 1$,
- ▶ \mathcal{C} has *bounded degree*.

3: In particular, for every *r*-local formula ψ , $\neg(\exists_k^{\geq r} x.\psi(x)) \Rightarrow \exists_k^{\geq r} x.\neg\psi(x)$, for all but finitely many elements in a *wide class* \mathcal{C} .

Recall that we introduced the notion of degree of an element in a relational structure as its degree in the *Gaifman graph* of said structure. Equivalently, the degree of a point $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ is precisely $|\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, 1)|$. This may provide some intuition on the relationship between the last two items of Exercise 5.1.4.

Over a finite set of finite models, every sentence φ is equivalent to an existential sentence as observed in Fact 3.2.2, hence the *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* relativises trivially. Leveraging Exercise 5.1.4, if $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is a class that is *hereditary*, *wide*, and *closed under disjoint unions*, then for all $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$, the *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* relativises (trivially) to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. We recover Atserias, Dawar and Grohe's result by applying Theorem 5.1.2.

We can generalise this proof scheme as follows. Given a property $P \in \mathcal{P}(\text{Fin}(\sigma))$, we say that a class \mathcal{C} *locally* satisfies P when, for all $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k) \in P$.

Theorem 5.1.5. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a *hereditary class* of finite structures *closed under disjoint unions*. The following properties imply that the *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* relativises to \mathcal{C} .

1. \mathcal{C} is *locally finite* (i.e., *wide*).
2. \mathcal{C} has *locally bounded tree-depth*.
3. \mathcal{C} is *locally wqo* with respect to \subseteq_i .
4. The *Łoś-Tarski Theorem* *locally* relativises to \mathcal{C} .

Moreover, Item 1 \Rightarrow Item 2 \Rightarrow Item 3 \Rightarrow Item 4, and these implications are strict.

The remaining of this section is devoted to proving Theorem 5.1.5, together with its relation with previously known properties as illustrated in Figure 5.2. In particular, the examples prove that we strictly generalise previously known properties implying preservation under extensions. As no logic is involved in the generation of these new classes, we

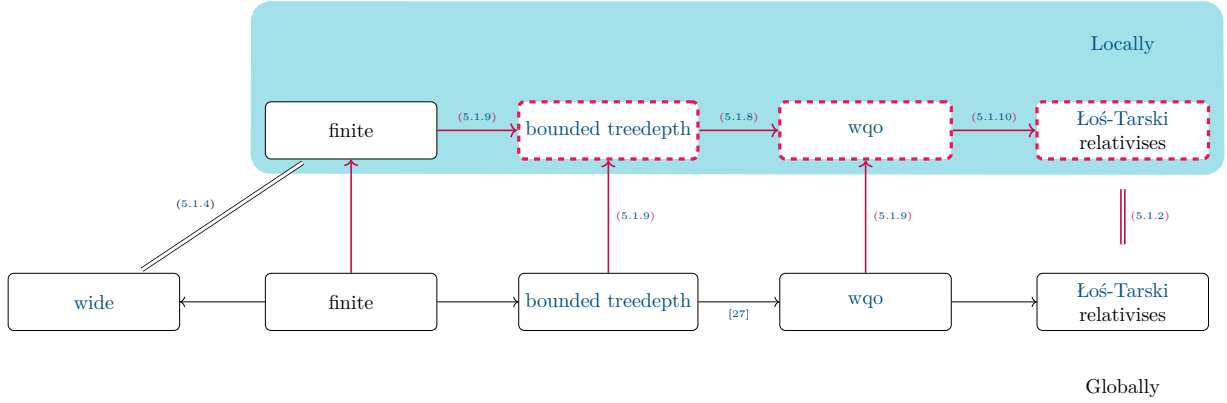


Figure 5.2.: Implications of properties over classes $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ that are *hereditary* and *closed under disjoint unions*. Arrows represent strict inclusions of properties and dashed boxes are the new properties introduced in this paper.

4: Namely, if the property P is satisfied for all classes $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, 1)$, where $r \in \mathbb{N}$, then it is satisfied for all classes $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$, where $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$.

effectively *decoupled* our proofs of preservation theorems in a *locality argument* followed by a *combinatorial argument*.

Note that working with $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ rather than $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, 1)$ is a somewhat uncommon way to localise properties. Thankfully, for properties that are well-behaved with respect to disjoint unions,⁴ the localisation using neighbourhoods centred around a single point or several ones will coincide; examples of such properties include *wideness*, exclusion of a minor, or bounded clique-width. The following proposition illustrates this point in the case of *bounded tree-depth*.

Recall here that the *tree-depth* $\text{td}(G)$ is defined inductively as described in Definition 2.3.20.

Lemma 5.1.6. *A class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ has locally bounded tree-depth if and only if $\exists \rho: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}, \forall \mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}, \forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, \forall r \geq 1, \text{td}(\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r)) \leq \rho(r)$. That is, if and only if $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, 1)$ has bounded tree-depth for all $r \geq 1$.*

Proof. Assuming that for all k there is a bound on the *tree-depth* of elements of $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$, we define $\rho(r)$ to be the maximum of $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A})$ for \mathfrak{A} in $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, 1)$.

Conversely, assume that there exists an increasing function ρ such that $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A}) \leq \rho(r)$ for every $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, 1)$; a simple induction on A shows that $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A}) \leq \rho(r \times (2k + 1))$ for every $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$:

- If $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ can be written as $\mathfrak{A}_1 \uplus \mathfrak{A}_2$, then $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A})$ is exactly $\max(\text{td}(\mathfrak{A}_1), \text{td}(\mathfrak{A}_2))$, and we conclude by induction hypothesis since ρ is increasing.
- If \mathfrak{A} is totally connected and in $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$, then it is included in a ball of radius $r \times (2k + 1)$ hence the tree-depth is bounded by $\rho(r \times (2k + 1))$. ■

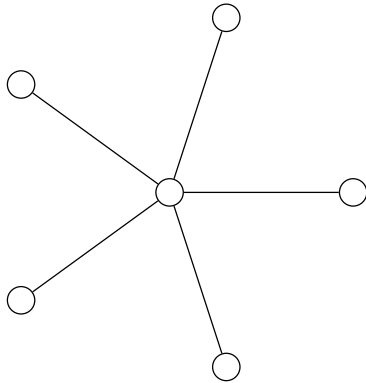


Figure 5.3.: An example of a star in Stars.

Let *Stars* be the class of finite stars, i.e., connected undirected graphs with at most one node of degree greater than 1. See Figure 5.3 for a graphical representation.

Example 5.1.7. The class $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \uplus \text{Stars}$ has bounded tree-depth, locally bounded tree-depth, but is neither finite nor locally finite.

Proof. It is clear that a star has tree-depth at most 2. Furthermore, the tree-depth is monotone with respect to induced substructures, and a morphism with respect to disjoint unions, i.e., $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B}) = \max(\text{td}(\mathfrak{A}), \text{td}(\mathfrak{B}))$. As a consequence, $\text{td}(\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \uplus \text{Stars}) \leq 2$. For the same reasons, the class has locally bounded tree-depth, because of the inclusion $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k) \subseteq \mathcal{C}$. However, the class is not locally finite, because it has unbounded degree. And it is clearly not finite. ■

Example 5.1.8. Consider the class $\uplus \text{Cliques}$ of finite disjoint unions of undirected cliques. This class is locally wqo, but is not of locally bounded tree-depth.

Proof. Notice that $\text{Local}(\uplus \text{Cliques}, r, k) \subseteq \uplus \text{Cliques}$ which is a wqo for \subseteq_i , as it is isomorphic to $\mathbf{M}^\circ(\mathbb{N})$ with the multiset ordering, which is a wqo thanks to Table 6.1. Now, it is quite clear that for all $n, r, k \geq 1$, $\text{td}(K_n) = n$, and $K_n \in \text{Local}(\uplus \text{Cliques}, r, k)$. As a consequence, $\uplus \text{Cliques}$ is not locally of bounded tree-depth. ■

Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. A diamond D_n is a cycle C_n extended with two new points a, b that are connected to every node in the cycle via a path of length n . We call \mathcal{D} the class of all D_n for $n \geq 3$. We provide in Figure 5.4 a graphical representation of D_4 .

Example 5.1.9. Consider the class $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \uplus \mathcal{D}$ of induced substructures of disjoint unions of diamonds. This class has locally bounded tree-depth, but is neither wqo nor locally finite.

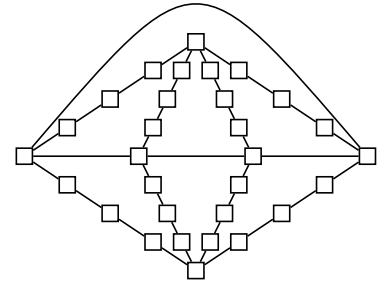


Figure 5.4.: The diamond $D_4 \in \mathcal{D}$.

Proof. The class is not wqo because $(D_n)_{n \geq 4}$ is an infinite bad sequence. Assume by contradiction that $D_n \subseteq_i D_m$ for $4 < n < m$. Then, the two outer nodes a, b of D_n are of degree greater than 4, while every other node in the graph are of degree at most 4. Therefore, the two extra outer nodes of D_n must be mapped to the two extra outer nodes of D_m . Similarly, the element C_n over which D_n has all its nodes of degree exactly 4, while the rest of the nodes have degree either greater than 4, or exactly 2. Hence, the inner cycle C_n must be mapped to the cycle C_m , which is not possible when $n < m$.

However, the class is locally of bounded tree-depth, because we add paths of increasing length to separate the cycle from the extra outer nodes. Informally, for every fixed r , $\mathcal{N}_{D_n}(a, r)$ is either a star, or a tree with radius at most r , when n is large enough. In both cases, because the radius is fixed, we obtain a bound on the tree-depth.

Furthermore, it should be clear that the class is not locally finite, as it contains Stars, which is not. ■

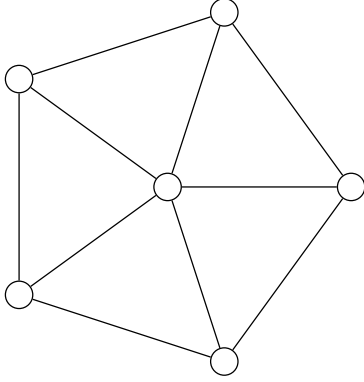


Figure 5.5.: An example of a “wheel” used in Example 5.1.10.

Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and σ be a finite relational signature. We define Δ_{deg}^n as the class of finite structures of degree bounded by n .

To introduce Example 5.1.10, which separates classes that are locally wqo and classes where the Łoś-Tarski Theorem locally relativises, the simplest way is to use the notions of first order interpretations, logical maps, and the closure properties of logically presented pre-spectral spaces (lpps). These notions are formally introduced in Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces), and we think that it is a good time to illustrate how these abstract notions are actually helpful in concrete cases.

Example 5.1.10. Let $\sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(E, 2); (c, 1)\}$, and let I be a first order interpretation of $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ in $\text{Fin}(\{(E, 2)\})$ defined by $\varphi_E(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} c(x) \vee c(y) \vee E(x, y)$. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem locally relativises to $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$, but the latter is not locally wqo.

Proof. The class $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$ is not locally well-quasi-ordered because it contains the class of “wheels”: elements of Cycles with an extra point connected to all the nodes (see Figure 5.5). Similarly to Cycles, the class of wheels is an infinite antichain. Furthermore, every wheel is the 1-local neighbourhood of one of its points, that is, every wheel belongs to $\text{Local}(I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2), 1, 1)$. As a consequence, $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$ is not locally wqo.

To avoid using the machinery of logically presented pre-spectral spaces, one could apply the following reasoning. Let φ be a first order sentence that is preserved under extensions over $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$. Because I is a (simple) first order interpretation, there exists a first-order sentence $\psi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ such that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$ if and only if $I(\mathfrak{A}) \models \varphi$. It is an easy check that ψ is preserved under extensions over Δ_{deg}^2 , since $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$ implies that $I(\mathfrak{A}) \models \varphi$ and $I(\mathfrak{A}) \subseteq_i I(\mathfrak{B})$. We know that the Łoś-Tarski theorem relativises to Δ_{deg}^2 , hence that there exists an existential sentence θ such that $\llbracket \theta \rrbracket_{\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2} = \llbracket \psi \rrbracket_{\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2}$. However, Δ_{deg}^2 is a downwards closed subset of $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$, and as a consequence, $\llbracket \theta \rrbracket_{\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2}$ is the upward closure (in Δ_{deg}^2) of a finite set of non-equivalent \subseteq_i -minimal models. We conclude that $I(\llbracket \theta \rrbracket_{\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2})$ also has finitely many non-equivalent \subseteq_i -minimal models, hence is equivalent (over $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$) to the finite union of their respective diagram formulas.

We argue that the proof is easier to understand (and reproduce or adapt) using the theory of lpps. We start by noticing that Δ_{deg}^2 is hereditary, and leverage Lemma 6.1.16 to conclude that $\langle \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is a logically presented pre-spectral space. Now, the map I is a logical map, hence we conclude that $\langle I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2), \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is a lpps via Lemma 6.3.3. Because the latter is also a hereditary class, we conclude (again using Lemma 6.1.16) that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$. Thanks to Theorem 5.1.2, this is the same as stating that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem locally relativises to $I(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2)$. ■

We can now state formally the proof of Theorem 5.1.5 by gathering all the above examples.

Proof of Theorem 5.1.5. The implications are consequences of the Theorem 5.1.2. The implications are strict thanks to Examples 5.1.7, 5.1.8 and 5.1.10. ■

Furthermore, notice that, as explained in Figure 5.2, locally wqo strictly generalises wqo (see Example 5.1.9), which strictly generalises locally bounded treedepth (see Example 5.1.8). Notice that locally bounded treedepth already strictly generalises wqo via Example 5.1.9.

To conclude our study, let us now provide examples that go outside the realm of hereditary classes of structures closed under disjoint unions. This will illustrate how both hypotheses of Theorem 5.1.2 are necessary.

Example 5.1.11. Let $\mathcal{C} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$. Then, \mathcal{C} is hereditary, the Łoś-Tarski Theorem locally relativises to \mathcal{C} , \mathcal{C} is not closed under disjoint unions, and the Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to \mathcal{C} .

Proof. We already know from Example 3.2.1 that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to \mathcal{C} , let us prove that it locally does.

Let $r, k \geq 0$ and consider $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. Using Example 4.1.2, there exists $N(r, k) \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k) \subseteq \text{Paths} \cup \{C_n : 3 \leq n \leq N\}$, the latter being well-quasi-ordered by \subseteq_i . In particular, Lemma 3.3.5 shows that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$. ■

Example 5.1.12. Let \mathcal{C} be the class of finite disjoint unions of black and white coloured paths with black endpoints. Then, \mathcal{C} is closed under disjoint unions, the Łoś-Tarski Theorem locally relativises to \mathcal{C} , \mathcal{C} is not hereditary, and the Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to \mathcal{C} .

Proof. It is clear that \mathcal{C} is closed under disjoint unions and not hereditary. Let us prove that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem does not relativise to \mathcal{C} .

The sentence φ defined in Example 4.3.11 stating that either the structure has two distinct connected components, or all the nodes of the (unique) path are black is a first order sentence. Furthermore, this sentence is preserved under \subseteq_i , because one cannot add a white coloured node to a structure without creating a new connected component.⁵ The proof of Example 4.3.11 states that such a sentence cannot be rewritten as an existential local sentence, hence *a fortiori* cannot be rewritten as an existential sentence.

5: This is the purpose of the restrictions that endpoints of paths are black coloured vertices.

To conclude that the Łoś-Tarski Theorem locally relativises to \mathcal{C} , let us remark that $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ is finite for all $r, k \geq 0$, and in particular is a well-quasi-ordering. We conclude similarly to Example 5.1.11. ■

5.2. The Missing Square

Recall that a class \mathcal{C} is **localisable** whenever sentences $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}$ preserved under \subseteq_i are equivalent to existential local sentences over \mathcal{C} (see page 118).

6: Notice that this is not only a simplification, but also a necessary condition for Theorem 5.1.2 to hold, as proven in Example 5.1.11.

Theorem 5.1.2 is a quite powerful and handy tool to study the relativisation of preservation theorems. However, its proof relied on Theorem 5.2.5, which remains to be proven. This is also filling the gap in Figure 4.13 that was left open at the end of Chapter 4 (Locality and Preservation).

Theorem 5.2.5. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions. Then, \mathcal{C} is localisable.*

As usual when proving such theorems, we will be interested in the \subseteq_i -minimal models of a sentence φ . To simplify⁶ the study of $\min_{\subseteq_i} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$, and as suggested in the introductory Chapter 3 (Preservation Theorems for First Order Queries), we restrict our attention to classes \mathcal{C} that are downwards closed for \subseteq_i , also known as **hereditary classes**, so that $\min_{\subseteq_i} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \min_{\subseteq_i} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)} \cap \mathcal{C}$.

Lemma 5.2.1. *Let \mathcal{C} be a hereditary class of finite structures, and $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}$ be preserved under extensions over \mathcal{C} . The following are equivalent:*

1. There exists $\psi \in \exists \mathbf{FOLoc}$ such that $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \psi$.
2. There exists $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$, such that $\min_{\subseteq_i} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \mathbf{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$.

Proof. Let us first prove the direction \Rightarrow . If $\varphi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \exists \vec{x}. \tau(\vec{x})$ where $\tau(x)$ is an r -local formula (for some $r \geq 0$), then a \subseteq_i -minimal model $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ of φ necessarily contains a vector \vec{a} such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r), \vec{a} \models \tau$. This shows that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \models \varphi$ where $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}$ by definition. Since \mathcal{C} is hereditary, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \in \mathcal{C}$, thus $\mathfrak{A} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$ by minimality and $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathbf{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, |\vec{x}|)$.

Let us now prove the direction \Leftarrow . Assume that the \subseteq_i -minimal models of φ are all found in $\mathbf{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for some $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$. Let q be the quantifier rank of φ . We are going to show that φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{qr}^{r,k}$ over \mathcal{C} and deduce by Proposition 4.3.9 that φ is equivalent to some existential local sentence over \mathcal{C} .

Let $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ and $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{qr}^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$. Since $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, there exists a \subseteq_i -minimal model $\mathfrak{A}_0 \in \mathbf{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ with $\mathfrak{A}_0 \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}$. Let $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}_0^k$ be the centers of the balls of radius r in \mathfrak{A}_0 that contain \mathfrak{A}_0 . Since $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{qr}^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$ there exists a vector $\vec{b} \in \mathfrak{B}^k$ such that $\mathbf{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^{qr}(\vec{a}, r) = \mathbf{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^{qr}(\vec{b}, r)$.

Notice that $\mathfrak{A}_0 \subseteq_i \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$, hence $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \models \varphi$ since φ is preserved under extensions. Thus,⁷ $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r), \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}$, the latter being an r -local formula, with k free variables, and of quantifier rank qr .⁸ This shows that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, r), \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{b} \models |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}$. To conclude, observe that this entails $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, r) \models \varphi$, hence $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$ since $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}, r) \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$ and φ is preserved under extensions. ■

7: Recall that by definition, $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models |\varphi|_{\vec{x}}$ if and only if $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r), \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \varphi$. Furthermore, notice that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)}(\vec{a}, r) = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$.

8: The definition of $|\varphi|_{\vec{x}}$ requires that the free variables of φ belong to \vec{x} , which is the case here because φ does not have any.

We now provide the reader with alternative reading paths. The first one is to trust that the following Lemma 5.2.2 holds because one can

extract it from the proof of a different result, namely the [relativisation](#) of the [Łoś-Tarski Theorem](#) to [hereditary classes](#) of finite structures that are [closed under disjoint unions](#) [6, Theorem 4.3]. If this is the case, you can read the next paragraph, and jump directly to [Section 5.3](#) on page 133. If you do not trust that a one paragraph explanation is enough to convince you, you can still read the upcoming paragraph, but you will take combinatorial road once again for five to six pages.

The proof of preservation under extensions over some specific classes provided by [6, Theorem 4.3] is done by contradiction, using the fact that [\$\subseteq_i\$ -minimal models](#) that are “large enough” must contain large “scattered sets of points.” Forgetting about the size of the structure, this actually proves that [\$\subseteq_i\$ -minimal models](#) are in some [Local\(\$\mathcal{C}, r, k\$ \)](#) for well-chosen⁹ parameters $r, k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Lemma 5.2.2. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a [hereditary class](#) of finite structures [closed under disjoint unions](#) and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be a sentence [preserved under extensions](#) over \mathcal{C} .

There exist R, K such that $\min_{\subseteq_i} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, R, K)$.

Even though we stated [Lemma 5.2.2](#) as a “foreign result”, it cannot be found *as is* and must be (carefully) extracted from the proof of [6, Theorem 4.3]. For that reason, and for completeness, we provide hereafter a standalone proof of this lemma, that explicitly studies the distribution of types in the structures. Because the proof method differs from the original one, it is also interesting on its own.

Before getting into the technicalities of a formal proof, let us explain why the “naïve” approach does not work. The simplest approach would be to consider a formula φ in [Gaifman normal form](#), and a [\$\subseteq_i\$ -minimal model](#) \mathfrak{A} of φ . The structure \mathfrak{A} models a conjunction of (potential negations of) sentences of the form $\exists_{\geq r}^k x. \psi(x)$ where $\psi(x)$ is an [\$r\$ -local formula](#). Considering all the basic local sentences that appear positively in the conjunction, one can build a vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ containing the witnesses of the outer existential quantifications. The main hope being that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \models \varphi$, as this would imply, by minimality of \mathfrak{A} , that $\mathfrak{A} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$. By letting $R = r$ and $K = |\vec{a}|$, which is bounded independently of \mathfrak{A} , we would conclude.

Unfortunately the structure $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$ does not satisfy φ in general. The crucial issue comes from *intersections* of [local neighbourhoods](#): there are new [local neighbourhoods](#) appearing in $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$, as depicted in [Figure 5.6](#). In equational terms, the r -local neighbourhoods of $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$ are written $\mathcal{N}_{\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)}(\vec{b}, r) = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{b}, r)$, i.e., as an intersection of two r -local neighbourhoods of \mathfrak{A} . This is problematic because φ contains [basic local sentences](#) that appear negatively, and the fact that \mathfrak{A} does not contain some local behaviour does not transport to $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$.

To tackle this issue and represent the intersections inside our formulas, we temporarily leave the realm of first-order logic and consider [MSO](#) [local types](#), written $\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$. There are finitely many [MSO local types](#) up to logical equivalence at a given [quantifier rank](#) and [locality radius](#).

9: We invite the interested reader to check in [6] how these parameters are actually chosen.

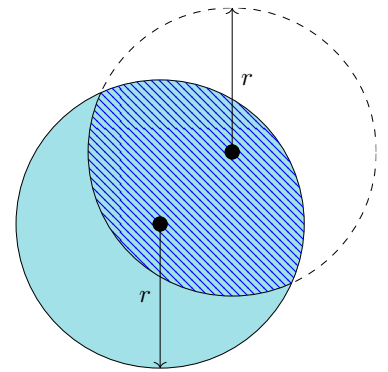


Figure 5.6.: Illustration that the local neighbourhoods of a local neighbourhood exhibit new behaviour.

The definition of [MSO](#)[σ], its associated [satisfaction relation](#), and the notion of r -local [MSO formula](#) are defined in [Appendix E.2](#).

We update our *type-collector* function accordingly through

$$\mathbf{MTypes}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ \text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r) : \vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^k \}. \quad (5.1)$$

As for first-order local types, **MSO local types** are enough to characterise the natural preorder associated to *existential local MSO-sentences*, that is, sentences of the form $\exists \vec{x}.\theta(\vec{x})$, where $\theta(\vec{x})$ is an r -local **MSO formula**¹⁰ around \vec{x} . Before going through the proof of Lemma 5.2.2 we translate the main properties of local types and *existential local sentences* to **MSO-local types** and *existential local MSO-sentences*. We can therefore write $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{q,\text{MSO}}^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$ to mean $\mathbf{MTypes}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A}) \subseteq \mathbf{MTypes}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{B})$.

10: See Definition E.2.3 p. 258

Exercise 5.2.3. For all structures $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$, $r, q, k \in \mathbb{N}$, the following are equivalent

- $\mathbf{MTypes}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A}) \subseteq \mathbf{MTypes}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{B})$.
- For all $\theta(\vec{x})$ r -local **MSO-formula**, $\mathfrak{A} \models \exists \vec{x}.\theta(\vec{x})$ implies $\mathfrak{B} \models \exists \vec{x}.\theta(\vec{x})$.

Lemma 5.2.4. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a class of finite structures, and $\varphi \in \text{FO}$. The following are equivalent

1. There exists an *existential local MSO sentence* ψ such that $\psi \equiv_{\mathcal{C}} \varphi$.
2. There exists $r, q, k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that φ is *preserved under* $\Rightarrow_{q,\text{MSO}}^{r,k}$.

Proof Sketch. It is the same proof as Proposition 4.3.9 when replacing $\text{Types}_r^{q,k}$ with $\mathbf{MTypes}_r^{q,k}$, leveraging Exercise 5.2.3. ■

11: It will not be possible to encode the real intersection, but find neighbourhoods whose intersection have the same first-order theory up to some *quantifier rank* q .

In order to prove Lemma 5.2.2, we are going to slightly change our proof scheme, and use Lemma 5.2.4. The main idea will be that using **MSO-local types** prevents the problems associated with intersections of *local neighbourhoods*, because these intersections can be captured¹¹ by **MSO sentences**. This will be the following Lemma 5.2.10 on page 131, that we preemptively state below.

Lemma 5.2.10. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a *hereditary class closed under disjoint unions*, and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ a sentence *preserved under extensions* over \mathcal{C} .

There exists R, Q, K such that φ is *preserved under* $\Rightarrow_{Q,\text{MSO}}^{R,K}$ over \mathcal{C} .

Lemma 5.2.10 allows us to prove that sentences *preserved under extensions* have their minimal models in $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for some $r, k \geq 0$ whenever \mathcal{C} is *hereditary* and *closed under disjoint unions*.

Lemma 5.2.2. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a *hereditary class* of finite structures *closed under disjoint unions* and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be a sentence *preserved under extensions* over \mathcal{C} .

There exist R, K such that $\min_{\subseteq_i} \llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, R, K)$.

Proof. Applying Lemma 5.2.10 provides R, Q, K such that φ is pre-

served over \mathcal{C} under (R, Q, K) MSO types. Using Lemma 5.2.4, φ is equivalent over \mathcal{C} to a sentence $\psi = \exists \vec{x}. \theta(\vec{x})$ where $\theta(\vec{x})$ is an r -local MSO-formula.

Consider \mathfrak{A} a \subseteq_i -minimal model of ψ in \mathcal{C} . As $\mathfrak{A} \models \psi$, there exists a vector $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}^{|\vec{x}|}$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \theta(\vec{x})$. Because θ is an r -local MSO-formula, this proves that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r), \vec{x} \mapsto \vec{a} \models \theta(\vec{x})$. As a consequence, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \models \psi$. Moreover, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r) \in \mathcal{C}$ because the latter is hereditary. The minimality of \mathfrak{A} proves that $\mathfrak{A} = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$, thus, that $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, |\vec{x}|)$. ■

Theorem 5.2.5. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a hereditary class of finite structures closed under disjoint unions. Then, \mathcal{C} is localisable.*

Proof. Consider a sentence φ preserved under local elementary embeddings over \mathcal{C} . Using Lemma 5.2.2 its minimal models are in some $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$, and using Lemma 5.2.1 this provides an equivalent existential local sentence over \mathcal{C} . ■

Corollary 5.2.6. *A sentence φ preserved under extensions over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is equivalent over $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ to an existential local sentence.*

We have postponed the combinatorial core of the proof of Theorem 5.2.5, and in the Lemma 5.2.10 on page 131, which remains to be proven. This combinatorial lemma can be decomposed into two steps. First, we will analyse the “distribution of MSO-local types” in a structure, not unlike what was done in Section 4.2 and in particular in Lemma 4.2.24 on page 85. Then, we leverage this analysis to gain a better understanding of what $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{q, \text{MSO}}^{r, k} \mathfrak{B}$ means, and in particular prove that first-order sentences preserved under extensions must exhibit some regular behaviour with respect to this preorder.

As in Lemma 4.2.24, we are interested in the points of a structure that satisfy a given r -local property, except this time we have MSO formulas. For simplicity, we will not search the points that satisfy a given r -local MSO formula, but a “full” description of the formulas satisfied up to some quantifier rank. To that end, let us formally define what it means for a vector to “realise” an MSO (q, r) -type.

Definition 5.2.7. Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, \mathbf{T}^{MSO} be an MSO (q, r) -type with a single free variable x . The set of *realisations of the type* \mathbf{T}^{MSO} is the set of $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(a, r) = \mathbf{T}^{\text{MSO}}$. We write this subset of \mathfrak{A} as follows:

$$\text{real}_{\mathbf{T}^{\text{MSO}}}^{\mathfrak{A}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ a \in \mathfrak{A} : \text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(a, r) = \mathbf{T}^{\text{MSO}} \} .$$

Because we are interested in the spatial distribution of realisations of a given type, and in particular want to find a small number of points to represent $\text{MTypes}_r^{q, k}(\mathfrak{A})$, let us define what it means for a \mathbf{T}^{MSO} to be “covered.”

[21]: Dawar, Grohe, Kreutzer and Schweikardt (2006), ‘Approximation schemes for first-order definable optimisation problems’

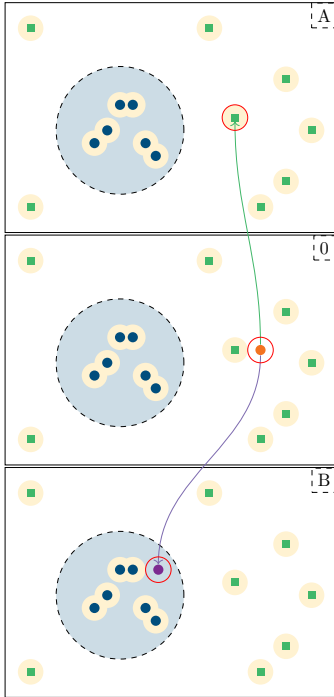


Figure 5.7.: Illustration of Lemma 5.2.9 with parameter $k = 1$. We have depicted the set of covering points in blue, with their r local neighbourhoods in beige. The R local neighbourhood of the covering points is in light blue. The collection of generic points is represented using the green squares, with their r -local neighbourhoods also in beige. The three pictures illustrate how, starting from frame 0 with a selected point (in orange), one can either find a corresponding generic point (in frame A), or a corresponding point that is R -covered by the covering points (in frame B).

Definition 5.2.8. Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, \mathbf{T}^{MSO} be an MSO (q, r) -type with a single free variable x , $R \in \mathbb{N}$, and S be a subset of \mathfrak{A} . The type \mathbf{T}^{MSO} is *R -covered* by S when $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\text{real}_{\mathbf{T}^{\text{MSO}}}^{\mathfrak{A}}, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(S, R)$.

The following lemma is a uniform version of the one given by [21, Lemma 8]. It can be thought as a generalisation of the technique from Lemma 4.2.8 on page 77 to describe the spatial distribution of points of interest in a given structure. The intuition being that one can find (uniformly bounded) subsets of generic points and covering points, so that every MSO-local type is either found in large quantities (hence generic) or is rare enough (hence can be covered). We hope that the picture Figure 5.7 will help understand the overall idea in a simple case.

Lemma 5.2.9. Let σ be a finite relational signature, $r, q, k \geq 0$. Then, there exists a maximal size $K_m \geq k$ and maximal radius $R_m \geq r$ such that for all structures $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ there exists $r \leq R \leq R_m$, a covering subset $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}} \subseteq \mathfrak{A}$ and a generic subset $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}} \subseteq \mathfrak{A}$ satisfying the following properties

1. Both $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ have size at most K_m .
2. The sets $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ are non-interfering, i.e.,

$$\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R) = \emptyset.$$

3. Elements in $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ are independent, i.e.,

$$\mathfrak{A}, \vec{x} \mapsto \mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, R).$$

4. For every $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, if $\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(a, r)$ is not R -covered by $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$, then $|\text{real}_{\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(a, r)}^{\mathfrak{A}} \cap \mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}| \geq k$.

Proof. Let $r, q, k \geq 0$ be natural numbers and consider Q the number of different MSO (q, r) -local types with 1 free variable. Define $K_m \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} Q \times Q \times k$ and $R_m \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 3^{Q+1}r$.

Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be a structure and consider $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{MTypes}_{r,1}^{q,1}(\mathfrak{A})$. By definition, $|T| \leq Q$. We construct iteratively for $i \leq |T|$ two sets $S_i \subseteq T$ and $C_i \subseteq \mathfrak{A}$ such that every type of S_i is $3^i r$ -covered by C_i , $|C_i| \leq i \times Q \times k$, and examine whether the following property holds at each step i :

$$\begin{aligned} P(i) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} & \exists G \subseteq \mathfrak{A}, \forall u, v \in G, d_{\mathfrak{A}}(u, v) > 2 \times 3^i r \\ & \wedge \forall u \in G, d_{\mathfrak{A}}(u, C_i) > 2 \times 3^i r \\ & \wedge \forall \mathbf{T}^{\text{MSO}} \in T \setminus S_i, |\text{real}_{\mathbf{T}^{\text{MSO}}}^{\mathfrak{A}} \cap G| \geq k \end{aligned}$$

The rationale is that if $P(i)$ holds for some $0 \leq i \leq Q$, it defines a subset $G_i \subseteq \mathfrak{A}$. By extracting only k witnesses per type in $T \setminus S_i$ from such a set G_i , we can construct $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ of size at most $Q \times k \leq K_m$. Defining $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} C_i$, $R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 3^i r$, we have concluded, because the size of $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ is bounded by $i \times Q \times k \leq K_m$.

We start with $S_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset$, $C_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset$. Assume that S_i and C_i have been defined so that $P(i)$ does not hold; we want to construct S_{i+1} and C_{i+1} . To that end, we enumerate the types in $T \setminus S_i$ in a sequence $(t_p)_{1 \leq p \leq |T \setminus S_i|}$. Using this sequence, we construct iteratively a set G_i^j of size at most $Q \times k$ such that points of G_i^j are at pairwise distance greater than $2 \times 3^i r$ and at distance greater than $2 \times 3^i r$ from C_i as follows. Let $G_i^0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \emptyset$, and construct G_i^{j+1} by selecting the first type t_p that has fewer than k realisations in G_i^j ; this is possible because $P(i)$ does not hold. If there exists a point $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ at distance greater than $2 \times 3^i r$ from G_i^j and C_i and of type t_p , we can add it to G_i^j to build G_i^{j+1} . Otherwise, every choice of point $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ of type t_p is at distance at most $2 \times 3^i r$ from $C_i \cup G_i^j$; in this case let $C_{i+1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} C_i \cup G_i^j$ and $S_{i+1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} S_i \cup \{t_p\}$, the hypothesis on S_i is that every type in S_i is $3^i r$ -covered by C_i , and we showed that t_p was $3^{i+1} r$ -covered by $C_i \cup G_i^j = C_{i+1}$.

The above process must terminate because the set S_i is strictly increasing and of size bounded by Q . By definition, this means that $P(i)$ holds for some $i \leq Q$, and we have concluded. \blacksquare

Following the terminology used by Dawar, Grohe, Kreutzer and Schweikardt, the MSO local types realised by $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ can be thought of as *rare*, while those realised by $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ can be thought of as *frequent*.

Lemma 5.2.10. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a hereditary class closed under disjoint unions, and $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ a sentence preserved under extensions over \mathcal{C} .*

There exists R, Q, K such that φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{Q, \text{MSO}}^{R, K}$ over \mathcal{C} .

Proof. Consider a first order sentence φ that is preserved under \subseteq_i over \mathcal{C} . As a first step, we write φ in Gaifman normal form and collect $\theta_1, \dots, \theta_\ell$ the basic local sentences appearing in this normal form. The sentences θ_i are of the form $\exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$ where ψ_i is an r_i -local formula of quantifier rank q_i .

Let $r \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ r_i : 1 \leq i \leq \ell \}$, $q \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ q_i : 1 \leq i \leq \ell \}$, and $k \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max \{ k_i : 1 \leq i \leq \ell \}$.

We use Lemma 5.2.9 over the tuple $(2r, 2 \times k \times \ell, q + 1)$ to obtain numbers $2r \leq R_m$ and $k \leq K_m$. Define $K \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2K_m$, $R \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2R_m$, and $Q \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 2R_m + k + q + 1 + \max \{ \text{rk}(\theta_i) : 1 \leq i \leq \ell \}$. Our goal is to prove that φ is preserved under $\Rightarrow_{Q, \text{MSO}}^{R, K}$.

Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ such that $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. Leveraging Lemma 5.2.9, we know that there exists subsets $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$, respectively the covering subset and the generic subset for the MSO $(2r, q + 1)$ -local types of \mathfrak{A} . Recall that both $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ are of size bounded by K_m , and such that we have a control over the R' -local behaviour of these two sets, for some $2r \leq R' \leq R_m$.

Let us explore the distribution of our r -local properties $\psi_i(x)$ for $1 \leq i \leq \ell$ inside the sets $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$. To that end, we write

$$I_f \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ 1 \leq j \leq \ell : \exists a \in \mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}, \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \psi_j(x) \}$$

In order to deal with the (now infamous) intersections of neighbourhoods, let us write, given a set variable X , the MSO-formula $\psi_i^X(x)$ as the relativisation of $\psi_i(x)$ to elements of X . This allows us to collect the r -local properties that *may become true* provided that we have a suitable intersection.

$$I_m \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ 1 \leq j \leq l : \exists a \in \mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}, \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \exists X. \psi_j^X(x) \}$$

12: We do not use the notation $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{B}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{B}}$ because $C^{\mathfrak{B}}$ and $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ do not have the properties stated in Lemma 5.2.9: there may be MSO local types realised in \mathfrak{B} that are neither covered by $C^{\mathfrak{B}}$ nor frequent in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$. However, every MSO local types realised in \mathfrak{B} that was *also* realised in \mathfrak{A} is either covered by $C^{\mathfrak{B}}$ or frequently appears in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$.

Assume now that $\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{Q, \text{MSO}}^{R, K} \mathfrak{B}$. By definition, there exists sets¹² $C^{\mathfrak{B}}$ and $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ in \mathfrak{B} such that

$$\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^Q(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}} \cup \mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R) = \text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^Q(C^{\mathfrak{B}} \cup G^{\mathfrak{B}}, R). \quad (5.2)$$

Because we have chosen Q large enough to check distances up to R , we can transport most of the properties of $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ to $C^{\mathfrak{B}}$ and $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$. It is immediate that $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $C^{\mathfrak{B}}$ have the same size, and the same also holds for $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ and $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$. Furthermore, $\mathfrak{B}, \vec{x} \mapsto G^{\mathfrak{B}} \models \text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, R')$, and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(G^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') = \emptyset$. However, it is not possible to transport the “covering property” from \mathfrak{A} to \mathfrak{B} directly, as the latter might have more MSO-local types than \mathfrak{A} .

Let us define $E \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathfrak{B} \setminus \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R')$. Notice that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(G^{\mathfrak{B}}, r) \subseteq E$ because $2r \leq R' \leq R$.

Given $i \in I_m$, one can choose k distinct elements in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ such that $\mathfrak{B}, x \mapsto b \models \exists X. \psi_i^X(x)$; let us call this vector \vec{b}_i^m . Similarly, given $i \in I_f$, one can choose k distinct elements in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ such that $\mathfrak{B}, x \mapsto b \models \psi_i^X(x)$, let us call this vector \vec{b}_i^f .

13: Recall that elements in $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ are not covered by $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ by construction. Hence, every MSO-local type that is realised by an element in $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ (hence, in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$), must appear frequently in $\mathfrak{G}^{\mathfrak{A}}$, (hence, frequently in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$).

Without loss of generality¹³ since types in $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ have at least $2 \times k \times l$ realisations, we can assume that \vec{b}_i^f and \vec{b}_j^m are disjoint for all choices of i, j .

Let $i \in I_m$ and $b \in \vec{b}_i^m$; there exists a subset $F_b \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(b, r)$, such that $b \in F_b$, and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(b, r) \cap F_b, x \mapsto b \models \psi_i(x)$. Let us build E' as the structure E where the complements of the sets F_b have been removed:

$$E' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} E \setminus \left(\bigcup_{i \in I_m} \bigcup_{b \in \vec{b}_i^m} [\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(b, r) \setminus F_b] \right).$$

We assert that for every $1 \leq i \leq l$ the following properties are equivalent:

1. $\mathfrak{A} \uplus E' \models \theta_i$,
2. $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$, and
3. $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$.

14: This is actually the consequence of a stronger statement: $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') \uplus E'$ satisfies the same first order sentences of quantifier rank at most Q as $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') \uplus E'$. This holds because the first order theory of a disjoint union is uniquely determined by the first order theory of its parts (even at a fixed quantifier rank).

Since $\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^Q(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R) = \text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^Q(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R)$, and $r \leq R' \leq R_m \leq R$, it is clear that $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^Q(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R')$ and $\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{B}}^Q(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R')$ are equal. Let $1 \leq i \leq l$. Since, $Q \geq \text{rk}(\theta_i)$, this implies $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$ if and only if $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(C^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$.¹⁴

Let us now prove the equivalence between the first two items.

- Assume $\mathfrak{A} \uplus E' \models \theta_i$. Let $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ a \in \mathfrak{A} : \mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \psi_i(x) \}$.

- Assume that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(S, r) \subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R')$. Then, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$.
 - Otherwise, there exists $a \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, x \mapsto a \models \psi_i(x)$ and $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r) \not\subseteq \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R')$. By definition of $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$, this proves that $i \in I_f$. As a consequence, the vector \vec{b}_i^f of size k is defined and belongs¹⁵ to $G^{\mathfrak{B}} \cap E'$. In particular, $E' \models \theta_i$,¹⁶ therefore $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$.
- Assume that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') \uplus E' \models \theta_i$. Let us define S as the set of witnesses for the property $\psi_i(x)$ in $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R')$, which amounts formally to: $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a \in \mathfrak{A} : \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R'), x \mapsto a \models \psi_i(x)\}$.
- If $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(S, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R') = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(S, r)$. Then, that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus E' \models \theta_i$.
 - Otherwise, there exists $a \in S$ such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r)$ is a proper subset of $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R')$ and such that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r) \cap \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}, R'), x \mapsto a \models \psi_i(x)$. In particular, $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, r), x \mapsto a \models \exists X. \psi_i^X(x)$. By definition of $\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{A}}$, this proves that $i \in I_m$.
Given $b \in \vec{b}_i^m$, it holds that $E', x \mapsto b \models \psi_i(x)$ because $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(b, r) \cap F_b, x \mapsto b \models \psi_i(x)$ and $\mathcal{N}_{E'}(b, r) = \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(b, r) \cap F_b$. As a consequence, $E' \models \theta_i$, and we conclude that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus E' \models \theta_i$.

15: They belong to $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ by construction, and the important thing to notice is that they are still present in E' . This is because elements of $G^{\mathfrak{B}}$ are far away, and in particular the vectors \vec{b}_j^m are not close to \vec{b}_i^f : in particular, E' contains $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\vec{b}_i^f, r)$.

16: This holds because we found $|\vec{b}_i^f|$ elements that are far enough from each other, and that all share the same **MSO-local type**. Because $\psi_i(x)$ belongs to the **MSO-local type** of a , we have found enough pairwise distant witnesses to conclude that $E' \models \theta_i$.

We can now conclude by playing a simple ping-pong argument. Since $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, and $\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A} \uplus E'$, we know that $\mathfrak{A} \uplus E' \models \varphi$. Moreover, the equivalences above assert that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') \uplus E' \models \varphi$. Remark that $\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{B}}(\mathfrak{C}^{\mathfrak{B}}, R') \uplus E' \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$, hence $\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$. ■

The use of disjoint unions was crucial in the construction, and removing the assumption that \mathcal{C} is closed under this operation provides counter-examples to Lemma 5.2.10. We refine Example 5.1.11 hereafter.

Example 5.2.11. The sentence $\varphi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \forall x. \deg(x) = 2$ is **preserved under extensions** over $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$ but is not equivalent to an **existential local sentence** over $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$.

Proof Sketch. We use Lemma 5.2.1: for every r, k , the cycle C_{2rk+1} is a \subseteq_i -minimal model of φ in $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$ that does not belong to $\text{Local}(\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}, r, k)$. ■

Remark 5.2.12. Some classes $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ are **localisable** but not **closed under disjoint unions**. It is the case for finite classes of finite structures.

5.3. Discussion

Beyond existential sentences? While there is no clear adaptation of Theorem 5.1.2 to arbitrary fragments of **FO**, one can check that for some subfragments of **EFO**, the analogue theorems holds.

Theorem 5.3.1. Let \mathcal{C} be a *hereditary class* of finite structures

closed under disjoint unions, and $F \in \{ \text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO} \}$ be a fragment. The F -preservation theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} if and only if the F -preservation theorem relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for all $r \geq 0$ and $k \geq 1$.

Proof Sketch. This is because Lemma 5.1.1 is trivially adapted to any fragment $F \in \{ \text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO} \}$. Indeed, what was needed is essentially the existence of suitable diagram sentences. We restate the claim hereafter.

Let \mathcal{C} be a hereditary class of finite structures, and let F be one of EFO , EPFO^\neq , or EPFO . Then, the following are equivalent:

- The F -preservation theorem relativises to $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k)$ for all $r, k \geq 0$,
- Existential local sentences that are preserved under \leq_F (over \mathcal{C}) are equivalent (over \mathcal{C}) to $\exists F$ sentences.

The proof is obtained by considering the proof of Lemma 5.1.1 verbatim, and replacing \subseteq_i with \leq_F . This is possible because Lemma 3.2.3 applies to all $F \in \{ \text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO} \}$. ■

However, this is not quite satisfactory: we would expect Theorem 5.3.1 to hold for all $F \subseteq \text{EFO}$. The only roadblock is the usage of Lemma 3.2.3, which itself relies on the existence of suitable diagram sentences given by Lemma 3.1.5. This leads to the following conjectures.

Conjecture 5.3.2 (Diagram Formulas Below EFO). Let σ be a finite relational signature, and $F \subseteq \text{EFO}$ be a fragment. Then, for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, the diagram sentence $\Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\exists F} \in \exists F$ exists.

Conjecture 5.3.3 (Diagram Formulas). Let σ be a finite relational signature, and $F \subseteq \text{FO}[\sigma]$ be a fragment. Then, for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, the diagram sentence $\Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\exists F} \in \exists F$ exists.

Limitations. Notice that Theorems 5.1.2 and 5.3.1 have intrinsic limitations. They only consider hereditary classes that are closed under disjoint unions. Moreover, their application “suppose” the fact that it is easier to prove that a preservation theorem locally relativises, than that it globally does. In the presence of dense classes such as Example 5.1.10, this is simply not true.

References

- [6] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Martin Grohe. ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’. In: *SIAM Journal on Computing* 38 (2008), pp. 1364–1381. DOI: [10.1137/060658709](https://doi.org/10.1137/060658709) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 64, 67, 68, 74, 97, 98, 117, 121, 127).
- [21] Anuj Dawar, Martin Grohe, Stephan Kreutzer and Nicole Schweikardt. ‘Approximation schemes for first-order definable optimisation problems’. In: *21st Annual IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS’06)*. 2006, pp. 411–420. DOI: [10.1109/lics.2006.13](https://doi.org/10.1109/lics.2006.13) (cit. on pp. 68, 130, 131).
- [27] Guoli Ding. ‘Subgraphs and well-quasi-ordering’. In: *Journal of Graph Theory* 16 (1992), pp. 489–502. DOI: [10.1002/jgt.3190160509](https://doi.org/10.1002/jgt.3190160509) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 44, 45, 122).
- [71] Aliaume Lopez. ‘When Locality Meets Preservation’. In: *LICS’22* (2022), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 67, 117).
- [77] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. ‘On nowhere dense graphs’. In: *European Journal of Combinatorics* 32 (2011), pp. 600–617. DOI: [10.1016/j.ejc.2011.01.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejc.2011.01.006). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0195669811000151> (cit. on pp. 46, 121, 259).
- [78] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. *Sparsity: Graphs, Structures, and Algorithms*. Springer, 2012. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-27875-4](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-27875-4) (cit. on pp. 25, 120).

Logically Presented Spaces

6.

Outline of the chapter

This chapter introduces an algebraic and topological approach to [preservation theorems](#), by pairing the idea of [definability](#) coming from logic together with the idea of [compactness](#) coming from topology. This sparks the study of triples (X, τ, \mathcal{B}) where τ is a topology and \mathcal{B} a [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The main motivation for this abstract study is to find a way around the non-compositionality of [preservation theorems](#) and the complexity of proving their relativisation.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of the chapter, I hope you will be convinced that [logically presented pre-spectral spaces](#) are good candidates for abstracting [preservation theorems](#). In many cases, the two notion coincide, but the former enjoys appealing compositional properties akin to those of [well-quasi-orders](#) and [Noetherian spaces](#).

| | | |
|-------|---|-----|
| 6.1 | Topological Preservation Theorems | 140 |
| 6.2 | Connection with Other Spaces | 145 |
| 6.2.1 | Noetherian Spaces and WQO | 146 |
| 6.2.2 | Spectral Spaces | 146 |
| 6.3 | Stability Properties | 150 |
| 6.3.1 | Subspaces and Morphisms | 151 |
| 6.3.2 | Closure under Finitary Operations | 152 |
| 6.3.3 | Colouring Structures | 158 |
| 6.3.4 | Limit Constructions | 174 |
| 6.4 | Discussion | 175 |

Genesis. In general, stability properties of [preservation theorems](#) are not studied for themselves in the literature.¹ However, some simple properties are often used implicitly, especially when proving that [pre-preservation theorems](#) do not [relativise](#) in the finite [66, 89, 90]. This is already what happened in [Subsection 4.3.1](#), where we leveraged stability properties to simplify the proofs. This motivated the search for a “generic stability argument”, which lead us to the introduction of [logically presented pre-spectral spaces](#)² (lpps).

At first, our goal was to connect [preservation theorems](#) with the theory of [Noetherian spaces](#) and [well-quasi-orderings](#). However, these two theories do not correctly model [preservation theorems](#), and this has lead to the introduction of a new category of topological spaces: [logically presented spaces](#). Later on, a worthwhile connection with [spectral spaces](#)³ was uncovered, which gave us the impression that some theorems could be directly taken from the theory developed around these topological spaces. As for [wqos](#) and [Noetherian spaces](#), the connection with [preservation theorems](#) remained too coarse for our purposes, but gave us intuition about what kind of positive and negative results were to be expected.

Once a proper definition was given, the natural question was whether the stability properties of related spaces ([wqos](#), [Noetherian spaces](#), [spectral spaces](#)) could be generalised to this new notion. We answered this in the positive, which allows us to prove relativisation of [preservation theorems](#) by “compositional techniques”: instead of providing an ad-hoc proof that a [preservation theorem relativises](#) to a class \mathcal{C} , one can now interpret \mathcal{C} as structures constructed from simpler parts where such a relativisation was known to hold.

1: Except for [85, Chapter 10] that lists compositional properties in the case of the [Chang-Łoś-Suszko Theorem](#). However, this study is tied to a specific preservation theorem.

2: See [Definition 6.1.11](#) p. 143

3: See [Definition 6.2.3](#) p. 147

[70]: Lopez (2021), ‘Preservation Theorems Through the Lens of Topology’

The first formal appearance of **lpps** followed from the research that was done in [70], which the current chapter mostly follows. There are two main differences that should be highlighted: in [70], there was a focus on using **quasi-orderings** rather than topologies, and the definition of **lpps** has been adapted to remove the need for the rather uncommon notion of “diagram basis.”

4: See Definition 6.1.1 p. 140

5: See Definition 6.1.11 p. 143

Contributions. In Section 6.1, we will introduce the topological object that will capture **preservation theorems** formally. We split the definition in two parts: first we define **logically presented spaces**⁴ (**lps**), which are topological spaces with a notion of **definable subsets**, and then we adapt the notion of **preservation theorem** to this setting and define the subclass of **logically presented pre-spectral spaces**⁵ (**lpps**). This barbaric name was given due to its connection with **spectral spaces**, and will be explained in Section 6.2, where we study how **lpps** are a generalisation of **Noetherian spaces**, but also a variant of **spectral spaces**.

6: See Definition 6.1.8 p. 142

Finally, Section 6.3 is devoted to the study of “stability properties” of **lpps**. In particular, we will give sufficient conditions for a subset to be an **lpps** in the induced topology as show in Lemma 6.3.2, which together with the ability to use **logical maps**⁶ Lemma 6.3.3, provides us with a basic toolbox to study preservation theorems in the stricter setting of **lpps**.

We continue the study of the stability properties of **lpps** by trying to recover analogues of the algebraic constructions that preserve **well-quasi-orderings** or **Noetherian spaces**. This is a worthwhile effort because this offers a “compositional” way to build **lpps**, which is one of the reasons for the success of **wqos** and **Noetherian spaces**, and is an approach that was otherwise lacking in the literature. Let us briefly recall in Tables 6.1 and 6.2 the usual operations that can be used to build complex **wqos** and **Noetherian spaces** out of simpler ones.

In the case of **lpps**, we prove that **lpps** can be built using algebraic operations (**products**, **sums**, **colourings**), morphisms (**logical maps**), and subsets. Notice that in this last section, results are split into pairings of a topological theorem and a logical theorem. For instance, the stability under products is first a topological result in Theorem 6.3.13, and then turned into a result about **FO** in Lemma 6.3.16. This is a strength of this approach, as one can separately talk about what are the “good” **definable subsets** for a given space, and then separately prove that **FO**-definable subsets are indeed of the correct shape.

Note that the “logical proofs” of Section 6.3 are mostly obtained via composition theorem for first order logic, also known as, **Feferman-Vaught style compositional techniques**. We believe that this illustrates why the syntactic presentation of these techniques is a valuable contribution.

| Constructor | Syntax | Quasi-order |
|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Finite set | Σ | equality |
| Well founded set | P | \leq |
| Disjoint sum | $W_1 + W_2$ | co-product ordering |
| Product | $W_1 \times W_2$ | product ordering |
| Finite words | W^* | subword embedding |
| Finite multisets | $M^\diamond(W)$ | multiset embedding |
| Finite sets | $P_f(W)$ | Hoare quasi-ordering |
| Finite trees | $T(W)$ | tree embedding |

Table 6.1.: An algebra of [well-quasi-orders](#) [23]. This table is meant as an illustration of the prolific stability properties of [well-quasi-orderings](#). For every operation, we not only provide the construction of the new elements, but also the new preorder. To gain space and because most of these will not be used in the document, we deferred the definition to the corresponding cheatsheet [Chapter C \(Well-Quasi-Orderings Cheat Sheet\)](#).

| Constructor | Syntax | Topology |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Well-quasi-orders | P | Alexandroff topology |
| Complex vectors | \mathbb{C}^k | Zariski topology |
| Disjoint sum | $X_1 + X_2$ | co-product topology |
| Product | $X_1 \times X_2$ | product topology |
| Finite words | X^* | subword topology |
| Finite trees | $T(X)$ | tree topology |
| Finite multisets | $M^\diamond(X)$ | multiset topology |
| Transfinite words | $X^{<\alpha}$ | regular transfinite subword topology |
| Powerset | $\mathcal{P}(X)$ | lower Vietoris |

Table 6.2.: An algebra of [Noetherian spaces](#) [see 44, 45, 47]. This table is meant as an illustration of the prolific stability properties of [Noetherian spaces](#), which mimics (and extends) the stability of [well-quasi-orderings](#). As for [wqos](#), we have to define the topologies placed on the newly constructed spaces, and to gain space, we deferred their definition to the corresponding cheatsheet [Chapter D \(Topology Cheat Sheet\)](#).

Table 6.3.: Algebraic operations preserving [lpps](#). Arbitrary topological spaces are written X , and classes of structures \mathcal{C} . For each constructor, there is one theorem stating that the resulting space is an [lpps](#), and one that states that the resulting space with the [Boolean subalgebra FO](#) is an [lpps](#).

| Operation | Symbol | Hypothesis | Topology | FO-version |
|----------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| sum | $X + X'$ | - | Lemma 6.3.8 | Lemma 6.3.15 |
| product | $X \times X'$ | - | Theorem 6.3.13 | Lemma 6.3.16 |
| inner product | $\mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{C}'$ | - | n/a | Exercise 6.3.20 |
| finite words | X^* | - | Theorem 6.3.33 | Corollary 6.3.36 |
| wreath product | $\mathcal{C} \rtimes_F X'$ | \mathcal{C} is ∞ -wqo | Theorem 6.3.44 | Theorem 6.3.46 |

6.1. Topological Preservation Theorems

7: See Theorem 3.1.9 p. 33

Recall that a [preservation theorem](#)⁷ for a [fragment](#) F of \mathbf{FO} states for all sentences $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}$ that are preserved under \leq_F , there exists a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ that is equivalent to φ . The typical proof of this result relies on the [compactness theorem of first order logic](#).

To provide an abstract counterpart to a [preservation theorem](#) in terms of purely topological properties, we want to represent both the logic \mathbf{FO} and the [fragment](#) F . Given a class \mathcal{C} , the logic \mathbf{FO} will be interpreted as a [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $(\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{C}), \emptyset, \mathcal{C}, \subseteq)$, and the [fragment](#) F will be interpreted as a [topology](#) over \mathcal{C} . The motivation behind this difference of treatment is that “first order definability” should be closed under negation, while “being preserved under \leq_F ” typically amounts to an infinite disjunction of facts in F , the latter being stable under finite intersections, but not under negations.

Concretely, we are interested in state spaces that can simultaneously be viewed as topological spaces and as spaces with a notion of [definable set](#), through the interpretation of first-order sentences.

Definition 6.1.1. A [logically presented space](#) (abbreviated as [lps](#)) is a triple $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$, where

1. τ is a topology on X ,
2. \mathcal{B} is a [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $(\mathcal{P}(X), \emptyset, X, \subseteq)$,
3. $\tau = \langle \tau \cap \mathcal{B} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.

The name [logically presented](#) comes from the fact that $\tau \cap \mathcal{B}$ is a [sub-basis](#) of τ , which is stable under finite intersections and unions, and will in our examples be the collection of first order definable subsets of X (which makes sense when X is a class of structures).

The running example of [logically presented space](#) is the class of finite structures $\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ together with the [Alexandroff topology](#) $\mathbf{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$, where the Boolean subalgebra is just $\llbracket \mathbf{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)}$. Following this intuition, we call sets in τ [open subsets](#), and those in \mathcal{B} are [definable](#).

Example 6.1.2. Let σ be a finite relational signature. The following is a [logically presented space](#): $\langle \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma), \mathbf{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \llbracket \mathbf{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)} \rangle$.

Proof Sketch. Recall from [Lemma 3.1.5](#) that the \subseteq_i -upward closure of a finite structure \mathfrak{A} is definable in $\exists \mathbf{QF}$. As a consequence, the [upward closure](#) of \mathfrak{A} is [first order definable](#) inside \mathcal{C} . ■

To ease the notations, we will often write $\langle \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma), \mathbf{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \mathbf{FO} \rangle$ when there is no ambiguity that [first order sentences](#) are interpreted over $\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ to build a [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{Fin}(\sigma))$.

In order to provide an example that is not explicitly tailored to tackle preservation theorems, let us see in [Example 6.1.3](#) how the real line

can be seen both from a topological perspective, and from an algebraic one.

Example 6.1.3. Let (\mathbb{R}, τ) be the real line with its usual topology. Let $\mathcal{B} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \{[a, b] : a \leq b \in \mathbb{R}\} \rangle_{\text{bool}}$. Then, $\langle \mathbb{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an **lps**.

Proof. Recall that the usual topology⁸ of the real line is generated by the open intervals $]a, b[$, for $a < b \in \mathbb{R}$. To conclude that $\langle \mathbb{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an **lps**, it suffices to notice that for $a < b \in \mathbb{R}$, $]a, b[\in \mathcal{B}$.

8: The topology of the real line was introduced in Example 3.3.15.

To that end, let us remark that for $a < b \in \mathbb{R}$, the following equality holds:

$$]a, b[= \underbrace{[a, b] \setminus ([a, a] \cup [b, b])}_{\in \mathcal{B}} . \quad \blacksquare$$

Because we are interested in the relativisation of preservation theorems, most of the time we will start from a fragment F of **FO** and a class $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, in order to build the **lps** $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, FO \rangle$. As a sanity check, let us prove that this effectively generalises in a topological way the setting of preservation theorems in the finite.

Fact 6.1.4. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, and F be a fragment of **FO**. Then, the space $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, FO \rangle$ is a logically presented space.

Proof. We only have to check that $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} = \langle \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \cap FO \rangle_{\text{topo}}$. This is an immediate consequence of the inclusion $\exists F \subseteq FO$. \blacksquare

There is a discrepancy when talking about $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ instead of $\text{Alex}(\leq_F)$, but for the fragments of interest, the two coincide.

Lemma 6.1.5. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, $F \in \{EFO, EPFO^\neq, EPFO\}$ be a fragment of **FO**. The following two logically presented spaces are equal:

1. $\langle \text{Fin}(\sigma), \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, FO \rangle$,
2. $\langle \text{Fin}(\sigma), \text{Alex}(\leq_F), FO \rangle$.

Proof. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, F be a fragment of **FO**. Then, $\text{Alex}(\leq_F) \subseteq \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ because one can define the upward closure of a given structure using a diagram formula (see Lemma 3.1.5).

Conversely, a sentence $\varphi \in \exists F$ is always preserved under \leq_F , and in particular, $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is upwards closed for \leq_F .

We have proven that $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} = \text{Alex}(\leq_F)$. \blacksquare

When considering finite structures, it might seem that introducing the $\exists F$ construction overcomplicates the presentation. Let us argue that the presentation $\langle \text{Fin}(\sigma), \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, FO \rangle$ is truly the one found when studying preservation theorems. We prove in Example 6.1.6 that Item 2 does not yield an **lps** over $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$, while Fact 6.1.4 shows that Item 1 does.

Example 6.1.6. The space $\langle\langle \text{Struct}(\sigma), \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is not a logically presented space.

Proof. Thanks to the Łoś-Tarski Theorem, $\text{Alex}(\subseteq_i) \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket = \llbracket \text{EFO} \rrbracket$. Remark that $\llbracket \text{EFO} \rrbracket$ is stable under finite unions and finite intersections, and that for all non-empty open subset $U \in \llbracket \text{EFO} \rrbracket$, $\text{Fin}(\sigma) \cap U \neq \emptyset$, i.e., every existential positive sentence that has a model has a *finite* model. If the space were to be logically presented, the latter would imply that $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ is dense in $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$. However, the \subseteq_i upwards closed subset $\text{Struct}(\sigma) \setminus \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ of “truly infinite structures” is an open subset of $\text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$ that does not intersect $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ by definition: this is absurd. ■

Recall that the induced topology written $\tau|_X$ is the collection of all $U \cap X$ when U ranges in τ , see Definition D.2.5.

Proof Sketch. Let $U \in \tau|_Y$. By definition, there exists $V \in \tau$ such that $U = V \cap Y$. Because X is an *lps*, $V \in \langle \tau \cap \mathcal{B} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$. As a consequence, $U \in \langle \tau|_Y \cap \mathcal{B}|_Y \rangle_{\text{topo}}$. ■

The notion of logical map deals with the topology and the Boolean subalgebra separately, and this is crucial. Asking that $f^{-1}(U) \in \tau \cap \mathcal{B}$ whenever $U \in \tau' \cap \mathcal{B}'$, only states that f is continuous.

A first key observation is that the property of being logically presented is naturally preserved under subspaces as witnessed by the following proposition, which has to be compared to the fact that preservation theorems in general do not relativise (see Table 3.3 on page 35).

Fact 6.1.7. Let $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle\rangle$ be an *lps*, and $Y \subseteq X$. Then, Y endowed with the induced topology $\tau|_Y$ and the induced Boolean algebra $\mathcal{B}|_Y$ is a logically presented space.

The category of logically presented spaces. The language of category theory is well-adapted to the goal of stating stability properties of logically presented spaces. However, to keep minimal theoretical dependencies, we will (almost always) state our theorems without requiring a deep knowledge of category theory and commutative diagrams.

Let us now define the natural morphisms between logically presented spaces, which allows us to talk about the category *LPS* whose objects are *lps* and whose morphisms are logical maps.

Definition 6.1.8. Let $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle\rangle$ and $\langle\langle X', \tau', \mathcal{B}' \rangle\rangle$ be two *lps*. A function $f: X \rightarrow X'$ is a logical map whenever

1. For all $U \in \tau'$, $f^{-1}(U) \in \tau$;
2. For all $D \in \mathcal{B}'$, $f^{-1}(D) \in \mathcal{B}$.

While this is not the main focus of this chapter, let us state the following exercises for category theory enthusiasts.

Exercise 6.1.9 (Beginner Category). The category *LPS* has all products and all co-products.

Exercise 6.1.10 (Advanced Category). The category *LPS* is topological, and is not cartesian closed.

Adding compactness. In our definition of a logically presented space (Definition 6.1.1) we do not capture the full statement of a **preservation theorem**. While it is possible to use this framework to express that a given **definable subset** is “open,” we lack a theorem stating that such **definable open subsets** have a strong semantic property.⁹ In the light of the canonical proof of **preservation theorems** using the **compactness theorem of first order logic**, we will ask for *definable open subsets* to be **compact**.

Definition 6.1.11. A logically presented pre-spectral space is a logically presented space $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ such that the open definable subsets are precisely the compact open subsets:

$$\mathcal{B} \cap \tau = \mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \quad . \quad (6.1)$$

Let us immediately justify the above definition by relating it to preservation theorems via Theorem 6.1.12. This can be seen as a “correctness theorem” for our modelling of **preservation theorems**.

Theorem 6.1.12. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, let F be a fragment of **FO**. The following are equivalent:

1. The F -preservation theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} ,
and $\llbracket \exists F \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$,
2. The space $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is an *lpps*,
and $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \text{Alex}(\leq_F) \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$.

Proof. Assume that the F -preservation theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} and that $\llbracket \exists F \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$. Then, $\text{Alex}(\leq_F) \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \llbracket \exists F \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$. Furthermore, $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$, and therefore $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is a logically presented pre-spectral space.

Assume that the space $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is a logically presented pre-spectral space and $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \text{Alex}(\leq_F) \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$. Remark that $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is a compact subset of \mathcal{C} . Hence, we can leverage Lemma 3.3.25 to conclude the existence of a sentence $\psi \in \exists F$ that is equivalent to φ over \mathcal{C} . ■

Notice that in this theorem, both Items 1 and 2 have “extra assumptions.” These are needed because every *lpps* is a compact topological space (Lemma 6.1.13). In the case of spaces of structures, this compactness is a stronger property than simply asking for a preservation theorem to hold, as demonstrated in Example 6.1.14. Conversely, preservation theorems such as introduced in Theorem 3.1.9 talk about **F-embeddings** between structures, which is not a property that can be described *as is* in topological terms.

Lemma 6.1.13. Every logically presented pre-spectral space is compact.

Proof. Because \mathcal{B} is a Boolean subalgebra of $\mathcal{P}(X)$, $X \in \mathcal{B}$. Moreover, X is always an open subset of X , hence $X \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ and is compact. ■

9: For **preservation theorems**, this strong semantic property was “being expressible in a fragment of **FO**.”

Recall that $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ denotes the set of compact open subsets of X .

Remark that the inclusion $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \subseteq \mathcal{B} \cap \tau$ always holds for a *lps*. This is because, $\mathcal{B} \cap \tau$ generates the topology τ . As a consequence, and for the rest of this document, we will only check the interesting inclusion $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \supseteq \mathcal{B} \cap \tau$ when proving that an *lps* is an *lpps*. The extra assumption of Item 1 in Theorem 6.1.12 states that $\exists F$ sentences are “reasonable.” In the specific case where $\exists F = \text{EFO}$, and $\mathcal{C} = \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, $\mathcal{K}^\circ(\text{Fin}(\sigma), \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ is exactly the set of \subseteq_i -upward closures of finitely many structures, and the extra assumption boils down to asking that an **existential sentence** has finitely many \subseteq_i -minimal models.

The extra assumption of Item 2 in Theorem 6.1.12 states that $\exists F$ can express suitable **diagram sentences**. Namely, it states that the upward closure of a structure is expressible using $\exists F$.

Recall that **Cycles** were already used as counter examples in [Example 5.1.11](#) on page 125.

10: Which equals $\text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$ over finite structures

11: The fact that **Cycles** forms an **antichain** for \subseteq_i was already at the heart of [Example 3.2.1](#).

12: To convince yourself, consider the following open cover of a compact subset $K: (\{x\})_{x \in K}$.

Example 6.1.14. The Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to the class **Cycles** of finite cycles, but $\langle\langle \text{Cycles}, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is not an **lpps**.

Proof. Notice that over **Cycles**, $\langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$,¹⁰ is precisely the **discrete topology**. Indeed, C_i and C_j are not comparable for \subseteq_i whenever $i \neq j$.¹¹

Assume by contradiction that $\langle\langle \text{Cycles}, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**. Thanks to [Lemma 6.1.13](#), we conclude that **Cycles** is a **compact subset**. Because the **compact subsets** of the **discrete topology** are always finite subsets,¹² we conclude that **Cycles** is a finite subset, which is absurd. ■

The extra assumption of [Item 2](#) is very often satisfied for the usual classes and fragments considered. These were already stated in a sequence of lemmas: [Lemma 3.1.8](#) and [Lemmas 3.1.5](#) and [3.2.8](#). By combining those results with the correctness theorem ([Theorem 6.1.12](#)), we obtain the following correspondences [Lemmas 6.1.15](#) and [6.1.16](#).

Lemma 6.1.15. Let σ be a finite relational signature, and F be a fragment of **FO**. Then, $\langle\langle \text{Struct}(\sigma), \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**.

Proof. We use [Theorem 6.1.12](#) in the direction “[Item 1](#) implies [Item 2](#).”

We know that the **F-preservation theorem**¹³ “relativises” to $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$, and the fact that $\exists F$ sentences define **compact open subsets** follows immediately from the **compactness theorem** of first order logic. ■

Lemma 6.1.16. Let σ be a finite relational signature, F be one of **EFO**, **EPFO**[≠], or **EPFO**, and let \mathcal{C} be a \leq_F -downwards closed subset of $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$. Then, the following are equivalent:

1. $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**,
2. The **F-preservation theorem** relativises to \mathcal{C} .

Proof. We first use the equivalence between [Item 1](#) and [Item 2](#) in [Theorem 6.1.12](#). This is almost the statement that we want to prove, except it has two extra assumptions:

- $\langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \text{Alex}(\leq_F) \cap \llbracket \text{FO} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$,
- $\llbracket \exists F \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}})$.

These two properties holds over $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, as soon as it is \leq_F -downwards closed, and $F \in \{\text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO}\}$.

Indeed, the first item is implied by the existence of **diagram sentences**,¹⁴ effectively proving that the **upward closure** of a point \mathfrak{A} is **definable** in $\exists F$.¹⁵

The second item is a consequence of the fact that $\exists F$ sentences have finitely many non-equivalent \leq_F -minimal models. This is true for $\exists F \in \{\text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO}\}$ because a sentence $\varphi \in \exists F$ can be rewritten in the form $\exists \vec{x}.\psi(\vec{x})$ where $\psi(\vec{x})$ is **quantifier-free**. As a consequence, whenever $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$, there exists $\mathfrak{B} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}$ ¹⁶ with $|\mathfrak{B}| \leq |\vec{x}|$ such that

13: See [Theorem 3.1.9](#) p. 33

14: See [Lemma 3.1.5](#).

15: Remark that we even have a stronger statement in this case, namely that $\text{Alex}(\leq_F) = \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.

16: Which implies $\mathfrak{B} \leq_F \mathfrak{A}$!

$\mathfrak{B} \models \varphi$. We have proven that \leq_F -minimal models of φ can always be assumed to have size bounded by $|\vec{x}|$, and therefore¹⁷ that φ has finitely many (non-equivalent) \leq_F -minimal models. In particular, $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ is a compact subset in $\text{Alex}(\leq_F)$. ■

17: Recall that the relational signature σ is finite.

We do not see the extra assumptions in Theorem 6.1.12 as a weakness. In fact, these mild restrictions will ensure that lpps exhibit more regular behaviours than simple preservation theorems, and this is at the core of the stability properties that will be derived in Section 6.3 (Stability Properties).

As an example, let us come back over Example 6.1.14 in the light of the recently proven Lemma 6.1.16: we derive that while the EFO-preservation theorem relativises to the class Cycles , it must not relativise to $\downarrow_{\subseteq} \text{Cycles}$. From this little adventure, we learn two things. First, that the extra assumption that the class \mathcal{C} is downwards closed in Lemma 6.1.16 cannot be bypassed by considering its downward closure. Second, that Example 6.1.14 is an example of “badly behaved” relativisation of Łoś-Tarski’s preservation theorem, which does not happen for topological reasons.¹⁸

The ability to independently consider the topology and the Boolean subalgebra independently over a fixed space X gives an extra flexibility. For instance, given a class \mathcal{C} and a fragment $F \subseteq \text{FO}$, one can study the set of Boolean subalgebras $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{C})$ such that $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an lpps . The idea behind this reasoning considering larger algebras \mathcal{B} lead to stronger preservation theorems. This approach quickly sees its limits, as shown in Example 6.1.17.

Example 6.1.17. Let $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(\text{Cycles})$. Then, $\langle \text{Cycles}, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is not an lpps .

18: This last statement is purposely vague. The intuition that we want to give is that the relativisation of the Łoś-Tarski theorem to Cycles has more to do with the fact that FO , EFO , and EPFO^\neq have the same expressiveness over Cycles , than it has to do with topological notions such as compactness.

In order to state categorical results about lpps later on, let us introduce the category LPPS of logically presented pre-spectral spaces with logical maps, which is a full subcategory of LPS . This notation will not be central in the results, but we hope that it can provide valuable insight to people that are already versed in category theory, because some results will feel more natural in this language.

Proof Sketch. This holds for the same reason as Example 6.1.14, i.e., the space $(\text{Cycles}, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ is not compact, hence cannot be an lpps . ■

6.2. Connection with Other Spaces

The goal of this section is to explore the connections between lpps and topological spaces, with the hope that these connections allow transporting theorems from general topology to lpps , which in turns can be transformed into properties describing the (non-)relativisation of preservation theorems.

In Subsection 6.2.1, we will continue the work that was started in Section 3.3 and start by analysing how well-quasi-orderings and Noetherian spaces fit the lpps narrative.

Then, in Subsection 6.2.2, we will turn our attention to a weakening of Noetherian spaces that gave the name to lpps : spectral spaces.

6.2.1. Noetherian Spaces and WQO

Recall that [Noetherian spaces](#) and [well-quasi-orderings](#) were introduced as sufficient conditions for [preservation theorems](#) to [relativise](#), respectively in [Lemma 3.3.28](#) and [Lemma 3.3.5](#). It is therefore natural that [lpps](#) generalises both, which we will prove hereafter.

Let us first see that the definition of [Noetherian spaces](#) can be framed into the realm of [lpps](#) by simply considering the [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ to be $\mathcal{P}(X)$ itself.

Lemma 6.2.1. *Let (X, τ) be a topological space. The following are equivalent*

1. (X, τ) is a [Noetherian space](#);
2. $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{P}(X) \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#).

Proof. In this case, being an [lpps](#) amounts to checking the equation $\tau \cap \mathcal{P}(X) = \mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$, i.e., that every [open subset](#) of X is [compact](#), which is equivalent to being a [Noetherian space](#). ■

This has a natural consequence in terms of [well-quasi-orderings](#), because of the connection between the [Alexandroff topology](#) and the [specialisation preorder](#).

Corollary 6.2.2. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, $F \in \{\text{EFO}, \text{EPFO}^\neq, \text{EPFO}\}$. Then, the following are equivalent*

1. $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{C}) \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#),
2. (\mathcal{C}, \leq_F) is a [wqo](#).

The link between [Noetherian spaces](#), [well-quasi-orders](#) and [lpps](#) is bittersweet. On the one hand, it allows us to import such spaces *as is* in our framework, and on the other hand, it tells us that those spaces will never be enough to understand when and why [preservation theorems relativise](#).

6.2.2. Spectral Spaces

In search for topological spaces that have weaker properties than being [Noetherian](#), two main families of spaces come to mind. [Spectral spaces](#) were introduced by M. H. Stone in the 1930s to study the duals of distributive lattices. They have a deep connection with logic, as noted in [\[26, Chapter 10\]](#). A second, more general pattern that has been introduced by Kelly in 1963 is the notion of [bitopological space](#) [\[63\]](#). These resemble [logically presented spaces](#) because they are built as triples (X, τ^+, τ_-) where τ^+ and τ_- are two topologies over X . For clarity and space, we will not review the relationship between [bitopological spaces](#) and [logically presented spaces](#), as it mostly follows the one for the [spectral spaces](#).

[26]: Dickmann, Schwartz and Tressl (2019), *Spectral Spaces*

[63]: Kelly (1963), ‘Bitopological Spaces’

For this thesis to be self-contained, we restate the definition of a [spectral space](#), following the one given in [26]. However, we claim that understanding every point in the definition is not mandatory to read the rest of this section, and therefore that the details of [Definition 6.2.3](#) can be skipped.

Definition 6.2.3 [26, Definition 1.1.5]. A space (X, τ) is [spectral](#) whenever the following properties are satisfied

1. X is [compact](#) and T_0 .
2. $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ is a [basis](#) of τ .
3. $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ is closed under finite intersections.
4. X is a [sober space](#).

A space X is T_0 whenever every pair of distinct points $x \neq y$ is topologically distinguishable, i.e., there exists an open set U containing x but not y (or vice-versa).

A space X is [sober](#) whenever for every non-empty [closed](#) and [irreducible](#) subset $H \subseteq X$, there is a unique point $x \in X$ such that $H = \bar{x}$. You can look at [Chapter D \(Topology Cheat Sheet\)](#) if this feels like random words.

The definition of [Definition 6.2.3](#) is strikingly similar to the one of [Definition 6.1.11](#). We formalise their relationship in [Lemma 6.2.4](#).

[Spectral spaces](#) are [sober](#) and T_0 , which is not always the case of spaces considered up to this point. However, given a topological space (X, τ) , one can always build a [sober](#) version $\mathcal{S}(X, \tau)$ using the [sobrification functor](#)¹⁹, whose topology does not change, but where points are added and collapsed in a clever way. Similarly, if a topological space (X, τ) is not T_0 , one can always build the T_0 -quotient of X , obtained by considering the same topology, but collapsing indistinguishable points. As a consequence, these two notions can be safely “discarded.”

19: See [Definition D.5.4](#) p. 254

Lemma 6.2.4. *Let (X, τ) be a topological space and \mathcal{B} be a [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The following are equivalent:*

1. $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#);
2. $\mathcal{S}(X, \tau)$ is a [spectral space](#) and $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X) = \tau \cap \mathcal{B}$.

Proof. If $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#). Then its [sobrification](#) is both T_0 and [sober](#). By assumption, $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X) = \tau \cap \mathcal{B}$ and $\tau = \langle\tau \cap \mathcal{B}\rangle_{\text{topo}}$. As a consequence, the resulting space is [compact](#), and has a [subbasis of compact open subsets](#), which forms a [sublattice](#) of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. Conversely, one concludes that $\tau \cap \mathcal{B}$ is a [subbasis](#) of τ , composed of [compact open subsets](#), hence the space is an [lpps](#). ■

One nice application of [Lemma 6.2.4](#) is to transform a [spectral space](#) (X, τ) into an [lpps](#), by noticing that $\tau \cap \langle\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)\rangle_{\text{bool}} = \mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$. As a consequence, $\langle\langle X, \tau, \langle\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)\rangle_{\text{bool}} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#), whenever (X, τ) is a [spectral space](#). Conversely, given an [lpps](#) $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle\rangle$, $\langle\langle X, \tau, \langle\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)\rangle_{\text{bool}} \rangle\rangle$ is always an [lpps](#), with a potentially smaller [Boolean subalgebra](#) of definable subsets.

In order to build an intuition, let us see what it means in terms of [preservation theorems](#). The space $\langle\langle \text{Struct}(\sigma), \langle\text{EFO}\rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#) thanks to [Lemma 6.1.15](#). In particular, $\langle\langle \text{Struct}(\sigma), \langle\text{EFO}\rangle_{\text{topo}}, \langle\text{EFO}\rangle_{\text{bool}} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#). Using [Theorem 6.1.12](#), let us compare these two spaces:

- the first being an [lpps](#) boils down to stating that first-order sentences [preserved under extensions](#) are equivalent to [existential sentences](#)²⁰;

20: the Łoś-Tarski Theorem

21: This also illustrates how distinguishing the topology and the logic is needed to perform such fined grained analysis.

- while the second one states that Boolean combinations of **existential sentences preserved under extensions** are equivalent to **existential sentences**, which is a weaker statement.²¹

While the **sobrification functor** and the T_0 -quotient mostly behave nicely with the usual topological constructions, one must be careful when using theorems about **spectral spaces**.

The space $\mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ is neither T_0 nor **sober**, but a “fun” non-mandatory exercise, shows that the T_0 quotient of $\mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ is a **spectral space** where the **compact open subsets** are the **existential sentences**.

Exercise 6.2.5 (see [70]). The T_0 quotient of $(\mathbf{Struct}(\sigma), \langle \mathbf{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ is a **sober space**.

One reason to study the relationship between **lpps** and **spectral spaces** is that relativisation is well-understood for the latter. Indeed, not all subsets of a **spectral space** are **spectral spaces** with the **induced topology**, and we will see a complete characterisation of the **spectral subspaces** in terms of **pro-constructible subsets** in Theorem 6.2.8.

Before stating the theorem, we have to spend a little time to properly define what a **spectral subspace** is. As noted in the introduction of [26, Section 2.1], it is not “enough” that the subset with the **induced topology** is a **spectral space**; for the notion to make sense one ought to relate their **compact open subsets**.

Definition 6.2.6 [26, Definition 2.1.1]. Let (X, τ) be a **spectral space**. A subset $S \subseteq X$ is a **spectral subspace** of X when $(S, \tau|_S)$ is a **spectral space**, and $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)|_S \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(S)$.

To simplify the notation and make the connection with logic apparent, let us write $V \Rightarrow U$ as a shorthand for $U \cup (X \setminus V)$. Using this notation, we are ready to define the **pro-constructible subsets**.

Definition 6.2.7 [26, Definition 1.3.11]. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. A subset $S \subseteq X$ is **pro-constructible** whenever there exists a family $(U_i, V_i)_{i \in I}$ of **compact open subsets** of X , such that

$$S = \bigcap_{i \in I} (U_i \Rightarrow V_i) \quad .$$

Recalling the connection described in Lemma 6.2.4, a **spectral space** (X, τ) describes in particular an **lpps** $\langle\langle X, \tau, \langle \mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \rangle_{\text{bool}} \rangle\rangle$. Thinking in terms of **preservation theorems**, where $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ comes from **first-order definable sets**, **pro-constructible subsets** can be interpreted as specific kinds of **first-order theories**. This intuition will be helpful in the upcoming examples.

Theorem 6.2.8 [26, Theorem 2.3.11]. Let (X, τ) be a **spectral space**,

and $S \subseteq X$ be a subset of X . The following are equivalent:

1. S is a **spectral subspace** of X ;
2. S is **pro-constructible**.

Because of [Theorem 6.2.8](#), it might be tempting to state that the problem of relativisation of **preservation theorems** to classes of structures is now closed. However, [Example 6.2.9](#) provides an example of a subset that is an **lpps** and is not **pro-constructible**, while [Example 6.2.10](#) provides an example of a **pro-constructible subset** that does not induce an **lpps**.

Both [Examples 6.2.9](#) and [6.2.10](#) are possible because of two crucial differences between **spectral spaces** and **lpps**: the first one is the separation axioms (**sober**, T_0), and the second one is the fact that **spectral spaces** “do not care” about the algebra of **definable subsets**, and only ever deals with the **Boolean subalgebra** $\langle \mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \rangle_{\text{bool}}$.

Example 6.2.9. The space $\langle \text{Struct}(\sigma), \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is an **lpps**, and $\langle \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is an **lpps**, but the latter is not a **pro-constructible subset** of the former when seen as topological spaces.

Proof. The two spaces are **lpps**. Indeed, $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ is an **lpps** thanks to [Lemma 6.1.15](#), while Δ_{deg}^2 is **lpps** because it is **locally finite**, hence one can leverage [Theorem 5.1.2](#) to conclude that the **Łoś-Tarski Theorem** relativises to \mathcal{C} , and conclude using [Lemma 6.1.16](#).

Assume by contradiction that Δ_{deg}^2 is obtained as an intersection

$$H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{i \in I} (U_i \Rightarrow V_i) \quad ,$$

where U_i and V_i are **compact open subsets** of $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$.²²

Let $\mathfrak{A} \in \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2$ (which is non-empty), and let us define by induction on $k \in \mathbb{N}$ $\mathfrak{A}_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathfrak{A}$ and $\mathfrak{A}_{k+1} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{A}_k$. Finally, let us define $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \biguplus_{i \in \omega} \mathfrak{A}_i$. Notice that for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\mathfrak{A}_k \in \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2$, but that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \notin \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2$ because it is an infinite structure.²³

Let us prove that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \in H$, which will lead to a contradiction. For that, let us consider $i \in I$, and prove that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \in U_i \Rightarrow V_i$ by a simple case analysis.

- If there exists a $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\mathfrak{A}_k \in V_i$, then $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \in V_i$ because the latter is **upwards closed** for \subseteq_i and $\mathfrak{A}_k \subseteq_i \mathfrak{A}_\omega$.
- Otherwise, for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\mathfrak{A}_k \notin V_i$. Because $\mathfrak{A}_k \in H$, this implies that $\mathfrak{A}_k \notin U_i$ for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$.

Recall that the ambient space is an **lpps**, and in particular that U_i can be seen as the set of models of an **existential first order sentence** $\exists \vec{x}. \theta(\vec{x})$, where θ is **quantifier-free**. In particular, we just have to prove that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \models \forall \vec{x}. \neg \theta(\vec{x})$ to conclude that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \notin U_i$.

Now, consider a valuation $\mathfrak{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}_\omega$, it takes values in finitely many of the copies of \mathfrak{A} , hence can be seen as a function $\mathfrak{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}_p$ for some large enough $p \in \mathbb{N}$. Because $\mathfrak{A}_p \models \forall \vec{x}. \neg \theta(\vec{x})$, we

Recall that Δ_{deg}^2 denotes the class of finite graphs of degree bounded by 2. This class is **hereditary**, **closed under disjoint unions**, and **locally finite**.

22: An alternative and shorter proof of the contradiction is to notice that H is in fact a **first order theory** that has finite models of arbitrary size, hence must have an infinite model, which is absurd because Δ_{deg}^2 is composed only of finite models. To perform the shift from “finite models of arbitrary size” to “infinite model,” it suffices to use the **compactness theorem of first order logic**. We have chosen to provide a more combinatorial proof that relies on the syntactic shape of the sentences to avoid the use of the **compactness theorem of first order logic**.

23: This is true because $|\mathfrak{A}| > 0$, since a model is always non-empty.

conclude that $\mathfrak{A}_p, \mathbf{v} \models \neg\theta(\vec{x})$. Since the formula θ is **quantifier-free**, it entails that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega, \mathbf{v} \models \neg\theta(\vec{x})$.

We have proven that $\mathfrak{A}_\omega \notin U_i$. ■

Example 6.2.10. The subset $\text{Cycles} \subseteq \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2$ is a **pro-constructible** subset of $(\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i))$, but $\langle\langle \text{Cycles}, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is not an **lpps**.

Proof. Remark that $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} C_n$ is (by definition) a **closed** subset of Δ_{deg}^2 , and that it is **definable** in $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, because $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} C_n$ is a finite subset of $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$.

As a consequence, the following subsets are **open** and **definable** for all $n \geq 3$:

$$U_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\Delta_{\text{deg}}^2 \setminus \downarrow_{\subseteq_i} C_n) \cup \uparrow_{\subseteq_i} C_n \quad .$$

24: This was stated in Example 6.2.9.

Because $\langle\langle \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**,²⁴ we conclude that U_n is a **compact open subset** for every $n \geq 3$.

Furthermore, let us notice that for all $n \geq 3, p \geq 1$, $V_{n,p} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \uparrow_{\subseteq_i} (C_n \uplus P_p)$ is a **definable open subset** of Δ_{deg}^2 . As before, we conclude that these subsets are **compact open subsets**.

Let us now remark that **Cycles** can be defined as an infinite intersection inside Δ_{deg}^2 as follows:

$$\text{Cycles} = \bigcap_{n \geq 3} U_n \cap \bigcap_{n \geq 3, p \geq 1} [V_{n,p} \Rightarrow \emptyset] \quad .$$

Hence, **Cycles** is a **pro-constructible subset** of Δ_{deg}^2 when the latter is seen as a topological space. However, we have seen in Example 6.1.17 $\langle\langle \text{Cycles}, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is not an **lpps**. ■

6.3. Stability Properties

25: These were listed in Table 6.1 and in Table 6.2.

This section is devoted to the study of stability properties of **lpps**. The goal is to obtain an algebra akin to the one for **wqos** or **Noetherian spaces**.²⁵

Unsurprisingly, we will first focus on the behaviour of **lpps** with respect to subspaces, as it has direct connections with the relativisation of **preservation theorems**. The study of subspaces of **lpps** was already used in Lemma 4.3.20 on page 105. We will then turn our attention to morphisms of **lpps**, which are of particular interest since they too were already at play in Example 5.1.10 on page 124.²⁶

26: These results were used in Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem). While their use was not *stricto sensu* necessary at that time, it served the dual purpose of providing short proofs and showcasing the stability properties introduced in this chapter.

Then, we will complete our algebraic study by providing a list of operations preserving **lpps**. Some of these are quite usual (disjoint sums, product spaces), while some have a more involved definition and crucially rely on the fact that we consider spaces of finite structures (the **wreath product**).

Overall, the stability properties proven in this section enable us to reason compositionally about **preservation theorems**, something which

was lacking in the literature. Not only does this provide for a nice framework to infer or refute preservation theorems, but it allows us to go beyond the relativisation results proven using locality techniques.

6.3.1. Subspaces and Morphisms

Because one of the main issues with [preservation theorems](#) is the lack of relativisation to subsets, let us explore what happens in the case of [logically presented pre-spectral spaces](#).

Recall from [Lemma 6.1.13](#) that [lpps](#) are [compact spaces](#). As a consequence, for a subspace to be an [lpps](#), a necessary condition is that it is [compact](#). However, we will see in [Example 6.3.1](#) that this condition is not sufficient, as it was already hinted at in [Example 6.2.10](#).

Example 6.3.1. The class $\downarrow_{\subseteq_i} \text{Cycles}$ is a [closed](#) and [compact](#) subset of the class Δ_{deg}^2 of finite graphs of degree bounded by 2. As remarked in [Example 6.2.9](#), the latter is an [lpps](#), while the former is not.

A simple sufficient condition for a subset to define an [lpps](#) is that it is obtained as a [compact open subset](#), or the complement of a [compact open subset](#). Furthermore, the property of being a sub-lpps is stable under finite unions and intersections, which automatically leads to the following lemma.

Lemma 6.3.2. *Let $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ be an [lpps](#), and $Y \in \langle \mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \rangle_{\text{bool}}$. Then Y with the [induced topology](#) and the [induced Boolean algebra](#) is an [lpps](#).*

Proof. This is because the intersection of a [closed subset](#) and a [compact subset](#) is always [compact](#), and because $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$ is stable under finite intersections. ■

Let us notice by “upcycling” [Example 6.2.9](#), that some subspaces are [lpps](#) and do not belong to $\langle \mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \rangle_{\text{bool}}$.

Lemma 6.3.3. *Let $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ and $\langle X', \tau', \mathcal{B}' \rangle$ be two [lps](#), and Let f be a [surjective logical map](#)²⁷ from $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ to $\langle X', \tau', \mathcal{B}' \rangle$. If X is an [lpps](#), then so is X' .*

27: See [Definition 6.1.8](#) p. 142

Proof. Let $U \in \mathcal{B}' \cap \tau'$. Then, $f^{-1}(U) \in \mathcal{B} \cap \tau = \mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$. Because f is [continuous](#), $f(f^{-1}(U))$ is [compact](#). Furthermore, $f(f^{-1}(U)) = U$ because f is [surjective](#). ■

A concrete example of [logical maps](#) is obtained via [first-order interpretations](#), which is a formalism already used in [Example 5.1.10](#) on page 124. Recall that (simple) [first order interpretations](#) were defined along with the evaluation of queries in [Definition 2.2.9](#).²⁸

28: In particular, [first order interpretations](#) define *functions* between classes of structures.

Fact 6.3.4. A first-order interpretation I between $\langle\langle\mathcal{C}, \tau, \mathsf{FO}[\sigma]\rangle\rangle$ and $\langle\langle\mathcal{C}', \tau', \mathsf{FO}[\sigma']\rangle\rangle$ is a logical map if and only if it is continuous.

Example 6.3.5. The first order interpretation from finite graphs to finite graphs defined using $\varphi_{\text{dom}}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$ and $\varphi_E(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} E(x, y) \vee \exists z. E(x, z) \wedge E(z, y)$ is a logical map when both spaces are endowed with $\mathsf{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$.

6.3.2. Closure under Finitary Operations

As promised, we are now going to slowly but surely prove the compositional results listed in Table 6.3, starting with the simple constructors that are finite sums and finite products of spaces.

In order to be readable even without background knowledge in category theory, we introduce hereafter concrete definitions for the disjoint sums and products of spaces, even though these have abstract categorical definitions.

The sum topology and sum algebra are respectively defined in Definition D.2.3 and Definition B.3.5. Both of them are generated by the (arbitrary) unions of open subsets (resp. definable subsets) of the summands.

Definition 6.3.6. Let $\langle\langle X_i, \tau_i, \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle$ be a family of *lpps* for $i \in I$. Then, the *sum* is defined as

$$\sum_{i \in I} \langle\langle X_i, \tau_i, \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \sum_{i \in I} X_i, \sum_{i \in I} \tau_i, \sum_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle .$$

In the hope that a categorical presentation provides some insight, let us state formally that this is what the reader expects from a disjoint sum.

Fact 6.3.7. That is, the *sum* is the *co-product* in the category *LPS*.

We are now ready to use a compositional technique to build new *lpps* for the first time.

Lemma 6.3.8. Finite sums of *lpps* are *lpps*.

29: We use the fact that an open subset (resp. compact subset) of a summand is an open subset (resp. compact subset) in the sum.

Proof. By definition, the *sum* is an *lps*. It remains to prove that definable open subsets are compact. This holds because a definable open subset U of $\sum_{1 \leq i \leq n} X_i$ is a disjoint union of definable open subsets over each of the X_i 's. Hence, U is a finite union of compact open subsets,²⁹ hence is compact (see Lemma D.4.3). ■

Corollary 6.3.9. Finite *co-products* exists in *LPPS* and are computed as in *LPS*.

Although the category **LPS** has all **co-products**, the restriction to finite **sums** in Lemma 6.3.8 is necessary, as witnessed by the following counter-example.

Example 6.3.10. Let $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle 1, \tau_{\text{disc}}, \mathcal{P}(1) \rangle\rangle$. The space X is an **lpps**, but $\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} X$ is not an **lpps**.

Proof Sketch. Use Lemma 6.1.13, and the fact that $\sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} X$ is \mathbb{N} with the **discrete topology**, hence not **compact**. ■

Let us now turn our attention to products of **lpps**.

Definition 6.3.11. Let $\langle\langle X_i, \tau_i, \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle$ be a sequence of **lpps** for $i \in I$. Then, the **product** is defined as

$$\prod_{i \in I} \langle\langle X_i, \tau_i, \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \prod_{i \in I} X_i, \prod_{i \in I} \tau_i, \prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle \quad .$$

Unsurprisingly, we have (again) defined the categorical product in the category **LPS**.

Fact 6.3.12. The **product** is the **product** in the category **LPS**.

The following theorem stating that the category **LPPS** has arbitrary **products** is non-trivial. In particular, it is not a direct consequence of the connection between **lpps** and **spectral spaces** that was described in Lemma 6.2.4.

Theorem 6.3.13. The **product** of a family of **lpps** is an **lpps**.

Proof. Let us first do the proof in the case of a product of two **lpps** $\langle\langle X, \tau_X, \mathcal{B}_X \rangle\rangle$ and $\langle\langle Y, \tau_Y, \mathcal{B}_Y \rangle\rangle$.

It is clear that $X \times Y$ is a **logically presented space**. The only thing left to check is that **definable open subsets** of $X \times Y$ are **compact**.

Let U be a **definable open subset** of $X \times Y$. Because it is a **definable subset**,³⁰ there exists a finite sequence $(D_{i,j}^X)_{1 \leq i,j \leq n}$ of **definable subsets** of X , and a finite sequence $(D_{i,j}^Y)_{1 \leq i,j \leq n}$ of **definable subsets** of Y , such that

$$U = \bigcap_{1 \leq i \leq n} \bigcup_{1 \leq j \leq n} D_{i,j}^X \times D_{i,j}^Y \quad . \quad (6.2)$$

Let us define over the set X the following equivalence relation: $x \equiv_X x'$ if and only if $x \in D_{i,j}^X \iff x' \in D_{i,j}^X$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq n$, that is, the equivalence relation of **finite index** induced by the sets $(D_{i,j}^X)_{1 \leq i,j \leq n}$. We define $y \equiv_Y y'$ similarly over Y .

Because of Equation 6.2, we conclude that U is **saturated** for the equivalence relation $\equiv_X \times \equiv_Y$.

We deferred the definition of the **product topology** and **product algebra** respectively to Definition D.2.2 and Definition B.3.4. These are generated by products of open subsets (resp. definable subsets) that have *fininitely many* components that are not the whole space. That is, the subbasic sets are of the form $\prod_{i \in I} A_i$, such that $A_i = X_i$ for all but finitely many indices $i \in I$, and such that A_i is an **open subset** of X_i for all $i \in I$ (in the case of the **product topology**), or such that A_i is a **definable subset** of X_i (in the case of the **product algebra**).

30: Recall that the **product algebra** is defined precisely in terms of finite Boolean combinations. Furthermore, $(X \times Y) \setminus (D^X \times D^Y)$ can be rewritten as $(X \setminus D^X) \times Y \cup X \times (Y \setminus D^Y)$, which explains the lack of negations in Equation 6.2.

Let $(x, y) \in U$. Because U is an **open subset** in the **product topology**, there exist $V_X^{x,y} \in \tau_X$, and $V_Y^{x,y} \in \tau_Y$, such that $(x, y) \in V_X^{x,y} \times V_Y^{x,y} \subseteq U$. Our goal is to show that one can always assume that $V_X^{x,y} \times V_Y^{x,y}$ are also **saturated** for $\equiv_X \times \equiv_Y$. This will allow us to conclude that U is **compact** as follows:

1. Rewrite U as the union of its **open neighbourhoods**

$$U = \bigcup_{(x,y) \in U} V_X^{x,y} \times V_Y^{x,y} .$$

2. Because $\equiv_X \times \equiv_Y$ is of **finite index**, this union is actually finite.
3. Because $V_X^{x,y}$ is **saturated** for \equiv_X , it is in particular a **definable subset** of X , hence it is **compact**. Similarly, $V_Y^{x,y}$ is also **compact**.
4. Finally, we have shown that U is a finite union of products of **compact** subsets, hence U is compact via the **Tychonoff theorem** and **Lemma D.4.3**.

Let $(x, y) \in U$, and let us consider (using **Zorn's Lemma**) $V_X^{x,y} \in \tau_X$ and $V_Y^{x,y} \in \tau_Y$, maximal for inclusion, such that $(x, y) \in V_X^{x,y} \times V_Y^{x,y} \subseteq U$. We argue that $V_X^{x,y} \times V_Y^{x,y}$ is **saturated** for $\equiv_X \times \equiv_Y$. Assume by contradiction that it is not, and without loss of generality, that there exists $y \in V_Y^{x,y}$, and $y' \notin V_Y^{x,y}$ such that $y \equiv_Y y'$.

Let $F \subseteq_{\text{fin}} V_X^{x,y}$ be a choice of representatives for every \equiv_X -equivalence class present in $V_X^{x,y}$. That is, for all $x' \in V_X^{x,y}$, there exists a unique $x'' \in F$ such that $x' \equiv_X x''$.

For every $x'' \in F$, $(x'', y) \in U$. Because U is **saturated** for $\equiv_X \times \equiv_Y$ and $y \equiv_Y y'$, $(x'', y') \in U$ too. Therefore, there exists $V_X^{x'',y'} \in \tau_X$, $V_Y^{x'',y'} \in \tau_Y$ such that $(x'', y') \in V_X^{x'',y'} \times V_Y^{x'',y'} \subseteq U$.

Let $W \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{x'' \in F} V_Y^{x'',y'}$. By construction, $y' \in W$, and because the intersection is finite, W is an **open subset** of Y .

We obtain $V_X^{x,y} \times (V_Y^{x,y} \cup W)$ contains (x, y) , and strictly contains $V_X^{x,y} \times V_Y^{x,y}$. Let us now derive a contradiction by showing that $V_X^{x,y} \times (V_Y^{x,y} \cup W) \subseteq U$. Note that the only inclusion to prove is actually that $V_X^{x,y} \times W \subseteq U$. For that, let us consider $(a, b) \in V_X^{x,y} \times W$. By definition of F , there exists $x'' \in F$ such that $a \equiv_X x''$. Because $b \in W$, in particular $b \in V_Y^{x'',y'}$, and by definition of the latter $(x'', b) \in U$. Because U is **saturated** for $\equiv_X \times \equiv_Y$, and $a \equiv_X x''$, we conclude that $(a, b) \in U$.

31: This induction is sound because the empty product is the **lps** $\langle\langle \emptyset, \{ \emptyset \}, \{ \emptyset \} \rangle\rangle$ which is an **lpps**, and the **product** of **lpps** is associative.

Note that we can obtain finitary **products** by iterating the construction.³¹

For infinite products, it suffices to notice that a **definable open subset** is not the entire space on finitely many components, and therefore the infinite case reduces to the finite one. Let us formalise this intuition hereafter.

Let $(X_i)_{i \in I}$, $(\tau_i)_{i \in I}$ and $(\mathcal{B}_i)_{i \in I}$ be such that

$$\forall i \in I, \langle\langle X_i, \tau_i, \mathcal{B}_i \rangle\rangle \text{ is an lpps} .$$

32: As for the case of the product of two spaces, we use the fact that the complement of a product having finitely many components that are not the entire space is a finite union of products of such sets.

Let D be a **definable open subset** of the **product** of the family of **lpps** above. By definition of the **product algebra**,³² there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and

a family $(D_j^i)_{i \in I, 1 \leq j \leq n}$, such that D is **saturated** for the following equivalence relation:

$$(x \equiv y) \iff \forall i \in I, \forall 1 \leq j \leq n, \underbrace{[x_i \in D_j^i \iff y_i \in D_j^i]}_{\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (x_i \equiv_i y_i)} .$$

Remark that the relation \equiv is of finite index because $D_j^i \neq X_i$ for finitely many $i \in I$ and $1 \leq j \leq n$. Let us define J as a finite subset of I as follows:

$$J \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{i \in I : \exists 1 \leq j \leq n, D_j^i \neq X_i\} .$$

This allows us to define D' as the projection of D over $\prod_{i \in J} X_i$, that is:

$$D' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{(x_i)_{i \in J} : x \in D\} .$$

Now, D' is a **definable open subset** of $\prod_{i \in J} X_i$. Indeed, the image of an **open subset** through a projection map remains **open**, and D' is saturated for the product of the relations $\prod_{i \in J} \equiv_i$, hence is **definable**. Since we have proven above that a *finite* product of **lpps** is an **lpps**, we conclude that D' is a **compact open subset**.

To conclude that D is a **compact open subset**, it suffices to notice that X_i is **compact** for all $i \in I$, and therefore that we can rewrite D as a product of **compact spaces**, which is **compact** thanks to the **Tychonoff theorem**.³³

$$D \simeq \prod_{i \in (I \setminus J)} X_i \times D' \quad \blacksquare$$

33: We use the symbol \simeq in the equation because one has to reorder the components of the product to obtain the desired equality, but considering the product as written felt clearer to me.

Corollary 6.3.14. *The category **LPPS** has all **products**, and they are computed as in **LPS**.*

The statements of **Lemma 6.3.8** and **Theorem 6.3.13** are not quite satisfactory to study **preservation theorems**, as the **Boolean subalgebra** that appears is not **FO**. The purpose of the upcoming **Lemmas 6.3.15** and **6.3.16** is to prove that in the specific cases where the original **Boolean subalgebra** were defined using first order logic, the resulting ones are too.

Before getting back to concrete **preservation theorems**, let us first prevent any “wishful thinking” from the reader inclined in category theory: even though **LPPS** has all **products**, it lacks equalisers, and we will provide in **Subsection 6.3.4** on page 174 examples of **limits** that are missing in **LPPS**.

The following **Lemmas 6.3.15** and **6.3.16** are obtained via **Feferman-Vaught style compositional techniques** [33, 74], which were introduced in **Chapter 4** (Locality and Preservation).³⁴

We write $\tau +_t \theta$ for the **sum topology** in order to distinguish it from the sum of two **lpps** in the equations. Similarly, we use $\mathcal{B} +_b \mathcal{B}'$ for the **sum Boolean algebra**.

34: This was the key ingredient in the proof of **Lemma 4.2.9**.

Lemma 6.3.15. Let $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \tau, \mathbf{FO}[\sigma] \rangle\rangle$ and $X' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \mathcal{C}', \tau', \mathbf{FO}[\sigma'] \rangle\rangle$ be two *lps*. Then, $X + X'$ is isomorphic to $\langle\langle \mathcal{C} \uplus \mathcal{C}', \tau +_t \tau', \mathbf{FO}[\sigma''] \rangle\rangle$, where $\sigma'' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sigma \uplus \sigma' \{ (L, 1), (R, 1) \}$, and L, R are unary predicates used to distinguish the left-hand and the right-hand part of the disjoint union.

Proof Sketch. Notice that the first inclusion $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma] +_b \mathbf{FO}[\sigma'] \subseteq \mathbf{FO}[\sigma'']$ is trivial. For the converse inclusion, it suffices to remark that every sentence φ is equivalent over $\mathcal{C} \uplus \mathcal{C}'$ to a disjunction $(\exists x.L(x) \wedge \varphi_1) \vee (\exists x.R(x) \wedge \varphi_2)$ where $\varphi_1 \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$ and $\varphi_2 \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma']$. ■

Lemma 6.3.16 is the use of the Feferman-Vaught technique that is the closest match to its “original” formulation in terms of the logic on ultra-products of spaces.

Lemma 6.3.16. Let $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \tau, \mathbf{FO}[\sigma] \rangle\rangle$ and $X' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \mathcal{C}', \tau', \mathbf{FO}[\sigma'] \rangle\rangle$ be two *lps*. Then, $X \times X'$ is isomorphic to $\langle\langle \{ \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B} : \mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}, \mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C}' \}, \tau \times_t \tau', \mathbf{FO}[\tau] \rangle\rangle$, where $\tau \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sigma \uplus \sigma' \{ (L, 1), (R, 1) \}$, and L, R are unary predicates used to distinguish the left-hand and the right-hand part in the disjoint unions.

Proof Sketch. Notice that the first inclusion $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma] \times_b \mathbf{FO}[\sigma'] \subseteq \mathbf{FO}[\sigma \uplus \sigma' \{ (L, 1), (R, 1) \}]$ is trivial.

Furthermore, given a first-order sentence $\psi(\vec{x}) \in \mathbf{FO}[\tau]$, we can use the Feferman-Vaught technique with $\mathbb{T} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ T_L, T_R \}$. Then, Lemma 4.2.17 actually proves that for all $\mathfrak{A}, \nu : \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, for all $\rho : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$, for all \mathbb{T} -typing environment $\Gamma : \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}$ such that $\mathfrak{A}, \nu \models L(x)$ if and only if $\rho(\nu(x)) = T_L$, $\mathfrak{A}, \nu \models R(x)$ if and only if $\rho(\nu(x)) = T_R$, and $\rho(\nu(x)) = \Gamma(x)$ for all $x \in \vec{x}$, then $\mathfrak{A}, \nu \models \psi(\vec{x})$ if and only if $\mathfrak{A}, \rho \nu \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \psi)$.

As a consequence of Lemma 4.2.19, every \mathbb{T} -typed formula is equivalent to a finite Boolean combination of monotyped formulas. In particular, to check whether $\mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{A}' \in \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}'$ satisfies φ , it suffices to evaluate the T_L properties on \mathfrak{A} , and the T_R properties on \mathfrak{A}' . This is clearly definable in $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma] \times_b \mathbf{FO}[\sigma']$. ■

Let us now demonstrate how the two composition theorems that we have just presented, on finite sums and on products allows us to study actual preservation theorems.

Example 6.3.17. Let $\mathcal{C} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ \mathfrak{A} \uplus \mathfrak{B} : \mathfrak{A} \in \text{Cliques}, \mathfrak{B} \in \text{Paths} \}$. Then, the Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises to \mathcal{C} .

Proof Sketch. Thanks to Lemma 6.3.16, it suffices to prove that “erasing” the colours distinguishing the left-hand side and right-hand side of the disjoint unions preserves the property of being an *lps*. Formally, we want to prove that the map $! : \text{Cliques} \times \text{Paths} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ is a logical map and then leverage Lemma 6.3.3. Because it already is defined as a first order interpretation, it suffices to check that it is monotone thanks to Fact 6.3.4. The latter is immediate because removing unary predicates preserves the property of being an induced substructure. ■

There is another natural operation on structures that is not yet considered in our study: the cartesian product. Beware that $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}'$ is a class of pairs, or equivalently a class of disjoint unions of structures in \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{C}' . We now want to build the class of $\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}$, where $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ and $\mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C}'$.

Definition 6.3.18. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma')$ be two classes of structures. The **inner product** $\mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{C}'$ is the class of products $\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}$ for $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ and $\mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C}'$.

An element $\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B} \in \mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{C}'$ is equivalently described as a structure in $\text{Struct}(\sigma \uplus \sigma')$, such that

- ▶ a tuple $((a_i, b_i))_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to a $R^{\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}}$ for relation $(R, n) \in \sigma$ if and only if $(a_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to $R^{\mathfrak{A}}$, and
- ▶ a tuple $((a_i, b_i))_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to a $R'^{\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}}$ for relation $(R', n) \in \sigma'$ if and only if $(b_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to $R'^{\mathfrak{B}}$.

In this setting, the equality relation $=_\sigma$ and $=_{\sigma'}$ become equivalence relations on the product structure $\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}$.

In order to define the inner product of **lpps**, we need to construct topologies and Boolean subalgebras over the **inner product**. Unsurprisingly, one defines the **inner product** $\tau \otimes \tau' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \{U \otimes V : U \in \tau, V \in \tau'\} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ and the **inner product** $\mathcal{B} \otimes \mathcal{B}' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \{D \otimes D' : D \in \tau, D' \in \tau'\} \rangle_{\text{bool}}$. This allows us to define the **inner product** of two **lpps** as follows: $\langle \mathcal{C}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle \otimes \langle \mathcal{C}', \tau', \mathcal{B}' \rangle$ as $\langle \mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{C}', \tau \otimes \tau', \mathcal{B} \otimes \mathcal{B}' \rangle$.

Lemma 6.3.19. Let $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \mathcal{C}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ and $X' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \mathcal{C}', \tau', \mathcal{B}' \rangle$ be two **lpps**. Then, $X \otimes X'$ is an **lpps**.

Proof. Let us define $f: X \times X' \rightarrow X \otimes X'$ defined by $f: (\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}) \mapsto \mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}$. Clearly f is **surjective**, and it is an easy check that it is a **logical map**. We conclude by **Lemma 6.3.3**. ■

To save some space and because the following is another application of the same proof scheme using **Feferman-Vaught** techniques, we leave the following property as an exercise.³⁵

Exercise 6.3.20. Let $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO}[\sigma] \rangle$ and $\langle \mathcal{C}', \langle \exists F' \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO}[\sigma'] \rangle$ be two **lpps**. Then, $\langle \mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{C}', \langle \exists F \rangle_{\text{topo}} \vee_t \langle \exists F' \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \sigma'] \rangle$ is an **lpps**.

Example 6.3.21. The space $\mathcal{C} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \text{Cliques} \otimes \text{Paths}, \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle$ is an **lpps**.

Proof. We know using **Exercise 6.3.20** that the following space, representing cartesian products of cliques and paths (with distinct edges E_1

35: The idea behind **Exercise 6.3.20** is that the first order theory of a product $\mathfrak{A} \times \mathfrak{B}$ is uniquely determined by the first order theories of \mathfrak{A} and \mathfrak{B} .

We write \vee_t for the **join of two topologies**, to distinguish it from the symbol \vee that is already used quite a lot in this manuscript.

for cliques and E_2 for paths) is an **lpps**: $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}', \tau', \mathcal{B}' \rangle\rangle$ where:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{C}' &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{Cliques} \otimes \text{Paths} \\ \tau' &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \text{EFO}[E_1] \rangle_{\text{topo}} \vee_t \langle \text{EFO}[E_2] \rangle_{\text{topo}} \\ \mathcal{B}' &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{FO}[\{ (E_1, 2), (E_2, 2) \}] \quad .\end{aligned}$$

Now, the map $\mathsf{l}: \mathcal{C}' \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ defined by $\varphi_E(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} E_1(x, y) \vee E_2(x, y)$ is a **monotone, surjective first order interpretation**, and we conclude using **Lemma 6.3.3**. ■

Remark that we are now leaving the realm of what was possible to achieve using the “locality techniques” introduced in **Chapter 4 (Locality and Preservation)**, as the r -local neighbourhoods inside structures belonging to the class introduced in **Example 6.3.21** contain the whole structure when $r \geq 2$. In particular, it is not possible to leverage **Theorem 5.1.2** to conclude that the **Łoś-Tarski Theorem relativises** to **Cliques \otimes Paths**.

6.3.3. Colouring Structures

We now turn our attention to more complex constructions, and leave the realm of “nice” categorical constructions to follow more rigorously the list of constructors provided for **wqos** and **Noetherian spaces** respectively in **Table 6.1** and **Table 6.2**.

To that end, let us formally state the two stability results that we are going to use, namely the stability under finite words and finite trees, both in the case of **well-quasi-orderings** and **Noetherian spaces**. This forces us to not only state the lemmas, but actually give the definitions of the associated quasi-orderings and topologies.

We allow ourselves to write $|w|$ for the set $\{1, \dots, |w|\}$ when writing domains and co-domains of functions, as we believe this simplifies the reading process.

Implicitly in this document, trees are unranked, ordered, and finite.

Definition 6.3.22. A word u **embeds** in a word v , whenever there exists a strictly increasing map $h: |u| \rightarrow |v|$ such that $u_i \leq v_{h(i)}$ for $1 \leq i \leq |u|$. This relation is written $u \leq_w v$.

Definition 6.3.23. A tree t **embeds** in a tree t' , whenever there exists a map h from the nodes of t to the nodes of t' , such that $v \leq h(v)$ for every node v of t , and h respects the least common ancestor of nodes. This relation is written $t \leq_t t'$.

Theorem 6.3.24 [59]. Let (W, \leq) be a **well-quasi-order**. Then, the set (W^*, \leq_w) is a **well-quasi-order**.

This is known as **Higman’s Lemma**.

Theorem 6.3.25 [65]. Let (W, \leq) be a **well-quasi-order**. Then, the set $(\mathsf{T}(W), \leq_t)$ is a **well-quasi-order**.

This is known as *Kruskal's Tree Theorem*.

Now that we have a definition of orders over trees and words, let us turn our attention to topologies. For simplicity, we only consider the *subword topology* over finite words and delay the definition of trees to [Chapter 8 \(Inductive Constructions\)](#). We write Σ^* for the set of finite words over Σ , and AB for the set of words uv with $u \in A$ and $v \in B$ whenever A and B are subsets of Σ^* for some alphabet Σ . Furthermore, we introduce $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ as a shorthand notation for the set $\Sigma^*U_1\Sigma^* \dots \Sigma^*U_n\Sigma^*$.

Definition 6.3.26 [45, Definition 9.7.26]. Given a topological space (Σ, τ) , the space Σ^* of finite words over Σ can be endowed with the *subword topology* $\tau^{*,t}$, generated by the open sets $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ when $U_i \in \tau$.

Theorem 6.3.27 *Topological Higman lemma* [45, Theorem 9.7.33]. Let (Σ, τ) be a topological space. (Σ, τ) is *Noetherian* if and only if $(\Sigma^*, \tau^{*,t})$ is *Noetherian*.

Our goal is to generalise [Theorem 6.3.27](#) to *lpps*, i.e., to prove that if the space of finite words is a *lpps* assuming the space of letters is. This is the content of the upcoming [Theorem 6.3.33](#).

Colouring finite words. We will first demonstrate how the ideas from [Theorem 6.3.13](#) can be generalised to “constructors” where the underlying space is *Noetherian*. This requires us to refine our understanding of the *subword topology*, and in particular of its compact subsets.³⁶

Lemma 6.3.28. *Let (X, τ) be a topological space, and $(U_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ be a finite sequence of compact open subsets. Then, $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ is a compact open subset of $\tau^{*,t}$.*

Proof. We use [Alexander's subbase lemma](#), and consider an open cover $(V^i)_{i \in I}$ of $U \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [U_1, \dots, U_n]$, where $V^i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [V_1^i, \dots, V_{n_i}^i]$ for all $i \in I$.

Let $w \in U$ of length n , there exists an $i(w) \in I$, and a strictly increasing map $\rho_w: \{1, \dots, n_{i(w)}\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, n\}$, such that:

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq n_{i(w)}, w_{\rho_w(j)} \in V_j^{i(w)}.$$

Let us define $Z_w(p) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{j \in \rho_w^{-1}(\{p\})} V_j^{i(w)}$, which is an open subset of X . Equivalently, $Z_w(p)$ is defined as $V_j^{i(w)}$ if there exists j such that $p = \rho_w(j)$, and X otherwise.³⁷

Then, we define $Z_w \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [Z_w(1), \dots, Z_w(n)]$, which is an open subset of X^* , and $Z_w^\times \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} Z_w(1) \times \dots \times Z_w(n)$, which is an open subset of X^n in its product topology.

36: Beware that the *subword topology* is *Noetherian* if and only if the topology on the letters is. However, we are going to consider words with finite structures as letters, and not assume that the class of structures is *Noetherian*!

37: The advantage of the first definition is that it will generalise to maps ρ_w that are not injective in the upcoming section.

Our first claim is that for $1 \leq p \leq n$, $w_p \in Z_w(p)$. Which holds by construction. This implies that $w \in Z_w$, and that $(w_1, \dots, w_n) \in Z_w^\times$.

Our second claim is that for all w of length n , we have $Z_w \subseteq V^{i(w)}$. Indeed, consider a word $u \in Z_w$. By definition, there exists a strictly increasing map $h: \{1, \dots, n\} \rightarrow \{1, \dots, |u|\}$ such that

$$\forall 1 \leq p \leq n, u_{h(p)} \in Z_w(p) \quad .$$

Now, remark that

$$\forall 1 \leq j \leq n_{i(w)}, u_{h(\rho_w(j))} \in Z_w(h(j)) \subseteq V_j^{i(w)} \quad .$$

Because $h \circ \rho_w$ is the composition of two strictly increasing maps, it is itself a strictly increasing map from $\{1, \dots, n_{i(w)}\}$ to $\{1, \dots, |u|\}$, and we have proven that $u \in V^{i(w)}$.

Now, the core of the proof is to notice that $U^\times \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U_1 \times \dots \times U_n$ is a **compact subset** of X^n thanks to the **Tychonoff theorem**, which can be applied since every U_p is **compact** for $1 \leq p \leq n$. Furthermore, $(Z_w^\times)_{w \in U, |w|=n}$ is an **open cover** of U^\times . As a consequence, and there exists a finite set W of words of length n in U such that

$$U^\times \subseteq \bigcup_{w \in W} Z_w^\times \quad .$$

To conclude, let $u \in U$, it has a subword v of length n that is in U , hence the word v (seen as a tuple) belongs to U^\times . Therefore, v (seen as a tuple of length n) belongs to a Z_w^\times for some $w \in W$. In particular, v belongs to Z_w (when seen as a word). Because Z_w is closed under insertion of letters,³⁸ we conclude that $u \in Z_w$ too. We have successfully extracted a finite subcover of $(V^i)_{i \in I}$:

$$U \subseteq \bigcup_{w \in W} Z_w \subseteq \bigcup_{w \in W} V^{i(w)} \quad . \quad \blacksquare$$

38: Recall that $[A_1, \dots, A_n]$ means $X^*A_1X^* \dots X^*A_nX^*$, which is **upwards closed** for $(=)_w$, the **subword ordering** with equality on the letters.

As a consequence of **Lemma 6.3.28**, we conjecture that the following variation of the **topological Higman lemma** holds.

Conjecture 6.3.29. Let (X, τ) be a **spectral space**. Then, its sobriification $(\mathcal{S}(X^*), \tau^{*, \text{t}})$ is a **spectral space**.

In the definition of an **lpps**, the topology and the Boolean subalgebra of **definable subsets** play an equally important role. In the case of finite words, the definable subsets (that is formally introduced in **Definition 6.3.31**) are basically a choice of finitely many definable properties over the letters, and then an arbitrary Boolean combination of these properties. In order to properly define the above notion, we let use first introduce the notion of **join** of **Boolean subalgebras** (of $\mathcal{P}(X)$).

Definition 6.3.30. Let \mathcal{B} and \mathcal{B}' be two **Boolean subalgebras** of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The **join algebra** $\mathcal{B} \vee_b \mathcal{B}'$ is the **Boolean subalgebra** of X generated by $\mathcal{B} \cup \mathcal{B}'$.

For a family $(\mathcal{B}_i)_{i \in I}$ of *Boolean subalgebras*, the *join algebra* is generated by $\bigcup_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i$, and written $\bigvee_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i$.

Furthermore, we introduce, when B is a *Boolean subalgebra* of some $\mathcal{P}(X)$, the construction $\langle B \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}}$ to denote the *complete Boolean subalgebra* generated by B , that is, arbitrary intersections of arbitrary unions of elements in B and their complements.^{39,40}

Definition 6.3.31. Let \mathcal{B} be a *Boolean subalgebra* of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. Then,

$$(\mathcal{B})^{*,b} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{\mathcal{W} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}} \langle \{W_1 \cdots W_n : n \in \mathbb{N}, W_i \in \mathcal{W}\} \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}} . \quad (6.3)$$

The (limited) ability to consider arbitrary unions (and intersections) of elements in $(\mathcal{B})^{*,b}$ allows us to define subsets that clearly escape the realm of first order logic, as illustrated in [Example 6.3.32](#).⁴¹

Example 6.3.32. Let X be a set, and let \mathcal{B} be a *Boolean subalgebra* of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The set of words w such that $|w|$ is a prime number is definable in $\langle X^*, \tau^{*,t}, (\mathcal{B})^{*,b} \rangle$.

Proof. This set can be written as the following union:

$$\bigcup_{p \text{ prime}} \underbrace{X \cdots X}_{p \text{ times}} . \quad \blacksquare$$

Theorem 6.3.33. Let $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an *lpps*. Then, $\langle X^*, \tau^{*,t}, (\mathcal{B})^{*,b} \rangle$ is an *lpps*.

Proof. Let us first prove that $\langle X^*, \tau^{*,t}, (\mathcal{B})^{*,b} \rangle$ is an *lps*. For that, consider a *subbasic open subset* $U \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [U_1, \dots, U_n]$, where $U_i \in \tau$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. Because $U_i \in \tau$, and $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is itself an *lps*, this provides us with a set J of indices and a family $D_j^i \in \mathcal{B} \cap \tau$ where $j \in J$ such that

$$\forall 1 \leq i \leq n, U_i = \bigcup_{j \in J} D_j^i .$$

Now, it suffices to unfold the definition of the syntax $[\cdot \cdots \cdot]$ to conclude that U is an arbitrary union of elements in $\tau^{*,t} \cap (\mathcal{B})^{*,b}$:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= [U_1, \dots, U_n] \\ &= X^* U_1 X^* \cdots X^* U_n X^* \\ &= \bigcup_{j_1, \dots, j_n \in J} X^* D_{j_1}^1 X^* \cdots X^* D_{j_n}^n X^* \\ &= \bigcup_{j_1, \dots, j_n \in J} \underbrace{\bigcup_{k_0, \dots, k_{n+1} \in \mathbb{N}} X^{k_0} D_{j_1}^1 X^{k_1} \cdots X^{k_n} D_{j_n}^n X^{k_{n+1}}}_{=[D_{j_1}^1, \dots, D_{j_n}^n] \in \tau^{*,t} \text{ and } \in (\mathcal{B})^{*,b}} . \end{aligned}$$

We have proven that $\langle \tau^{*,t} \cap (\mathcal{B})^{*,b} \rangle_{\text{topo}} = \tau^{*,t}$.

39: This definition is sound because unions distribute over intersections in $\mathcal{P}(X)$.

40: We restrict our attention to *Boolean subalgebras* to avoid using advanced tools such as the Dedekind–MacNeille completion.

Informally, the idea of [Definition 6.3.31](#) is that a “definable subset” of finite words starts by fixing a finite set of properties that can be checked on the letters, and then can perform *arbitrary* Boolean combination of checks on the words using these properties.

41: However, the *Boolean subalgebra* defined in [is not a complete Boolean subalgebra](#).

42: For every $W_1, W_2 \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}$, there exists $W_3 \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}$ such that $W_1 \subseteq W_3$ and $W_2 \subseteq W_3$, namely $W_3 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} W_1 \cup W_2$.

43: We have fixed m , hence the inclusion $[A_1, \dots, A_m] \subseteq [B_1, \dots, B_m]$ amounts to checking whether $A_i \subseteq B_i$ pointwise, in the case where none of the A_i 's is the empty set.

44: Assume by contradiction that some U_i is not *saturated*. There exists $x \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} y$ such that $x \in U_i$ and $y \notin U_i$. We select finite sets of representatives F_j for the $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ -equivalence classes that intersect U_j for $1 \leq j \neq i \leq m$. Because U respects the $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ -equivalence, the words built using elements in F_j and y all belongs to U . The *open neighbourhoods* of these words provide *open neighbourhoods* around y . The union of U_i together with the intersection of neighbourhoods that were built above contradicts the maximality of U_i . This sketch will be formally developed in the generalised setting of *wreath products*, and in particular in the proof of Theorem 6.3.44.

The proof that the space is an *lpps* is quite similar to the one of Theorem 6.3.13, with an extra twist at the end. As usual, the only thing to check is that *definable open subsets* of \mathbf{X}^* are *compact*.

Let U be a *definable open subset*. Because $(\mathcal{B})^{*,b}$ is defined as a *directed union*,⁴² there exists a finite subset $\mathcal{W} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}$ such that:

$$U \in \langle \{W_1 \cdots W_n : n \in \mathbb{N}, W_i \in \mathcal{W}\} \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}}.$$

Without loss of generality, we assume that $\mathcal{W} = \langle \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}}$, which is also a finite subset of \mathcal{B} . Let us define the equivalence relation $x \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} y$ on \mathbf{X} to hold when for all $W \in \mathcal{W}$, $x \in W \iff y \in W$, that is, the *equivalence relation of finite index* generated by the sets in \mathcal{W} . Remark that for $u, v \in \mathbf{X}^*$, such that for all $i \in I$, $u_i \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} v_i$, $u \in U$ if and only if $v \in U$.

Let us fix $m \in \mathbb{N}$ and consider (thanks to Zorn's Lemma) an *open subset* $[U_1, \dots, U_m] \subseteq U$ that is *maximal* for inclusion among opens of this form.⁴³

Using the same arguments as for the *product* of two spaces in Theorem 6.3.13, we easily conclude that the sets U_i must be *saturated* for $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$.⁴⁴ As a consequence, they are *definable open subsets*, hence *compact* subsets of (\mathbf{X}, τ) .

Let us now unfix m . We know that U is included in the union over $m \in \mathbb{N}$ of the subsets $[U_1, \dots, U_m]$ that are maximal for inclusion (among other subsets of the same shape). As a consequence, there exists a sequence $(I_m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ of subsets of \mathbb{N} and a sequence $(U_{i,m})_{m \in \mathbb{N}, i \in I_m}$ of elements in $\mathcal{K}^\circ(\tau)$ that are *saturated* for $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$, such that

$$U = \bigcup_{m \in \mathbb{N}} \bigcup_{i \in I_m} [U_{1,i} \dots, U_{m,i}]$$

Recall that $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ is of *finite index*, hence there are finitely many possible values for the sets $U_{m,i}$. Let us write $\Sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{U_{m,i} : m \in \mathbb{N}, i \in I_m\}$. The topology $\langle \Sigma \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ is *Noetherian* because Σ is finite. As a consequence of the *topological Higman lemma*, $(\mathbf{X}^*, \langle \Sigma \rangle_{\text{topo}}^{*,t})$ is *Noetherian*, and in particular, there exists $m_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ and a sequence $(J_m)_{m \leq m_0}$ of *finite* subsets of \mathbb{N} such that

$$\begin{aligned} U &= \bigcup_{m \in \mathbb{N}} \bigcup_{i \in I_m} [U_{1,i} \dots, U_{m,i}] \\ U &= \bigcup_{m \leq m_0} \bigcup_{i \in J_m} [U_{1,i} \dots, U_{m,i}] \end{aligned}$$

Furthermore, we can leverage Lemma 6.3.28, stating that $[U_1, \dots, U_p] \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(\tau^{*,t})$ whenever $U_1, \dots, U_p \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(\tau)$, to conclude that U is a finite union of *compact open subsets*. Hence, U is *compact* thanks to Lemma D.4.3. ■

We have used a deep theorem about the *subword topology* to get around the last part of the proof of Theorem 6.3.33. However, there exists a longer proof that avoids it and goes back to simple *well-quasi-ordering* arguments. Let us sketch this alternative proof hereafter, not

only for completeness, but because it allows us to generalise the argument to [wreath products](#).⁴⁵

Alternative Ending. Let us write $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ [U_{m,i}, \dots, U_{m,i}] : m \in \mathbb{N}, i \in I_m \}$, and $\Sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ U_{i,m} : m \in \mathbb{N}, i \in I_m \}$.

Because elements in Σ are [saturated](#) for $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$, which is of [finite index](#), Σ is a finite alphabet, and in particular a [well-quasi-order](#) when equipped with the equality preorder. Using [Higman's Lemma](#), $(\Sigma^*, (=)_{\mathcal{W}})$ is again [wqo](#). The map $f : (\Sigma^*, (=)_{\mathcal{W}}) \rightarrow (S, \supseteq)$ that sends w to $[w_1, \dots, w_n]$ is surjective and monotone. As a consequence, (S, \supseteq) is a [wqo](#), and S is the [upward closure](#) (for \supseteq) of finitely many elements $S_f \subseteq_{\text{fin}} S$.

We have proven that

$$U = \bigcup_{V \in S_f} V \quad .$$

Hence, U is [compact](#) via [Lemma D.4.3](#). ■

As for the [products](#) and [sums](#), we are not entirely satisfied by [Theorem 6.3.33](#), because the [Boolean subalgebra](#) in the statement is not obtained by interpreting [FO](#) sentences over finite words. Before proving [Lemma 6.3.35](#), which leverages the [Feferman-Vaught technique](#) to transform first order sentences over \mathcal{C}^* into elements of $(\text{FO})^{*,b}$, we first need to explain how to interpret elements of \mathcal{C}^* as (finite) [relational structures](#).

Definition 6.3.34. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$. We interpret a word $w \in \mathcal{C}^*$ as the structure $\uplus_{1 \leq i \leq |w|} w_i$ with extra relations $a \leq b$ whenever $a \in w_i$, $b \in w_j$, and $i \leq j$.

[Definition 6.3.34](#) allows us to evaluate first order formulas $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\}]$ over the words w in \mathcal{C}^* . Remark that if two elements $a, b \in \text{dom}(w)$ are in a relation R that is not \leq , then $a \leq b$ and $b \leq a$.

Lemma 6.3.35. Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$ be a class of structures. For every $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\}]$, $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}^*} \in (\text{FO}[\sigma])^{*,b}$.

Proof Sketch. To prove the desired result, we use the [Feferman-Vaught technique](#), with a varying set of types, with $\mathbb{T}_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} L_n$. Let us introduce a variant $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\cdot, \cdot)$ of the conversion operator $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi)$ by induction on the structure of ψ and for all $\Gamma : \text{fv}(\psi) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_n$ as follows:⁴⁶

1. $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \exists x. \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{T \in \mathbb{T}_n} \exists x : T. \text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma[x \mapsto T], \psi)$,
2. $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \psi_1 \vee \psi_2) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \psi_1) \vee \text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \psi_2)$,
3. $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \neg \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg \text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \psi)$,
4. $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \top) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$,
5. $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, x \leq y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$ if $\Gamma(x) \leq \Gamma(y)$, and \perp otherwise,
6. For $R \in \sigma$, $\text{w-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, R(y_1, \dots, y_n)) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(y_1 : \Gamma(y_1), \dots, y_n : \Gamma(y_n))$ when $\Gamma(y_1) = \dots = \Gamma(y_n)$, and \perp otherwise.

45: The notion of [wreath product](#) will be introduced in [Definition 6.3.38](#).

46: The idea is that an element of a word $w \in \mathcal{C}^*$ is a pair (i, a) where $1 \leq i \leq |w|$ and $a \in w_i$. We will give to an element (i, a) the “runtime type” i , which allows us to perform a partial evaluation of the sentences by statically evaluating the relation \leq .

47: The proof is done by induction, as for [Lemma 4.2.17](#). The case of the existential quantification, is exactly the same, and the only thing to check is that replacing relations with \perp and the ordering with the “ordering on types” is correct, which holds by definition of ρ , and because elements that are not in the same position in the word cannot be in any relation that is not \leq .

Now, we claim⁴⁷ that the following analogue of [Lemma 4.2.17](#) holds for this new conversion. For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, for all $\psi(\vec{x}) \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\}]$, for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}^*$ of length n , for all valuation $\mathbf{v}: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, for all runtime typing $\rho: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_n$, for all \mathbb{T}_n -typing environments Γ , such that $\Gamma(x) = \rho(\mathbf{v}(x))$ for all $x \in \vec{x}$, and such that $\rho(a) \leq \rho(b)$ if and only if $a \leq b$ in \mathfrak{A} , the following are equivalent:

- $\mathfrak{A}, \mathbf{v} \models \psi(\vec{x})$,
- $\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \mathbf{w}\text{-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\Gamma, \psi)$.

Applying the above claim to \mathfrak{A} , the empty valuation, and the function $\rho: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow L_n$ that maps an element $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, to its position in the total ordering defined by \leq inside \mathfrak{A} , we conclude that:

$$(\mathfrak{A}, \emptyset \models \varphi) \iff (\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \emptyset \models^{\mathbb{T}} \mathbf{w}\text{-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\emptyset, \varphi))$$

Applying [Lemma 4.2.19](#) over $\mathbf{w}\text{-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\emptyset, \varphi)$, we obtain a finite set S of [monotyped formulas](#), such that a Boolean combination of formulas in S that is equivalent to $\mathbf{w}\text{-conv}^{\mathbb{T}_n}(\emptyset, \varphi)$. Notice that a [monotyped formula](#) can only talk about one equivalence class for \leq in the structure \mathfrak{A} . As a consequence, whether $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ is uniquely determined by the evaluation of [monotyped formulas](#) on each of the \leq -equivalence classes of \mathfrak{A} .

Recall that [Lemma 4.2.13](#) states that evaluating a [monotyped formula](#) θ with type $T \in \mathbb{T}$, over a structure \mathfrak{A} with typing function $\rho: a \mapsto T$ is equivalent to evaluating $\mathbf{UT}(\theta)$ over \mathfrak{A} .

Furthermore, [Lemma 4.2.19](#) states that the [monotyped formulas](#) in S have [quantifier rank](#) at most $\mathbf{rk}(\varphi)$. As a consequence, $\{\mathbf{UT}(\theta): \theta \in S\}$ is finite up to logical equivalence, and its size is bounded independently of the length n of \mathfrak{A} !

What we have proven is that there exists a finite subset S' of (usual) formulas, namely $\{\mathbf{UT}(\theta): \theta \in S'\}$, such that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}^*$, their evaluation on the \leq -equivalence classes of \mathfrak{A} uniquely determines whether $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$. Formally, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we have a Boolean function ρ_n from $\{0, 1\}^{\{1, \dots, n\} \times S'}$ to $\{0, 1\}$, such that for all \mathfrak{A} of length n in \mathcal{C}^* , $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ if and only if $\rho_n((\mathfrak{A}_i \models \psi)_{1 \leq i \leq n, \psi \in S'}) = 1$, where \mathfrak{A}_i is the i th \leq -equivalence class in \mathfrak{A} .

This is clearly definable in $(\mathbf{FO}[\sigma])^{*,b}$, because it is an arbitrary union of elements $W_1 \cdots W_n$, where $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and $W_i \in \langle S' \rangle_{\text{bool}}$, the latter being a finite [Boolean subalgebra](#) of $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$. ■

Corollary 6.3.36. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a class of structures, $\tau \in \mathbf{Top}(\mathcal{C})$ be a topology such that $\langle \mathcal{C}, \tau, \mathbf{FO}[\sigma] \rangle$ is an *lpps*. Then, the following space of [finite words](#) is an *lpps*:*

$$\langle \mathcal{C}^*, \tau^{*,t}, \mathbf{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{ \leq \}] \rangle \quad .$$

Proof. Using [Theorem 6.3.33](#), it remains for us to prove two statements:

1. That $\llbracket \mathbf{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{ \leq \}] \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}^*} \subseteq (\llbracket \mathbf{FO}[\sigma] \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}})^{*,b}$, which is the content of [Lemma 6.3.35](#), and

2. That $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}^*, \tau^{*,t}, \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{ \leq \}] \rangle\rangle$ is an **lps**.

For this last item, remark that for all sequence $(D_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ of **definable subsets** of \mathcal{C} , $[D_1, \dots, D_n]$ is **first order definable** in \mathcal{C}^* . Indeed, $D_i = \llbracket \theta_i \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ for some first order sentence $\theta_i \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$, hence we can define

$$\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists x_1, \dots, x_n. \bigwedge_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} x_i < x_j \wedge \bigwedge_{1 \leq i \leq n} [\theta_i]_{\models x_i},$$

where $[\theta_i]_{\models x_i}$ is the relativisation of θ_i to variables y such that $y \leq x_i \wedge x_i \leq y$.

It remains for us to prove that the topology $\tau^{*,t}$ is **generated by** the subsets of the form $[D_1, \dots, D_n]$, where D_i is a **definable open subset** of \mathcal{C} .

Let $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ be a **subbasic open subset** of $\tau^{*,t}$. Because $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \tau, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**, for all $1 \leq i \leq n$, there exists a family $(\theta_{i,j})_{j \in J_i}$ such that $U_i = \bigcup_{j \in J_i} \llbracket \theta_{i,j} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$. Therefore,

$$[U_1, \dots, U_n] = \bigcup_{f \in \prod_{1 \leq i \leq n} J_i} \underbrace{[\llbracket \theta_{1,f(1)} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}, \dots, \llbracket \theta_{n,f(n)} \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}]}_{\text{first order definable and open}}. \quad \blacksquare$$

Let us now discuss a little the tremendous power given by **Corollary 6.3.36**. For instance, $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ is clearly not a class of finite structures having any kind on sparsity properties.⁴⁸ In particular, this class shows how the “structural” approach complements the approach using locality presented in **Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem)**, and its **Theorem 5.1.2** on page 120.

48: Recall that **Definition 6.3.34** interprets $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ as “flattened” structures over $\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\}$. Therefore, the **Gaifman graph** of an element in $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ is always a clique.

Example 6.3.37. Let \mathcal{C} be the class $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ of finite words of finite graphs of degree bounded by 2. Then,

- ▶ The **Łoś-Tarski Theorem** relativises to \mathcal{C} ,
- ▶ \mathcal{C} is **hereditary**,
- ▶ \mathcal{C} is not **closed under disjoint unions**,
- ▶ \mathcal{C} is not of bounded degree,
- ▶ For all $r \geq 1, k \geq 1$, $\text{Local}(\mathcal{C}, r, k) = \mathcal{C}$.

Proof. It is clear that $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ does not have bounded degree, because of the order relation \leq . It is not closed under disjoint unions because the disjoint union of two total orderings is not a total ordering. The total ordering relation \leq turns the **Gaifman graph** of elements in $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ into cliques, hence the (non-trivial) local neighbourhoods are always the entire structure.

To prove that the **Łoś-Tarski Theorem** relativises to \mathcal{C} , we first use the **Lemma 6.1.16**, and notice that $\Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ is a **hereditary class** of finite structures in $\text{Fin}(\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\})$. As a consequence, it suffices for us to demonstrate that $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\}] \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**. Recall that **Corollary 6.3.36**, implies that $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)^{*,t}, \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \{(\leq, 2)\}] \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**. Hence, it suffices to prove that $\text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)^{*,t} = \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$.⁴⁹ To that end, let us consider $w \in \Delta_{\text{deg}}^{2,*}$ of length n . We claim that $[\uparrow_{\subseteq_i} w_1, \dots, \uparrow_{\subseteq_i} w_n]$ is the \subseteq_i -**upward closure** of w in \mathcal{C}^* seen as models.

49: This equation hides the fact that the signatures over which \subseteq_i is defined varies...

This is because $w \subseteq_i w'$ holds if and only if there exists a map $h: w \rightarrow w'$ that is a **QF-embedding**. In particular, h remains a **QF-embedding** from w seen as $L_{|w|}$ to w' seen as $L_{|w'|}$, obtained by removing every relation from the structures except the order relation \leq . This proves that h is a strictly increasing map from $\{1, \dots, |w|\}$ to $\{1, \dots, |w'|\}$. Furthermore, h restricted to w_i remains a **QF-embedding** from w_i to $w'_{h(i)}$. In particular, we have proven that $w' \in [\uparrow_{\subseteq_i} w_1, \dots, \uparrow_{\subseteq_i} w_n]$. The converse inclusion is done similarly, combining **QF-embeddings** on every component into a global **QF-embedding** that also respects the ordering. ■

Colouring complex structures. We are now going to leverage what was done in the case of coloured finite words to colour arbitrary classes of structures. This is motivated by the fact that in [Tables 6.1](#) and [6.2](#) several constructors are obtained via a suitable colouring of a finite class of structures (finite words, finite trees, finite multisets).

Definition 6.3.38. Let \mathcal{C} be a class of structures and \mathbf{X} be a set. The **wreath product** $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathbf{X}$ is defined as the class of functions $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}$ where $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$. Equivalently, it is defined as $\sum_{\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}} \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} \mathbf{X}$.

Informally, $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathbf{X}$ is the class of structures in \mathcal{C} where elements are coloured by points in \mathbf{X} . From this viewpoint, if $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$ and $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma')$, then $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$ can be understood as a kind of “substitution of structures,” and we will provide an interpretation of these new structures in terms of structures over $\sigma \uplus \sigma'$ in [Definition 6.3.45](#). Remark that [Definition 6.3.38](#) encodes the lexicographic product when the functions f are chosen to be constant functions.

Before studying **wreath products** in terms of classes of structures, let us see how the notion of **wreath product** generalises the intuition that words are linear orders with colours in [Example 6.3.39](#). Then, we will prove [Theorem 6.3.44](#), that strictly generalises [Theorem 6.3.33](#); and [Theorem 6.3.46](#) that strictly generalises [Corollary 6.3.36](#).

Example 6.3.39. Let **LinOrd** be the class of finite linear orders. Then \mathcal{C}^* is exactly **LinOrd** $\rtimes \mathcal{C}$.

Before going to the formal definition, let us recall that the **sub-word topology** is generated by elements of the form $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ which are themselves *words of open subsets*. We will take a similar approach when defining the topology on the wreath product: open subsets will be generated by maps from a finite structure to open subsets. However, this is only half of what needs to be defined: in the case of words, we had a corresponding “semantics”, telling us which words belong to $V \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [U_1, \dots, U_n]$. The informal idea to produce this semantics is that a word w belongs to an open subset whenever there is a map h from the positions in the open subset V , to the positions in the word w , such that $w_{h(i)} \in U_i$.

The general form $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathbf{X}$ where \mathbf{X} is not a class of structures allows us to consider heterogeneous constructions, such as “linear orders coloured with polynomials” (or linear orders of polynomials if one prefers the idea that structures are substituted rather than coloured). Moreover, it provides a handy description of the topology that will be placed on this **wreath product**.

Suppose that (\mathbf{X}, τ) is a topological space, that \mathbf{F} is a **fragment** of **FO**, and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Struct}(\sigma)$. We want to build a topology over $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathbf{X}$. The idea is that a **subbasic open subset** is defined by an element U of $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \tau$, which describes the following subset of $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathbf{X}$: $[\mathbf{F} \parallel U] \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathbf{X} : \exists h: \text{dom}(U) \rightarrow \text{dom}(f) \text{ F-embedding}, \forall a \in \text{dom}(U), f(h(a)) \in U\}$.

$U(a)\}$. The *wreath subbasis* $\mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \tau$ is the collection of the sets $[\mathbf{F}\|U]$ where U ranges in $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \tau$.

This allows us to define the *wreath topology* as $\langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \tau \rangle_{\text{topo}}$, but also to define the *wreath algebra* as $\bigvee_{\mathcal{W} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}} \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{FO}} \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}}$.

Example 6.3.40. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. The spaces $(\text{LinOrd} \rtimes X, \langle \text{LinOrd} \rtimes_{\mathbf{QF}} \tau \rangle_{\text{topo}})$ and $(X^*, \tau^{*,t})$ are homeomorphic.

Proof Sketch. First of all, it is clear that words $w \in X^*$ are in one to one correspondence with elements of $\text{LinOrd} \rtimes X$ via the construction $f_w: L_{|w|} \rightarrow X$ defined by $f_w(i) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} w_i$.

Now, let us consider a *subbasic open subset* $W \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [U_1, \dots, U_n]$ of $\tau^{*,t}$. This corresponds to the open subset $f_W: L_n \rightarrow \tau$ that is defined by $f_W(i) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U_i$. Conversely, a *subbasic open subset* $W: L_n \rightarrow \tau$ corresponds to an *open subset* $[W(1), \dots, W(n)]$.

Let us check that the above bijective mapping preserves the semantics. In particular, we want to prove the following equivalence

$$w \in W \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} [U_1, \dots, U_n] \iff f_w \in [\mathbf{QF}\|f_W] \quad .$$

Recall that by definition of $[\dots]$, $w \in W$ if and only if there exists a map $h: L_n \rightarrow L_{|w|}$ that is strictly increasing, and such that $w_{h(i)} \in U_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$. Now, such a map h is precisely a *QF-embedding* of elements in LinOrd . Therefore, $w \in W$ exactly corresponds to $f_w \in [\mathbf{QF}\|f_W]$. ■

Now that we have gained a little intuition on the behaviour of the *wreath product*, let us construct the associated *logically presented pre-spectral space*.

Definition 6.3.41. Let \mathbf{F} be a *fragment* of $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$, $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, and $\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ be a *logically presented space*. The *wreath product* of the spaces $\langle \mathcal{C}, \langle \exists \mathbf{F} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathbf{FO} \rangle \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is defined as follows

$$\langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes X, \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \tau \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \bigvee_{\mathcal{W} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}} \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{FO}} \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}} \rangle \quad .$$

As for the case of \mathcal{C}^* , we first study how *compact open subsets* of the *wreath topology* can be generated. The following *Lemma 6.3.42* is the generalisation of *Lemma 6.3.28* to the general setting of *wreath products*.

Lemma 6.3.42. Let (X, τ) be a topological space, σ be a finite relational signature, $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$, \mathbf{F} be a *fragment* of $\mathbf{FO}[\sigma]$, $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, and $U: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$. Then, $[\mathbf{F}\|U]$ is a *compact open subset* of $\langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \tau \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.

Proof. This proof is the analogue of Lemma 6.3.28 in a more general setting. We use Alexander's subbase lemma and consider a family $(V_i: \mathfrak{A}_i \rightarrow \tau)_{i \in I}$ such that $([F\|V_i])_{i \in I}$ forms an open cover of $[F\|U]$.

Let $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathsf{X}$ be an element of $[F\|U]$. Then, there exists $i(f) \in I$, and $h_f: \mathfrak{A}_{i(f)} \rightarrow_F \mathfrak{A}$, such that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}_{i(f)}$, $f(h_f(a)) \in V_{i(f)}(a)$.

We define $Z_f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \tau$ as follows:

$$Z_f(a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{a' \in h_f^{-1}(\{a\})} V_{i(f)}(a') \quad .$$

Let us define Z_f^\times as the subset of $\mathsf{X}^\mathfrak{A}$ obtained via $\prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} Z_f(a)$. It is an open subset of $\mathsf{X}^\mathfrak{A}$ in the product topology.

We claim that $f \in [F\|Z_f]$ which is an open subset of the wreath topology, because the identity map is always an F-embedding. Furthermore, for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $f(a) \in Z_f(a)$ by definition. Hence, $f \in Z_f^\times$ when the former is seen as an element of $\mathsf{X}^\mathfrak{A}$.

Let $U^\times \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} U(a)$, which is a compact subset of $\mathsf{X}^\mathfrak{A}$ thanks to the Tychonoff theorem. We have proven that $U^\times \subseteq \bigcup_{f \in U^\times} Z_f^\times$. As a consequence, there exists a finite subset W of U^\times such that

$$U^\times \subseteq \bigcup_{f \in W} Z_f^\times \quad .$$

Let us now conclude that $U \subseteq \bigcup_{f \in W} [F\|V_{i(f)}]$. For that, consider $g: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathsf{X}$ that belongs to U . There exists $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_F \mathfrak{B}$ such that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $g(h(a)) \in U(a)$. Now, $(g \circ h): \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathsf{X}$ is an element of U^\times , hence there exists an $f \in W$ such that $(g \circ h) \in Z_f^\times$. In particular, we obtain that

$$\forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, (g \circ h)(a) \in \bigcap_{a' \in h_f^{-1}(\{a\})} V_{i(f)}(a') \quad .$$

This proves that

$$\forall a' \in \mathfrak{A}_{i(f)}, g((h \circ h_f)(a')) \in V_{i(f)}(a') \quad .$$

Remark that both h and h_f are F-embeddings, hence so is $h \circ h_f$, and we have proven that $g \in [F\|V_{i(f)}]$. ■

Recall that in the proof of Theorem 6.3.33, there were two alternative endings, one of which relied on the fact that finite words over a finite alphabet are well-quasi-ordered. The latter is equivalent to stating that finite linear orders are ∞ -wqo with respect to \subseteq_i .⁵⁰ Now, let us generalise the notion of ∞ -wqo to an arbitrary fragment F .⁵¹

50: Recall that the notion of ∞ -wqo was introduced for \subseteq_i on page 46.

51: Beware that in Definition 6.3.43, there is *a priori* no uniform way to transform a fragment F of $\mathsf{FO}[\sigma]$ into a fragment of $\mathsf{FO}[\sigma \uplus L]$ (with the exception of the identity map). It would be interesting to find a natural setting in which these unary extensions make sense.

Definition 6.3.43. Let σ be a finite relational signature, \mathcal{C} be a class of finite relational structures over σ , and F be a fragment of $\mathsf{FO}[\sigma]$. We say that (\mathcal{C}, \leq_F) is ∞ -wqo, or equivalently, that \mathcal{C} is (F, ∞) -wqo, if for every finite subset L of labels, the class $\text{Lab}(L, \mathcal{C})$ is a wqo for

the following ordering: $\mathfrak{A} \leq \mathfrak{B}$ if and only if

$$\begin{aligned} \exists h: \mathfrak{A}|_{\sigma} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}|_{\sigma}, \\ \forall v: \{x\} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}, \\ \forall P \in L, \\ \mathfrak{A}, v \models P(x) \iff \mathfrak{A}, h \circ v \models P(x) \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 6.3.44. *Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$, \mathbf{F} be a *fragment* of \mathbf{FO} such that $(\mathcal{C}, \leq_{\mathbf{F}})$ is ∞ -wqo, and $\langle \mathbf{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ be an *lps*. Then, $(\mathcal{C}, \langle \exists \mathbf{F} \rangle_{\text{topo}}) \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \langle \mathbf{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an *lps*.*

Proof. Let us first prove that space is a *logically presented space*.⁵² For that, consider a *subbasic open subset* $[\mathbf{F}\|U]$, where $U: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \tau$ for some $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$. Because $\langle \mathbf{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an *lps*, for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, there exists a family $D_{i,a}$ of *definable open subsets* of \mathbf{X} such that

$$U(a) = \bigcup_{i \in I_a} D_{i,a} \quad .$$

Let us now rewrite $[\mathbf{F}\|U]$ using the above decomposition in *definable open subsets* as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (f: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}) \in [\mathbf{F}\|U] &\iff \exists h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}, \forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\ &\quad f(h(a)) \in U(a) \\ &\iff \exists h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}, \forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, \exists i \in I_a, \\ &\quad f(h(a)) \in D_{i,a} \\ &\iff \exists I \in \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} I_a, \exists h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}, \forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, \\ &\quad f(h(a)) \in D_{I(a),a} \end{aligned}$$

Given $I \in \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} I_a$, $f: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}$, and $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}$, we define $D_{I,h,f}$ as the set $[\mathbf{FO}\|b \mapsto \bigcap_{a \in h^{-1}(\{b\})} D_{I(a),a}]$. We conclude by noticing that the following equality holds:

$$[\mathbf{F}\|U] = \bigcup_{I \in \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} I_a} \underbrace{\bigcup_{(f: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}) \in [\mathbf{F}\|U]} \bigcup_{h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}} D_{I,h,f}}_{\text{definable and open}} \quad .$$

Indeed, if $g: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}$ is such that $g \in [\mathbf{F}\|U]$, there exists $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}$, such that $\forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, g(h(a)) \in U(a)$. In particular, there exists $I \in \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} I_a$ such that $\forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, g(h(a)) \in D_{I(a),a}$. Remark that $\text{id}: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{FO}} \mathfrak{B}$ is such that $\forall b \in \mathfrak{B}, g(\text{id}(b)) = g(b) \in \bigcap_{a \in h^{-1}(\{b\})} D_{I(a),a}$, which proves that $g \in [\mathbf{FO}\|D_{I,h,g}]$. Conversely, assume that there exists $I \in \prod_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} I_a$, $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}'$, $f: \mathfrak{B}' \rightarrow \mathbf{X}$, such that $f \in U$ and $g \in [\mathbf{FO}\|D_{I,h,f}]$. The latter implies the existence of $h': \mathfrak{B}' \rightarrow_{\mathbf{FO}} \mathfrak{B}$ such that $\forall b' \in \mathfrak{B}', g(h'(b')) \in \bigcap_{a \in h^{-1}(\{b'\})} D_{I(a),a}$. Remark that $(h' \circ h): \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ is an *F-embedding*, because \mathbf{F} is a *fragment* of \mathbf{FO} , and

⁵²: This is exactly the same as the proof that the space of finite words is an *lps*, except for the notation that varies.

that

$$\forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, g(h'(h(a))) \in \left(\bigcap_{a' \in h^{-1}(\{h(a)\})} D_{I(a'), a'} \right) \subseteq D_{I(a), a} \subseteq U(a) \quad .$$

We have proven that $g \in [\mathbf{F}\|U]$.

Now, let us prove that the space is an **lpps**. For that, consider a non-empty **definable open subset** U of the **wreath product**. We will do the same thing as for **Theorems 6.3.13** and **6.3.33**. As a consequence, we will skip the details and only highlight the key arguments.

53: Again, recall that the union of the Boolean subalgebras is *directed*.

By definition of the **wreath product**,⁵³ there exists $\mathcal{W} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathcal{B}$ such that U is an (arbitrary) Boolean combination of a family $[\mathbf{F}\|V_i]$ where $V_i \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{W}$ for $i \in I$.

Let us write $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ for the **equivalence relation** of **finite index** that \mathcal{W} induces over \mathbf{X} . Notice that a subset $S \subseteq \mathbf{X}$ that is **saturated** for $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ automatically belongs to $\langle \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}} \subseteq \mathcal{B}$.

Let us fix a structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, and consider $T \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \tau$ that is **maximal** such that $[\mathbf{F}\|T] \subseteq U$ and $\text{dom}(T) = \mathfrak{A}$. This **maximal** element exists because U is a non-empty **open subset**, and we fixed the domain to be \mathfrak{A} , so that we can apply **Zorn's Lemma**. Our goal is to prove that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $T(a)$ is **saturated** for $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$.

This is done by contradiction, using the same techniques as for the finite product. The key argument is that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, for all $f, g: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}$ such that $\forall a \in \mathfrak{A}, f(a) \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} g(a)$, $f \in U$ if and only if $g \in U$. Because the proof was only sketched in the case of finite words, we provide a formal one hereafter.

Assume by contradiction that there exists $a_0 \in \mathfrak{A}$ such that $T(a_0)$ is not **saturated** for $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$. This provides us with a pair $x \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} y$ such that $x \in T(a_0)$ and $y \notin T(a_0)$. Let us consider a finite subset $F \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbf{X}$ of representatives for the $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ -equivalence classes. For all $z \in \mathbf{X}$, there exists a unique $\iota(z) \in F$ such that $z \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} \iota(z)$. Let us define \mathcal{F} as the finite set of functions f from \mathfrak{A} to \mathbf{X} such that $f(a) \in \iota(T(a))$ ⁵⁴ for all $a \in \mathfrak{A} \setminus \{a_0\}$, and $f(a_0) \in \{x, y\}$. Using the “saturation” property of U that was stated in the previous paragraph, we know that $\mathcal{F} \subseteq U$.

54: We use the notation $\iota(T(a))$ to denote the set of $\iota(z)$, for $z \in T(a)$.

For all $f \in \mathcal{F}$, there exists an **open neighbourhood** $f \in [\mathbf{F}\|V_f] \subseteq U$, for some $V_f: \mathfrak{A}_f \rightarrow \tau$. As a consequence, there exists a map $h_f: \mathfrak{A}_f \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{A}$, such that for all $a' \in \mathfrak{A}_f$, $f(h_f(a')) \in V_f(a')$. Let us define

$$Z \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcap_{f \in \mathcal{F}} \bigcap_{a' \in h_f^{-1}(\{a_0\})} V_f(a') \quad .$$

55: The intersection is finite because \mathfrak{A} itself is finite!

We claim that Z is an **open subset** of \mathbf{X} , because it is a finite⁵⁵ intersection of **open subsets**. Furthermore, we claim that the map T' that maps $a \in \mathfrak{A} \setminus \{a_0\}$ to $T(a)$ and maps a_0 to $T(a_0) \cup Z$ is such that $[\mathbf{F}\|T'] \subseteq U$, which contradicts the maximality of T .⁵⁶

56: This is because $T(a_0) \subsetneq T(a_0) \cup Z$, because $y \in Z \setminus T(a_0)$.

57: This is the formal generalisation of the proof sketch that was given in **Theorem 6.3.33**.

Let us formally prove the claim that $[\mathbf{F}\|T'] \subseteq U$.⁵⁷ Consider $g: \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}$ such that $g \in [\mathbf{F}\|T']$. There exists $h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}$ such that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $g(h(a)) \in T'(a)$. Recall that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A} \setminus \{a_0\}$, $g(h(a)) \in T'(a) = T(a)$. Therefore, if $g(h(a_0)) \in T(a_0)$, then $g \in [\mathbf{F}\|T]$ and we conclude

that $g \in U$. Otherwise, we know that $g(h(a_0)) \in T'(a) \setminus T(a) = Z$. Let us define $g': \mathfrak{B} \rightarrow \mathsf{X}$ as follows:⁵⁸

$$g'(b) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} \iota(g(b)) & \text{if } b \in \text{Im}(h) \setminus \{h(a_0)\} \\ g(b) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Because for all $b \in \mathfrak{B}$, $g'(b) \equiv_{\mathcal{W}} g(b)$, we know that $g \in U$ if and only if $g' \in U$.

Now, let us prove that $g' \in U$. For that, let us define $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathsf{X}$ as follows:

$$f(a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \begin{cases} g'(h(a)) & \text{if } a \neq a_0 \\ y & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}.$$

Notice that $f \in \mathcal{F}$. Therefore, for all $a' \in \mathfrak{A}_f$, $f(h_f(a')) \in V_f(a')$. Furthermore, $f(h_f(a')) = g'(h(h_f(a')))$ if $h_f(a') \neq a_0$, and $f(h_f(a')) = y$ otherwise. As a consequence,

$$\forall a' \in \mathfrak{A}_f, h_f(a') \neq a_0 \Rightarrow g'(h(h_f(a'))) \in V_f(a') \quad .$$

If $h_f(a') = a_0$, then $g'(h(h_f(a')))) = g'(h(a_0)) = g(h(a_0))$. Because $g(h(a_0)) \in Z \subseteq V_f(a')$, we conclude that $g'(h(h_f(a')))) \in V_f(a')$.

Since $h \circ h_f$ is the composition of two **F-embeddings**, it is itself an **F-embedding**, and we have proven that $g' \in [\mathbf{F}\|V_f] \subseteq U$.

Now, we know that for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, $T(a)$ is saturated for the $\equiv_{\mathcal{W}}$ -equivalence relation. As mentioned earlier, this implies that $T(a) \in \langle \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}} \subseteq \mathcal{B}$, for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$. Therefore, we can use the fact that $\langle \mathsf{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is an **lpps** to conclude that $T(a) \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X})$ for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}$, that is, $T: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X})$. Thanks to [Lemma 6.3.42](#), this implies that $[\mathbf{F}\|T]$ is a **compact open subset** of $\langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \tau \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.

Finally, we have proven that U is a union of **compact open subsets** of the form $[\mathbf{F}\|T]$, where $\text{Im}(T) \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X}) \cap \langle \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}}$. Because $\langle \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}}$ is a finite set, and $(\mathcal{C}, \leq_{\mathbf{F}})$ is ∞ -**wqo**, we conclude that this union can be rewritten as a finite one, similarly to the alternative ending of the proof of [Theorem 6.3.33](#) on page 163. Formally, have proven that there exists a family $(T_i: \mathfrak{A}_i \rightarrow \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X}) \cap \langle \mathcal{W} \rangle_{\text{bool}})_{i \in I}$ such that

$$U = \bigcup_{i \in I} [\mathbf{F}\|T_i] \quad .$$

Using the fact that $(\mathcal{C}, \leq_{\mathbf{F}})$ is ∞ -**wqo**, there exists a finite subset $J \subseteq_{\text{fin}} I$ such that for all $i \in I$, there exists $j \in J$, and a map $h: \mathfrak{A}_j \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{A}_i$, such that $T_i(h(a)) = T_j(a)$ for all $a \in \mathfrak{A}_j$. This last property implies that for all $i \in I$, there exists $j \in J$ such that $[\mathbf{F}\|T_i] \subseteq [\mathbf{F}\|T_j]$.

As a consequence, U is a finite union of the **compact open subsets** $[\mathbf{F}\|T_j]$ for $j \in J$, hence is itself **compact**. ■

Again, while [Theorem 6.3.44](#) is useful, it does not play well with **preservation theorems**, and one leverages the **Feferman-Vaught decomposition technique** to get back to first order logic. Before we introduce the corresponding theorem, let us define how elements of $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$ are interpreted as **relational structures**.

⁵⁸: In particular, $g'(h(a_0)) = g(h(a_0))$ in the following definition.

Definition 6.3.45. Let σ, σ' be two finite *relational signatures*, $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma)$, and $\mathcal{C}' \subseteq \mathbf{Fin}(\sigma')$. Let $f \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$, it is of the form $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$ for some $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$. We interpret f as a *relational structure* over $\sigma \uplus \sigma'$, with domain $\{(a, b) : a \in \mathfrak{A}, b \in f(a)\}$, and such that

- For all $(R, n) \in \sigma$, $((a_i, b_i))_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to R^f if and only if $(a_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to $R^{\mathfrak{A}}$,
- For all $(R', n) \in \sigma'$, $((a_i, b_i))_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to R'^f if and only if $a_i = a_j$ for all $1 \leq i, j \leq n$, and $(b_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ belongs to $R'^{(a)}$.

In particular, the equality relation $(=) \in \sigma$, defines an equivalence relation \equiv via $(a, b) \equiv (a', b')$ if and only if $a = a'$, while the equality $(=) \in \sigma'$ defines the usual notion of equality on elements of the domain.

The purpose of Definition 6.3.45 is to permit the evaluation of *first order formulas* over elements of $\mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$.

Theorem 6.3.46. Let $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}'$ be two classes of finite structures, \mathbf{F} and \mathbf{F}' be two *fragments* of \mathbf{FO} . Assume moreover that $(\mathcal{C}, \leq_{\mathbf{F}})$ is ∞ -wqo, $\langle \mathcal{C}', \langle \exists \mathbf{F}' \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathbf{FO} \rangle$ is an *lpps*, and that \mathbf{F} has *diagram formulas*. Then, $\langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}', \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \langle \exists \mathbf{F}' \rangle_{\text{topo}} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathbf{FO} \rangle$ is an *lpps*.

Proof Sketch. Let us first check that the space is a *logically presented space*. For that, we notice that for all $T: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathbf{FO}[\sigma']$, where $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, there exists a first order sentence $\psi_T \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma \uplus \sigma']$ such that $\llbracket \psi_T \rrbracket = \llbracket \mathbf{F}[T] \rrbracket$. Namely,

$$\psi_T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists (x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}, \bigwedge_{a \in \mathfrak{A}} [f(a)]_{| \equiv x_a} \wedge \bigtriangleup_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\mathbf{F}}((x_a)_{a \in \mathfrak{A}}) \quad ,$$

where $[f(a)]_{| \equiv x_a}$ is the first order sentence $f(a)$ with quantifiers relativised to the equivalence class of x_a . To conclude, notice that $\langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \langle \exists \mathbf{F}' \rangle_{\text{topo}} \rangle_{\text{topo}} = \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{F}} \exists \mathbf{F}' \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.

As a consequence of Theorem 6.3.44, it suffices to prove that, given a first-order sentence $\varphi \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma \uplus \sigma']$, there exists finitely many first-order sentences $\psi_1, \dots, \psi_n \in \mathbf{FO}[\sigma']$ such that

$$\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket \in \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\mathbf{FO}} \{ \psi_1, \dots, \psi_n \} \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}} \quad .$$

To prove the desired result, we use the *Feferman-Vaught* technique, with a varying set \mathbb{T} of types that will range over \mathcal{C} . Let us introduce a variant $\mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\cdot, \cdot)$ of the conversion operator $\text{conv}^{\mathbb{T}}(\Gamma, \varphi)$ by induction on the structure of ψ and for all $\Gamma: \mathbf{fv}(\psi) \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$ as follows:

1. $\mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \exists x. \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigvee_{T \in \mathfrak{A}} \exists x : T. \mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma[x \mapsto T], \psi)$,
2. $\mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \psi_1 \vee \psi_2) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \psi_1) \vee \mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \psi_2)$,
3. $\mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \neg \psi) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \neg \mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \psi)$,
4. $\mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \top) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$,
5. For $(R, n) \in \sigma$, we define $\mathbf{a}\text{-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, R(y_1, \dots, y_n)) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$ if $(\Gamma(y_1), \dots, \Gamma(y_n)) \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$, and \perp otherwise,

6. For $(R', n) \in \sigma'$, we define $\text{a-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, R'(y_1, \dots, y_n)) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} R(y_1 : \Gamma(y_1), \dots, y_n : \Gamma(y_n))$ when $\Gamma(y_1) = \dots = \Gamma(y_n)$, and \perp otherwise.

Now, we claim that the following analogue of [Lemmas 4.2.17](#) and [6.3.35](#) holds for this new conversion. For all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, for all $\psi(\vec{x}) \in \text{FO}[\sigma \uplus \sigma']$, for all $f \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$ such that $\text{dom}(f) = \mathfrak{A}$, for all valuation $\mathbf{v} : \vec{x} \rightarrow f$, for all runtime typing $\rho : f \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, for all \mathfrak{A} -typing environments Γ , such that $\Gamma(x) = \rho(\mathbf{v}(x))$ for all $x \in \vec{x}$, and such that $\rho((a, b)) = a$ for all $(a, b) \in f$,⁵⁹ the following are equivalent:

- $f, \mathbf{v} \models \psi(\vec{x})$,
- $f, \rho, \mathbf{v} \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{a-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\Gamma, \psi)$.

The proof of the above claim follows by induction on the formula ψ . The inductive steps are all trivial, and the base cases are direct consequence of how formulas are evaluated on f (see [Definition 6.3.45](#)).

Applying the above claim to $f \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$ of the form $f : \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}'$, the empty valuation, and the function $\rho : f \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, that maps an element $(a, b) \in f$ (seen as a relational structure) to a , we conclude that:

$$(\mathfrak{A}, \emptyset \models \varphi) \iff (\mathfrak{A}, \rho, \emptyset \models^{\mathbb{T}} \text{a-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\emptyset, \varphi))$$

Let us now proceed exactly as we did in [Lemma 6.3.35](#). Applying [Lemma 4.2.19](#) over $\text{a-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\emptyset, \varphi)$, we obtain a finite set S of [monotyped formulas](#), such that a Boolean combination of formulas in S that is equivalent to $\text{a-conv}^{\mathfrak{A}}(\emptyset, \varphi)$. Notice that a [monotyped formula](#) can only talk about one equivalence class for \equiv^{60} in the structure f . As a consequence, whether $f \models \varphi$ is uniquely determined by the evaluation of [monotyped formulas](#) on each of the \equiv -equivalence classes of f .

Recall that [Lemma 4.2.13](#) states that evaluating a [monotyped formula](#) θ with type $T \in \mathbb{T}$, over a structure \mathfrak{B} with typing function $\rho : a \mapsto T$ is equivalent to directly evaluating $\text{UT}(\theta)$ over \mathfrak{B} .

Furthermore, [Lemma 4.2.19](#) states that the [monotyped formulas](#) in S have [quantifier rank](#) at most $\text{rk}(\varphi)$. As a consequence, $\{\text{UT}(\theta) : \theta \in S\}$ is finite up to logical equivalence, and its size is bounded independently of the structure \mathfrak{A} !

What we have proven is that there exists a finite subset S' of (usual) formulas, namely $\{\text{UT}(\theta) : \theta \in S\}$, such that for all $f \in \mathcal{C} \rtimes \mathcal{C}'$, their evaluation on the \equiv -equivalence classes of f uniquely determines whether $f \models \varphi$. Hence, we have proven that

$$\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket \in \langle \mathcal{C} \rtimes_{\text{FO}} S' \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}} . \quad \blacksquare$$

While [Theorem 6.3.46](#) might seem complicated to apply, let us prove that it encompasses very generic properties. As a first example, it immediately implies [Corollary 6.3.36](#) when words are seen as coloured linear orders (see [Example 6.3.39](#)). Furthermore, replacing linear orders with finite trees, one obtains the analogue of [Kruskal's tree theorem](#) for [lpps](#) for free. Recall that the [tree embedding relation](#) \leq_t was defined in [Definition 6.3.23](#), and that it is dependent on the ordering placed on

59: We see f as a relational structure!

60: Recall that in [Definition 6.3.45](#), we introduced \equiv for the equivalence relation defined by $(a, b) \equiv (a', b')$ if and only if $a = a'$.

It is also worth noting that in the upcoming chapters one will encounter the [topological Kruskal theorem](#), that defines an ad-hoc topology over finite trees, which happens to be exactly the one described “naturally” in [Example 6.3.47](#).

the labels of the trees, so that $(\subseteq_i)_t$ is a quasi-order over trees where labels are compared using the [induced substructure](#) relation.

Example 6.3.47. Let σ be a finite [relational signature](#), and $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \text{Fin}(\sigma)$ be a class of finite structures such that $\langle\langle \mathcal{C}, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#).

Then, $\langle\langle \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{C}), \text{Alex}((\subseteq_i)_t), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#).

Proof. We define [Trees](#) to be the class of finite trees with the ancestor relation and the ordering among children of a given node. It is an easy check that \subseteq_i is precisely the [tree embedding](#) relation over elements of [Trees](#).

By applying [Theorem 6.3.46](#), we conclude that the following space is an [lpps](#):

$$\langle\langle \text{Trees} \rtimes \mathcal{C}, \langle \text{Trees} \rtimes_{\text{QF}} \langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$$

Recall that $\langle \text{EFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ is precisely $\text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$ over \mathcal{C} , since the latter is composed of finite structures.

Now, it is clear (as it was for finite words in [Example 6.3.39](#)), that $\mathbf{T}(\mathcal{C})$ with the [Alexandroff topology](#) of $(\subseteq_i)_t$ is precisely $\text{Trees} \rtimes \mathcal{C}$ with the topology generated by $\text{Trees} \rtimes_{\text{QF}} \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i)$.

As a consequence, we conclude that $\langle\langle \mathbf{T}(\mathcal{C}), (\subseteq_i)_t, \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$ is an [lpps](#). ■

6.3.4. Limit Constructions

One compelling reason to study [projective limits](#) of [lpps](#) is the following application to the proof that the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#) relativises to the finite. While it is known that the category [Spec](#) of [spectral spaces](#) and [spectral maps](#) is closed under [projective limits](#)⁶¹ [26, Corollary 2.3.8], unfortunately this fails for [lpps](#).

61: We invite the reader to read the [Chapter F \(Category Theory Cheat Sheet\)](#) if notions of [limits](#) are not clear.

Example 6.3.48. Let $\mathbf{X}_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \text{Cycles}, \tau_n, \mathcal{P}(\text{Cycles}) \rangle\rangle$ where τ_n is generated by subsets containing cycles of size at most n , and [co-finite](#) subsets. The system $\mathcal{F} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\text{Id}_{i,j} : \mathbf{X}_i \rightarrow \mathbf{X}_j)_{i \geq j \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a [projective system](#) in [LPPS](#), which has no [limit](#) in [LPPS](#).

Proof. It is an easy check that \mathbf{X}_n is [Noetherian](#) for $n \in \mathbb{N}$. As a consequence, the maps $\text{Id}_{i,j}$ are always [logical maps](#) and [spectral maps](#). Assume by contradiction that some limit $\{f_i : \mathbf{X} \rightarrow \mathbf{X}_i : i \in \mathbb{N}\}$ exists in [LPPS](#). By assumption, $\text{Id}_{i,j} \circ f_j = f_i$, hence $f_i = f_0$ for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$. In particular, $f_0^{-1}(\{C_n\})$ is an [open subset](#) of \mathbf{X} for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. As a consequence, $f_0 : \mathbf{X} \rightarrow (\text{Cycles}, \tau_{\text{disc}})$ is [continuous](#). However, \mathbf{X} is [compact](#), and $(\text{Cycles}, \tau_{\text{disc}})$ is not, which is absurd. ■

We provide here a sufficient condition for the projective limit in [LPS](#) to exist in [LPPS](#).

Exercise 6.3.49 ([70, Lemma 7.2]). Let $\mathcal{F} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (f_{i,j} : \mathbf{X}_i \rightarrow \mathbf{X}_j)_{i \geq j \in \mathbb{N}}$

be a projective system in **LPPS**. Let (X, τ) be the limit of \mathcal{F} in **Top**. If the limiting maps $f_i: X \rightarrow X_i$ are also spectral maps, then $\mathcal{K}^\circ(X) = \bigcup_{i \in I} \{f_i^{-1}(V) : V \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(X_i)\}$, and $\langle\langle X, \tau, \langle \mathcal{K}^\circ(X) \rangle_{\text{bool}} \rangle\rangle$ is an **lpps**.

Let us sketch the argument that was developed in [70, Section 7.2], showing how the **Homomorphism Preservation Theorem** relativises in the finite by rephrasing the core combinatorial arguments from [83].

Example 6.3.50. Let us define X to be $\langle\langle \text{Fin}(\sigma), \text{Alex}(\preceq_h), \text{FO} \rangle\rangle$, and $X_n \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle\langle \text{Fin}(\sigma), \langle \text{EPFO}^n \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \text{FO}^n \rangle\rangle$, where FO^n is the set of first order sentence of quantifier rank at most n , and EPFO^n is the set of positive existential sentences of quantifier rank at most n .

Then, X is the limit of the projective system $(\text{id}_{i,j}: X_i \rightarrow X_j)_{i \geq j \in \mathbb{N}}$ in **LPPS**.

Proof Sketch. It is clear that X_n is a logically presented space for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and that the identity between X_n and X_m is a logical map whenever $n \geq m$. Furthermore, it is an **lpps** because $\langle \text{EPFO}^n \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ is a Noetherian topology as it contains finitely many open subsets. It is clear that $\text{id}_i: X \rightarrow X_i$ is a logical map, and in fact a spectral map. Moreover, the core combinatorial lemma of [83, Corollary 5.14] states that a definable open subset U of X is the pre-image of some definable open subset U' of some X_n . Leveraging Exercise 6.3.49, this proves that X is an **lpps**. ■

6.4. Discussion

Relationship with Locality. As discussed in Example 6.3.37, the compositional theorems on logically presented pre-spectral spaces allows us to go beyond what was possible using the locality-based techniques of Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem). Conversely, **lpps** do not capture simple preservation theorems, such as Example 6.1.17, which are easily handled via locality. In that sense, the two approaches are orthogonal, and even complementary.

Wreath Products and Noetherian Spaces. Because finite words and finite trees are naturally represented using wreath products, we may wonder whether a generic argument applying to wreath products could encompass both the topological Higman lemma and topological Kruskal tree theorem. This remains an open question.

Furthermore, the limitation to finite structures seems less relevant in this setting, and it would be interesting to compare the wreath product representing infinite words (or even ordinal words) with the ad-hoc topologies that have been defined in the literature [47, 49].

References

- [23] Stéphane Demeri, Alain Finkel, Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Sylvain Schmitz and Philippe Schnoebelen. ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’. 2012. URL: <https://cel.archives-ouvertes.fr/cel-00727025> (cit. on pp. 3, 139, 178, 181, 239).
- [26] Max Dickmann, Niels Schwartz and Marcus Tressl. *Spectral Spaces*. Vol. 35. Cambridge University Press, 2019. DOI: [10.1017/9781316543870.003](https://doi.org/10.1017/9781316543870.003) (cit. on pp. 56, 146–148, 174, 239, 253).
- [33] Solomon Feferman and Robert Vaught. ‘The first order properties of products of algebraic systems’. In: *Fundamenta Mathematicae* 47 (1959), pp. 57–103. DOI: [10.4064/fm-47-1-57-103](https://doi.org/10.4064/fm-47-1-57-103) (cit. on pp. 78, 155).
- [44] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Noetherian Spaces in Verification’. In: *Automata, Languages and Programming*. Ed. by Samson Abramsky, Cyril Gavoille, Claude Kirchner, Friedhelm Meyer auf der Heide and Paul G. Spirakis. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2010, pp. 2–21. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2) (cit. on pp. 53, 139, 178).
- [45] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*. Vol. 22. Cambridge University Press, 2013. DOI: [10.1017/cbo9781139524438](https://doi.org/10.1017/cbo9781139524438) (cit. on pp. 3, 50, 52–54, 139, 159, 178, 179, 185, 186, 192, 193, 203, 208, 224, 239, 254, 255).
- [47] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Infinitary Noetherian Constructions I. Infinite Words’. In: *Colloquium Mathematicum* 168 (2022), pp. 257–268. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.4064/cm8077-4-2021> (cit. on pp. 139, 175, 178, 179, 209–211).
- [49] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Simon Halfon and Aliaume Lopez. *Infinitary Noetherian Constructions II. Transfinite Words and the Regular Subword Topology*. 2022 (cit. on pp. 175, 178, 179, 209, 211).
- [59] Graham Higman. ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’. In: *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society* 3 (1952), pp. 326–336. DOI: [10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326](https://doi.org/10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 181).
- [63] J. C. Kelly. ‘Bitopological Spaces’. In: *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society* s3-13 (1963), pp. 71–89. DOI: [10.1112/plms/s3-13.1.71](https://doi.org/10.1112/plms/s3-13.1.71). URL: <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1112/plms/s3-13.1.71> (visited on 15/11/2022) (cit. on p. 146).
- [65] Joseph B. Kruskal. ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’. In: *Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series A* 13 (1972), pp. 297–305. DOI: [10.1016/0097-3165\(72\)90063-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/0097-3165(72)90063-5) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 179, 181).
- [66] Denis Kuperberg. ‘Positive First-order Logic on Words’. In: *36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science, LICS 2021, Rome, Italy, June 29 - July 2, 2021*. IEEE, 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 68, 98, 113, 137).
- [70] Aliaume Lopez. ‘Preservation Theorems Through the Lens of Topology’. In: *Proceedings of CSL’21*. Vol. 183. 2021, 32:1–32:17. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.32](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.32) (cit. on pp. 63, 138, 148, 174, 175).
- [74] Johann A. Makowsky. ‘Algorithmic uses of the Feferman–Vaught Theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 126 (2004), pp. 159–213. DOI: [10.1016/j.apal.2003.11.002](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apal.2003.11.002) (cit. on pp. 78, 155).
- [83] Benjamin Rossman. ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 55 (2008), 15:1–15:53. DOI: [10.1145/1379759.1379763](https://doi.org/10.1145/1379759.1379763) (cit. on pp. i, 24, 35, 37, 38, 40, 42, 55, 74, 175, 177, 235).
- [85] Abhisekh Sankaran, Bharat Adsul and Supratik Chakraborty. ‘A generalization of the Łoś–Tarski preservation theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 167 (2016), pp. 189–210 (cit. on pp. 137, 236).
- [89] Alexei P. Stolboushkin. ‘Finitely monotone properties’. In: (1995), pp. 324–330. DOI: [10.1109/LICS.1995.523267](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS.1995.523267) (cit. on pp. 35, 113, 137).
- [90] William W. Tait. ‘A counterexample to a conjecture of Scott and Suppes’. In: *Journal of Symbolic Logic* 24 (1959), pp. 15–16. DOI: [10.2307/2964569](https://doi.org/10.2307/2964569) (cit. on pp. i, 35, 37, 39, 97, 100, 113, 137).

Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies

7.

Outline of the chapter

In this chapter, we try to understand what makes the limit constructions of [lpps](#) so complicated. In the continuity of the algebraic and topological approach that started in “[Chapter 6 \(Logically Presented Spaces\)](#)”, we want to provide a systematic way to produce limits of pre-spectral spaces.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of this chapter, I hope you will be convinced that the topological minimal bad sequence arguments generalise the usual proof schemes in [wqos](#) and Noetherian spaces. It should also be clear that topological minimal bad sequence arguments are not easily transported to [lpps](#).

Genesis. One reason to study the limits of [lpps](#) is to tackle the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#) that was proven to relativise in the finite using techniques that felt like iterative constructions [\[83\]](#). However, this also offers a new way to consider spaces of structures that are defined inductively. For now, we have seen finite words as coloured linear orderings in [Example 6.3.39](#), but it may be more natural to use their definition as a fixed-point construction when deciding which sets are definable.

To simplify the approach, the first step was to study how one could build the limits of [lpps](#) when the definable sets were fixed, and to further simplify, we actually considered $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{P}(X)$, i.e., [Noetherian spaces](#).

Apart from being a first step towards a better understanding of [lpps](#), the study of inductively defined [Noetherian spaces](#) and [wqos](#) also follows from a long-lasting question. Since the M2 course on [well-quasi-orderings](#), where the minimal bad sequence arguments [\[76\]](#) were introduced to me, I wanted to understand better the similarity between [Higman’s lemma](#) and [Kruskal’s tree theorem](#). More precisely, I wanted to understand why they were not simple applications of a more generic theorem based on minimal bad sequences. Furthermore, the topological analogues of the [subword embedding](#) and [tree embedding](#) have involved¹ definitions, are proven to be [Noetherian topologies](#) via a topological variant of the minimal bad sequence argument. We refer to [Figure 7.1](#) for a graphical depiction of this evolution.

The first idea that made the following chapter possible came in 2020 when the “canonicity” issues of [Noetherian spaces](#) were mitigated by focusing on the “destructors” associated with inductive constructions (words, trees) rather than their constructors [\[51, 69\]](#). However, this “destructive approach” did not yield a generic theorem and was only

| | | |
|-------|---|-----|
| 7.1 | “Commentaire Comparé” | 180 |
| 7.1.1 | Inductively Defining the Ordering | 180 |
| 7.1.2 | The Minimal Bad Sequence Argument(s) | 181 |
| 7.2 | Inductive Constructions of Noetherian Spaces | 184 |
| 7.2.1 | Topology Refinements | 184 |
| 7.2.2 | Topology Expanders | 187 |
| 7.2.3 | The (Generic) Topological Minimal Bad Sequence Argument | 191 |
| 7.3 | Variations Around the Main Theorem | 197 |
| 7.3.1 | When is a Refinement Function a Topology Expander? | 197 |
| 7.4 | Discussion | 200 |

[\[83\]](#): Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

[\[76\]](#): Nash-Williams (1965), ‘On well-quasi-ordering transfinite sequences’

1: And somehow arbitrary

[\[51\]](#): Goubault-Larrecq and Lopez (2020), ‘On the word topology, and beyond’

[\[69\]](#): Lopez (2020), *On the word topology, and beyond*

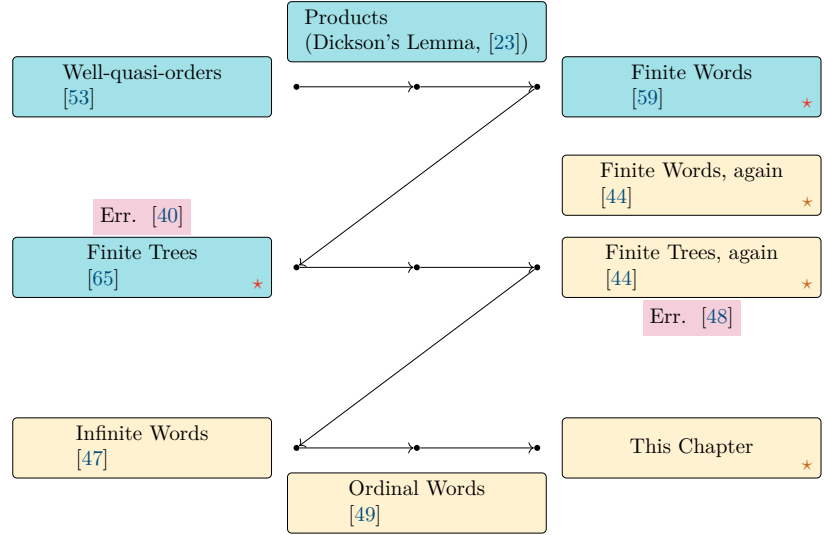


Figure 7.1.: Increasing complexity of the stability of [wqos](#) and [Noetherian spaces](#) under operations. Green boxes represent theorems about [Noetherian topologies](#), stars indicate the use of a minimal bad sequence argument, and “Err.” corresponds to errata that correct flaws in the original proofs of the result.

★ Minimal bad sequence arguments [76]

able to justify *a posteriori* the definitions of the [subword topology](#) and the [tree topology](#).

The second idea came from the background process of finding good restrictions to construct limits of [Noetherian spaces](#). While these limits are not [Noetherian](#) in general, a nice restriction was found so that the topological minimal bad sequence argument applies. This is the core idea behind the definition of [topology expanders](#), which is the main contribution in this chapter.

[23]: Demeri, Finkel, Goubault-Larrecq, Schmitz and Schnoebelen (2012), ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’
 [45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

Why Inductive Types? As for [well-quasi-orders](#), [Noetherian spaces](#) are stable under finite products and finite sums [23, 45]. While this is enough to describe the set of configurations of simple programs computing over natural numbers by endowing \mathbb{N}^k with the product ordering, it is not sufficient to tackle complex data structures that are typically defined inductively, such as lists and trees. To make the above statement precise, let 1 be the singleton set, $A + B$ be the disjoint union of A and B , and $A \times B$ their Cartesian product.

Fact 7.0.1. Let Σ be an alphabet. The set Σ^* of finite words over Σ is precisely the least fixed point of $\mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma: X \mapsto 1 + \Sigma \times X$.

Fact 7.0.2. Let Σ be an alphabet. The set of finite trees labelled by Σ is precisely the least fixed point of $\mathbf{CTrees}_\Sigma: X \mapsto \Sigma \times X^*$.

Note that these constructions can be generalised, and we will write $\mathbf{lfp}_X.F(X)$ to denote the least fixed point of a constructor F whenever it exists.

In the realm of well-quasi-orderings, the specific cases of finite words and finite trees are handled respectively via [Higman’s Lemma](#) [59] and

[59]: Higman (1952), ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’

Kruskal’s Tree Theorem [65].² Let us recall that a word u **embeds** into a word w (written $u \leq_w v$) whenever there exists a strictly increasing map $h: |w| \rightarrow |w'|$ such that $w_i \leq w_{h(i)}$ for $1 \leq i \leq |w|$ (see **Definition 6.3.22**). Similarly, a tree t **embeds** into a tree t' (written $t \leq_t t'$) whenever there exists a map from nodes of t to nodes of t' respecting the least common ancestor relation, and respecting the ordering on the colours of the nodes (see **Definition 6.3.23**).

Let us first remark that the ordering placed on finite words and finite trees do not seem to clearly derive from the inductive characterisations using **CWords** and **CTrees**, and correspond to the **induced substructure relation** when considering words and trees as **relational structures** over a suitable **relational signature** (see **Example 6.3.39**). Even though the definitions of \leq_w and \leq_t do not rely on the inductive nature of finite words and finite trees, proofs that they are **well-quasi-orders**³ rely on a minimal bad sequence argument due to [76], where the inductive nature of words and trees is crucial to the well-foundedness of the argument.

However, minimal bad sequence arguments are quite subtle, and must be handled with care [40, 88]. In addition, this type of argument is not compositional and has to be slightly modified whenever a new inductive construction is desired. This type of careful manipulations can be found for instance in [19, 24]. This situation has been adapted by Goubault-Larrecq to the topological setting by proposing analogues of the **word embedding** and **tree embedding**, together with a proof that they preserve Noetherian spaces [45, Section 9.7]. However, both the definitions and the proofs have an increased complexity, as they rely on an adapted “topological minimal bad sequence argument” that appears to be even more subtle than the classical one [48, errata n. 26]. Moreover, the newly introduced topologies have involved definitions often relying on ad-hoc constructions.

Towards a Generic Framework In the realm of **wqos**, two generic fixed point constructions have been proposed to handle inductively defined datatypes [36, 58]. In these frameworks, $\text{lfp}_X.F(X)$ is guaranteed to be a **well-quasi-ordering** provided that F is a “well-behaved functor” of quasi-orders. Both proposals, while relying on different categorical notions, successfully recover **Higman’s word embedding** and **Kruskal’s tree embedding** through their respective definitions as least fixed points. As a side effect, they reinforce the idea that these two quasi-orders are somehow canonical by demonstrating how they emerge from the inductive definitions themselves and not through an encoding into relational structures.

For **Noetherian spaces**, no equivalent framework exists to build inductive data types, and the notions of “well-behaved” constructors from [36, 58] rule out the use of important Noetherian spaces, as they require that an element $a \in F(X)$ has been built using *finitely many* elements of X : while this is the case for finite words and finite trees, it does not hold for the arbitrary powerset. Moreover, there have been recent advances in placing **Noetherian topologies** over spaces that are not straightforwardly obtained through “well-behaved” definitions, such as infinite words or even ordinal length words [47, 49].

[65]: Kruskal (1972), ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’

2: The two theorems were introduced in **Theorem 6.3.24** and **Theorem 6.3.25**, in the study of **wreath products**.

3: Assuming, of course, that the alphabet itself is well-quasi-ordered.

[76]: Nash-Williams (1965), ‘On well-quasi-ordering transfinite sequences’

[40]: Gallier (1997), ‘Ann. Pure Appl. Logic: Erratum to “What’s so special about Kruskal’s Theorem and the ordinal Γ_0 ? A survey of some results in proof theory” [53 (1991) 199–260]’

[88]: Singh, Shuaibu and Ndayawo (2013), ‘Simplified Proof of Kruskal’s Tree Theorem’

[19]: Daligault, Rao and Thomassé (2010), ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’

[24]: Dershowitz and Tzameret (2003), ‘Gap Embedding for Well-Quasi-Orderings’

[45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

[48]: Goubault-Larrecq (2022), ‘Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory. Electronic supplements to the book – Errata’

[36]: Freund (2020), ‘From Kruskal’s theorem to Friedman’s gap condition’

[58]: Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

[47]: Goubault-Larrecq (2022), ‘Infinitary Noetherian Constructions I. Infinite Words’

[49]: Goubault-Larrecq, Halfon and Lopez (2022), *Infinitary Noetherian Constructions II. Transfinite Words and the Regular Subword Topology*

[72]: Lopez (2023), ‘Fixed Points and Noetherian Topologies’

Contributions The results of this section are mostly taken from [72]. In Section 7.1, we explain in depth the classical minimal bad sequence argument due to Nash-Williams. We reformulate it in a way that makes the similarities between the proof of Higman’s Lemma and Kruskal’s Tree Theorem apparent, and highlights the main difficulties one encounters when trying to generalise them.

Then, we follow in Section 7.2 a topological approach based on the strange idea of *fixing the carrier set* instead of simultaneously constructing the space and its topology. This leads to the definition of *topology expander*, and their associated Theorem 7.2.33 stating the existence of a least-fixed-point topology that is *Noetherian*.

We conclude the chapter by studying the structural properties of *topology expanders* in Section 7.3. Even though the study of *Noetherian spaces* was thought as a first step towards a similar theorem for *logically presented pre-spectral spaces*, we discuss at the end of the chapter why the current techniques cannot apply in this setting.

7.1. “Commentaire Comparé”

In order to build intuition and before introducing more involved arguments, let us restate the proofs of Higman’s Lemma and Kruskal’s tree theorem to highlight their similarities and point out key articulations. In order to compare the two proofs, only the case of finite words will be detailed in the main document, and the differences with the case of finite trees will be described in margin notes.

7.1.1. Inductively Defining the Ordering

As a first step in most of the minimal bad sequence arguments, we will extract from the definition of \leq_w and \leq_t inductive characterisations. These will be crucial to the well-foundedness of our proof.

$$\begin{array}{l}
 \text{(init)} \quad \frac{}{\vdash \varepsilon \leq_w w} \\
 \text{(incr)} \quad \frac{\vdash u \leq_w v \quad a \leq b}{\vdash au \leq_w bv} \\
 \text{(disc)} \quad \frac{\vdash u \leq_w v}{\vdash u \leq_w bv}
 \end{array}$$

Figure 7.2.: An inductive characterisation of the *subword ordering*.

Lemma 7.1.1. *Let (P, \leq) be a quasi-ordering, and $u, v \in P^*$. Then, $u \leq_w v$ if and only if there is a derivation of $\vdash u \leq_w v$ in the proof system of Figure 7.2.*

Proof. It is clear that the rules in Figure 7.2 are admissible for \leq_w , hence we only show that they are complete by induction on the length of u .

Whenever $|u| = 0$, then $u = \varepsilon$. In this case, $\vdash u \leq_w v$ is derivable for all $v \in P^*$, and there is a word embedding from u to every word $w \in P^*$.

Let $u = au'$. Assume that $u \leq_w v$, there exists a word embedding $h: u \rightarrow v$ such that $u_i \leq v_{h(i)}$. In particular, $a \leq v_{h(0)}$. Let us define $v' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} v_{h(0)+1} \cdots v_{|v|-1}$. By induction, since $u' \leq_w v'$ we have a proof that $\vdash u' \leq_w v'$. Hence, $\vdash u \leq_w v_{h(0)}v'$ is derivable. As a consequence, $\vdash u \leq_w v$. ■

The advantage of the inductive description is that it isolates a part of the definition of \leq_w that does not depend on the order \leq placed over the letters, obtained by removing the rule (*incr*) from the description in Figure 7.2, and enforcing reflexivity, as detailed in Figure 7.3. We call this ordering the *suffix ordering*, because it is an easy check that $\vdash u \leq_{\text{suf}} v$ if and only if u is a suffix of v in the usual sense.

It is a simple exercise to adapt the inductive definitions given for \leq_{suf} and \leq_w to finite trees, as witnessed by Figures 7.4 and 7.5, respectively defining the *tree embedding* relation \leq_t and the *structural subtree* relation $\leq_{t\text{-suf}}$.

Exercise 7.1.2. Let (P, \leq) be a quasi-ordering, and $s, t \in \mathbf{T}(P)$. Then, $s \leq_t t$ if and only if there is a derivation of $\vdash s \leq_t t$ in the proof system of Figure 7.4.

It might seem that the introduction of the “structural orderings” (\leq_{suf} , $\leq_{t\text{-suf}}$), and the detour through an inductive definition of \leq_w are unnecessary. While not *stricto sensu* necessary, they prefigure in a simpler setting the abstract constructions to come. The inductive definition of \leq_{suf} follows the construction of P^* as $P^* \simeq \mathbf{CWords}_P(P^*)$, i.e., $P^* \simeq \mathbf{1} + P \times P^*$. The *suffix ordering* can equivalently be defined using this equivalence by stating that $(a, u) \geq u$ for all $a \in P$ and $u \in P^*$.

Fact 7.1.3. Let (P, \leq) be a quasi-order. The relations \leq_{suf} and $\leq_{t\text{-suf}}$ are well-founded.

Lemma 7.1.4. Let (P, \leq) be a quasi-order. Then $\leq_w \leq_{\text{suf}} = \leq_w$ and $\leq_t \leq_{t\text{-suf}} = \leq_t$.

Proof. Because \leq_w and \leq_t are transitive, it suffices to notice that $\leq_{\text{suf}} \subseteq \leq_w$ and $\leq_{t\text{-suf}} \subseteq \leq_t$, which follows from their respective inductive characterisations. ■

7.1.2. The Minimal Bad Sequence Argument(s)

Now, let us prove Higman’s Lemma following the traditional proofs that rely on Nash-Williams’s *minimal bad sequence argument*. The proof that follows derives from [23, Lemma 1.9].

Beware that the “combined proof” will prove Theorems 6.3.24 and 6.3.25 at the same time. This can be done because only minor variations are necessary to go from one to the other, and therefore can and will be written in the margin. The original proofs of these two results can be found in [59, 65].

Theorem 7.1.5 Combined theorem. Let (W, \leq) be a wqo. Then both (W^*, \leq_w) and $(\mathbf{T}(W), \leq_t)$ are wqo.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{init}) \quad & \frac{}{\vdash \varepsilon \leq_{\text{suf}} w} \\ (\text{refl}) \quad & \frac{u = v}{\vdash u \leq_{\text{suf}} v} \\ (\text{disc}) \quad & \frac{\vdash u \leq_{\text{suf}} v}{\vdash u \leq_{\text{suf}} bv} \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.3.: An inductive characterisation of the *suffix ordering*.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{incr}) \quad & \frac{f \leq g \quad \vdash \vec{s} (\leq_t)_w \vec{t}}{\vdash f(\vec{s}) \leq_t g(\vec{t})} \\ (\text{disc}) \quad & \frac{\exists 1 \leq i \leq n. \vdash s \leq_t t_i}{\vdash s \leq_t f(t_1, \dots, t_n)} \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.4.: An inductive characterisation of the *tree embedding*.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{refl}) \quad & \frac{s = t}{\vdash s \leq_{t\text{-suf}} t} \\ (\text{disc}) \quad & \frac{\exists 1 \leq i \leq n. \vdash s \leq_{t\text{-suf}} t_i}{\vdash s \leq_{t\text{-suf}} g(t_1, \dots, t_n)} \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.5.: An inductive characterisation of the *subtree ordering*.

[23]: Demeri, Finkel, Goubault-Larrecq, Schmitz and Schnoebelen (2012), ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’

[59]: Higman (1952), ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’

[65]: Kruskal (1972), ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’

For trees: We build a [bad sequence](#) $(t_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ that is minimal for $\leq_{\text{t-suf}}$. The same arguments apply when replacing \leq_{suf} by $\leq_{\text{t-suf}}$.

For trees: we construct the set $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{s \in \mathbf{T}(W) : \exists i \in \mathbb{N}, s <_{\text{t-suf}} t_i\}$.

For trees: we name the sequence $(s_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$.

For trees: let $o_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} t_i$ if $i < \rho(0)$, $o_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} s_{i-\rho(0)}$ otherwise.

For trees: we use the fact that $\leq_{\text{t-suf}}$ corresponds to \leq_{t} , using the same lemma.

For trees: we let $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (W, \leq) \times (S^*, (\leq_{\text{t}})_w)$, following the inductive constructor $\mathbf{CTrees}_W(S)$.

For trees: we let $\delta_{\text{t}}(f(\vec{t})) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (f, \vec{t})$.

For trees: We obtain that $t_i = f_i(t'_1, \dots, t'_n)$, $t_j = f_j(s'_1, \dots, s'_k)$, with $f_i \leq f_j$ and $\vec{t}' \leq_{\text{t}} \vec{s}'$. The increment rule from [Figure 7.4](#) allows us to conclude.

Combined proof. We are going to assume for contradiction that there exists a [bad sequence](#) in W^* . Because \leq_w is defined inductively over words, if such a sequence exists, we can try to build one using the smallest possible words, an intuition that we now make precise.

Using the axiom of choice, there exists a [bad sequence](#) $(w_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$, such that every sequence of the form $w_0, \dots, w_n, v, \dots$ with $v <_{\text{suf}} w_{n+1}$ is a [good sequence](#). To construct this sequence, we start by selecting a minimal w_0 for \leq_{suf} starting a bad sequence, which exists because \leq_{suf} is well-founded, and because we have assumed that a bad sequence exists. We continue to build this sequence iteratively by selecting a minimal w_i for \leq_{suf} such that w_0, \dots, w_i starts a bad sequence. Notice that at every finite step, the constructed sequence is bad. The infinite sequence remains bad because for every $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $i < j$, w_0, \dots, w_j is a bad sequence, hence $\neg(w_i \leq w_j)$.

Let us now define $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{v \in W^* : \exists i \in \mathbb{N}, v <_{\text{suf}} w_i\}$. We are now claiming that (S, \leq_w) is a [wqo](#). For that, assume that $(v_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a [bad sequence](#) in S .

By definition of S , there exists a map $\rho: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ such that $v_i <_{\text{suf}} w_{\rho(i)}$. Without loss of generality (using [Lemma C.0.5](#)), one can extract from the sequence v_i a subsequence so that $(v_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ remains infinite, bad, and satisfies that ρ is non-decreasing.

Consider $u_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} w_i$ if $i < \rho(0)$ and $v_{i-\rho(0)}$ otherwise. Because $u_{\rho(0)} = v_0$ is a strict suffix of $w_{\rho(0)}$, the sequence $(u_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is lexicographically smaller than $(w_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ for \leq_{suf} , hence is a [good sequence](#). As a consequence, there exists a pair $i < j$ such that $u_i \leq_w u_j$. We now do a case analysis that can be visualised in [Figure 7.6](#).

If $i < j < \rho(0)$: then $w_i = u_i \leq_w u_j = w_j$, hence $(w_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a [good sequence](#), which is absurd.

If $\rho(0) \leq i < j$: then $v_{i-\rho(0)} = u_i \leq_w u_j = v_{j-\rho(0)}$. Therefore, $(v_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a [good sequence](#), which is absurd.

If $i < \rho(0) \leq j$: then $w_i = u_i \leq_w u_j = v_{j-\rho(0)}$. By definition of ρ , $v_{j-\rho(0)} \leq_{\text{suf}} w_{\rho(j-\rho(0))}$. Furthermore, $i < \rho(0)$ implies $i < \rho(j - \rho(0))$ because ρ is non-decreasing. As a consequence, $w_i \leq_w \leq_{\text{suf}} w_{\rho(j-\rho(0))}$, but since $\leq_w \leq_{\text{suf}} = \leq_w$ (see [Lemma 7.1.4](#)), we conclude that $(w_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a [good sequence](#) which is absurd.

Now, because (S, \leq_w) is [wqo](#), one can build $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbf{CWords}_W(S) = 1 + (W, \leq) \times (S, \leq_w)$ with the sum / product ordering to form a new [wqo](#) (see [Table 6.1](#)). For every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, either $w_i = \varepsilon$, or $w_i = a_i w'_i$ with $a_i \in W$ and $w'_i \in S$. We let $\delta_w(\varepsilon) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 1$ and $\delta_w(au) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (a, u)$. Using this notation, $(\delta_w(w_i))_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is an infinite sequence in T , hence there exists $i < j$ such that $\delta_w(w_i) \leq_T \delta(w_j)$. This happens when $w_i = w_j = \varepsilon$, or when $w_i = a_i w'_i$, $w_j = a_j w'_j$ with $a_i \leq a_j$ and $w'_i \leq_w w'_j$. The increment/init rules from [Figure 7.2](#) then prove that $w_i \leq_w w_j$. We have arrived at a contradiction by showing that $(w_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a [good sequence](#). ■

As witnessed by the few number of differences in the margin, the proofs of [Kruskal's tree theorem](#) and [Higman's lemma](#) are structurally similar. Apart from the syntactic difference (words w versus trees t), there are two main variations in the proofs, and both appear at the very

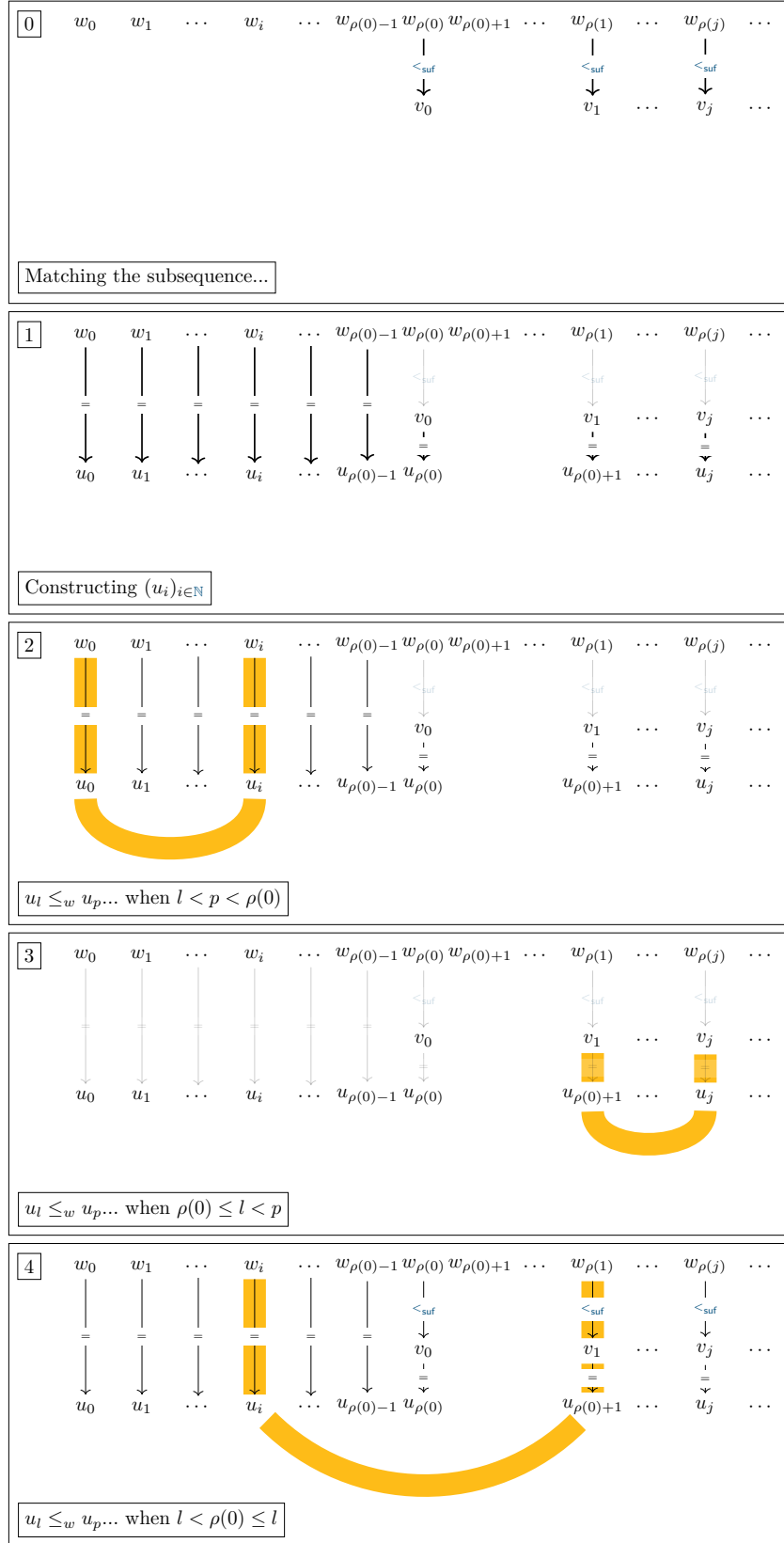


Figure 7.6.: Illustration of the merging process in Higman's Lemma.

end: we moved from **CWords** to **CTrees**, and consequently changed the “destructor function” from δ_w to δ_t . This combined presentation of the minimal bad sequence argument highlights that one only needs to tweak these two parameters to tackle new inductive constructions. Bear in mind however, that this tweaking will involve an inductive presentation of the preorder which can be difficult to obtain.

7.2. Inductive Constructions of Noetherian Spaces

Before we introduce the notion of **refinement function**, let us explain the philosophy behind our approach. Because the spaces of interest are inductively defined, the most natural way to define a topology/quasi-order is to do it *together* with the construction of the space. This is the “categorical” vision appearing in both [58] and [36]. A more practical approach is to assume that the space is already constructed, without any ordering or topology. On the upside, this greatly simplifies the statements and broadens the range of allowed operations;⁴ while the downside is that this setting is too permissive to directly work with.⁵ The problems of **Subsection 7.2.1** will be corrected by adding some kind of “naturality condition” in **Subsection 7.2.2**, leading to the notion of **topology expander**⁶.

4: As one can define ad-hoc topologies for a given space.

5: Understand, the constructions lack some “naturality.”

6: See **Definition 7.2.17** p. 189

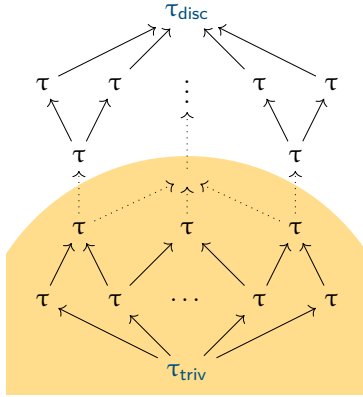


Figure 7.7.: The lattice of topologies over a given set X , where arrows denote inclusions and the coloured part covers the **Noetherian** topologies. As depicted, the join of two Noetherian topologies is Noetherian, and the collection of Noetherian topologies is downwards closed for inclusion.

7.2.1. Topology Refinements

Let X be a set, then the set $\text{Top}(X)$ of all topologies over X is a **complete lattice** for inclusion. Remark that the subset $\text{NTop}(X)$ of $\text{Top}(X)$ composed of **Noetherian topologies** is a **downwards closed** subset of $\text{Top}(X)$ for inclusion. In this lattice, the least element is the **trivial topology** $\tau_{triv} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\emptyset, X\}$, and the largest element is the **discrete topology** $\tau_{disc} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathcal{P}(X)$. Thanks to the **Knaster-Tarski fixed point theorem**, every monotone function R mapping topologies over X to topologies over X has a least fixed point, which can be obtained by transfinitely iterating R from the **trivial topology**. Writing $\text{lfp}_\tau.R(\tau)$ for the least fixed point of R , our goal is to provide sufficient conditions for $(X, \text{lfp}_\tau.R(\tau))$ to be **Noetherian**.

Definition 7.2.1. A **refinement function** over a set X is a function R mapping topologies over X to topologies over X , such that

- ▶ $R(\tau)$ is **Noetherian** whenever τ is, and
- ▶ $R(\tau) \subseteq R(\tau')$ when $\tau \subseteq \tau'$.

As (X, τ_{triv}) is always **Noetherian**, $(X, R^n(\tau_{triv}))$ is Noetherian for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and refinement function R . However, it remains unclear whether the transfinite iterations needed to reach a fixed point preserve Noetherian spaces.

We demonstrate in **Example 7.2.2** how to obtain the topology $\text{Alex}(\leq)$ over \mathbb{N} as a least fixed point of some simple refinement function.

Recall that given a quasi-order (P, \leq) and a set $E \subseteq P$, the **upward closure** of E is written $\uparrow_{\leq} E$, and is defined as the set of elements that are greater or equal than some element of E in P .

Example 7.2.2 (Natural Numbers). Over $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbb{N}$, one can define $\text{Div}(\tau)$ as the collection of sets $\uparrow_{\leq}(U + 1)$ for $U \in \tau$, plus \mathbb{N} itself.⁷ It is an easy check that $\text{lfp}_{\tau}.\text{Div}(\tau)$ is precisely $\text{Alex}(\leq)$.

7: The empty set \emptyset satisfies $\uparrow_{\leq}(\emptyset + 1) = \emptyset$ and does not have to be added explicitly.

Proof. Let us remark that $\text{Div}(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \{\emptyset, \uparrow_{\leq}1, \mathbb{N}\}$, and similarly that $\text{Div}^2(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \{\emptyset, \uparrow_{\leq}1, \uparrow_{\leq}2, \mathbb{N}\}$. More generally, one can prove by induction that for every $k \geq 0$, $\text{Div}^k(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \{\emptyset, \uparrow_{\leq}1, \dots, \uparrow_{\leq}k, \mathbb{N}\}$. As a consequence, $\text{lfp}_{\tau}.\text{Div}(\tau)$ is composed of every upwards-closed set of \mathbb{N} , i.e., is exactly $\text{Alex}(\leq)$. ■

In the particular case of Example 7.2.2, one deduces that the least fixed point is Noetherian from the fact that (\mathbb{N}, \leq) is a well-quasi-order. However, not all refinement functions behave as nicely as in Example 7.2.2, and one can obtain non-Noetherian topologies via their least fixed points.

An Ill-behaved Example In this section, let us consider $\Sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a, b\}$ with the discrete topology, i.e., $\{\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \Sigma\}$. Let us now build the set Σ^* of finite words over Σ . Whenever U and V are subsets of Σ^* , let us write UV for their concatenation, defined as $\{uv : u \in U, v \in V\}$. To construct an ill-behaved refinement function, we will associate with a topology τ the set $\{UV : U \in \{\emptyset, \{a\}, \{b\}, \Sigma\}, V \in \tau\}$. However, the latter fails to be a topology in general. This problem frequently appears in this paper, and is solved by considering the so-called generated topology.

Definition 7.2.3. Let R_{pref} be the function mapping a topology τ over Σ^* to the topology generated by the sets UV where $U \subseteq \Sigma$, and $V \in \tau$.

We refer to Figure 7.8 for a graphical presentation of the first two iterations of the refinement function R_{pref} . For the sake of completeness, let us compute $\text{lfp}_{\tau} R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$, which is the Alexandroff topology of the prefix ordering on words. Beware that the upcoming definition differs from what is called the “prefix topology” in the literature [34, 45, resp. Section 8 and Exercise 9.7.36].

Definition 7.2.4. The prefix topology τ_{pref^*} , over Σ^* is generated by the following open sets: $U_1 \dots U_n \Sigma^*$, where $n \geq 0$ and $U_i \subseteq \Sigma$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$.

Lemma 7.2.5. The prefix topology over Σ^* is the least fixed point of R_{pref} .

Proof. Consider a subbasic open set $W \in R_{\text{pref}}(\tau_{\text{pref}^*})$. It is of the form UV with $U \subseteq \Sigma$ and $V \in \tau_{\text{pref}^*}$. Hence, $UV \in \tau_{\text{pref}^*}$. We have proven that, $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau_{\text{pref}^*}) \subseteq \tau_{\text{pref}^*}$.

[34]: Finkel and Goubault-Larrecq (2020), ‘Forward analysis for WSTS, part I: completions’
 [45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

Conversely, consider a subbasic open set $W \in \tau_{\text{pref}^*}$. Either it is \emptyset , or Σ^* , in which case it trivially belongs to $\text{lfp}_{\tau} \cdot R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$, or it is of the form $U_1 \dots U_n \Sigma^*$, with $U_i \subseteq \Sigma$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$, in which case one proves by induction over n that it belongs to $R_{\text{pref}}^n(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. ■

Lemma 7.2.6. *The function R_{pref} is a refinement function.*

Proof. It is an easy check that whenever $\tau \subseteq \tau'$, $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau) \subseteq R_{\text{pref}}(\tau')$. Now, assume that τ is Noetherian, it remains to prove that $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$ remains Noetherian. Consider a subset $E \subseteq \Sigma^*$ and let us prove that E is compact in $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$.

For that, we consider an open cover $E \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in I} W_i$, where $W_i \in R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$. Thanks to Alexander's subbase lemma, we can assume without loss of generality that W_i is a subbasic open set of $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$, that is, $W_i = U_i V_i$ with $U_i \subseteq \Sigma$ and $V_i \in \tau$.

Since $(\Sigma^*, \tau) \times (\Sigma^*, \tau)$ is Noetherian (see Lemma D.6.6), there exists a finite set $J \subseteq I$ such that $\bigcup_{i \in J} U_i \times V_i = \bigcup_{i \in I} U_i \times V_i$. This implies that $E \subseteq \bigcup_{i \in J} U_i V_i$, and provides a finite subcover of E . ■

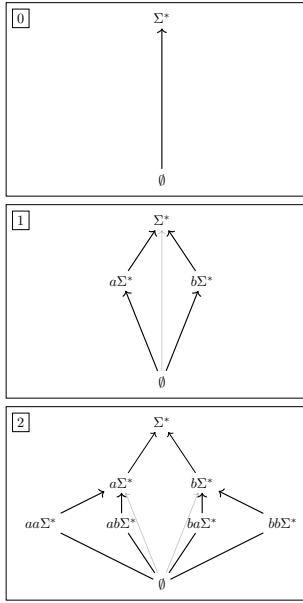


Figure 7.8.: Iterating R_{pref} over Σ^* . The cell i represents the lattice $R_{\text{pref}}^i(\tau_{\text{triv}})$.

The sequence $\bigcup_{0 \leq i \leq k} a^i b \Sigma^*$, for $k \in \mathbb{N}$, is a strictly increasing sequence of opens. Therefore, the prefix topology is not Noetherian. The terms $a^i b \Sigma^*$ can be observed in Figure 7.8 as a diagonal of incomparable open sets.

Corollary 7.2.7. *The topology $\text{lfp}_{\tau} \cdot R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$ is not Noetherian.*

The prefix topology is not Noetherian, even when starting from a finite alphabet. If you are reading this thesis linearly, this should be surprising, as in Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces), we claimed that there was something known as the subword topology and that $(X^*, \tau^{*,t})$ is Noetherian whenever (X, τ) is (see Table 6.2).

We already defined the subword topology in Definition 6.3.26, where we introduced the notation $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ as a shorthand for the subset $X^* U_1 X^* \dots X^* U_n X^*$ of X^* . Recall that the subword topology was then defined as the coarsest topology over X^* that contains the sets $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ for $(U_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$ open subsets of X . Furthermore, we used the notation $\tau^{*,t}$ to denote the subword topology. Finally, we recalled in Theorem 6.3.27 (following from [45, Theorem 9.7.33]) that the subword topology was Noetherian.

Although the subword topology might seem ad-hoc, it can be validated as a generalisation of the subword embedding because the subword topology of $\text{Alex}(\leq)$ equals the Alexandroff topology of the subword ordering of \leq , for every quasi-order \leq over Σ [45, Exercise 9.7.30]. Let us now reverse engineer a refinement function whose least fixed point is the subword topology.

Definition 7.2.8. *Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space. Let E_{words}^θ be*

defined as mapping a topology τ over Σ^* to the topology generated by the following sets:

- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq_w} UV$ for $U, V \in \tau$;
- ▶ and $\uparrow_{\leq_w} W$, for $W \in \theta$.

Lemma 7.2.9. *Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space. The subword topology over Σ^* is the least fixed point of E_{words}^θ .*

Proof. First, we notice that the subword topology is stable under E_{words}^θ . Then, we prove by induction on n shows that $[U_1, \dots, U_n]$ is open in the least fixed point of E_{words}^θ . ■

Lemma 7.2.10. *Let (Σ, θ) be a Noetherian topological space. The map E_{words}^θ is a refinement function over Σ .*

Proof. We leave the monotonicity of E_{words}^θ as an exercise and focus on the proof that $E_{\text{words}}^\theta(\tau)$ is Noetherian, whenever τ is. Thanks to Lemma D.6.6, it suffices to prove that the topology generated by the sets $\uparrow_{\leq_w} UV$ (U, V open in τ), and the topology generated by the sets $\uparrow_{\leq_w} W$ (W open in θ) are Noetherian.

Let $(\uparrow_{\leq_w} U_i V_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of open sets. Because Noetherian topologies are closed under products (see Lemma D.6.4), there exists k such that $\bigcup_{i \leq k} U_i \times V_i = \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} U_i \times V_i$. Hence, $\bigcup_{i \leq k} \uparrow_{\leq_w} U_i V_i = \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \uparrow_{\leq_w} U_i V_i$.

Let $\uparrow_{\leq_w} W_i$ be a sequence of open subsets. Because θ is Noetherian, there exists k such that $\bigcup_{i \leq k} W_i = \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} W_i$. As a consequence, we conclude that $\bigcup_{i \leq k} \uparrow_{\leq_w} W_i = \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \uparrow_{\leq_w} W_i$. ■

We have designed two refinement functions R_{pref} and E_{words}^θ over Σ^* . Fixing $\theta \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \tau_{\text{disc}}$, the least fixed point of R_{pref} is not Noetherian while the least fixed point of E_{words}^θ is. We have depicted the result of iterating E_{words}^θ twice over the trivial topology in Figure 7.9. As opposed to R_{pref} , the “diagonal” elements are comparable for inclusion.

7.2.2. Topology Expanders

Before we give the definition of a topology expander, let us analyse the differences between the two seemingly similar refinement functions R_{pref} and E_{words}^θ . To that end, let us compare Figure 7.8 and Figure 7.9. The “new inclusions” appearing in the latter prevent the construction of an infinite increasing sequence of open sets. Conversely, R_{pref} creates such infinite sequences by going from $a^i b \Sigma^*$ to $a^{i+1} b \Sigma^*$. Notice that $a^i b \Sigma^* \cap a^{i+1} b \Sigma^* = \emptyset$, while $[a^i b] \cap [a^{i+1} b] = [a^{i+1} b]$. In order to continue our analysis, we will need to talk about the way R_{pref} and E_{words}^θ deal with these set intersections. For that, let us introduce the notion of subset restriction.

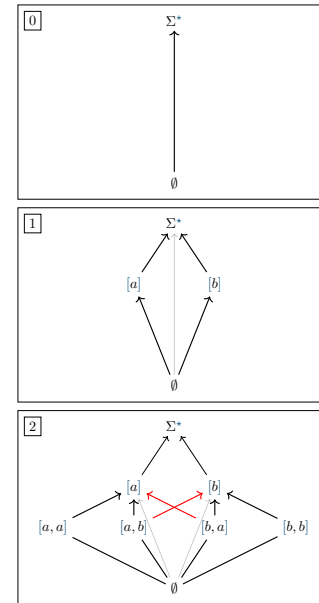


Figure 7.9.: Iterating E_{words}^θ over Σ^* . The cell i represents the lattice $E_{\text{words}}^{\theta^i}(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. Bold red arrows denote inclusions that were not present in the iteration of R_{pref} (see Figure 7.8).

8: Recall that the induced topology over H is exactly $\{U \cap H : U \in \tau\}$ while $\tau \downarrow H = \{X\} \cup \{U \cap H : U \in \tau\}$.

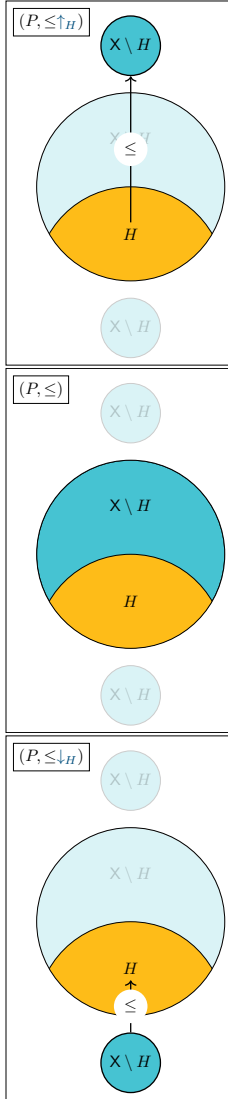


Figure 7.10. Illustration of the action of the two possible restrictions over a quasi-order (P, \leq) .

Definition 7.2.11. Let (X, τ) be a topological space and H be a closed subset of X . Define the **subset restriction** $\tau \downarrow H$ to be the topology generated by the opens $U \cap H$ where U ranges over τ .

Exploring Subset Restrictions This definition is a way to lift the **induced topology** over H to the whole space X .⁸ The knowledgeable reader might have noticed that we are actually trying to represent *subspaces* of X by a suitable change in its topology, and made the connection with the corresponding notions in the theory of “topology without point.” For the sake of completeness, let us provide an alternative — but ill-behaved for our purposes — representation of a closed subset H inside X : $\tau \uparrow H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\emptyset\} \cup \{U \cup H^c : U \in \tau\}$. While it looks similar to $\tau \downarrow H$, both behave wildly differently. Indeed, $\tau \uparrow H \subseteq \tau$ while $\tau \downarrow H \not\subseteq \tau$ in general. Furthermore, the two topologies have different specialisation pre-orderings.

Lemma 7.2.12. Let (X, τ) be a topological space, H be a closed subset of X , and \leq be the **specialisation preorder** of τ . Then, for all $x, y \in X$,

- ▶ $x \leq_{\tau \downarrow H} y$ if and only if $x, y \in H \wedge x \leq_{\tau} y$ or $x \notin H$.
- ▶ $x \leq_{\tau \uparrow H} y$ if and only if $x, y \in H \wedge x \leq_{\tau} y$ or $y \notin H$.

Proof. We only deal with the case of $\leq_{\tau \downarrow H}$, the other one is left as an exercise to the reader. Let $x, y \in X$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x \leq_{\tau \downarrow H} y &\iff \forall U \in \tau, x \in U \cap H \Rightarrow y \in U \cap H \\
 &\iff \begin{cases} x \notin H \\ x \in H \wedge \forall U \in \tau, x \in U \Rightarrow y \in U \cap H \end{cases} \\
 &\iff \begin{cases} x \notin H \\ x \in H \wedge y \in H \wedge \forall U \in \tau, x \in U \Rightarrow y \in U \end{cases} \\
 &\iff \begin{cases} x \notin H \\ x, y \in H \wedge x \leq_{\tau} y \end{cases} \quad \blacksquare
 \end{aligned}$$

Leveraging the correspondence between quasi-orders and topologies, we can transport the definition of subset restriction to quasi-orders in order to “better see” transformation that happened. For that, let us recall that a **downwards closed subset** H of a quasi order (P, \leq) is a **closed subset** of $(P, \text{Alex}(\leq))$. Hence, we can construct the functions $f_1: (\leq, H) \mapsto \leq_{\text{Alex}(\leq)} \downarrow H$ and $f_2: (\leq, H) \mapsto \leq_{\text{Alex}(\leq)} \uparrow H$. In order to simplify the notations, we will simply write these as $\leq \downarrow H$ and $\leq \uparrow H$ in the **Figure 7.10**.

As a final warning about the subset restriction, beware that even though $\tau \downarrow H$ encodes the topology induced by τ over H , the two spaces are not homeomorphic.

Example 7.2.13. Let \mathbb{R} be endowed with the usual metric to-

pology. The set $\{a\}$ is a closed set. The induced topology over $\{a\}$ is $\{\emptyset, \{a\}\}$. The subset restriction of the topology to $\{a\}$ is $\tau_a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\emptyset, \{a\}, \mathbb{R}\}$. Clearly, (\mathbb{R}, τ_a) and $(\{a\}, \tau_{\text{triv}})$ are not homeomorphic.

Refinement Functions and Subset Restrictions We now have appropriate tools to properly compare the behaviour of our two refinement functions R_{pref} and E_{words} . We start by a simple fact about upwards closed subsets for the (scattered) word embedding.

Remark 7.2.14. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space and \leq be the specialisation preorder of θ . Let U_1, \dots, U_n be upwards closed subsets of Σ^* for \leq_w , and H be a downwards closed subset of Σ^* for \leq_w . Then, $[U_1, \dots, U_n] \cap H = [U_1 \cap H, \dots, U_n \cap H] \cap H$.

Proof. Let $w \in [U_1, \dots, U_n] \cap H$. Then $w = \prod_{i=1}^n (\alpha_i u_i) \alpha_{n+1}$ where $\alpha_i \in \Sigma^*$ and $u_i \in U_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$. For all $1 \leq i \leq n$, $u_i \leq_w w$, hence $u_i \in H$ because the latter is downwards closed. As a consequence, $w \in [U_1 \cap H, \dots, U_n \cap H]$.

For the converse, notice that $[U_1 \cap H, \dots, U_n \cap H] \subseteq [U_1, \dots, U_n]$. ■

This seemingly benign remark points out a particular dynamic of E_{words} in general with respect to subset restriction. As we will see later on, this is the crucial property that R_{pref} fails to exhibit.

Corollary 7.2.15. Let θ be a topology over Σ , and τ be a topology over Σ^* such that $\tau \subseteq E_{\text{words}}^\theta(\tau)$. Let H be a closed subset of τ . Then $E_{\text{words}}(\tau) \downarrow H \subseteq E_{\text{words}}(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$.

Remark 7.2.16. Let $\tau \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\emptyset, a\Sigma^*, b\Sigma^*, \Sigma^*\}$. Then $H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} a\Sigma^* \cup \{\varepsilon\}$ is a closed subset of τ , and $\tau \subseteq R_{\text{pref}}(\tau)$. However, $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau) \downarrow H$ evaluates to $\{\emptyset, aa\Sigma^*, ab\Sigma^*, a\Sigma^*, \Sigma^*\}$, which differs from $R_{\text{pref}}(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H = \{\emptyset, aa\Sigma^*, a\Sigma^*, \Sigma^*\}$.

As an intuition, we will say that Corollary 7.2.15 formalises the fact that the E_{words} is “context-free” in the sense that two words u and v will be related (in the limit) if and only if they are when restricting our attention to a closed subset containing both u and v . We are now ready to formalise the definition of a topology expander, following the insights of Corollary 7.2.15.

Definition 7.2.17. A topology expander is a refinement function E that satisfies the following extra property: for all Noetherian topology τ satisfying $\tau \subseteq E(\tau)$, for all closed subset H in τ , $E(\tau) \downarrow H \subseteq E(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$. We say that E respects subsets if that property is satisfied.

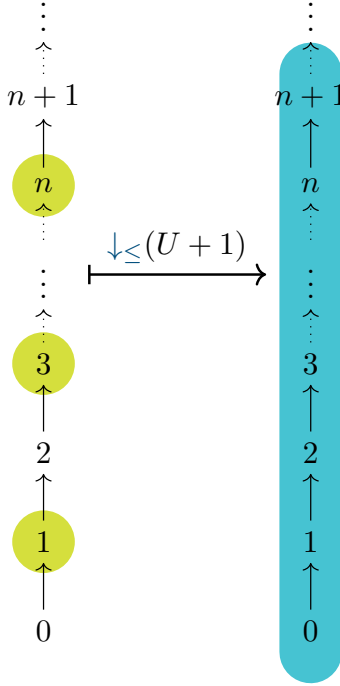


Figure 7.11.: Illustration of the computation of E_{nat} . On the left, an open subset U of a topology τ . On the right, the corresponding open subset in $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau)$.

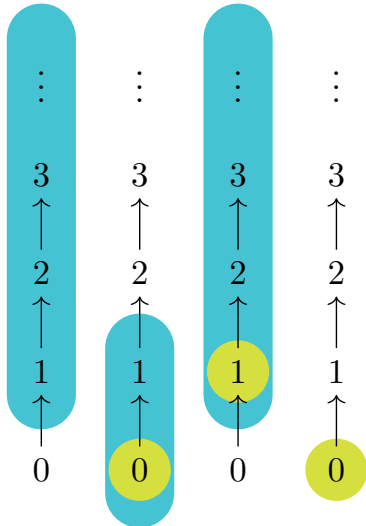


Figure 7.12.: Graphical representation of the different topologies obtained when combining the closed subset $\{0\}$, the topology $\{\emptyset, \{0\}, \mathbb{N}\}$, and the refinement function E_{nat} . We do not represent the sets \mathbb{N} and \emptyset that are always present.

One might notice that the definition of Definition 7.2.17 relies on the construction $\tau \downarrow H$ rather than on the other version $\tau \uparrow H$. Moreover, Corollary 7.2.15 continues to hold (for the same reasons) when substituting the former by the latter. Let us show the “alternative” definition of topology expander obtained by substituting $\tau \uparrow H$ to $\tau \downarrow H$ still allows least fixed points to be non-Noetherian.

Example 7.2.18. Let us fix $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbb{N}$ and write \leq for the usual ordering on natural numbers. We define a refinement function over \mathbb{N} as follows:

$$E_{\text{nat}}(\tau) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle \{0\} \cup \{\downarrow_{\leq}(U+1) : U \in \tau\} \rangle_{\text{topo}}.$$

Then, E_{nat} satisfies $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau) \uparrow H \subseteq E_{\text{nat}}(\tau \uparrow H) \uparrow H$ for every topology τ satisfying $\tau \subseteq E_{\text{nat}}(\tau)$ and every closed subset H in τ . However, $\text{lfp}_{\tau} \cdot E_{\text{nat}}(\tau)$ is not Noetherian, and E_{nat} is not a topology expander.

Proof. We first have to check that E_{nat} is a refinement function. While monotonicity is clear from the definition, let us briefly demonstrate that $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau)$ remains Noetherian whenever τ is. Assume for contradiction that $(V_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is an infinite sequence of subbasic open subsets of $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau)$, which is enough thanks to Alexander’s subbase lemma. Without loss of generality, one can assume that $V_i \neq \{0\}$ for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Therefore, for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $U_i \in \tau$ such that $V_i = \downarrow_{\leq}(U_i + 1)$. Because τ is Noetherian, there exists $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} U_i = \bigcup_{i \leq n_0} U_i$. Hence, $\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} V_i = \bigcup_{i \leq n_0} V_i$. We have proven that $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau)$ is Noetherian.

An easy induction demonstrates that $\text{lfp}_{\tau} \cdot E_{\text{nat}}$ is exactly $\{\emptyset, \mathbb{N}\} \cup \{\downarrow_{\leq} m : m \in \mathbb{N}\}$. The latter is not Noetherian, as witnessed by the sequence $(\downarrow_{\leq} m)_{m \in \mathbb{N}}$ which is infinite and strictly increasing.

To prove that E_{nat} is not a topology expander, it suffices to consider $\tau_0 \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{\emptyset, \{0\}, \mathbb{N}\}$ and $H \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} = \uparrow_{<} 0$. Let us now compute the different topologies appearing in the definition of a topology expander given τ_0 and H :

$$\begin{aligned} E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0) &= \{\emptyset, \{0\}, \{0, 1\}, \mathbb{N}\} &= \boxed{B} \\ E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0) \downarrow H &= \{\emptyset, \{1\}, H, \mathbb{N}\} &= \boxed{C} \\ \tau_0 \downarrow H &= \{\emptyset, H, \mathbb{N}\} &= \boxed{A} \\ E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0 \downarrow H) &= \{\emptyset, \{0\}, \mathbb{N}\} &= \boxed{D} \\ E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0 \downarrow H) \downarrow H &= \{\emptyset, H, \mathbb{N}\} &= \boxed{A} \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have proven that $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0) \downarrow H$ is not a subset of $E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0 \downarrow H) \downarrow H$ where H is a closed subset of a Noetherian topology τ_0 satisfying $\tau_0 \subseteq E_{\text{nat}}(\tau_0)$. ■

Because we will often consider spaces constructed via subbasic open subsets, let us formalise the fact that the property of being a topology expander can be checked over given subbases. If it is quite easy to see that one only needs to consider subbasic open subsets of the output topology, this we strengthen this remark by proving that one can also

restrict the property to subbasic closed subsets of the input topology, thanks to the assumption that the latter is [Noetherian](#).

Lemma 7.2.19. *Let E be a [refinement function](#). Assume that for every [Noetherian topology](#) τ there exists a [subbasis](#) B of τ and a [subbasis](#) B' of $E(\tau)$ such that for every subbasic closed subset $H \in B$ and every subbasic open subset $U \in B'$, $H \cap U \in E(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$.*

Then, E is a [topology expander](#).

Proof. Given a closed subset H of τ , the inclusion $E(\tau) \downarrow H \subseteq E(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$ amounts to checking that for every $U \in B'$, $U \cap H \in E(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$.

Let us fix U in the subbasis B' . The family of closed subsets H such that $U \cap H$ belongs to $E(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$, contains B , is closed under finite intersections, and is closed under finite unions. Let us prove that this set is also closed under arbitrary intersections, which concludes the proof.

Let $\bigcap_{i \in I} H_i$ be an arbitrary intersection of closed subsets, such that $U \cap H_i$ belongs to $E(\tau \downarrow H_i) \downarrow H_i$. Because τ is [Noetherian](#), there exists a finite subset $J \subseteq_{\text{fin}} I$ such that $U \cap \bigcap_{i \in I} H_i = U \cap \bigcap_{i \in J} H_i$. Hence, we can leverage the closure under finite intersections. ■

7.2.3. The (Generic) Topological Minimal Bad Sequence Argument

This section is entirely devoted to one of the main contribution of this thesis: a “master” fixed point theorem. Informally, the theorem states that [topology expanders](#) are [refinement functions](#) whose least fixed points are [Noetherian](#) topologies. This is the focus of [72] and the topic of a blog post [46].

The proof of the theorem relies on a transfinite induction, which necessitate to properly define what we mean by “iterating E α -times” when α is a general ordinal. This is the purpose of the next definition.

Definition 7.2.20. Let (X, τ) be a topological space, and E be a [topology expander](#). The [limit topology](#) is defined by induction via:

$$E^\alpha(\tau) = \begin{cases} \tau & \text{when: } \alpha = 0 \\ E(E^\beta(\tau)) & \text{when: } \alpha = \beta + 1 \\ \langle \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} E^\beta(\tau) \rangle_{\text{topo}} & \text{when: } \alpha \text{ is a limit ordinal} \end{cases}$$

In the [Definition 7.2.20](#), the sequence $\left(E^\beta(\tau) \right)_{\beta < \alpha}$ may increase. To obtain a non-decreasing sequence, it suffices to assume that $\tau \subseteq E(\tau)$.

As mentioned in the introduction of [Subsection 7.2.1](#), every [refinement function](#) has a least fixed point thanks to the [Knaster-Tarski Fixed Point Theorem](#). It is folklore that this statement can be reinforced as follows: for every refinement function R , there exists an ordinal α such that $R^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ is the least fixed point of R . In order to study the least

[72]: Lopez (2023), ‘Fixed Points and Noetherian Topologies’

[46]: Goubault-Larrecq (2022), *Alaume Lopez’ master theorem of Noetherian spaces*

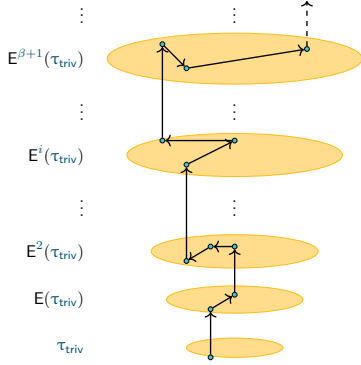


Figure 7.13.: Increasing sequence of subbasic open subsets in $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. The yellow ellipses represent “steps.” The sequence stays in some steps for a finite number of iterations, and then jumps to a new step. In the drawing, arrows are always going up or staying in a given step, but they might be pointing down due to deformations induced by a two-dimensional representation of a three-dimensional object.

To get some intuition, notice that in a quasi-ordered set (X, \leq) , a sequence $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a *bad sequence* if and only if $(\uparrow \leq x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a *topological bad sequence*.

Proof Sketch. The union of the open subsets in an infinite topological bad sequence defines a non compact subset. Conversely, given a non-compact subset, one can extract an infinite topological bad sequence from a suitable open cover. In particular, this last step requires extracting a countable sequence from the open cover. Details of the proof are found in [45, Lemma 9.7.15]. ■

fixed point of topology expanders, the only interesting case is $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ when α is a limit ordinal, as the other topologies are then trivially Noetherian.

As a teaser, let α be a limit ordinal and assume that $E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ is Noetherian for all $\beta < \alpha$. A typical infinite increasing sequence $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of subbasic open subsets in $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ behaves as depicted in Figure 7.13. Indeed, the sequence must “step-up” infinitely often: there are finitely many indices $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $U_i \in E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ given a $\beta < \alpha$, because the latter was supposed to be Noetherian. Intuitively, one can also assume without loss of generality that the sequence does not “step-down.” The core of the proof is actually stating that one cannot “step-up” infinitely often when E is a topology expander. Incidentally, we will show that $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ is simply the union $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$.

Noetherian Techniques. In order to study increasing sequences in limit topologies, we recall the efficient tools that were developed by Goubault-Larrecq in his proofs of the topological counterparts to Higman’s Lemma and Kruskal’s Tree Theorem. One proof technique that we used quite often was to rely on Alexander’s subbase lemma and the characterisation of Noetherian spaces as those that do not have infinite increasing sequences of open subsets (see Lemma D.6.5). Let us wrap these two results into an easier to understand “topological” counterpart of the notion of bad sequence, a term that appears in the statements of [45, Lemma 9.7.15 and Lemma 9.7.31] and that we extract here.

Definition 7.2.21 [45, Lemma 9.7.15 and Lemma 9.7.31]. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. A sequence $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of open subsets is *good* if there exists $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $U_i \subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} U_j$.

A sequence that is not *good* is called *bad*.

Lemma 7.2.22 [45, Lemma 9.7.15]. A topological space (X, τ) is Noetherian if and only if it has no infinite topological bad sequence.

One of the key ingredients in our statement of Theorems 6.3.24 and 6.3.25 was the “simpler” preorder (respectively the suffix ordering \leq_{suf} or the structural subtree ordering $\leq_{\text{t-suf}}$) that allowed us to consider a minimal bad sequence. First, let us formally define the *lexicographic ordering* on sequences of (subbasic) open subsets

Definition 7.2.23. Let (P, \leq) be a partial order. Then P^ω can be quasi-ordered via the following co-inductive definition: $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \leq_{\text{lex}} (y_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ if and only if $x_0 < y_0$ or $x_0 = y_0$ and $(x_i)_{i \geq 1} \leq_{\text{lex}} (y_i)_{i \geq 1}$.

Equivalently, $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \leq_{\text{lex}} (y_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ if and only if the two sequences are equal, or if there exists $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\forall n < i, x_n = y_n$, and $x_i < y_i$.

Beware that $(P^\omega, \leq_{\text{lex}})$ has no reason to be well-founded whenever (P, \leq) is: for instance, the sequence $(0^i 1^\omega)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a strictly decreasing

sequence of elements in \mathbb{N}^ω for \leq_{lex} . Surprisingly, we can work around this issue and build minimal representatives for **topological bad sequences**.

Lemma 7.2.24 [45, Lemma 9.7.31]. Let (X, τ) be a topological space that is not **Noetherian**, \mathcal{B} be a **subbasis** of τ and \leq be a **well-founded** ordering on \mathcal{B} . The set of **topological bad sequences** in $(\mathcal{B}^\omega, \leq_{\text{lex}})$ has a minimal element.

We call the sequence provided by Lemma 7.2.24 a **minimal topological bad sequence**.

Taming the Minimal Bad Sequences. Let us now explain how we can leverage the inductive definition of $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ to actually define a **well-founded** order. The first step is to notice that given a **topology expander** E and a limit ordinal α , $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ is a **subbasis** of $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. Let us refine this analysis by studying the “step” (see Figure 7.13) at which a given open subset appears in the union.⁹

Definition 7.2.25. Let E be a **topology expander**, τ be a topology, and α be an ordinal. We define for $U \in E^\alpha(\tau)$ the ordinal **depth**(U) as the smallest $\beta \leq \alpha$ such that $U \in E^\beta(\tau)$.

We define a total partial order over **open subsets** of $(X, E^\alpha(\tau))$ by defining $U \triangleleft V$ if and only if **depth**(U) < **depth**(V). Thanks to Lemma 7.2.24, we are guaranteed that it suffices to consider sequences of subbasic open subsets that are lexicographically minimal for \leq_{lex} to prove/disprove that $E^\alpha(\tau)$ is **Noetherian** for a given limit ordinal α . Let us continue our analysis and further restrict the shape of sequences we have to analyse. In particular, we are first going to prove that not every depth is necessary.¹⁰

Lemma 7.2.26. Let E be a **topology expander**, τ be a topology, and α be an ordinal. Assume that for all $\beta < \alpha$, $E^\beta(\tau)$ is **Noetherian**, and $E^\alpha(\tau)$ is not **Noetherian**.

There exists a **topological minimal bad sequence** $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ for \leq_{lex} such that, for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$, **depth**(U_i) is not a limit ordinal.

Proof. We know from Lemma 7.2.24 that there exists a **topological minimal bad sequence** $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ for \leq_{lex} such that **depth**(U_i) < α for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$. Assume for contradiction that there exists $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that **depth**(U_i) is a limit ordinal $d_i < \alpha$.

Let $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{\beta < d_i} E^\beta(\tau)$. Then, $U_i \in E^{d_i}(\tau) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \langle S \rangle_{\text{topo}}$. Because S is closed under finite intersections, U_i is a union of **open subsets** of S .

Since $E^{d_i}(\tau)$ is **Noetherian**, one can define U_i as a finite union of open subsets of S , hence a finite union of open subsets of depth less than d_i . As a consequence, **depth**(U_i) < d_i , which is absurd. ■

Proof Sketch. This element is constructed by considering a \leq minimal **open subset** starting a **bad sequence**, a \leq -minimal **open subset** that continues this **bad sequence**, etc. The process yields a **bad sequence** that is **minimal** by construction. ■

9: If the sequence $(E^\beta(\tau))_{\beta < \alpha}$ is non-decreasing, and $U \in E^{\beta_0}(\tau)$, for some $\beta_0 < \alpha$, then $U \in E^\beta(\tau)$, for all $\beta_0 \leq \beta \leq \alpha$.

10: The proof of Lemma 7.2.26 actually shows that all **topological minimal bad sequences** satisfy the property, and not only that there exists one. However, we only need the weaker statement: we are trying to build one **topological minimal bad sequence**.

We have proven that one can always assume that the depths in a minimal bad sequence are 0 or successor ordinals strictly below α . Let us get back to the picture in Figure 7.13: we shall now prove that the depth can be assumed to be non-decreasing, and even to increase infinity often.

Lemma 7.2.27. *Let E be a **topology expander**, τ be a topology, and α be an ordinal. Assume that for all $\beta < \alpha$, $E^\beta(\tau)$ is **Noetherian**, and that $E^\alpha(\tau)$ is not **Noetherian**.*

*There exists a **topological minimal bad sequence** $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ for $\trianglelefteq_{\text{lex}}$ such that, for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, $\text{depth}(U_i)$ is not a limit ordinal. Moreover, the sequence $(\text{depth}(U_i))_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ can be assumed non-decreasing and not stationary.*

Proof. Thanks to Lemma 7.2.26, we have a **topological minimal bad sequence** $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that $\text{depth}(U_i)$ is not a limit ordinal for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$.

Assume for contradiction that there exist $i < j$ such that $U_j \triangleleft U_i$. Notice that the sequence obtained by deleting $U_i, U_{i+1}, \dots, U_{j-1}$ from the original sequence yields an infinite **topological bad sequence**. Moreover, it is strictly smaller than the original one for $\trianglelefteq_{\text{lex}}$ by construction, which contradicts the latter's minimality.

Assume for contradiction that there exists an ordinal $\gamma < \alpha$ such that $T \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{i \in \mathbb{N} : \text{depth}(U_i) = \gamma\}$ is infinite. Then the subsequence $(U_i)_{i \in T}$ is an infinite **topological bad sequence** of open subsets of $E^\gamma(\tau)$, and this contradicts the hypothesis that the latter is **Noetherian**. ■

The Structural Simplification We are now in a position where the shape of a **minimal topological bad sequence** is well understood. Notice that up to this point, we never actually used the property that singularise **topology expanders** among **refinement functions**, and this is exactly the part where **subset restrictions** and intersections will show up.¹¹ Before considering these, let us define the equivalent of the set S in the joint proof of Theorems 6.3.24 and 6.3.25, a construction that was gathering elements “structurally simpler” than those of the original sequence.

Definition 7.2.28. *Let E be a **topology expander**, τ be a topology, and α be an ordinal. Given $U \in E^\alpha(\tau)$, the topology $\text{Down}^\alpha(U)$ is defined as $\langle \{V \in E^\alpha(\tau) : V \triangleleft U\} \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.*

Let $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a **topological minimal bad sequence** in $(X, E^\alpha(\tau))$, where E is a **topology expander** and α is a limit ordinal. Because the sequence is bad, for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, $U_i \not\subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} U_j \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} V_i$. Letting $H_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \setminus V_i$ for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, this equation can be rewritten as $U_i \cap H_i \neq \emptyset$. Notice that for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, H_i is not only a closed subset of E^α but also a closed subset of $\text{Down}^{d_i}(U_i)$, where $d_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{depth}(U_i)$. This means the following definition is sound.

11: At the appropriate time, a note in the proof will highlight why $\tau \downarrow H$ crucially uses intersections and not unions, which was discussed before.

Definition 7.2.29. Let E be a *topology expander*, τ be a topology, and α be an ordinal. Let $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a *topological minimal bad sequence* for $\trianglelefteq_{\text{lex}}$. Let $d_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{depth}(U_i)$ for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$. We define the *minimal topology* $E_{\min}^\alpha((U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}, \tau)$ as the one generated by

$$\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \text{Down}^{d_i}(U_i) \downarrow H_i \quad ,$$

where $H_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \setminus (\bigcup_{j < i} U_j)$.

In order to make the notation lighter, and because we only ever deal with one minimal bad sequence at once, we will simply write E_{\min}^α to denote the full expression $E_{\min}^\alpha((U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}, \tau)$, when τ and $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ are clear from the context. The main property of this *minimal topology* is that it is *Noetherian*, in a similar way that S was well-quasi-ordered in the proof of Theorem 6.3.24.

Lemma 7.2.30. Let E be a *topology expander*, τ be a topology, and α be an ordinal. Let $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a *topological minimal bad sequence* for $\trianglelefteq_{\text{lex}}$. Then, the *minimal topology* E_{\min}^α is *Noetherian*.

Proof. Assume for contradiction that E_{\min}^α is not *Noetherian*. Let us define $V_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{j < i} U_j$, H_i as $X \setminus V_i$, and $d_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{depth}(U_i)$, for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$.

Thanks to Lemma 7.2.22, there must be some *topological bad sequence* $(W_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ for E_{\min}^α where, for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $\rho(i) \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $W_i \in \text{Down}^{d_{\rho(i)}}(U_{\rho(i)}) \downarrow H_{\rho(i)}$. This amounts to the existence of an open subset $T_{\rho(i)}$ in $\text{Down}^{d_{\rho(i)}}(U_{\rho(i)})$, such that $T_{\rho(i)} \triangleleft U_{\rho(i)}$, and $W_i = T_{\rho(i)} \setminus V_{\rho(i)}$.

Let us prove that we can assume ρ to be non-decreasing. For that, we will extract a subsequence of $(W_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ as follows: take $\iota(0) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 0$, and then $\iota(n+1) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \min \{ i \in \mathbb{N} : i > \iota(n) \wedge \rho(i) > \rho(\iota(n)) \}$. This construction is sound as soon as we can argue that for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $\rho^{-1}(k) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{ i \in \mathbb{N} : \rho(i) = k \}$ is finite. Let $k \in \mathbb{N}$, then the sequence $(W_i)_{i \in \rho^{-1}(k)}$ is a sequence of open subsets of $\text{Down}^{d_k}(U_k) \downarrow H_k$. Because $d_k < \alpha$, $\text{Down}^{d_k}(U_k) \subseteq E^{d_k}(\tau)$ is *Noetherian*. As an easy consequence, $\text{Down}^{d_k}(U_k) \downarrow H_k$ is *Noetherian* too. Therefore, assuming for contradiction that $\rho^{-1}(k)$ is infinite provides us with an $i \in \rho^{-1}(k)$, such that $W_i \subseteq \bigcup_{\rho(j)=k \wedge j < i} W_j$, and *a fortiori* $W_i \subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} W_j$. Because $(W_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a *topological bad sequence*, this is absurd, and we have proven that $\rho^{-1}(k)$ is in fact finite.

Let us build the sequence $(Y_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ defined by $Y_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} U_i$ if $i < \rho(0)$ and $Y_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} T_{\rho(i)}$ otherwise. Because this is a sequence of open sets in $E^\alpha(\tau)$ that is lexicographically smaller than $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$, it must be a *good sequence*. Therefore, there exists $p \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $Y_p \subseteq \bigcup_{j < p} Y_j$. Let us now analyse what it implies on the original sequences depending on the ordering between p and $\rho(0)$.

If $p < \rho(0)$: then $U_p \subseteq \bigcup_{j < p} U_j$ which is impossible because the sequence $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a *topological bad sequence*.

12: This is the crucial way intersections are used, and cannot be replaced by unions. See the other notes about this fact.

If $p \geq \rho(0)$: let us write $Y_p = T_{\rho(p)} \subseteq \bigcup_{j < \rho(0)} U_j \cup \bigcup_{j < p} T_{\rho(j)}$. By taking the intersection with $H_{\rho(p)}$,¹² we obtain $W_p \subseteq \bigcup_{j < p} W_j$, hence the sequence $(W_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a **topological good sequence** which is absurd. ■

The Lifting Argument Now that we have extracted a **Noetherian** topology out of a suitable **topological minimal bad sequence**, let us prove that one can “lift” this construction to obtain a contradiction. This is the part where the key property of **topology expanders** plays a role by ensuring that this lifting is possible. In order to understand what the informal notion of lifting means, let us highlight the following fact.

Fact 7.2.31. Let α be an ordinal, E be a **topology expander** and $U \in E^\alpha(\tau)$. If $d \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \text{depth}(U)$ is a successor ordinal, then $U \in E(\text{Down}^d(U))$.

The main idea of the following proof is that a **topological minimal bad sequence** $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of $E^\alpha(\tau)$ in fact belongs to $E(E_{\min}^\alpha)$. This immediately yields a contradiction, as E preserves **Noetherian** topologies and E_{\min}^α has just been proven to be **Noetherian** in Lemma 7.2.30. However, this rough idea must be refined, and we will not prove that the sequence belongs to $E(E_{\min}^\alpha)$ (which is false in general).

Lemma 7.2.32. Let α be an ordinal, X be a topology, and E be a **topology expander**. If $E^\beta(\tau)$ is **Noetherian** for all $\beta < \alpha$, and $\tau \subseteq E(\tau)$, then $E^\alpha(\tau)$ is **Noetherian**.

Proof. If α is a successor ordinal, then $\alpha = \beta + 1$ and $E^\alpha(\tau) = E(E^\beta(\tau))$. Because E respects **Noetherian** topologies, we immediately conclude that $E^\alpha(\tau)$ is **Noetherian**. We are therefore only interested in the case where α is a limit ordinal.

Assume for contradiction that $E^\alpha(\tau)$ is not **Noetherian**, we leverage Lemma 7.2.27 to obtain a **topological minimal bad sequence** $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$, such that $\text{depth}(U_i) < \alpha_i$ is either 0 or a successor ordinal written $\beta_i + 1$. Moreover, we know that $\text{depth}(U_i)$ is non-decreasing and increases infinitely often.

We can therefore construct a strictly increasing map $\rho: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ such that $\text{depth}(U_{\rho(i)})$ is a strictly increasing map from \mathbb{N} to non-zero successor ordinals below α .¹³

Let us consider some $p = \rho(i)$ for some $i \in \mathbb{N}$.¹⁴ Let us write $V_p \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \bigcup_{j < p} U_j$, and $H_p \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} X \setminus V_p$. As E is a **topology expander**, we derive the following inclusions:¹⁵

$$\begin{aligned} E(\text{Down}^{d_p}(U_p)) \downarrow H_p &\subseteq E(\text{Down}^{d_p}(U_p) \downarrow H_p) \downarrow H_p \\ &\subseteq E(E_{\min}^\alpha) \downarrow H_p. \end{aligned}$$

Recall that $U_p \in E(\text{Down}^{d_p}(U_p))$ thanks to Fact 7.2.31, and because $\text{depth}(U_p)$ is a non-zero successor ordinal. Hence, the intersection $U_p \cap$

13: In particular, the map ρ never selects **open subsets** U of depth zero. This is necessary for the following computations to make sense.

14: In particular, $d_p = \text{depth}(U_p) = \text{depth}(U_{\rho(i)}) = d_{\rho(i)}$ is a non-zero successor ordinal!

15: This is the key part where we require that E is a **topology expander**!

H_p belongs to $\mathbf{E}(\text{Down}^{d_p}(U_p)) \downarrow H_p$, and therefore $U_p \cap H_p \in \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}_{\min}^\alpha) \downarrow H_p$. As a consequence of the above inclusion of topologies, there exists a $W_p \in \mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}_{\min}^\alpha)$ such that $U_p \cap H_p = U_p \setminus V_p = W_p \setminus V_p = W_p \cap H_p$. We have constructed a sequence $(W_{\rho(i)})_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of open subsets of $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}_{\min}^\alpha)$ such that for all $i \in \mathbb{N}$, $U_{\rho(i)} \setminus V_{\rho(i)} = W_{\rho(i)} \setminus V_{\rho(i)}$.

Thanks to Lemma 7.2.30, and preservation of Noetherian topologies through topology expanders, $\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{E}_{\min}^\alpha)$ is a Noetherian topology. This provides an $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $W_{\rho(i)} \subseteq \bigcup_{\rho(j) < \rho(i)} W_{\rho(j)}$. In particular,

$$\begin{aligned} U_{\rho(i)} \setminus V_{\rho(i)} &= W_{\rho(i)} \setminus V_{\rho(i)} \\ &\subseteq \left(\bigcup_{\rho(j) < \rho(i)} W_{\rho(j)} \right) \setminus V_{\rho(i)} \\ &\subseteq \bigcup_{\rho(j) < \rho(i)} W_{\rho(j)} \setminus V_{\rho(j)} \\ &= \bigcup_{\rho(j) < \rho(i)} U_{\rho(j)} \setminus V_{\rho(j)} \\ &\subseteq \bigcup_{j < \rho(i)} U_j \\ &= V_{\rho(i)} \quad . \end{aligned}$$

This proves that $U_{\rho(i)} \subseteq V_{\rho(i)}$, i.e., that $U_{\rho(i)} \subseteq \bigcup_{j < \rho(i)} U_j$. Finally, this contradicts the fact that $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a topological bad sequence. ■

We have effectively proven that being well-behaved with respect to closed subspaces is enough to consider least fixed points of refinement functions. As an immediate consequence, we obtain our master theorem.

Theorem 7.2.33 (Main Result). *Let X be a set, \mathbf{E} be a topology expander, and τ be a topology over X such that $\tau \subseteq \mathbf{E}(\tau)$. The least fixed point of \mathbf{E} above τ is a Noetherian topology over X .*

7.3. Variations Around the Main Theorem

We discuss applications of Theorem 7.2.33 in a separate chapter dedicated to inductive constructions, namely Chapter 8 (Inductive Constructions). For the moment, we are interested in the limits, variations, and consequences of the theorem from a theoretical perspective.

7.3.1. When is a Refinement Function a Topology Expander?

Recall that the collection of topologies over a given set X is a set, which is moreover a complete lattice for inclusion. Let us decompose the three properties that define a topology expander.¹⁶ This allows us to prove that the topology expanders “almost” form a complete lattice, which is enough to prove that any refinement function has a best approximation

16: Monotonicity, preserving Noetherian topologies, and the compatibility with subset restriction, as obtained by combining Definition 7.2.1 and Definition 7.2.17.

in terms of [topology expander](#). Before that, let us provide some generic examples and non-examples of topology expanders.

Example 7.3.1. Let (X, θ) be a topological space. The constant map $\text{const}_\theta: \tau \mapsto \theta$ is a [topology expander](#) if and only if θ is [Noetherian](#).

Proof. The constant map is always monotone for the [pointwise ordering](#). Let τ be a [Noetherian topology](#) satisfying $\tau \subseteq \theta$, and $H \in \mathcal{H}(\tau)$. Then, $\text{const}_\theta(\tau) \downarrow H = \theta \downarrow H = \text{const}_\theta(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$. As a consequence, the only property left to check for const_θ to be a [topology expander](#) is that $\text{const}_\theta(\tau)$ is [Noetherian](#) whenever τ is. This holds if and only if θ is itself [Noetherian](#), because there exists at least one [Noetherian](#) topology over X (τ_{triv}). ■

In particular, this proves that [topology expanders](#) are enough to recover any [Noetherian topology](#) over a set X .

Remark 7.3.2. Let (X, θ) be a topological space. Then, θ is [Noetherian](#) if and only if it is the least fixed point of a [topology expander](#).

Proof. It suffices to consider $\theta = \text{lfp}_\tau. \text{const}_\theta(\tau)$ which is a [topology expander](#) thanks to [Example 7.3.1](#). ■

While [Remark 7.3.2](#) is a kind of completeness result, it is not satisfactory in the sense that it does not help one to construct a [Noetherian](#) topology on a given set. Let us now turn our attention to a more practical question. As we saw in [Corollary 7.2.7](#), [refinement functions](#) can have least fixed points that are not [Noetherian](#) topologies. The question is the following: given a [refinement function](#) R , does there exist a best approximation of R via [topology expanders](#)?

Let us write $\llbracket A \rightarrow B \rrbracket_{\text{mon}}$ to denote the set of monotone functions from a [quasi-order](#) (A, \leq_A) to another quasi-order (B, \leq_B) , and for two functions $f, g \in \llbracket A \rightarrow B \rrbracket_{\text{mon}}$, we say that f is [pointwise below](#) g , written $f \leq_{\text{pt}} g$, whenever for all $x \in A$, $f(x) \leq_B g(x)$.

Fact 7.3.3. Let (A, \leq_A) be a [quasi-order](#) and (B, \leq_B) be a [complete lattice](#). Then $(\llbracket A \rightarrow B \rrbracket_{\text{mon}}, \leq_{\text{pt}})$ is a complete lattice, where infima are computed pointwise, i.e., $(\inf_{i \in I} f)(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \inf_{i \in I} f(x)$.

Recall that $\text{Top}(X)$ is a [complete lattice](#) and $\text{NTop}(X)$ is a [downwards closed](#) subset of $\text{Top}(X)$ for inclusion. This is immediately lifted to functions.

Remark 7.3.4. The set of [refinement functions](#) is a [downwards closed](#) subset of $\llbracket \text{Top}(X) \rightarrow \text{Top}(X) \rrbracket_{\text{mon}}$.

Let us fix a set X . The collection of topologies over X is itself a set, and forms a complete lattice for inclusion.

Definition 7.3.5. Let X be a set. Let us write $[\text{Top}(X) \rightarrow \text{Top}(X)]_{\text{mon}}^{\text{sub}}$ for the set of functions $f \in [\text{Top}(X) \rightarrow \text{Top}(X)]_{\text{mon}}$ such that $f = \text{const}_{\tau_{\text{disc}}}$, or f is a *topology expander*.

Lemma 7.3.6. Let X be a set. Then, $[\text{Top}(X) \rightarrow \text{Top}(X)]_{\text{mon}}^{\text{sub}}$ is a *complete lattice* where infima are computed pointwise.

Proof. Let $(f_i)_{i \in I}$ be a family of functions in $[\text{Top}(X) \rightarrow \text{Top}(X)]_{\text{mon}}^{\text{sub}}$. Let us construct an infimum to this family. Assume without loss of generality that for all $i \in I$, $f_i \neq \text{const}_{\tau_{\text{disc}}}$, which does not change the infimum. In particular, f_i is a *topology expander* for all $i \in I$.

If I is empty, then $\text{const}_{\tau_{\text{disc}}}$ is the infimum (and is computed pointwise). If I is non-empty, then let us write $f: \tau \mapsto \bigcap_{i \in I} f_i(\tau)$. Notice that f is monotone. Because I is non-empty, there exists $i \in I$ such that $f \leq_{\text{pt}} f_i$, hence f is a *refinement function* thanks to Remark 7.3.4. Let τ be a *Noetherian topology* such that $\tau \subseteq f(\tau)$, and H be a closed subset of τ . For all $i \in I$, $\tau \subseteq f(\tau) \subseteq f_i(\tau)$; moreover, because f_i is a *topology expander*, $f_i(\tau) \downarrow H \subseteq f_i(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$. We conclude that f is a *topology expander* as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f(\tau) \downarrow H &= \left(\bigcap_{i \in I} f_i(\tau) \right) \downarrow H \\ &= \bigcap_{i \in I} (f_i(\tau) \downarrow H) \\ &\subseteq \bigcap_{i \in I} (f_i(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H) \\ &= f(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H \end{aligned} \quad \blacksquare$$

Corollary 7.3.7. Let X be a set, and R be a *refinement function* over X . There exists a largest *topology expander* E_R below R for the *pointwise ordering*.

Proof. Let f be the supremum of $\{g \in [\text{Top}(X) \rightarrow \text{Top}(X)]_{\text{mon}}^{\text{sub}} : g \leq_{\text{pt}} R\}$, which exists thanks to Lemma 7.3.6. It is an easy check that $f \leq_{\text{pt}} R$, hence f is a *refinement function* because of Remark 7.3.4. We have two cases, either $f = \text{const}_{\tau_{\text{disc}}}$, in which case $f(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \text{const}_{\tau_{\text{disc}}}(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \tau_{\text{disc}}$ *Noetherian*, and f is a *topology expander* thanks to Example 7.3.1; or f is a *topology expander* by Definition 7.3.5. \blacksquare

Note that Corollary 7.3.7 is not constructive, and we have not managed to provide an explicit description of this “largest approximation.” Recall that over finite words the “natural” *refinement function* R_{pref} was not a *topology expander*, and an ad-hoc *topology expander* E_{words} was designed to recover the *subword topology* (that is *Noetherian*). The following example shows that one cannot obtain E_{words} as the largest approximation of R_{pref} .

Example 7.3.8. Let $\Sigma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{a, b\}$ be a finite alphabet. Then, $E_{\text{words}}^{\tau_{\text{disc}}} \not\leq_{\text{pt}} R_{\text{pref}}$. In particular, $E_{\text{words}}^{\tau_{\text{disc}}} \not\leq_{\text{pt}} E_{R_{\text{pref}}}$. Therefore, $E_{\text{words}}^{\tau_{\text{disc}}}$ is not the largest approximation of R_{pref} .

7.4. Discussion

What About Ordinal Invariants? Let us now briefly explain that Theorem 7.2.33 does not provide any information about the ordinal invariants associated with the space, mainly due to its non-constructive nature. For that, let us first recall that one can associate an ordinal invariant with each Noetherian spaces, similarly to what is done for well-quasi-orderings. This ordinal invariant is called the *stature* of a Noetherian space (X, τ) , and is defined by $\|(X, \tau)\| \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} h(\mathcal{H}(\tau)) - 1$ ¹⁷.

The *stature* provides a fined grained control over the “complexity” of the Noetherian space at hand. It is tempting to refine the result of Theorem 7.2.33 under the assumption that the effect of the topology expander E on the stature of the topologies is controlled. Let us show that the naïve construction that first comes to mind cannot be applied.

Example 7.4.1. Let $X = \Sigma^*$ where Σ is a two letter alphabet with the discrete topology τ_{disc} . Then, $\|\text{Ifp}_{\tau} E_{\text{words}}(\tau)\| = \|E_{\text{words}}^{\omega}(\tau_{\text{triv}})\| = \omega^{\omega}$, but $\omega^{\omega} \not\leq \sup_{n < \omega} \|E_{\text{words}}^n(\tau_{\text{triv}})\| = \omega$.

17: The subtraction is defined as the identity on limit ordinals, and the predecessor on successor ordinals. It is needed because the *stature* of $(\mathbb{N}, \text{Alex}(\leq))$ is expected to be ω , but $h(\mathcal{H}(\text{Alex}(\leq))) = \omega + 1$ because of the presence of the entire space \mathbb{N} as a closed subset.

[50]: Goubault-Larrecq and Laboureix (2023), ‘Statures and Sobrification Ranks of Noetherian Spaces’

Proof. We have proven that the *subword topology* is exactly the least fixed point of E_{words} and is obtained after ω iterations. Moreover, it is known from [50, Theorem 12.22] that the stature of the *subword topology* over a two letter alphabet is exactly ω^{ω} . Notice that if τ is finite, then $E_{\text{words}}(\tau)$ is finite too. As a consequence, the stature $\|E_{\text{words}}^n(\tau_{\text{triv}})\|$ is finite for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. ■

The main problem identified by Example 7.4.1 is that even though every closed set H in the *subword topology* eventually appears in some $E_{\text{words}}^n(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ where $n \in \mathbb{N}$, decreasing sequences of such sets might go arbitrarily “up and down.” This was already encountered when dealing with *topological bad sequences* of open subsets $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$, where the minimality allowed us to control the evolution of the parameter n (written $\text{depth}(U_i)$).

One possible direction to overcome this difficulty would be to follow the usual techniques to prove upper bounds on the stature of Noetherian spaces, namely, the detour through the *sobrification* of the space [50]. Let us remark that a generic upper bound would implicitly reprove Theorem 7.2.33.

Towards Effective Representations. In order to use [Noetherian](#) spaces in practical verification algorithms, one needs to be able to “effectively” represent those spaces. As a consequence, it is natural to ask whether [Theorem 7.2.33](#) can be adapted to provide an effective description under reasonable assumptions. First, let us recall the definition of an effective representation for a [Noetherian space](#).

Definition 7.4.2 *S-representation* [34, Definition 4.1]. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. An *S-representation* of (X, τ) is a tuple $(S, \llbracket \cdot \rrbracket, \trianglelefteq, \vec{s}, \sqcap)$ where

- ▶ S is a recursively enumerable set;
- ▶ $\llbracket \cdot \rrbracket: S \rightarrow \mathcal{S}(X)$;
- ▶ \trianglelefteq is a decidable relation such that for all $a, b \in S$, $a \trianglelefteq b \iff \llbracket a \rrbracket \subseteq \llbracket b \rrbracket$;
- ▶ \vec{s} is a finite subset of S such that $X = \bigcup_{a \in \vec{s}} \llbracket a \rrbracket$;
- ▶ $\sqcap: S \times S \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(S)$ is a computable function such that for all $a, b \in S$, $\llbracket a \rrbracket \cap \llbracket b \rrbracket = \bigcup_{c \in a \sqcap b} \llbracket c \rrbracket$.

Notice that the effective representations rely on the characterisation of the [irreducible closed](#) subsets of the topological space. As [topology expanders](#) are better suited to deal with open subsets, let us briefly demonstrate how [Theorem 7.2.33](#) gives us a coarse control on the irreducible closed subsets of a [limit topology](#).

Lemma 7.4.3. *Let E be a [topology expander](#) over a set X , and α be a limit ordinal. A subset H of X is [irreducible closed](#) in $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ if and only if there exists $\beta < \alpha$ such that for all $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$, H is an [irreducible closed subset](#) of $E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}})$.*

Proof. Because the topology $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ is [Noetherian](#) and [generated by](#) $\bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ (the latter being closed under finite intersections), we know that $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \bigcup_{\beta < \alpha} E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$.

Let H be an irreducible closed subset of $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. In particular, there exists $\beta < \alpha$ such that H is a closed subset of $E^\beta(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. It is immediate from the monotonicity of $(E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}}))_{\gamma < \alpha}$ that H is a [closed subset](#) of $E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ for all $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$. Assume for contradiction that H is reducible in $E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ for some $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$. Because $E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}}) \subseteq E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$, we conclude that H is reducible in $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ which is absurd.

Conversely, assume that there exists $\beta < \alpha$ such that for all $\beta \leq \gamma < \alpha$, H is a [closed subset](#) of $E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ that is [irreducible](#). Let U_1, U_2 be two [open subsets](#) of $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ that intersect H . There exists $\gamma_1, \gamma_2 < \alpha$ such that $U_1 \in E^{\gamma_1}(\tau_{\text{triv}})$, and $U_2 \in E^{\gamma_2}(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. Because the sequence $(E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}}))_{\gamma < \alpha}$ is monotone, we conclude that there exists $\gamma < \alpha$ such that

- ▶ $\gamma_1 \leq \gamma$,
- ▶ $\gamma_2 \leq \gamma$,
- ▶ $\beta \leq \gamma$,
- ▶ $U_1, U_2 \in E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}})$.

Beware that in [Lemma 7.4.3](#), it is not true that a subset is [irreducible closed](#) in the limit topology if and only if it is [irreducible closed](#) in some step. Consider for instance a [Noetherian topology](#) θ that is [Noetherian](#) and where X is not [irreducible closed](#). Then, const_θ is a [topology expander](#), X is an [irreducible closed subset](#) of τ_{triv} , but X is not an [irreducible closed subset](#) of $\text{lf}_{\text{p}_\tau} \cdot \text{const}_\theta(\tau) = \theta$.

Because H is **irreducible** in $E^\gamma(\tau_{\text{triv}})$, $H \cap U_1 \cap U_2 \neq \emptyset$. We have proven that H is **irreducible** in $E^\alpha(\tau_{\text{triv}})$. ■

In order to build an effective representation of a limit topology, we would like to add an “effectiveness” condition to the **topology expander**. It should work directly on effective representations, but should also allow us to convert closed sets between the input representation and the output representation.

Definition 7.4.4. Let E be a **topology expander** over a set X . We say that E is an **effective topology expander** if there exists a computable map SE such that sends an **S-effective representation** $(S, \llbracket \cdot \rrbracket, \trianglelefteq, \vec{s}, \sqcap)$ of a **Noetherian topology** τ , to an **S-effective representation** $(S', \llbracket \cdot \rrbracket', \trianglelefteq', \vec{s}', \sqcap')$ of the topology $E(\tau)$, and a computable map $\bar{S}E: S \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(S')$ such that for every code $c \in S$, $\bigcup_{c' \in SE(c)} \llbracket c' \rrbracket' = \llbracket c \rrbracket$.

Lemma 7.4.5. Let E be an **effective topology expander** over a set X . Assume moreover that $\mathcal{S}(\tau) \subseteq \mathcal{S}(E(\tau))$ for all **Noetherian topologies** τ that satisfy $\tau \subseteq E(\tau)$. Then, $E^\omega(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ has an **effective representation**.

Proof. It is an easy check that the **trivial topology** has an effective representation, which we will call $(S_0, \llbracket \cdot \rrbracket_0, \trianglelefteq_0, \vec{s}_0, \sqcap_0)$. Let us write, for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $(S_{n+1}, \llbracket \cdot \rrbracket_{n+1}, \trianglelefteq_{n+1}, \vec{s}_{n+1}, \sqcap_{n+1})$ as the image of $(S_n, \llbracket \cdot \rrbracket_n, \trianglelefteq_n, \vec{s}_n, \sqcap_n)$ through SE . Because of the extra assumption over E , the representation map $\bar{S}E: S_n \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(S_{n+1})$ is actually a map from S to S_n , for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Let us now define the representation of the limit as follows:

- ▶ $S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sum_{i \in \mathbb{N}} S_i$;
- ▶ $\llbracket \cdot \rrbracket: S \rightarrow \mathcal{S}(X)$ that maps (i, a) where $a \in S_i$ to $\llbracket a \rrbracket_i$;
- ▶ $(i, a) \trianglelefteq (j, b) \in S$ if and only if $\bar{S}E^{i'}(a) \trianglelefteq_{\max(i,j)} \bar{S}E^{j'}(b)$, where $i' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max(i, j) - i$ and $j' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max(i, j) - j$;
- ▶ $\vec{s} = \{ (0, c) : c \in \vec{s}_0 \}$;
- ▶ $(i, a) \sqcap (j, b)$ is defined as $\bar{S}E^{i'}(a) \sqcap_{\max(i,j)} \bar{S}E^{j'}(b)$, where $i' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max(i, j) - i$ and $j' \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max(i, j) - j$.

It is a routine check that the functions defined are computable. The only real thing to check is that $\llbracket \cdot \rrbracket$ is a surjective map from S to $\mathcal{S}(E^\omega(\tau_{\text{triv}}))$. This follows from the extra assumption of E , together with the characterisation of **irreducible closed subsets** that was obtained in Lemma 7.4.3. ■

It remains for us to show that the extra assumption that irreducible closed subsets remain irreducible after applying E is reasonable. However, this is not an easy task. For instance, if (X, τ) is a **Noetherian space** that is not **irreducible**, then const_τ is a **topology expander**, but $\mathcal{S}(\tau_{\text{triv}}) \not\subseteq \mathcal{S}(\text{const}_\tau(\tau_{\text{triv}}))$ because $X \notin \mathcal{S}(\tau)$.

We know for a fact that this does not happen in the case of finite words, where **irreducible closed subsets** are well-understood, but we were unable to prove the following conjecture about E_{words}^θ :

Conjecture 7.4.6 (Effective word expander). Let (X, θ) be a **Noetherian** space. Then, E_{words}^θ is a **topology expander** over X^* such that $\mathcal{S}(\tau) \subseteq \mathcal{S}(E_{\text{words}}^\theta(\tau))$ for all $\tau \in \text{Top}(X^*)$ satisfying $\tau \subseteq E_{\text{words}}^\theta(\tau)$.

Inductive Constructions? Because of the connection between **lpps** and **Noetherian** spaces,¹⁸ one might think that the techniques introduced to prove **Theorem 7.2.33** could be transported, by carefully handling the **Boolean subalgebra** of **definable subsets**. However, the very notion of **topological minimal bad sequence** ceases to make sense in the realm of **lpps**: one has to first chose an **definable open subset**, and then a sequence that is a **covering** of this subset. In particular, the analogue of **Lemma 7.2.24** cannot be proven.

Furthermore, if one considers the topology and the Boolean subalgebra of **definable subsets** independently, analogues of **Theorem 7.2.33** trivialise. Let us assume that a fixed point theorem exists akin to the one for Noetherian topologies. Let $\langle\langle X, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle\rangle$ be such a least fixed point, then one can build the space $\langle\langle X, \tau_{\text{triv}}, \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{B}) \rangle\rangle$ that is a **lpps**, the least fixed point above this set should also be **lpps** by the same least fixed point argument, however it would also be **Noetherian**. As a consequence, the original space was also **Noetherian**, and one could already prove this fact using **Theorem 7.2.33**.

The Telescope Topology. There exists a largest **topology expander** under any **refinement function** (see **Corollary 7.3.7**). However, this non-constructive argument does not provide a description of the **topology expander** corresponding to R_{pref} . We conjecture that its least fixed point is connected to the “telescope topology” introduced in [45, Exercise 9.7.36].¹⁹ This would demonstrate how **Corollary 7.3.7** can be leveraged to construct *non-trivial* “best effort” **Noetherian topologies** for free.

18: Which is discussed in **Section 6.2** and particularly via **Lemma 6.2.1** on page 146.

19: Beware that the “telescope topology” is called the “prefix topology” in the exercise, which is not consistent with the definitions used in this document.

Definition 7.4.7. Let (Σ, θ) be a **Noetherian space**. We define $E_{\text{tel}}^\theta(\tau)$ over Σ^* as the **topology generated by the closed subsets** $\{\varepsilon\} \cup HH'$ where H is a closed subset of θ and H' is a closed subset of τ satisfying $H' = \downarrow_{\leq_{\text{sur}}} H'$.

Conjecture 7.4.8 (Telescope Topology). Let θ be a topology. Then, $E_{\text{tel}}^\theta \leq_{\text{pt}} R_{\text{pref}}$, E_{tel}^θ is a **topology expander**, and the least fixed point of E_{tel}^θ is the “telescope topology” introduced in [45, Exercise 9.7.36].

Open Questions. Let us conclude with a conjecture that generalises **Example 7.3.1** to non-constant functions. Notice that **Theorem 7.2.33** proves that **Item 2** implies **Item 1** in **Conjecture 7.4.9**.

Conjecture 7.4.9 (Completeness of topology expanders). Let R be a **refinement function** over a set X . The following are equivalent:

1. For all Noetherian topology τ , for all ordinal α , $\mathbf{R}^\alpha(\tau)$ is Noetherian;
2. There exists a smallest topology expander \mathbf{E} above \mathbf{R} .

References

- [19] Jean Daligault, Michael Rao and Stéphan Thomassé. ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’. In: *Order* 27 (2010), pp. 301–315. DOI: [10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0](https://doi.org/10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0> (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 44–46, 179, 235).
- [23] Stéphane Demeri, Alain Finkel, Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Sylvain Schmitz and Philippe Schnoebelen. ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’. 2012. URL: <https://cel.archives-ouvertes.fr/cel-00727025> (cit. on pp. 3, 139, 178, 181, 239).
- [24] Nachum Dershowitz and Iddo Tzameret. ‘Gap Embedding for Well-Quasi-Orderings’. In: *Electronic Notes in Theoretical Computer Science* 84 (2003), pp. 80–90. DOI: [10.1016/S1571-0661\(04\)80846-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S1571-0661(04)80846-6). URL: <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1571066104808466> (cit. on p. 179).
- [34] Alain Finkel and Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Forward analysis for WSTS, part I: completions’. In: *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science* 30 (2020), pp. 752–832. DOI: [10.1017/S0960129520000195](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0960129520000195). (Visited on 13/10/2022) (cit. on pp. 185, 201).
- [36] Anton Freund. ‘From Kruskal’s theorem to Friedman’s gap condition’. In: *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science* 30 (2020), pp. 952–975. DOI: [10.1017/s0960129520000298](https://doi.org/10.1017/s0960129520000298) (cit. on pp. 179, 184, 229).
- [40] Jean H. Gallier. ‘Ann. Pure Appl. Logic: Erratum to “What’s so special about Kruskal’s Theorem and the ordinal Γ_0 ? A survey of some results in proof theory” [53 (1991) 199–260]’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 89 (1997), p. 275. DOI: [10.1016/S0168-0072\(97\)00043-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-0072(97)00043-2) (cit. on pp. 178, 179).
- [44] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Noetherian Spaces in Verification’. In: *Automata, Languages and Programming*. Ed. by Samson Abramsky, Cyril Gavoille, Claude Kirchner, Friedhelm Meyer auf der Heide and Paul G. Spirakis. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2010, pp. 2–21. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2) (cit. on pp. 53, 139, 178).
- [45] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*. Vol. 22. Cambridge University Press, 2013. DOI: [10.1017/cbo9781139524438](https://doi.org/10.1017/cbo9781139524438) (cit. on pp. 3, 50, 52–54, 139, 159, 178, 179, 185, 186, 192, 193, 203, 208, 224, 239, 254, 255).
- [46] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Aliaume Lopez’ master theorem of Noetherian spaces*. 2022. URL: <http://projects.lsv.ens-cachan.fr/topology/?p=6105> (visited on 08/02/2023) (cit. on p. 191).
- [47] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Infinitary Noetherian Constructions I. Infinite Words’. In: *Colloquium Mathematicum* 168 (2022), pp. 257–268. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.4064/cm8077-4-2021> (cit. on pp. 139, 175, 178, 179, 209–211).
- [48] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory. Electronic supplements to the book – Errata’. 2022. URL: https://projects.lsv.ens-cachan.fr/topology/?page_id=12 (visited on 10/12/2022) (cit. on pp. 178, 179).
- [49] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Simon Halfon and Aliaume Lopez. *Infinitary Noetherian Constructions II. Transfinite Words and the Regular Subword Topology*. 2022 (cit. on pp. 175, 178, 179, 209, 211).
- [50] Jean Goubault-Larrecq and Bastien Laboueix. ‘Statues and Sobrification Ranks of Noetherian Spaces’. In: 2023, pp. 1–76. URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/2112.06828> (cit. on p. 200).
- [51] Jean Goubault-Larrecq and Aliaume Lopez. ‘On the word topology, and beyond’. 2020. URL: https://projects.lsv.ens-cachan.fr/topology/?page_id=2735 (visited on 08/02/2023) (cit. on p. 177).
- [53] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Monika Seisenberger, Victor L. Selivanov and Andreas Weiermann. ‘Well Quasi-Orders in Computer Science (Dagstuhl Seminar 16031)’. In: *Dagstuhl Reports* 6 (2016), pp. 69–98. DOI: [10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69](https://doi.org/10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69). URL: <https://doi.org/10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69> (cit. on pp. 44, 178).

- [58] Ryu Hasegawa. ‘Two applications of analytic functors’. In: *Theoretical Computer Science* 272 (2002), pp. 113–175. DOI: [10.1016/S0304-3975\(00\)00349-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-3975(00)00349-2). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0304397500003492> (cit. on pp. 179, 184, 207, 215, 220, 221, 224, 225, 227, 229).
- [59] Graham Higman. ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’. In: *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society* 3 (1952), pp. 326–336. DOI: [10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326](https://doi.org/10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 181).
- [65] Joseph B. Kruskal. ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’. In: *Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series A* 13 (1972), pp. 297–305. DOI: [10.1016/0097-3165\(72\)90063-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/0097-3165(72)90063-5) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 179, 181).
- [69] Aliaume Lopez. *On the word topology, and beyond*. 2020. URL: <https://www.irif.fr/~alopez/posts/2020-09-23-word-topology-and-beyond.html> (visited on 08/02/2023) (cit. on p. 177).
- [72] Aliaume Lopez. ‘Fixed Points and Noetherian Topologies’. In: *FOSACS’23* (2023), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 180, 191).
- [76] Crispin St. John Alvah Nash-Williams. ‘On well-quasi-ordering transfinite sequences’. In: *Mathematical Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society* 61 (1965), pp. 33–39 (cit. on pp. 177–181).
- [83] Benjamin Rossman. ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 55 (2008), 15:1–15:53. DOI: [10.1145/1379759.1379763](https://doi.org/10.1145/1379759.1379763) (cit. on pp. i, 24, 35, 37, 38, 40, 42, 55, 74, 175, 177, 235).
- [88] Devendra Singh, Ali Maianguwa Shuaibu and Muhammad Ndayawo. ‘Simplified Proof of Kruskal’s Tree Theorem’. In: *Mathematical Theory and Modeling* 3 (2013), pp. 93–100. DOI: [10.13140/RG.2.2.12298.39363](https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.12298.39363) (cit. on p. 179).

Inductive Constructions 8.

Outline of the chapter

In this chapter, we will leverage the master [Theorem 7.2.33](#) from [Chapter 7 \(Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies\)](#) to construct families of [Noetherian](#) spaces.

Goals of the chapter

At the end of the chapter, I hope you will be convinced that most of the previously known [Noetherian](#) topologies can be recovered through [Theorem 7.2.33](#). Furthermore, we will have shown how the simplicity of the theorem allows us to use it in a categorical framework describing inductive datatypes, and obtain a generic [Noetherian](#) topology for those inductive datatypes, that correctly generalises what was known in the case of [well-quasi-orderings](#).

| | | |
|-------|--|-----|
| 8.1 | Applications | 207 |
| 8.1.1 | Finite Words and Trees | 208 |
| 8.1.2 | Ordinal Datatypes . . . | 209 |
| 8.2 | Divisibility Topologies | 214 |
| 8.2.1 | Handling Inductively Defined Datatypes . . | 215 |
| 8.2.2 | A Correctness Result . | 224 |
| 8.3 | Discussion | 228 |

Genesis. It is a thing to define a [Noetherian](#) topology inductively, but it is another to justify that “it is the right one.” While a least-fixed-point definition is arguably simpler to defend, the next step was to prove that, when starting from an [Alexandroff topology](#) (i.e., starting from a [well-quasi-order](#)), the construction coincides with the “usual preorders.” It turns out that inductive constructions in the case of [well-quasi-orderings](#) had already been studied since 2002 [\[58\]](#), through a completely different approach. This point of reference allowed us to state a correctness property in [Theorem 8.2.33](#).

[\[58\]](#): Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

Contributions In [Section 8.1](#), we demonstrate how one recovers previously known topologies as least-fixed-points, through a simple methodology. This pattern is then generalised to (suitably defined) inductive construction in [Section 8.2](#) where the most important definition is the one of [divisibility expander](#)¹. We then prove that the [divisibility expander](#) correctly generalises the picture in [well-quasi-orderings](#) via [Theorem 8.2.33](#) of [Subsection 8.2.2](#).

1: See [Definition 8.2.17](#) p. 221

8.1. Applications

We now briefly explore topologies that can be proven to be [Noetherian](#) using [Theorem 7.2.33](#). It should not be surprising that both the [topological Higman lemma](#) and the [topological Kruskal theorem](#) fit in the framework of [topology expanders](#), as both were already proven using a minimal bad sequence argument. However, we will proceed to extend the use of topology expander to spaces for which the original proof did not use a minimal bad sequence argument, and illustrate how they can easily be used to define new [Noetherian](#) topologies.

8.1.1. Finite Words and Trees

Finite words. As a first example, we recover the [topological Higman lemma](#) [45, Theorem 9.7.33] because the [subword topology](#) is the least fixed point of E_{words}^θ , which is a [topology expander](#) (see [Lemma 7.2.9](#) and [Corollary 7.2.15](#)).

[45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

2: That is, $t' \leq_{\text{t-suf}} t$.

Recall that we write $u \leq_w v$ when u is a scattered subword of v , and $t \leq_t t'$ when t embeds in t' as a tree (see page 158).

Finite trees. It does not require much effort to generalise this proof scheme to the case of the [topological Kruskal theorem](#) [45, Theorem 9.7.46], the topological analogue of [Kruskal's Tree Theorem](#). Before introducing this construction, let us use (as for the words) a shorthand notation for some specific set of trees.

Let U be a subset of Σ , and V be a subset of $\mathbf{T}(\Sigma)^*$. Let us define $\diamond U \langle V \rangle$ to be the set of trees t such that there exists a [subtree](#)² t' of t with a root labelled by an element of U , and whose list of children belong to V .

As for the [subword topology](#), the definition is ad-hoc but correctly generalises the [tree embedding](#) relation because the tree topology of $\text{Alex}(\leq)$ is the [Alexandroff topology](#) of \leq_t , for every ordering well-quasi ordering \leq over Σ [45, Exercise 9.7.48].

Definition 8.1.1 [45, Definition 9.7.39]. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space, and $\mathbf{T}(\Sigma)$ be the space of finite trees over Σ . The [tree topology](#) θ^{tree} is defined by induction as the coarsest topology such that $\diamond U \langle V \rangle$ is open whenever $U \in \theta$, and V is an open set of $((\mathbf{T}(\Sigma), \theta^{\text{tree}})^*, \theta^{\text{tree}, t})$.

Theorem 8.1.2 [45, Theorem 9.7.46]. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space. Then, $(\mathbf{T}(\Sigma), \theta^{\text{tree}})$ is [Noetherian](#) if and only if (Σ, θ) is [Noetherian](#).

This is the [topological Kruskal theorem](#).

The inductive nature of [Definition 8.1.1](#) naturally leads to a corresponding topology expander.

Definition 8.1.3. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space. Let E_{trees}^θ be the function that maps a topology τ to the topology generated by the sets $\diamond U \langle V \rangle$, for $U \in \theta$ and $V \in \tau^{*, t}$.

The proof of the following lemma is roughly the same as the corresponding ones for the [subword topology](#), see [Lemmas 7.2.9](#) and [7.2.10](#) and [Corollary 7.2.15](#).

Lemma 8.1.4. The [tree topology](#) is the least fixed point of E_{trees}^θ , which is a [topology expander](#).

Proof. The fact that E_{trees}^θ is a [refinement function](#) whose least fixed point is the [tree topology](#) is left as an exercise. The main technical point is to check that it is a [topology expander](#).

Notice that the sets $\diamond U\langle[V_1, \dots, V_n]\rangle$, where U ranges over θ , n ranges over \mathbb{N} , and V_i ranges over τ for $1 \leq i \leq n$, form a [subbasis](#) of the topology $E_{\text{trees}}^\theta(\tau)$. Indeed, the map $f: V \mapsto \diamond U\langle V \rangle$ satisfies $f(V_1 \cup V_2) = f(V_1) \cup f(V_2)$, and the [open subsets](#) $[V_1, \dots, V_n]$ form a [basis](#) of the [subword topology](#) over $\mathbf{T}(\Sigma)^*$.

Thanks to [Lemma 7.2.19](#), proving that E_{trees}^θ is a [topology expander](#) amounts to the following property: for every [Noetherian](#) topology τ satisfying $\tau \subseteq E_{\text{trees}}^\theta(\tau)$, for every closed subset H of τ , for every open subset $\diamond U\langle[V_1, \dots, V_n]\rangle$ in $E_{\text{trees}}^\theta(\tau)$, $H \cap \diamond U\langle[V_1, \dots, V_n]\rangle = H \cap \diamond U\langle[V_1 \cap H, \dots, V_n \cap H]\rangle$.

Notice that in this last equality, one inclusion is always true: $H \cap \diamond U\langle[V_1, \dots, V_n]\rangle \supseteq H \cap \diamond U\langle[V_1 \cap H, \dots, V_n \cap H]\rangle$.

For the converse inclusion, remark that if H is a [closed subset](#) of $E_{\text{trees}}^\theta(\tau)$, then it is [downwards closed](#) for \leq_t . In particular, H is closed under taking [subtrees](#). Let t be a tree in $H \cap \diamond U\langle[V_1, \dots, V_n]\rangle$. There exists a [subtree](#) t' of t , whose root belongs to U and list of children belong to $[V_1, \dots, V_n]$. Now, every child of t' is a [subtree](#) of t , hence belongs to H . As a consequence, t belongs to $H \cap \diamond U\langle[V_1 \cap H, \dots, V_n \cap H]\rangle$. ■

Corollary 8.1.5. *Let (Σ, θ) be a [Noetherian space](#).*

Then, $(\mathbf{T}(\Sigma), \theta^{\text{tree}})$ is a [Noetherian space](#).

8.1.2. Ordinal Datatypes

Let us now demonstrate how [Theorem 7.2.33](#) can be applied to spaces which are proved to be Noetherian without using a minimal bad sequence argument. This will also be the occasion to go beyond the world of well-quasi-orderings: we will define constructors that create non well-quasi-ordered spaces even when applied to some finite sets.

Ordinal words. For that, let us consider the set $\Sigma^{<\alpha}$ of words of ordinal length less than α , where α is a fixed ordinal. The mapping based definition of \leq_w ([Definition 6.3.22](#)) naturally generalises to ordinal length words, but is in general not a [well quasi order](#). As a consequence, this space will also provide an example of a topological minimal bad sequence argument that has no counterpart in the realm of well-quasi-orders.

Let us start ³ with $\alpha = \omega + 1$, in which case $\Sigma^{<\alpha} = \Sigma^* \uplus \Sigma^\omega$. Let us recover a [Noetherian topology](#). In this case, we adapt [Definition 6.3.26](#) to talk about infinite periodic behaviours. To that end, let us write $[U_1, \dots, U_n | U_\infty]$ a shorthand notation for the set

$$\Sigma^* U_1 \Sigma^* \dots \Sigma^* U_n (\Sigma^* U_\infty \Sigma^*)^\omega \quad .$$

3: We start with this “first infinite case” both for historical reasons – $\omega + 1$ was handled in [47] while the general construction only appeared in [49] – and because there are deep connection between this space and the sobrification of finite words.

Definition 8.1.6 [47, Definition 5.1]. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space. The *asymptotic subword topology* $\theta^{\leq \omega}$ is defined as the coarsest topology containing the following open subsets: $[U_1, \dots, U_n | U_\infty]$ where $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $U_i \in \theta$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$, and $U_\infty \in \theta$.

Definition 8.1.7. Let (Σ, θ) be a *Noetherian space*. We define the *asymptotic subword expander* $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta$ as mapping a topology τ to the topology generated by the following sets:

- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq w} UV$ for $U, V \in \tau$;
- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq w} [|W|]$, for $W \in \theta$;
- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq w} W$, for $W \in \theta$.

As per Lemma 8.1.4, the upcoming lemma follows the same proof scheme as Lemmas 7.2.9 and 7.2.10 and Corollary 7.2.15.

Lemma 8.1.8. Let (Σ, θ) be a *Noetherian space*. The *asymptotic subword topology* is the least fixed point of $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta$ which is a *topology expander*.

Proof. Let us first briefly check that $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta$ is a *refinement function*. It is clearly defined in a monotone way. Furthermore, if τ is *Noetherian*, then the following topologies are too, for similar reasons as for the case of E_{words}^θ :

- ▶ $\langle \uparrow_{\leq w} UV : U, V \in \tau \rangle_{\text{topo}}$;
- ▶ $\langle \uparrow_{\leq w} [|W|] : W \in \theta \rangle_{\text{topo}}$;
- ▶ $\langle \uparrow_{\leq w} W : W \in \theta \rangle_{\text{topo}}$.

Leveraging the fact that the *join* of *Noetherian* topologies remains *Noetherian* (see Lemma D.6.6), we conclude that $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta$ is *Noetherian*.

Let us now prove that $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta$ is a *topology expander*. For that, assume that $\tau \subseteq E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta(\tau)$ and is *Noetherian*. Then, *closed subsets* of τ are *downwards closed* for \leq_w by construction. As a consequence, if U, V are *open subsets* of τ , and H is a *closed subset* of τ , we have

$$\uparrow_{\leq w} UV \cap H = \uparrow_{\leq w} (U \cap H)(V \cap H) \cap H \quad .$$

4: To be completely precise, one leverages Lemma 7.2.19, stating that expanders need only be checked on a subbasis of the topologies.

Therefore,⁴ it is clear that for every *closed subset* H of τ , the following inclusion holds:

$$E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta(\tau) \downarrow H \subseteq E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H \quad .$$

Furthermore, a simple induction shows that for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $U_1, \dots, U_n \in \tau$ and $W \in \theta$, the set $[U_1, \dots, U_n | W]$ belongs to $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta{}^n(\tau_{\text{triv}})$.

Finally, the only claim left to address is the fact that the *regular transfinite subword topology* is a fixed point of $E_{i\text{-words}}^\theta$. The only technical element is to notice that the sets $[U_1, \dots, U_n | W][V_1, \dots, V_n | W']$ and $[U_1, \dots, U_n | W][V_1, \dots, V_n]$ are always empty, as the length of the words they contain is greater than ω . ■

Corollary 8.1.9. *Let (Σ, θ) be a Noetherian space.*

Then, $(\Sigma^{<\omega+1}, \tau^{\leq\omega}\theta)$ is a Noetherian space.

Let us pause for a moment to appreciate the fact that the original proof did not use a topological minimal bad sequence argument, but rather a decomposition of the behaviours into a “finite part” and an “recurrent part.” The main idea is that given a Noetherian topology over infinite words, and a word $w \in \Sigma^\omega$, one can build the “recurrent letters” of a word as a closed subset defined by $\bigcap_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \{w_j : j < i\}$. Because the topology θ is Noetherian, the decreasing sequence of closed subsets of the adherence of the letters of suffixes is constant after a given $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$. This provides a way to split words that is compatible with the asymptotic topology and allows us to reduce it to a product of two Noetherian spaces (see [47, Section 5] for a full proof).

Let us now shift our attention to general ordinal length words. Again, the original proof [49] does not use a minimal bad sequence argument, but directly computes an upper bound on the stature of the topology to prove that it is Noetherian. As a consequence, the proof is quite technical and relies on the in-depth study of the possible inclusions between the subbasic closed sets. For that reason, the topology was originally given through its closed subsets, and a concrete description of the open subsets has yet to be given.

[49]: Goubault-Larrecq, Halfon and Lopez (2022), *Infinitary Noetherian Constructions II. Transfinite Words and the Regular Subword Topology*

Remark that if $H \subseteq \Sigma$ and $\beta \leq \alpha$, then $H^{<\beta} \subseteq \Sigma^{<\alpha}$ and consists of words of length less than β with all of their letters in H .

Definition 8.1.10 [49]. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space. The *regular transfinite subword topology*, over $\Sigma^{<\alpha}$, written $\theta^{<\alpha}$, is the topology generated by the following closed subsets: $H_1^{<\beta_1} \dots H_n^{<\beta_n}$, for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, H_i closed in θ , $\beta_i < \alpha$.

Before we define a suitable topology expander, given an ordinal β and a set $U \subseteq \Sigma^{<\alpha}$, let us write $[\beta|U]$ as the set of words w such that $w_{>\gamma} \in U$ for every $0 \leq \gamma < \beta$.⁵

5: We have written $w_{>\gamma}$ for the word w where the prefix $w_{\leq\gamma}$ has been removed.

Definition 8.1.11. Let (Σ, θ) be a topological space, and α be an ordinal. The function $E_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ maps a topology τ to the topology generated by the following sets:

- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq w} UV$ for $U, V \in \tau$;
- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq w} [\beta|U]$, for $U \in \tau$, $\beta \leq \alpha$;
- ▶ $\uparrow_{\leq w} W$, for $W \in \theta$.

Let us slowly prove that $E_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ is a topology expander whose least fixed point contains the regular transfinite subword topology. Note that the equality is not known to hold, and that no inductive description of the open subsets of the regular transfinite subword topology is known. The inclusion is sufficient to conclude that the regular transfinite subword topology is Noetherian, this time using a (much shorter) fixed point argument.

Let us first notice that the new constructor of $E_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ preserves Noetherian spaces.

Lemma 8.1.12. *Let (Σ, θ) be a **Noetherian space**, and τ be a **Noetherian topology**. Then $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta(\tau)$ is **Noetherian**.*

Proof. As a consequence of [Lemma 7.2.10](#), the topology generated by the sets $\uparrow_{\leq_w} UV$, and $\uparrow_{\leq_w} W$ is **Noetherian**. Thanks to [Lemma D.6.6](#), it suffices to check that the topology generated by the sets $\uparrow_{\leq_w} [\beta|U]$ is **Noetherian** to conclude that $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta(\tau)$ is too.

For that, consider a bad sequence $[\beta_i|U_i]$ of open sets, indexed by \mathbb{N} . Because for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, $\beta_i < \alpha + 1$, we can extract our sequence so that $\beta_i \leq \beta_j$ when $i \leq j$. The extracted sequence is still bad and infinite. Because τ is **Noetherian**, there exists $i \in \mathbb{N}$, such that $U_i \subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} U_j$. Let us now conclude that $[\beta_i|U_i] \subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} [\beta_j|U_j]$, which is absurd.

Let $w \in [\beta_i|U_i]$, and assume by contradiction that for all $j < i$, there exists a $\gamma_j < \beta_j \leq \beta_i$ such that $w_{>\gamma_j} \notin U_j$. Let $\gamma \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \max_{j < i} \gamma_j < \beta_i$. The word $w_{>\gamma}$ does not belong to U_j for $j < i$, because U_j is upwards closed for \leq_w . As a consequence, $w_{>\gamma} \notin \bigcup_{j < i} U_j$. However, $w_{>\gamma} \in U_i$, which is absurd. ■

It is now an easy check that $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ is a **topology expander**.

Lemma 8.1.13. *Let (Σ, θ) be a **topological space**, and α be an ordinal. The map $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ is a **topology expander**.*

Proof. It is clear that $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ is monotone. Moreover, the closed sets H in $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta(\tau)$ are downwards closed with respect to \leq_w . As a consequence, for every closed subset H , $(\uparrow_{\leq_w} UV) \cap H = (\uparrow_{\leq_w} (U \cap H)(V \cap H)) \cap H$, and $(\uparrow_{\leq_w} [\beta|U]) \cap H = (\uparrow_{\leq_w} [\beta|(U \cap H)]) \cap H$. To conclude that $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ is a **topology expander**, it remains to prove that it preserves **Noetherian topologies**, but this is exactly [Lemma 8.1.12](#). ■

Lemma 8.1.14. *Let (Σ, θ) be a **topological space**, and α be an ordinal. The least fixed point of $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$ contains the **regular transfinite subword topology**.*

Proof. Let us check that every open subset in the **regular transfinite subword topology** is open in the least fixed point of $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$. We prove by induction over n that a product $F_1^{<\beta_1} \dots F_n^{<\beta_n}$ has a complement that is open. The empty product is the set $\{\varepsilon\}$, and is the complement of $\uparrow_{\leq_w} X$, which belongs to the least fixed point of $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$.

Assume that $P \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} F^{<\beta} P'$. By induction hypothesis, P'^c is an open U in the least fixed point topology. Let us prove that $P^c = A \cup B$, where $A \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \uparrow_{\leq_w} \{av : a \notin F \wedge av \in U\}$, and $B \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \uparrow_{\leq_w} [\beta|U]$. To that end, let us first show that A and B are open in the least fixed point of $\mathbf{E}_{\text{o-words}}^\theta$. The set B is open because U is open. Let us prove by induction that whenever U is open and F is closed in θ , the set $F \rtimes U$ defined as $\uparrow_{\leq_w} \{av : a \notin F, av \in U\}$ is open. It is easy to check that $F \rtimes (\uparrow_{\leq_w} W) = \uparrow_{\leq_w} (W \cap F^c) \cup \uparrow_{\leq_w} F^c W$. Moreover, $F \rtimes (\uparrow_{\leq_w} UV) =$

$\uparrow_{\leq_w}(F \rtimes U)V$. Finally, for $\beta \geq 1$, $F \rtimes (\uparrow_{\leq_w}[\beta|U]) = \uparrow_{\leq_w}F^c([\beta'|U])$ with $\beta' = \beta$ if β is limit, and $\beta' = \gamma$ if $\beta = \gamma + 1$.

Let us now prove that $P^c \subseteq A \cup B$. Let $w \notin P$ and distinguish two cases.

- Either there exists a $\gamma < \beta$ such that $w_\gamma \notin F$. In which case we can assume that γ is the smallest ordinal with this property. Then, $w = w_{<\gamma}w_\gamma w_{>\gamma}$. Since $\gamma < \beta$, $w_\gamma \in F^{<\beta}$, hence $w_{\geq\gamma} \in U$ because $w \notin P$. As a consequence, $w \in A$, since $w_\gamma w_{>\gamma} \in A$, and $w_\gamma w_{>\gamma} \leq_w w$.
- Or $w_\gamma \in F$ for every $\gamma < \beta$. However, this proves that $w_{>\gamma} \in U$ for every $\gamma < \beta$, which means that $w \in B$.

Now, let us prove that $A \subseteq P^c$. Because P is downwards closed for \leq_w , it suffices to check that every word av with $a \notin F$ and $av \in U$ lies in P^c . Assume by contradiction that $av \in P$, then $av = u_1u_2$ with $u_1 \in F^{<\beta}$ and $u_2 \in P'$. Because $a \notin F$, this proves that u_1 is the empty word, and that $u_2 = w \in P'$. This is absurd because $w \in U = (P')^c$.

Finally, let us show that $B \subseteq P^c$. Because P is downwards closed for \leq_w it suffices to check that every word $w \in [\beta|U]$ belongs to P^c . Assume by contradiction that such a word w is in P . One can write $w = uv$ with $u \in F^{<\beta}$ and $v \in P'$. However, $|u| = \gamma < \beta$, hence, $v = w_{>\gamma} \in U = (P')^c$ which is absurd.

We have proven that P^c is open. ■

Corollary 8.1.15. *Let (Σ, θ) be a Noetherian space.*

Then, the space $(\Sigma^{<\alpha}, \theta^{<\alpha})$ is a Noetherian space.

Remark that Definitions 7.2.8, 8.1.3 and 8.1.11 all follow the same blueprint: new open sets are built as **upward closures** for the corresponding quasi-order of the natural constructors associated with the space. We argue that this blueprint mitigates the canonicity issue and the complexity of Definitions 6.3.26, 8.1.1 and 8.1.10.

Ordinal branching trees. As an example of a new Noetherian topology derived using Theorem 7.2.33, we will consider α -branching trees $T^{<\alpha}(\Sigma)$, i.e., the least fixed point of the constructor $X \mapsto \Sigma \times X^{<\alpha}$ where α is a given ordinal. This example was not known to be Noetherian, fails to be a well-quasi-order, and illustrates how Theorem 7.2.33 easily applies on inductively defined spaces, based on the “blueprint” of Definitions 7.2.8, 8.1.3 and 8.1.11.

Definition 8.1.16. *Let (Σ, θ) be a Noetherian space, and α be an ordinal. The transfinite subtree expander $E_{\alpha\text{-trees}}^\theta$ maps a topology τ to the topology generated by the sets $\diamond U \langle V \rangle$ where $U \in \theta$, $V \in \tau^{<\alpha}$.*

Definition 8.1.17. *Let (Σ, θ) be a Noetherian space, and α be an ordinal. The transfinite subtree topology over $T^{<\alpha}(\Sigma)$ is the least*

As per ordinal length words, notice that the **tree embedding relation** defined on page 158 naturally generalises to ordinal branching trees. Similarly, the notation $\diamond U \langle V \rangle$ defined on page 208 also makes sense for ordinal branching trees.

fixed point of $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta$.

Lemma 8.1.18. *Let (Σ, θ) be a Noetherian space, and α be an ordinal. The transfinite subtree expander $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta$ is a topology expander.*

Proof. It is clear that $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta$ is monotone, and a closed set of $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta(\tau)$ is always closed under subtrees. Therefore, $\diamond U \langle V \rangle \cap H = \diamond U \langle V \cap H^{<\alpha} \rangle \cap H$. Notice that $H^{<\alpha} \cap V \in (\tau \downarrow H)^{<\alpha}$. As a consequence, $V \cap H \in E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$.

Let us now check that $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta$ preserves Noetherian topologies. Let $W_i \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \diamond U_i \langle V_i \rangle$ be a \mathbb{N} -indexed sequence of open sets in $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta(\tau)$ where τ is Noetherian. The product of the topology θ and the regular transfinite subword topology over τ is Noetherian thanks to Lemma D.6.4 and Corollary 8.1.15. Hence, there exists an $i \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $U_i \times V_i \subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} U_j \times V_j$. As a consequence, $W_i \subseteq \bigcup_{j < i} W_j$. We have proven that $E_{\text{o-trees}}^\theta(\tau)$ is Noetherian. ■

Theorem 8.1.19. *The α -branching trees endowed with the transfinite subtree topology forms a Noetherian space.*

At this point, we have proven that the framework of topology expanders allows us to build non-trivial Noetherian spaces. We argue that this bears several advantages over ad-hoc proofs:

1. the ad-hoc proofs are often tedious and error-prone
2. the proof that E is a topology expander is rather short
3. this proof scheme reduces the canonicity issue of Noetherian topologies to the choice of a suitable topology expander.

8.2. Divisibility Topologies

So far, the process of constructing Noetherian spaces has been the following: first build a set of points, then compute a topology that is Noetherian as a least fixed point. In the case where the set of points itself is inductively defined (such as finite words or finite trees), the second step might seem redundant. By automating the second step, we provide a satisfactory answer to the canonicity concerns about Noetherian topologies.

Before studying inductive definition of topological spaces, the notion of least fixed-point in this setting has to be made precise. To that purpose, let us now introduce some basic notions of category theory. In this paper only three categories will appear, the category **Set** of sets and functions, the category **Top** of topological spaces and continuous maps, and the category **Ord** of quasi-ordered spaces and monotone maps. Using this language, a unary constructor G in the algebra of wqos defines an endofunctor from objects of the category **Ord** to objects of the category **Ord** preserving well-quasi-orderings.

In our study of **Noetherian spaces** (resp. **well-quasi-orderings**), we will often see constructors G' as first building a new set of structures, and then adapting the topology (resp. ordering) to this new set. In categorical terms, we are interested in **endofunctors** G' that are **U-lifts** of **endofunctors** on **Set**, where **U** is the **forgetful functor** from **Top** (resp. **Ord**) to **Set**.

8.2.1. Handling Inductively Defined Datatypes

We are going to work in a framework where the space of interest (words, trees, etc.) is the solution to a least fixed point equation. Recall that both finite trees and finite words can be obtained as least fixed points (see [Fact 7.0.1](#) and [Fact 7.0.2](#)).

We are not only interested in the set of points of the least fixed point, but in the topology/order that one can define over this least fixed point so that it is **Noetherian/wqo**. In the combined proof of [Kruskal's tree theorem](#) and [Higman's lemma](#) ([Theorem 7.1.5](#)), we leveraged a notion of “substructure” ordering ([suffixes](#), [structural subtrees](#)). Similarly, in the examples developed in [Section 8.1](#), we defined our [refinement functions](#) using [upward closures](#) for well-chosen orderings, that allowed us to prove that they were actually [topology expanders](#). Most of this section is devoted to a uniform definition of a “substructure” ordering over inductively defined datatype.

One possible way to design a notion of “substructure” over an inductively defined datatype is to consider type constructors that are **analytic functors**. These are **endofunctors** of **Set** with additional properties that were introduced by Joyal to study “combinatorial classes of structures” in [\[62\]](#). This notion of **analytic functor** was then used by Hasegawa to define a **divisibility preorder** over inductively defined datatypes, and prove that the latter is a **well-quasi-order** under mild assumptions [\[58, Theorem 2.10\]](#). We formally introduce the constructions of Hasegawa in the upcoming [Subsection 8.2.2](#). For now, we are interested in leveraging **analytic functors** to design **Noetherian topologies** over spaces defined as least fixed points. To that end, we will first define what an **analytic functor** is.

Instead of using the classical definition of **analytic functors** given by Joyal, we will take as definition an equivalent characterisation of **analytic functors** that was given by Hasegawa in [\[58\]](#).

Theorem 8.2.1 [\[58, Theorem 1.6\]](#). An **endofunctor** \mathbf{G} of **Set** is an **analytic functor** whenever its **category of elements** $\text{Elt}(\mathbf{G})$ has the **weak normal form property**, and for every **weak normal form** $f \in \text{Hom}((X, x), (Y, y))$ in $\text{Elt}(\mathbf{G})/(Y, y)$, X is a finite set.

Let us now explain the terms employed in [Theorem 8.2.1](#) in the specific setting of the inductive definition of finite words using $\text{CWords}_\Sigma: \mathbf{X} \mapsto \mathbf{1} + \Sigma \times \mathbf{X}$ (see [Fact 7.0.1](#)).⁶ An element w of $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(\mathbf{X})$ is either the unique element \star of $\mathbf{1}$, or a pair (a, u) with $a \in \Sigma$ and $u \in \mathbf{X}$. As a consequence, the same word w is also an element of $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(\{u\})$, and

[\[62\]](#): Joyal (1986), ‘Foncteurs analytiques et espèces de structures’

[\[58\]](#): Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

6: The map CWords_Σ defines a functor by stating that $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(f)(\star) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \star$ and $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(f)((a, u)) = (a, f(u))$ whenever $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is a function.

7: The definition below only works on **Set**: we use the notion of membership, and explicitly require that morphisms are maps.

even an element of $\mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(\emptyset)$ if $w = \star$. The idea of the **category of elements** and the notion of **weak normal form** is to extract, for an element $w \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(X)$, a “minimal” set X' such that $w \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(X')$. The objects of interest for us are therefore pairs (X, w) such that $w \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(X)$, which forms what is known as the **category of elements**.⁷

Definition 8.2.2. Given \mathbf{G} an **endofunctor** of **Set**, the **category of elements** $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})$ has as **objects** pairs (X, x) with $x \in \mathbf{G}(X)$, and as **morphisms** between (X, x) and (Y, y) maps $c: X \rightarrow Y$ such that $\mathbf{G}(c)(x) = y$.

Intuitively, an element (X, x) in $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})$ is a witness that x can be produced through \mathbf{G} by using elements of X . Morphisms in the **category of elements** are witnessing how relations between elements of $\mathbf{G}(X)$ and $\mathbf{G}(Y)$ arise from relations between X and Y .

The “weak normal forms” that are yet to be defined are morphisms f in the **slice category** $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})/(Y, y)$, which we define hereafter.

Definition 8.2.3. Given an object A in a category \mathcal{C} , the **slice category** \mathcal{C}/A is the category whose **objects** are elements of $\mathbf{Hom}(B, A)$ when B ranges over objects of \mathcal{C} and **morphisms** between $c_1 \in \mathbf{Hom}(B_1, A)$ and $c_2 \in \mathbf{Hom}(B_2, A)$ are **morphisms** $f \in \mathbf{Hom}(B_1, B_2)$ such that $c_2 \circ f = c_1$.

Let us unfold the definition in the specific case of $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})$ hereafter to gain intuition about the objects and morphisms in this category.

Fact 8.2.4. Let \mathbf{G} be an **endofunctor** of **Set**, and (Y, y) be an object of $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})$, that is, $y \in \mathbf{G}(Y)$.

The objects of the **slice category** $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})/(Y, y)$ are morphisms $c \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (Y, y))$, that is, maps $c: X \rightarrow Y$ such that $\mathbf{G}(c)(x) = y$.

The morphisms f between two objects $c_1 \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (Y, y))$ and $c_2 \in \mathbf{Hom}((X', x'), (Y, y))$ of the **slice category** $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})/(Y, y)$ are maps $f: X \rightarrow X'$ that satisfy the following equations: $c_1 = c_2 \circ f$, and $\mathbf{G}(f)(x) = x'$.

The **slice category** is used to abstract away the concrete representation of the elements in $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{G})$. Concretely, for \mathbf{CWords}_Σ , an element of the **slice category** $\mathbf{Elt}(\mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma)/(Y, y)$, where $y \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(Y)$ is taken to be different from \star (i.e., $y = (a, y')$ for some $a \in \Sigma$ and $y' \in Y$) is given by the following data

- A set X and an element $x \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(X)$,
- A function $c: X \rightarrow Y$ such that $\mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(c)(x) = y = (a, y')$. In particular, we obtain that x must be different from \star , and therefore $x = (b, x')$ for some $b \in \Sigma$ and $x' \in X$. From this, we conclude that $\mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(c)(x) = (b, c(x'))$, thus that $a = b$ and $c(x) = y'$.

From the above reasoning, we conclude that an element of the [slice category](#) (in the case of $y \neq \star$) is “essentially” a set X , a point $x' \in X$, and a map $c: X \rightarrow Y$ such that $c(x') = y'$. Note that there are absolutely no constraints on what c should be doing for elements in $X \setminus \{x'\}$.

Let us now argue how this abstracts the pair $y = (a, y')$. We can represent it as an element of the slice category as follows: $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{y'\}$ and $c: y' \mapsto y'$, but also as the following simple set: $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 1$, and $c: \star \mapsto y'$. The actual “content” of y' is hidden in the definition of the map c .

The example of \mathbf{CTrees}_Σ (associated with finite trees) is better suited to explain the pertinence of this notion than \mathbf{CWords}_Σ . An element $y \in \mathbf{CTrees}_\Sigma(Y)$ is a pair $(a, y_1 \cdots y_n)$ with $a \in \Sigma$ and $y_i \in X$ for every $1 \leq i \leq n$. One can construct the set $Y \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{y_1, \dots, y_n\}$ and notice that $y \in \mathbf{CTrees}_\Sigma(Y)$. To reason about the way that t is constructed, the actual values of y_1, \dots, y_n are not relevant, and we can abstract Y as $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{1, \dots, |Y|\}$. Now, the tree $y = (a, y_1 \cdots y_n)$ can be represented in $\mathbf{CTrees}_\Sigma(X)$ by choosing a bijective map $f: X \rightarrow Y$, and defining $x \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (a, f^{-1}(y_1) \cdots f^{-1}(y_n))$. Remark that any choice of bijective function $f: X \rightarrow Y$ leads to a map from $\mathbf{CTrees}_\Sigma(X)$ to $\mathbf{CTrees}_\Sigma(Y)$, but only one actually maps x_i to y_i . What we are noticing, is that the [slice category](#) allows us to retain from the construction of words and trees the “combinatorial information:” what element were actually used, where those elements were used, but without considering the actual values of the elements.

In order to build the “minimal” object in the [slice category](#), we see that in the case of trees we have to reason “up to permutations,” which is precisely what the notion of [transitive object](#) is made for.

Definition 8.2.5. A [transitive object](#) in a [category](#) \mathcal{C} is an [object](#) X satisfying the following two conditions for every [object](#) A of \mathcal{C} :

1. the collection $\mathbf{Hom}(X, A)$ in \mathcal{C} is non-empty;
2. the right action of $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ on $\mathbf{Hom}(X, A)$ by composition is transitive, that is, for all $f, g \in \mathbf{Hom}(X, A)$, there exists a $h \in \mathbf{Aut}(X)$, such that $f \circ h = g$.

We write $\mathbf{Aut}(X)$ for the collection of [automorphisms](#) of X , that is, of maps $f \in \mathbf{Hom}(X, X)$ such that there exists $g \in \mathbf{Hom}(X, X)$ that satisfies $g \circ f = f \circ g = \text{Id}_X$. In the case of [Set](#), these are real bijections.

The intuition behind [Definition 8.2.5](#) is that the [transitive object](#) X represents something that appears inside every [object](#) of the category *up to permutations*. Concretely, for every object $A \in \mathcal{C}$, there is a map $f \in \mathbf{Hom}(X, A)$, and for any other map $g \in \mathbf{Hom}(X, A)$, there exists a “permutation” $\sigma \in \mathbf{Aut}(X)$, such that $g \circ \sigma = f$.

To witness the way permutations may appear, the example of \mathbf{CTrees}_Σ is not ideal because of the uniqueness property of the morphism $f \in \mathbf{Hom}(X, A)$ (see the paragraph before the definition of a [transitive object](#)): the automorphism group is trivial.

Instead, one can work with the finite multiset functor, that maps a set X to the collection of its finite multisets (with the natural definition on morphisms). For this functor, a [transitive object](#) in the [slice category](#)

of an object $(\mathbb{N}, \{1, 1, 1, 3, 2\})$ is the morphism

$$c \in \text{Hom}((\{a, b, c, d, e\}, \{a, b, c, d, e\}), (\mathbb{N}, \{1, 1, 1, 3, 2\})),$$

such that $a \mapsto 1, b \mapsto 1, c \mapsto 1, d \mapsto 3, e \mapsto 2$. Indeed, given

$$d \in \text{Hom}((Z, M_Z), (\mathbb{N}, \{1, 1, 1, 3, 2\})),$$

we can define $f: \{a, b, c, d, e\} \rightarrow Z$ by selecting, inside M_Z the elements that are mapped to 1 (there are exactly 3 of them) and choosing a bijection between those and $\{a, b, c\}$, selecting the elements that map to 3 (there is exactly one element in M_Z that maps to 3) and map d to this element, and proceeding similarly for 2. While there was a single possibility to define f with respect to d and e (we must find an element that maps to 3 or 2 and belongs to M_Z), we can choose any bijection between $\{a, b, c\}$ and the three elements of M_Z that map to 1 through d . More precisely, *any* morphism $f' \in \text{Hom}((\{a, b, c, d, e\}, \{a, b, c, d, e\}), (Z, M_Z))$ such that $d \circ f = c$ must coincide with f on d and e , and only permutes the image of f over a, b, c , which is precisely the definition of a **transitive object**.

Definition 8.2.6. A *weak normal form* of an object A in a category \mathcal{C} is a **transitive object** in \mathcal{C}/A .

We now have all the necessary definitions to introduce the last undefined term of **Theorem 8.2.1**.

Definition 8.2.7. A category \mathcal{C} has the *weak normal form property* whenever every object A has a **weak normal form**.

Let us now formally prove that CWords_Σ is an **analytic functor**, which should help the reader to digest the above definitions.

Example 8.2.8. Let Σ be a set. The **Set-endofunctor** CWords_Σ is an **analytic functor**.

Proof. Let $(X, w) \in \text{Elt}(\text{CWords}_\Sigma)$. By definition of CWords_Σ , either $w = \star$ (where \star is the unique element of **1**) or $w = (a, u)$ with $a \in \Sigma$ and $u \in X$.

In the first case, let us define $\iota \in \text{Hom}((\emptyset, \star), (X, w))$ via $\iota(\star) = \star$. It is a morphism in $\text{Elt}(\text{CWords}_\Sigma)$ because $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(\iota)(\star) = \star$. As a consequence, it is an element of $\text{Elt}(\text{CWords}_\Sigma)/(X, w)$. Notice that \emptyset is finite, and that it suffices for us to prove that ι is a **transitive object** to conclude. Let $f \in \text{Hom}((Y, v), (X, w))$ be a morphism in $\text{Elt}(\text{CWords}_\Sigma)$. Then $f: Y \rightarrow X$, and $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(f)(v) = w$. In particular, $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(f)(v) = \star$, hence $v = \star$. Let us define g as the unique map from \emptyset to Y . Then, g satisfies that $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(g)(\star) = \star = v$, and $f \circ g = \iota$. As a consequence, g is a morphism between ι and f in the **slice category**. Furthermore, any other map $g': \emptyset \rightarrow Y$, hence must be equal to g .

In the second case, let us define $\iota \in \text{Hom}(\{\{u\}, (a, u)\}, (X, w))$ via $\iota(u) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} u$, which is a morphism because $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(\iota)((a, u)) = (a, \iota(u)) = (a, u) = w$. Notice that $\{u\}$ is a finite set, and that it suffices to prove that ι is a **transitive object** in $\text{Elt}(\text{CWords}_\Sigma)/(X, w)$ to conclude. Let $f \in \text{Hom}((Y, v), (X, w))$ be an element of $\text{Elt}(\text{CWords}_\Sigma)/(X, w)$. Then, $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(f)(v) = w = (a, u)$. In particular, $v \neq \star$, and $v = (a, u')$ for some $u' \in Y$. Let us define $g: \{u\} \rightarrow Y$ via $g(u) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} u'$. Then, $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(g)((a, u)) = (a, g(u)) = (a, u') = v$, and g is a morphism in $\text{Hom}(\{\{u\}, (a, u)\}, (Y, v))$. Furthermore, $f \circ g = \iota$, and therefore g is a morphism from ι to f in the **slice category**. Finally, let g' be another morphism in $\text{Hom}(\{\{u\}, (a, u)\}, (Y, v))$. Then, $\text{CWords}_\Sigma(g')((a, u)) = v = (a, u')$, and this implies that $g'(u) = u'$. In particular, we have proven that $g' = g$. ■

In the above example, we saw that the notion of **weak normal form** (see Definition 8.2.6) captures the “minimal information needed to build an object” in the specific case of CWords_Σ . Let us illustrate this fact again for a more involved **Set-endofunctor**. For that, recall that there exists a canonical map $\text{letters}: \Sigma^* \rightarrow \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(\Sigma)$ that maps a word $w \in \Sigma^*$ to the finite set of its letters.

Example 8.2.9. The **Set-endofunctor** $\square^*: X \mapsto X^*$ is an **analytic functor**. Moreover, a **weak normal form** of an element (X, w) in the category of elements $\text{Elt}(\square^*)$ is the morphism

$$\iota \in \text{Hom}((\text{letters}(w), w), (X, w)) \quad ,$$

where $\iota(a) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} a$ for all $a \in \text{letters}(w)$.

Example 8.2.10. The **Set-endofunctor** $\square^{<\omega+1}: X \mapsto X^{<\omega+1}$ is not an **analytic functor**.

Proof. Let $e \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\mathbb{N}, (i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}})$ be an element in $\text{Elt}(\square^{<\omega+1})$. Let $f \in \text{Hom}((S, s), e)$ be a **weak normal form** of e . By definition, $s \in S^{<\omega+1}$, $f(S) \subseteq \mathbb{N}$, and $f^{<\omega+1}(s) = (f(s_i))_{i \in \mathbb{N}} = (i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$. This implies that S is infinite, hence $\square^{<\omega+1}$ is not an **analytic functor**. ■

For finite words and finite trees, the notions of **suffix ordering** and **structural subtree ordering** where crucial parts of the minimal bad sequence arguments in Theorems 6.3.24 and 6.3.25. Moreover, they appear crucially when checking that $\mathbf{E}_{\text{words}}^\theta$ and $\mathbf{E}_{\text{trees}}^\theta$ are **topology expanders** (see Corollary 7.2.15 and Lemma 8.1.4).

In order to define this notion of structural embedding in general, let us first notice that analytic functors come with a definition of “support”: an element $a \in F(X)$ can be seen as being built using finitely many elements in X . This is the intuitive meaning behind the following formal proposition/definition.

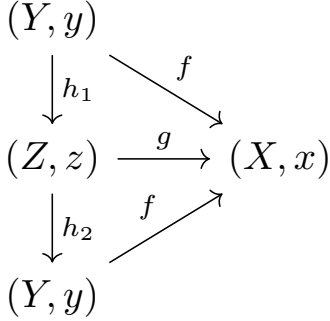


Figure 8.1.: Since f and g are transitive objects of $\text{Elt}(F)/(X, x)$, there exists functions h_1, h_2 such that the above diagram commutes in $\text{Elt}(F)$.

$$F(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma \times X + 1$$

$$\text{support}_X((a, b)) = \{b\}$$

$$\text{support}_X(1) = \emptyset$$

$$F(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Sigma \times X^*$$

$$\text{support}_X((a, w)) = \text{letters}(w)$$

$$F(X) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \mathsf{T}(X)$$

$$\text{support}_X(t) = \text{nodes}(t)$$

Figure 8.2.: Examples of analytic functors and their corresponding support functions.

[58]: Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

[67]: Lambek (1968), ‘A Fixpoint Theorem for complete Categories.’

Definition 8.2.11. Let F be an analytic functor, (X, x) be an element in $\text{Elt}(F)$ and $f \in \text{Hom}((Y, y), (X, x))$ be a weak normal form of (X, x) . We define $f(Y)$ as the support of x in X , written $\text{support}_X(x)$.

Proof that the above definition does not depend on Y . Let F be an analytic functor, (X, x) be an element in $\text{Elt}(F)$. Let f be an element of $\text{Hom}((Y, y), (X, x))$, g be an element of $\text{Hom}((Z, z), (X, x))$, and assume that both f and g are weak normal forms of (X, x) in $\text{Elt}(F)$. Let us prove that $f(Z) = g(Y)$.

Since f and g are transitive objects of $\text{Elt}(F)/(X, x)$, there exists functions h_1, h_2 such that the diagram of Figure 8.1 commutes in $\text{Elt}(F)$.

Because f is a transitive object, $\text{Hom}(f, f) = \text{Aut}(f)$ in $\text{Elt}(F)/(X, x)$. As a consequence, the morphism $h_1; h_2$ is an automorphism, and in particular $h_2 \circ h_1$ is a bijection of Y into itself. Finally,

$$f(Y) = f(h_2(h_1(Y))) = g(h_1(Y)) = g(Z) \quad \blacksquare$$

We provide the support functions associated with some analytic functors in Figure 8.2, in order to justify the name and intuition about their definition.

Remark 8.2.12. Let F be an analytic functor, (X, x) be an element of F . Then, $f: \text{support}_X(x) \rightarrow X$ defined as the identity map is a morphism in $\text{Hom}((\text{support}_X(x), x), (X, x))$ that is a weak normal form of (X, x) .

Remark 8.2.13. Let F be an analytic functor, $Y \subseteq X$ be sets, and $x \in F(X)$. Then, $x \in F(Y)$ if and only if $\text{support}_X(x) \subseteq Y$.

Let us now fix F to be an analytic functor from **Set** to **Set**, and let us consider an initial algebra $(\mu G, \delta)$ where μF is a set, and $\delta: F(\mu F) \rightarrow \mu F$ is a function. Such an initial algebra always exists for analytic functors thanks to [58, Lemma 1.26]. We refer the reader to Definition F.2.3 for a formal definition of the notion of initial algebra, and for the rest of the section, we will simply use Lambek’s lemma [67] to conclude that δ is an isomorphism in **Set**, i.e., that δ is a bijection between μF and $F(\mu F)$. Leveraging our notion of support, we define a structural ordering on an initial algebra as follows.

Definition 8.2.14. Let G be an analytic functor and let $(\mu G, \delta)$ be an initial algebra of G . We say that $a \in \mu G$ is a child of $b \in \mu G$ whenever $a = b$ or $a \in \text{support}_{\mu G}(\delta^{-1}(b))$.

The transitive closure of the child relation is called the substructure ordering of μG and written \sqsubseteq .

Let us check that this abstract definition actually specialises into the usual **suffix ordering** and **structural subtree ordering** when applied to \mathbf{CWords}_Σ and \mathbf{CTrees}_Σ .

Example 8.2.15. The **substructure ordering** associated with the **initial algebra** (Σ^*, δ) of \mathbf{CWords}_Σ is the **suffix ordering**. Where $\delta(\star)$ is defined as ε , and $\delta((a, u))$ is defined as au .

Proof. Referring to Figure 8.2, we know that $\text{support}_{\Sigma^*}(\delta^{-1}(\varepsilon)) = \emptyset$, and $\text{support}_{\Sigma^*}(\delta^{-1}(au)) = \{u\}$. As a consequence, an easy induction proves that $u \sqsubseteq w$ if and only if $u \leq_{\text{suf}} w$. ■

Example 8.2.16. The **substructure ordering** associated with the **initial algebra** $(\mathbf{T}(\Sigma), \delta)$ of \mathbf{CTrees}_Σ is the **structural subtree ordering**. Where $\delta((a, u)) = a(u)$.

Proof. Referring to Figure 8.2, we know that if $t = a(t_1, \dots, t_n) \in \mathbf{T}(\Sigma)$, then $\text{support}_{\mathbf{T}(\Sigma)}(\delta^{-1}(t)) = \{t_1, \dots, t_n\}$. As a consequence, an easy induction proves that $t \sqsubseteq t'$ if and only if $t \leq_{\text{t-suf}} t'$. ■

We leverage the notion of substructure ordering to define a suitable **topology expander** over initial algebras of analytic functors.⁸ Note that this ordering appears implicitly in the construction of [58, Definition 2.7].

8: Recall that these **initial algebras** always exist for **analytic functors**, see [58, Lemma 1.26].

[58]: Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

Definition 8.2.17. Let $\bar{G}: \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$ be a **U-lift** of an **analytic functor** G , and $(\mu F, \delta)$ an **initial algebra** of G .

Let us define the **divisibility expander** $\mathbf{E}[\bar{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$ as the topology generated by the sets $\uparrow_{\sqsubseteq} \delta(U)$, where U ranges over the open subsets of $\bar{G}(\mu F, \tau)$ (recall that \sqsubseteq was introduced in Definition 8.2.14).

Using this definition of $\mathbf{E}[\bar{G}]_\diamond$, we can uniformly equip the **initial algebras** of F with a topology as follows.

Definition 8.2.18. Let \bar{G} be a **U-lift** of an **analytic functor** G . Let $(\mu F, \delta)$ be an **initial algebra** of G , the **divisibility topology** over μG with respect to \bar{G} is defined as $\text{lfp}_\tau. \mathbf{E}[\bar{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$.

Recall that a **topological embedding** is a way of generalising subspaces with the induced topology by allowing to consider bijections between the carrier sets. Formally, a map h is an embedding when it is a **homeomorphism** onto its image (see Definition D.3.3). This extra hypothesis easily entails that the **divisibility expander** is a **refinement function**.

Lemma 8.2.19. Let $\bar{G}: \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$ be an **U-lift** of an **analytic functor** G , and let $(\mu F, \delta)$ be an **initial algebra** of G . Moreover, we suppose that \bar{G} preserves **topological embeddings**. Then, the map

$\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond$ is a refinement function.

Proof. Let us prove that $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond$ sends Noetherian topologies to Noetherian topologies. Let τ be a Noetherian topology. Let $(\uparrow_{\sqsubseteq} \delta(U_i))_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a sequence of subbasic open subsets of $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$. Because $\tilde{G}(\mu F, \tau)$ is a Noetherian space, there exists $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\bigcup_{i \leq n_0} U_i \supseteq \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} U_i$. Now, we conclude that $\bigcup_{i \leq n_0} \delta(U_i) \supseteq \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \delta(U_i)$, which implies that the desired inclusion holds: $\bigcup_{i \leq n_0} \uparrow_{\sqsubseteq} \delta(U_i) \supseteq \bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \uparrow_{\sqsubseteq} \delta(U_i)$.

Let us show that $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond$ is monotone. Consider $\tau \subseteq \tau'$ two topologies on μF . Let us write $X \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\mu F, \tau)$ and $Y \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (\mu F, \tau')$. By definition of the inclusion of topologies, the identity map over μF can be lifted to a continuous function $\iota: X \rightarrow Y$ in \mathbf{Top} . Because \tilde{G} is a U-lift, $\mathbf{U}\tilde{G} = G\mathbf{U}$, we conclude that $\mathbf{U}(X) = \mathbf{U}(Y) = G(\mu F)$. Moreover, $\mathbf{U}\tilde{G}(\iota) = G\mathbf{U}(\iota) = G(\text{Id}_{\mu F}) = \text{Id}_{\mu F}$. As a consequence, $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau) \subseteq \mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau')$. ■

In order to prove that $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond$ is a topology expander, we will first have to understand how the property of \tilde{G} being a functor translates in terms of sub-spaces, and then in terms of subset restrictions. The following fact helps us do this translation.

Fact 8.2.20. Let $\tilde{G}: \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$ be a U-lift of an analytic functor G , and $(\mu F, \delta)$ an initial algebra of G . Let us consider a Noetherian topology τ such that $\tau \subseteq \mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$, and a closed subset H of τ . Then, $\delta^{-1}(H) \subseteq G(H)$.

Proof. Let $t \in H$, because H is downwards closed for \sqsubseteq , for every $u \in \text{support}_{\mu F}(\delta^{-1}(t))$, $u \in H$. As a consequence, $\text{support}_{\mu F}(\delta^{-1}(t)) \subseteq H$, and this means that $\delta^{-1}(t) \in G(H)$ because of Remark 8.2.13. ■

We are now ready to state the main theorem, that the divisibility expander is indeed a topology expander.

Theorem 8.2.21. Let $\tilde{G}: \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$ be a U-lift of an analytic functor G , and $(\mu F, \delta)$ an initial algebra of G . Moreover, we suppose that \tilde{G} preserves topological embeddings. Then, the map $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond$ is a topology expander.

Proof. Let us consider a Noetherian topology τ such that $\tau \subseteq \mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$, a closed subset H of τ , and let us prove that

$$\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau) \downarrow H \subseteq \mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H \quad .$$

Let $U = \uparrow_{\sqsubseteq} \delta(V)$ be a subbasic open subset of $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$. Recall that H is a closed subset of $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$ because $\tau \subseteq \mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\tau)$. Therefore, we can

leverage [Fact 8.2.20](#) to derive the following equality

$$\begin{aligned}
 U \cap H &= (\uparrow_{\sqsubseteq}(\delta(V))) \cap H \\
 &= (\uparrow_{\sqsubseteq}(\delta(V) \cap H)) \cap H && \text{because } H = \downarrow_{\sqsubseteq} H \\
 &= (\uparrow_{\sqsubseteq}(\delta(V) \cap \delta(G(H)))) \cap H && \text{because } H \subseteq \delta(G(H)) \\
 &= (\uparrow_{\sqsubseteq}(\delta(V \cap G(H)))) \cap H && \text{because } \delta \text{ is bijective.}
 \end{aligned}$$

To conclude that $U \cap H$ is open in $\mathbf{E}[\bar{G}]_{\diamond}(\tau \downarrow H) \downarrow H$ it suffices to show that $V \cap G(H)$ can be rewritten as $W \cap G(H)$ where W is open in $\bar{G}(\mu F, \tau \downarrow H)$. To that end, let us consider the two inclusion maps $e_1: (H, \tau_H) \rightarrow (\mu F, \tau)$, and $e_2: (H, \tau_H) \rightarrow (\mu F, \tau \downarrow H)$. These two maps are [topological embeddings](#) by definition, hence preserved by \bar{G} . As a consequence, $V \cap G(H) = G(e_1)^{-1}(V)$, which is open because $\bar{G}(e_1)$ is a topological embedding and V is an open subset. Because $\bar{G}(e_2)$ is an embedding, there exists an open subset W of $\bar{G}(\mu F, \tau \downarrow H)$ such that $G(e_2)^{-1}(W) = V \cap G(H)$. This can be rewritten as $W \cap G(H) = V \cap G(H)$. ■

Because we have built a [topology expander](#), we are now able to associate a [Noetherian topology](#) to a wide range of [analytic functors](#).

Corollary 8.2.22. *Let $\bar{G}: \mathbf{Top} \rightarrow \mathbf{Top}$ be a [U-lift](#) of an [analytic functor](#) that preserves [topological embeddings](#). Then, for every [initial algebra](#) $(\mu G, \delta)$ of G , the [divisibility topology](#) over μG with respect to the lift \bar{G} is [Noetherian](#).*

As a sanity check, we apply [Theorem 8.2.21](#) to the sets of finite words and finite trees, and we recover the [subword topology](#) and the [tree topology](#) that were obtained in an ad-hoc fashion before. In addition to validating the usefulness of [Corollary 8.2.22](#), we believe that these are strong indicators that the topologies introduced prior to this work were the right generalisations of [Higman's word embedding](#) and [Kruskal's tree embedding](#) in a topological setting, and addresses the canonicity issue of the aforementioned topologies.

Lemma 8.2.23. *The [subword topology](#) over Σ^* , is the [divisibility topology](#) over Σ^* seen as an [initial algebra](#) of $C\mathbf{Words}_{\Sigma}$.*

Proof. It suffices to remark that the functions $\mathbf{E}[C\mathbf{Words}_{\Sigma}]_{\diamond}$ and $\mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{words}}^{\theta}$ have the same least fixed point, and conclude using [Lemma 7.2.9](#). For that, let us compute $\mathbf{E}[C\mathbf{Words}_{\Sigma}]_{\diamond}(\tau)$.

We know from [Example 8.2.15](#) that the [substructure ordering](#) for words is the [suffix ordering](#). As a consequence, $\mathbf{E}[C\mathbf{Words}_{\Sigma}]_{\diamond}(\tau)$ is generated by the sets of the form $\uparrow_{\leq_{\text{suf}}} WV$, where W is an open subset of Σ and $V \in \tau$.

It then follows from an easy (transfinite) induction that [open subsets](#) in $\mathbf{E}[C\mathbf{Words}_{\Sigma}]_{\diamond}^{\alpha}(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ are all upwards closed for the [subword ordering](#).

As a consequence, $\mathbf{E}[C\mathbf{Words}_{\Sigma}]_{\diamond}^{\alpha}(\tau_{\text{triv}}) = \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{words}}^{\theta}{}^{\alpha}(\tau_{\text{triv}})$ for all α . ■

Lemma 8.2.24. *The **tree topology** over $\mathsf{T}(\Sigma)$, is the **divisibility topology** over $\mathsf{T}(\Sigma)$ seen as an **initial algebra** of CTrees_Σ .*

Proof. The proof follows the exact same pattern as Lemma 8.2.23, except that Lemma 8.1.4 already considers the **structural subtree ordering** hence expanding the definition shows the equality of the two expanders immediately. ■

8.2.2. A Correctness Result

We have provided a general definition of a **divisibility topology** on inductively defined datatypes. However, we only checked on two examples (finite words and finite trees) that this definition was sound. Let us strengthen this result by proving in full generality that the divisibility topology correctly generalises the corresponding notions on quasi-orderings. In the case of finite words, this translates to the equation $\mathsf{Alex}(\leq)^{\star, \mathsf{t}} = \mathsf{Alex}((\leq)_w)$ [45, Exercise 9.7.30]. We do this by relating the **divisibility topology** to the **divisibility preorder** introduced by [58, Definition 2.7].

Let us quickly go through the definition of the divisibility preorder given by Hasegawa in [58, Section 2.2]. Let $\bar{G}: \mathsf{Ord} \rightarrow \mathsf{Ord}$ be a **U-lift** of an **analytic functor** G that respects **embeddings** and **well-quasi-orderings**, let us build a family A_i of quasi-orders and $e_i: A_i \rightarrow A_{i+1}$ of embeddings as follows:

- $A_0 = \emptyset$, $A_1 = \bar{G}(A_0)$ and e_0 is the empty map.
- $e_{n+1} = \bar{G}(e_n)$ and A_{n+1} has as carrier set $G(A_n)$ and as preordering \preceq_{n+1} the transitive closure of the union of the two following relations:
 - the quasi-order $\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)}$,
 - the collection of $b \triangleleft_{n+1} a$ for each **weak normal form** $f \in \mathsf{Hom}((X, z), (A_n, a))$ in $\mathsf{Elt}(G)$ and each $b \in \mathsf{Im}(e_n \circ f)$.

The **divisibility ordering** \preceq is the ω -inductive limit in the category Ord of the diagram $A_0 \xrightarrow{e_0} A_1 \xrightarrow{e_1} \dots$. As remarked by Hasegawa, the maps e_n are injective **order embeddings**, and so are the morphisms $c_n: A_n \rightarrow \mu F$ of the colimiting cone [58, Lemma 2.8]. Without loss of generality, we can assume that $A_0 \subseteq A_1 \dots$ and that the colimit $(\mu F, \delta)$ is the union of the sets A_i for $0 \leq i < \omega$. In particular, δ is the identity map in this setting.

In order to illustrate this definition, let us take as a concrete example the case of finite words over an (ordered) alphabet (Σ, \leq) , and see that we indeed recover the **subword ordering**. In this case, the functor \bar{G} is CWords_Σ equipped with the natural **product** and **sum** orderings. We have $A_0 = \emptyset$ by definition. Then, $A_1 = \mathsf{CWords}_\Sigma(A_0) = \Sigma \times \emptyset + \mathbf{1}$, i.e., $A_1 = \mathbf{1}$. Moreover, $e_0: A_0 \rightarrow A_1$ is the empty map. Because $A_{n+1} = \mathsf{CWords}_\Sigma(A_n)$, an easy induction proves that A_{n+1} is the set of finite words over Σ length at most n . Moreover, a similar induction proves that the function e_n is the identity sending words of length at most n to words of length at most $n+1$. Let us now describe the orderings of the sets $(A_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$, and in particular prove that A_{n+1} is equipped with

[45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*

[58]: Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

the **subword ordering** restricted to words of length at most n . Let us decompile the two relations that make the ordering over A_{n+1} :

- $u, v \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(A_n)$ are related for $\mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(A_n)$ if and only if $u = v = 1$ or $u = (a, u')$, $v = (b, v')$, $a \leq b$ and $u' \leq v'$ in A_n . In terms of finite words and using the induction hypothesis that A_n is equipped with the **subword ordering**, this translates to $u = v = \varepsilon$ or $u = au'$, $v = bv'$, $a \leq b$ and $u' \leq_w v'$.
- $u, v \in \mathbf{CWords}_\Sigma(A_n)$ satisfy $u \triangleleft_{n+1} v$ if and only if there exists a **weak normal form** $f \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (A_n, v))$ such that $u \in \mathbf{Im}(e_n \circ f)$. In particular, $u = e_n(f(c))$ for some $c \in X$, and by definition of the **support**, $u = e_n(v')$ for some $v' \in \mathbf{support}_{A_n}(v)$. Thanks to the computations of Figure 8.2, this last equation is rewritten as $v = bv'$. As a consequence, $u = e_n(v') = v'$, since e_n is the identity function.

As a consequence of this case analysis, the preorder \preceq_{n+1} over A_{n+1} is the **transitive closure** of the following two relations: the first relation compares the first letters pointwise, and the suffixes using **subword ordering**, and the second relation is the **suffix ordering**. We easily recognise the (recursive) description of the **subword ordering** given in Figure 7.2.

Hopefully, one has gained a some intuition about Hasegawa's construction, and in particular the following lemma relating the construction of the ordering on A_{n+1} to the notion of **support** of the functor G should not be surprising. Because the proof is mainly “symbol pushing”, it can safely be skipped as all the intuitions already have been introduced prior to the lemma.

Lemma 8.2.25. *For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, for all $a, b \in A_{n+1}$, $b \triangleleft_{n+1} a$ if and only if $b \in \mathbf{support}_{\mu F}(a)$.*

Proof \Rightarrow . Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $a, b \in A_{n+1}$ such that $b \triangleleft_{n+1} a$. There exists a **weak normal form** $f \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (A_n, a))$ such that $b \in \mathbf{Im}(e_n \circ f)$. Notice that $c_n \circ f \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (\mu F, a))$ remains a **weak normal form** thanks to [58, Lemma 1.5]. As a consequence, $c_{n+1}(b) \in \mathbf{Im}(c_{n+1} \circ e_n \circ f)$. However, $c_{n+1} \circ e_n = c_n$ is the inclusion map from A_n to μF . Therefore, $b \in \mathbf{Im}(c_n \circ f) = \mathbf{support}_{\mu F}(a)$. ■

Proof \Leftarrow . Assume that $b \in \mathbf{support}_{\mu F}(a)$. By definition of the support, there exists a **weak normal form** $f \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (\mu F, a))$ such that $b \in \mathbf{Im}(f)$. Remark that the inclusion $c_n: A_n \rightarrow \mu F$ is in fact an object $c_n \in \mathbf{Hom}((A_n, a), (\mu F, a))$ in the slice category $\mathbf{Elt}(G)/(\mu F, a)$. Because f is a **transitive object**, there exists a morphism g from f to c_n in this category, which in particular gives a $g: X \rightarrow A_n$ such that $c_n \circ g = f$. However, this proves that $b \in (c_n \circ g)(X)$, hence $b \in c_n(A_n) = A_n = e_n(A_n)$.

To conclude, it suffices to notice that $g \in \mathbf{Hom}((X, x), (A_n, a))$ is a **weak normal form**, but this is a direct consequence of the fact that f was one. ■

[58]: Hasegawa (2002), ‘Two applications of analytic functors’

Now that we have a better understanding of the relation \triangleleft in terms of support, it is not difficult to mimic the analysis done in the case of finite words, that relates \preceq to the [structural ordering](#) \sqsubseteq .

Corollary 8.2.26. *For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, A_n is a [downwards closed](#) subset of μF for \sqsubseteq .*

Corollary 8.2.27. *For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\preceq_{n+1} = (\sqsubseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)})^*$.*

Corollary 8.2.28. *The preorder \preceq equals $(\sqsubseteq \leq)^*$, i.e., $\sqsubseteq \subseteq \preceq$.*

Analysing [Corollaries 8.2.27](#) and [8.2.28](#), one finds that they are looking similar to the definition of the [divisibility topology expander](#) of a functor. One main difference is that for the divisibility expander, one considers the upward closure of sets, where the above corollaries only talk about transitive closures of relations: i.e, the order of composition is important for the topology expander. It turns out that getting this stratification is not particularly difficult for the [divisibility ordering](#) too.

Lemma 8.2.29. *For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the following equalities hold over A_{n+1}*

$$\preceq_{n+1} \sqsubseteq = (\sqsubseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)})^* \sqsubseteq = \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq$$

Proof. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Thanks to [Corollary 8.2.27](#), it is clear that the first equality holds:

$$\preceq_{n+1} \sqsubseteq = (\sqsubseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)})^* \sqsubseteq .$$

For the second equality, the following inclusion is trivial:

$$(\sqsubseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)})^* \sqsubseteq \supseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq .$$

Let us now prove by induction over $k \in \mathbb{N}$ that the following holds:

$$\forall k \in \mathbb{N}, (\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq)^k \sqsubseteq \subseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq \quad (\text{IH})$$

For $k = 0$, [Equation IH](#) follows from the reflexivity of $\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)}$. Let us now consider the case $k + 1$. For that, let us unpack the definitions and leverage the induction hypothesis to extract the core argument of the proof.

$$\begin{aligned} (\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq)^{k+1} \sqsubseteq &\subseteq (\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq) \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq \\ &= (\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq) \cup (\leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq) \end{aligned}$$

Now, let $a, b \in A_{n+1}$ be such that $a \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \sqsubseteq b$. There exists $c, d, e \in A_{n+1}$ such that $a \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} c \sqsubseteq d \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} e \sqsubseteq b$. As a consequence of $c \sqsubseteq d$ and $e \sqsubseteq b$, $c \in A_n$ and $e \in A_n$. Because $e_n: A_n \rightarrow A_{n+1}$ is an embedding, $c \preceq_{n+1} e$ implies $c \preceq_n e$. Moreover, e_n is a

monotone map from (A_n, \preceq_n) to $(A_{n+1}, \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)})$ by construction. As a consequence, $c \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} e$. We have proven that $a \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} b$, i.e., that $a \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} b$. ■

Corollary 8.2.30. *For every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\preceq_{n+1} = \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)}$.*

Having gained a finer understanding of Hasegawa's construction of the [divisibility preorder](#), we can now provide an inductive definition of its [upwards closed subsets](#). This is the final step in relating the [divisibility topology](#) to the [divisibility preorder](#), as the upwards closed subsets are exactly the [open subsets](#) in an [Alexandroff topology](#).

Lemma 8.2.31. *For every $E \subseteq \mu G$, $\uparrow_{\preceq} E = \uparrow_{\bar{G}(\preceq)} E$.*

Proof. It suffices to notice that $\preceq = \bar{G}(\preceq)$. For that, recall that $x \preceq y$ if and only if there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $x, y \in A_{n+1}$ and $x \preceq_{n+1} y$. Leveraging [Corollary 8.2.30](#), we conclude that $x \preceq y$ if and only if there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $x, y \in A_{n+1}$ and $x \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} y$. The latter is equivalent over A_{n+1} to $x \leq_{\bar{G}(\preceq)} y$ and we have concluded. ■

Lemma 8.2.32. *For all $E \subseteq \mu G$, $\uparrow_{\preceq} \uparrow_{\bar{G}(\preceq \downarrow_{A_n})} E = \uparrow_{\preceq \downarrow_{A_{n+1}}} E$.*

Proof. It suffices to notice that $\bar{G}(\preceq \downarrow_{A_n}) = \preceq \downarrow_{A_{n+1}}$.

Because \bar{G} preserves [order embeddings](#), $\bar{G}(\preceq) = \bar{G}(\preceq \downarrow_{A_n})$ over A_{n+1} .

Recall that $x \preceq y$ if and only if there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $x, y \in A_{n+1}$ and $x \preceq_{n+1} y$. Leveraging [Corollary 8.2.30](#), we conclude that $x \preceq y$ if and only if there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $x, y \in A_{n+1}$ and $x \leq_{\bar{G}(A_n)} y$. Which thanks to the above remark is equivalent to and $x \leq_{\bar{G}(\preceq \downarrow_{A_n})} y$. ■

We now have all the tools to prove the main theorem of this section, namely that the [divisibility preorder](#) is the trace of the [divisibility topology](#) in the realm of [wqos](#). We are now ready to state our correctness theorem, i.e., that the [divisibility topology](#) is a correct generalisation to the topological setting of the [divisibility preorder](#) from Hasegawa.

Theorem 8.2.33. *Let \bar{G} be the lift of an [analytic functor](#) respecting [Alexandroff topologies](#), [Noetherian spaces](#), and [embeddings](#). Then, the [divisibility topology](#) of μG is the [Alexandroff topology](#) of the [divisibility preorder](#) of μG , which is a [well-quasi-ordering](#).*

Proof of the well-quasi-ordering. Assuming that the two topologies coincide, it suffices to notice that the [specialisation preorder](#) of a [Noetherian Alexandroff topology](#) is a [well-quasi-ordering](#). ■

Proof of the first inclusion \subseteq . It suffices to prove that $\mathbf{Alex}(\preceq)$ is a post-fixed point of $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond$.

Let us consider a subbasic open subset $U \in \mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\mathbf{Alex}(\preceq))$. It is of the form $U = \uparrow_{\subseteq} \delta(V)$ for some V open subset of $\tilde{G}(\mu G, \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq))$. Recall that δ is the identity function. Moreover, V is an upwards closed subset of $\tilde{G}(\mu G, \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq))$ in its specialisation preorder $\tilde{G}(\preceq)$. We can leverage Lemma 8.2.31 to conclude:

$$\begin{aligned} \uparrow_{\subseteq} V &= \uparrow_{\subseteq} \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq)} V \\ &= \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq) \subseteq} V \\ &= \uparrow_{\preceq} V \in \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq) \quad . \end{aligned}$$

We have proven that $U \in \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq)$. ■

Proof of the second inclusion \supseteq . It suffices to prove that, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\mathbf{Alex}(\preceq) \downarrow A_n) = \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq) \downarrow A_{n+1}$.

For the first inclusion, let U be a subbasic open subset of the topology $\mathbf{E}[\tilde{G}]_\diamond(\mathbf{Alex}(\preceq) \downarrow A_n)$. It is of the form $U = \uparrow_{\subseteq} \delta(V)$ for some V open subset of the topology $\tilde{G}(\mu G, \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq) \downarrow A_n)$. Because δ is assumed to be the identity map, and $\tilde{G}(\preceq \downarrow A_n)$ is the specialisation preorder of the resulting space, $V = \delta(V) = \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq \downarrow A_n)} V$. We can leverage Lemma 8.2.32 to conclude:

$$\begin{aligned} \uparrow_{\subseteq} V &= \uparrow_{\subseteq} \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq \downarrow A_n)} V \\ &= \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq \downarrow A_n) \subseteq} V \\ &= \uparrow_{\preceq \downarrow A_{n+1}} V \quad . \end{aligned}$$

Conversely, let $U = \uparrow_{\preceq \downarrow A_{n+1}} E$, then $U = \uparrow_{\subseteq} \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq \downarrow A_n)} E$, and $V \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \uparrow_{\tilde{G}(\preceq \downarrow A_n)} E$ is an open subset of $\tilde{G}(\mu G, \mathbf{Alex}(\preceq) \downarrow A_n)$ because the latter is an Alexandroff topology with specialisation preorder $\preceq \downarrow A_n$. ■

8.3. Discussion

Variations on Trees. When considering trees, we have implicitly restricted our attention to unranked, ordered trees of finite height. This was natural because both the [Kruskal tree theorem](#) and [topological Kruskal theorem](#) are formulated on this class of trees. However, it might be interesting to play with other definitions of trees, and their corresponding notions of “tree-embedding” as it was done in [52]. In particular, we hope to obtain the topological analogues of their results stated in terms of [well-quasi-orders](#).

The Divisibility Expander. There is an interesting notion behind the construction of a [divisibility expander](#), namely the notion of a [substructure ordering](#) that accompanies inductive definitions made using [analytic functors](#). The intervention of the [substructure ordering](#) somehow explains why the topologies placed on finite words and finite trees had the “shape” of finite words and finite trees.

[52]: Goubault-Larrecq and Schmitz (2016), ‘Deciding Piecewise Testable Separability for Regular Tree Languages’

Another Correctness Theorem. As mentioned in the introduction of Chapter 7 (Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies), there is another way to inductively construct well-quasi-orderings. Based on the ideas of total order dilators introduced by [42], Freund [36] introduced a categorical construction (not unlike the one of Hasegawa) to study the gap embedding relation between finite trees. Computations are done inside the category **PO** of partial orders and quasi-embeddings. Instead of considering an endofunctor of **PO** that is a **U-lift** of an analytic functor, Freund consider partial order dilators defined as follows.

[42]: Girard (1981), ‘II12-logic, Part 1: Dilators’

[36]: Freund (2020), ‘From Kruskal’s theorem to Friedman’s gap condition’

Definition 8.3.1 [36, Definition 2.1]. A *partial order dilator* (or *PO-dilator*) consists of

- a functor $F: \mathbf{PO} \rightarrow \mathbf{PO}$ that preserves embeddings and
- a natural transformation $\text{supp}^F: F \Rightarrow \mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}$ satisfying the following condition: given any embedding $f: X \rightarrow Y$ of partial orders, the embedding $F(f): F(X) \rightarrow F(Y)$ satisfies $\text{Im}(F(f)) = \{ b \in F(Y) : \text{supp}_Y^F(b) \subseteq \text{Im}(f) \}$.

Whenever F is a **PO-dilator** that preserves well-quasi-orderings, we call it a *WPO-dilator*. A **PO-dilator** is called *normal* when for all (X, \leq) , and $a, b \in F(X)$, $a \leq_F b$ implies $\text{supp}_X^F(a) \leq_{\mathcal{H}} \text{supp}_X^F(b)$.

We believe that an analogue of Theorem 8.2.33 holds for **WPO-dilators**, because the key notion of support is already baked in the definition. Proving such a result however would involve defining a suitable notion of “topology dilator”, and extract the correct notion of “divisibility preorder” from [36, Definition 2.4]. Under these assumptions, we conjecture the following (second) correctness result.

Conjecture 8.3.2. For every topology dilator that respects Alexandroff topologies, Noetherian spaces, and embeddings. The divisibility topology over its initial algebra is the Alexandroff topology of Freund’s divisibility preorder, which is a well-quasi-ordering.

References

- [36] Anton Freund. ‘From Kruskal’s theorem to Friedman’s gap condition’. In: *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science* 30 (2020), pp. 952–975. DOI: [10.1017/s0960129520000298](https://doi.org/10.1017/s0960129520000298) (cit. on pp. 179, 184, 229).
- [42] Jean-Yves Girard. ‘ Π_2 -logic, Part 1: Dilators’. In: *Annals of Mathematical Logic* 21 (1981), pp. 75–219. DOI: [10.1016/0003-4843\(81\)90016-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/0003-4843(81)90016-4) (cit. on p. 229).
- [45] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*. Vol. 22. Cambridge University Press, 2013. DOI: [10.1017/cbo9781139524438](https://doi.org/10.1017/cbo9781139524438) (cit. on pp. 3, 50, 52–54, 139, 159, 178, 179, 185, 186, 192, 193, 203, 208, 224, 239, 254, 255).
- [47] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Infinitary Noetherian Constructions I. Infinite Words’. In: *Colloquium Mathematicum* 168 (2022), pp. 257–268. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.4064/cm8077-4-2021> (cit. on pp. 139, 175, 178, 179, 209–211).
- [49] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Simon Halfon and Aliaume Lopez. *Infinitary Noetherian Constructions II. Transfinite Words and the Regular Subword Topology*. 2022 (cit. on pp. 175, 178, 179, 209, 211).
- [52] Jean Goubault-Larrecq and Sylvain Schmitz. ‘Deciding Piecewise Testable Separability for Regular Tree Languages’. In: *43rd International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP 2016)*. Ed. by Ioannis Chatzigiannakis, Michael Mitzenmacher, Yuval Rabani and Davide Sangiorgi. Vol. 55. Schloss Dagstuhl–Leibniz-Zentrum fuer Informatik, 2016, 97:1–97:15. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.ICALP.2016.97](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.ICALP.2016.97). URL: <http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/6232> (visited on 02/02/2023) (cit. on pp. 3, 228).
- [58] Ryu Hasegawa. ‘Two applications of analytic functors’. In: *Theoretical Computer Science* 272 (2002), pp. 113–175. DOI: [10.1016/S0304-3975\(00\)00349-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-3975(00)00349-2). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0304397500003492> (cit. on pp. 179, 184, 207, 215, 220, 221, 224, 225, 227, 229).
- [62] André Joyal. ‘Foncteurs analytiques et espèces de structures’. In: *Combinatoire énumérative*. Ed. by Gilbert Labelle and Pierre Leroux. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1986, pp. 126–159 (cit. on pp. 215, 239).
- [67] Joachim Lambek. ‘A Fixpoint Theorem for complete Categories’. In: *Mathematische Zeitschrift* 103 (1968), pp. 151–161. URL: <http://eudml.org/doc/170906> (cit. on p. 220).

Part III.

Outlook

Concluding Remarks

9.

Outline of the chapter

This chapter is the last one of this thesis.

Meta Reading Notes. It is quite hard to write a self-contained document that maintains a coherence in the notations, motivations, and still lists widely different results. Even at this stage, it can be argued that Chapter 7 (Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies) and Chapter 8 (Inductive Constructions) are not entirely fitting the big picture of studying preservation theorems. This explains the need for a conjunction in the title of this manuscript.

Reflecting on Locality. There is much to talk about with respect to Chapter 4 (Locality and Preservation) and Chapter 5 (A Local-to-Global Preservation Theorem). The main technical tool that we used in these two sections is the Gaifman locality theorem of first order logic. In view of the proof of Theorem 4.2.2, and the problems arising when using Theorem 5.1.2 on classes that are not sparse, it seems that this notion of locality is too coarse to faithfully represent the semantic properties of FO.

This is not a novel remark, and the notion of “differential games” [38], “twin-width” [9], and the newly introduced “flipper games” [30, 39], all try to account for the intrinsic combinatorial complexity of neighbourhoods. It is possible that the (recurring) proof technique that uses the notion of covering points and generic points can be adapted to this setting of “neighbourhood similarity”, leading to better local normal forms and/or a strengthening of the local-to-global technique of Theorem 5.1.2.

Reflecting on Noetherian Constructions. There are plenty of open questions and conjectures in Chapter 7 (Topology expanders and Noetherian Topologies) and in Chapter 8 (Inductive Constructions). However, there is a deeper issue that can only be seen when considering this document as whole: the space of finite words (resp finite trees, infinite words, infinite trees) is presented in two different ways. The first one is as coloured structures,¹ and the second one is as inductively defined datatypes in Chapter 8 (Inductive Constructions).

This opens an interesting question regarding the precise relationship between the wreath topology and the divisibility topology, that generalises a conjecture due to Pouzet regarding the labelling of well-quasi-orders.

Conjecture 9.0.1 (Labelling of Noetherian Spaces). Let σ be a finite relational signature without unary predicates, \mathcal{C} be a class of finite structures over σ , F be a fragment of $\text{FO}[\sigma]$, such that (\mathcal{C}, \leq_F)

[38]: Gajarsky, Gorsky and Kreutzer (2022), ‘Differential Games, Locality, and Model Checking for FO Logic of Graphs’

[9]: Bonnet, Kim, Thomassé and Watrigant (2020), ‘Twin-width I: tractable FO model checking’

[30]: Dreier, Mählmann, Siebertz and Toruńczyk (2022), *Indiscernibles and Wideness in Monadically Stable and Monadically NIP Classes*

[39]: Gajarský, Mählmann, McCarty, Ohlmann, Pilipczuk, Przybyszewski, Siebertz, Sokołowski and Toruńczyk (2023), *Flipper games for monadically stable graph classes*

1: That is, as wreath products in Chapter 6 (Logically Presented Spaces)

is ∞ -wqo.

Then, for every Noetherian space (X, τ) , $\mathcal{C} \rtimes X$ with the wreath topology associated to F is Noetherian.

In the study logically presented pre-spectral spaces that was performed in Chapter 6, the notion of definable subset allowed us to prove a variation of the above conjecture in Theorem 6.3.44.

Reflecting on Backward Algorithms. We have spent a lot of time proving or disproving the relativisation of preservation theorems to classes of structures. While this is a sound question regarding the completeness of some logical fragment, a more pragmatic approach would ask: how can we leverage the compactness to build algorithms? Recall that lpps were introduced as a generalisation of wqos and Noetherian spaces, both of which have interesting applications in the verification of transition systems. One hope would be to leverage lpps to verify “data-centric transitions systems”, that is, dynamical systems obtained using first order interpretations (see for instance the presentation of [8]).

Unfortunately, it is not possible to use the theory of lpps to obtain an analogue of the “backward algorithm” that powers the decision procedures over well-structured transition systems and well-structured topological transition systems. The main issue comes from the fact that a generic backwards algorithm would build an increasing sequence of definable open subsets, and the termination of such algorithms (in the case of Noetherian spaces) comes from the compactness of the union² of the sets in this sequence. In the case of lpps, an arbitrary union of definable subsets might not be definable, and therefore one cannot conclude that the union is compact. That is, the generic backward algorithm may not terminate.

As a concrete example, let us consider the set $\mathcal{C} \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \Delta_{\text{deg}}^2$ of directed graphs of degree bounded by 2. We know that $\langle \mathcal{C}, \text{Alex}(\subseteq_i), \text{FO} \rangle$ is a lpps. Now, let us produce the following FO-interpretation I from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{C} : $\varphi_{\text{dom}}(x) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \top$, and $\varphi_E(x, y) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \exists z. E(x, z) \wedge E(z, y)$. It is quite clear that $I: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ is a logical map that defines a deterministic transition system. Let us now consider a target set S of all graphs that contain a cycle $E(x, y) \wedge E(y, x)$. It is clear that S is an definable open subset of \mathcal{C} . The backward algorithm constructs the increasing sequence $I^{-i}(S)$ for $i \geq 0$, but here, the union is precisely the set of all directed graphs that have a strongly connected component, which is neither definable (due to locality) nor compact.

Reflecting on the Chase. Instead of importing the backward algorithm from well-structured transition systems to database driven systems, it may be interesting to recast the well-known Chase algorithm in a topological setting. Using a slight reformulation of the analysis performed by [25, Definition 6], a Chase algorithm answers the following problem: given as input a set Σ of first-order constraints³ together with an input database $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, output a sentence $\psi \in \exists \text{PQF}$ such that $\llbracket \psi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} = \uparrow_{\leq_h}(\llbracket \Sigma \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}} \cap \uparrow_{\leq_h} \mathfrak{A})$. Usually, the algorithm will incrementally

[8]: Bojańczyk, Segoufin and Toruńczyk (2013), ‘Verification of Database-Driven Systems via Amalgamation’

2: The union of an arbitrary sequence of open subsets is an open subset

[25]: Deutsch, Nash and Rummel (2008), ‘The chase revisited’

3: usually in $\forall \exists \text{QF}$

build ψ by “chasing” the constraints in Σ , but this is not relevant to this high-level description.

As noticed by [25, Theorem 17], the [Homomorphism Preservation Theorem](#) implies that one can characterise when a specific version of the [Chase algorithm](#), the “core chase,” terminates: the algorithm terminates with input (Σ, \mathfrak{A}) if and only if the output $\uparrow_{\leq_h}(\llbracket \Sigma \rrbracket \cap \uparrow_{\leq_h} \mathfrak{A})$ is first-order definable. We do not have a complete explanation for this result, but it seems that the “core chase step” given a set Σ of constraints is a [logical map](#) $\mathsf{l}_\Sigma: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ [25, Definition 4].

Reflecting on Regularity Conditions. In order to get closer to algorithmic applications of [lpps](#), it might be necessary to not only ask for “effective representations”, but also to strengthen the grasp that is given over $\mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X})$. One way to do so is to strengthen the condition $\tau \cap \mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X})$ into the following one: for all [definable subset](#) $D \in \mathcal{B}$, its [interior](#) \mathring{D} is [compact](#).

This leads to the following definition: A [lps](#) $\langle \mathsf{X}, \tau, \mathcal{B} \rangle$ is [interior compact](#) if and only if for every $D \in \mathcal{B}$, $\mathring{D} \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(\mathsf{X})$. It is an easy check that every [interior compact lps](#) is an [lpps](#).

One reason to study these spaces is that the main result from [83, Theorem 5.15] can be rephrased as the fact that $\langle \mathsf{Fin}(\sigma), \langle \mathsf{EPFO} \rangle_{\text{topo}}, \mathsf{FO} \rangle$ is an [interior compact lps](#). However, it is unclear whether the ability to consider [interiors](#) of [definable subsets](#) allows us to build proper algorithms.

Reflecting on Free Variables. In the introduction of this thesis, we introduced first order logic as a way to build queries for databases. However, most of the technical developments were considering [first order sentences](#), because those define actual *subsets* which is meaningful from a topological point of view.

The problem of lifting results over sentences to formulas with free variables is not new and we know at least two way this can be done. The first one works mostly for homomorphisms and is the notion of “plebeian companion” that one can find in [19, 83]. Overall, this method encodes the query parameters as partially evaluated relations by extending the vocabulary.

Another, maybe more categorical way to add free variables to [lpps](#) would be to consider pointed structures, which are represented by pairing finite domain valuations to structures. Over this extended notion of structures, one can interpret *formulas* as subsets, and therefore apply the topological tools that were developed in this manuscript. However, once the space accounts for free variables, one must be careful with renaming and the domains of the valuations. In particular, the notion of [F-embedding](#) or even the semantics of a formula are not completely straightforward to define.

One application of these (involved) definition could be to recast the [Chang-Łoś-Suszko Theorem](#) in a simpler framework. Recall that this theorem investigates the semantic properties of $\exists\forall\mathsf{QF}$ sentences. By “removing one layer of quantification,” we obtain $\forall\mathsf{QF}$ *formulas*, that

[19]: Daligault, Rao and Thomassé (2010), ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’

[83]: Rossman (2008), ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’

we have to evaluate over pointed structures. This seems to be another formulation of the combinatorial approach introduced in [85, Chapter 11]. In particular, we would be able to reformulate sufficient conditions based on “coloured structures being [wqos](#)” [85, Theorem 11.2.2] together with structural stability properties [85, Chapter 10 Section 10.2], by leveraging the technical developments done in [Chapter 6 \(Logically Presented Spaces\)](#).

Part IV.

Cheat-Sheets

You are now entering the appendix containing various cheatsheets. Most of the results and definitions are folklore, and in the worst case scenario, can be found in one of the following list of “go-to” documents [3, 18, 23, 26, 45, 62, 68, 73].

The goal is not to provide a Wikipedia-like list of definitions, but rather to quickly answer to questions regarding some details in definitions, and/or formally state theorems that are used in the main part of the manuscript. As a consequence, these cheatsheets have little to no pedagogical virtue, are not exhaustive, and are for the most part unordered.

- [3]: Adámek, Herrlich and Strecker (1990), *Abstract and Concrete Categories : The Joy of Cats*
- [18]: Community (2008), *The nLab wiki*
- [23]: Demeri, Finkel, Goubault-Larrecq, Schmitz and Schnoebelen (2012), ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’
- [26]: Dickmann, Schwartz and Tressl (2019), *Spectral Spaces*
- [45]: Goubault-Larrecq (2013), *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*
- [62]: Joyal (1986), ‘Foncteurs analytiques et espèces de structures’
- [68]: Libkin (2012), *Elements of finite model theory*
- [73]: Mac Lane (1978), *Categories for the Working Mathematician*

Set Theory Cheat Sheet

A.

A.1. Sets

Definition A.1.1. We write $\{a, b, c, \dots\}$ for the set with elements a, b , etc.

Definition A.1.2. We write $|S|$ for the number of elements in S when the set is finite.

Definition A.1.3. A set S is **countable** if there exists a map $f: S \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ that is **injective**.

Definition A.1.4. We write $A \subseteq B$ to denote the inclusion of the set A inside the set B , that is, whenever $\forall x. x \in A \Rightarrow x \in B$.

We write $A \subseteq_{\text{fin}} B$ to denote the fact that A is a finite set and $A \subseteq B$.

Definition A.1.5. We write $\mathcal{P}(A)$ for the set of subsets of A .

Definition A.1.6. We write $\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(A)$ for the set of finite subsets of A .

Definition A.1.7. We write $\{x \in A: P(x)\}$ for the usual comprehension axiom of set theory.

Definition A.1.8. A set A is a **co-finite** subset of B , whenever $A \subseteq B$ and $B \setminus A$ is finite.

Definition A.1.9. A **multiset** M over a set X is a function from X to \mathbb{N} .

We write $\{ \{ a, a, b \} \}$ for the multiset containing two occurrences of a and one occurrence of b .

A multiset is **finite** whenever $\sum_{x \in X} M(x)$ is finite.

A.2. Relations

Definition A.2.1. A *relation* R between S and S' is a subset of $S \times S'$.

Definition A.2.2. A *relation* R over a set X is *reflexive* if xRx for all $x \in X$.

Definition A.2.3. A *relation* R over a set X is *transitive* if xRy and yRz implies xRz for all $x, y, z \in X$.

Definition A.2.4. The *transitive closure* of a *relation* R over a set X is the coarsest relation that is *transitive* and contains R .

Definition A.2.5. A *relation* R over a set X is *symmetric* if xRy implies yRx for all $x, y \in X$.

Definition A.2.6. A *relation* R over a set X is *antisymmetric* if xRy and yRx implies $x = y$ for all $x, y \in X$.

Definition A.2.7. A *relation* R over a set X is an *equivalence relation* if it is *reflexive*, *transitive*, and *symmetric*.

Definition A.2.8. Let R be an *equivalence relation* over a set X . The *equivalence class* of a point $x \in X$ is the set $\{y \in X: xRy\}$. The *quotient* of X by R is the collection of its *equivalence classes*.

Definition A.2.9. Let R be an *equivalence relation* over a set X . A subset S of X is *saturated* if it is a union of *equivalence classes*.

Fact A.2.10. The *equivalence classes* of an *equivalence relation* R over X partition the space X .

Definition A.2.11. An *equivalence relation* R over X is of *finite index* whenever it has finitely many distinct *equivalence classes*.

A.3. Functions

Definition A.3.1. We write $\text{dom}(f)$ for the domain of a function f .

Definition A.3.2. We write $\text{Im}(f)$ for the image of the function f , that is, the collection $\{f(x) : x \in \text{dom}(f)\}$.

We often use the notation $f(S) \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{f(x) : x \in S\}$, in which case $\text{Im}(f) = f(\text{dom}(f))$.

Definition A.3.3. A function from X to Y is *injective* whenever $\forall x, y \in X, f(x) = f(y) \Rightarrow x = y$.

Definition A.3.4. A function from X to Y is *surjective* whenever $f(X) = Y$.

Definition A.3.5. A function from X to Y is *bijective* if it is *injective* and *surjective*.

Definition A.3.6. Let (X, \leq_X) and (Y, \leq_Y) be two *partial orders*. A map $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is a *quasi-embedding of partial orders* if for all $x, x' \in X$, $f(x) \leq_Y f(x')$ implies $x \leq_X x'$.

Definition A.3.7. Let (X, \leq_X) and (Y, \leq_Y) be two *quasi-orders*. A map $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is an *embedding of quasi-orders* if for all $x, x' \in X$, $f(x) \leq_Y f(x')$ if and only if $x \leq_X x'$.

Definition A.3.8. Let (X, \leq_X) and (Y, \leq_Y) be two *quasi-orders*. A map $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is an *isomorphism of quasi-orders* if f is an *embedding of quasi-orders* that has an inverse g that is also an *embedding of quasi-orders*.

Definition A.3.9. Let (X, \leq_X) and (Y, \leq_Y) be two *partial orders*. A map $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is *monotone* or *non-decreasing* if for all $x, x' \in X$, $x \leq_X x'$ implies $f(x) \leq_Y f(x')$.

Definition A.3.10. Let $f : X \rightarrow X$. An element $a \in X$ is a *fixed point* of f whenever $f(a) = a$.

Order, Algebras, and Rings

Cheat-Sheet

B.

B.1. Orders

Definition B.1.1. A relation R over a set X is a **partial order** if it is **reflexive**, **transitive**, and **antisymmetric**.

Definition B.1.2. A **partial order** \leq over a set X is a **total order** if for all $x, y \in X$, either $x \leq y$ or $y \leq x$.

Definition B.1.3. A **relation** \leq over a set X is a **quasi-order** if it **reflexive**, and **transitive**.

We use the term **preorder** as a synonym of **quasi-order**.

Definition B.1.4. Let (X, \leq) be a **quasi-order**. A sequence $(a_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a **decreasing sequence** whenever $a_i < a_j$ for all $i < j \in \mathbb{N}$.

Definition B.1.5. A **quasi-order** (X, \leq) is **well-founded** whenever every decreasing sequence $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of elements in X is finite.

Definition B.1.6. Let (X, \leq) be a **quasi-order**, and $S \subseteq X$. A point $a \in X$ is an **upper bound** of S if for all $b \in S$, $a \leq b$.

Conversely, $a \in X$ is an **lower bound** of S if for all $b \in S$, $b \leq a$.

Definition B.1.7. Let (X, \leq) be a **quasi-order**. An element $a \in X$ is a **maximum** if a is an **upper bound** of X . Conversely, it is a **minimum** if it is a **lower bound** of X .

We write **min**.

Definition B.1.8. Let (X, \leq) be a **quasi-order**. An element $a \in X$ is a **maximal element** if for all $b \in X$, $a \leq b \Rightarrow a = b$. Conversely, it is a **minimal element** if for all $b \in X$, $b \leq a \Rightarrow a = b$.

We write **max** S (resp. **min** S) for the **maximal element** (resp. **minimal element**) of S when it exists.

Definition B.1.9. Let (X, \leq) be a *partial order*. It is *inductive* when every *totally ordered* subset of X has an *upper bound* in X .

Lemma B.1.10. Let (X, \leq) be an *inductive partial order*. Then X contains at least one *maximal element*.

This is known as *Zorn's Lemma*.

Definition B.1.11. Let (X, \leq) be a *partial order* and $S \subseteq X$ be a subset of X .

A point $a \in X$ is the *supremum* of S , written $a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \sup S$ whenever a is the *minimal upper bound* of S .

Similarly, a is the *infimum* of S , written $a \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \inf S$ whenever a is the *maximal lower bound* of S .

Definition B.1.12. Let (X, \leq) be a *well-founded partial order*. The *ordinal height* of X , written $h(X)$, is defined by well-founded induction as follows:

- The *ordinal height* of \emptyset is zero,
- The *ordinal height* of X is defined as the *supremum* of the *ordinal heights* of $\{y \in X : y < x\}$ where x ranges over elements in X .

B.2. Lattices

Definition B.2.1. A *lattice* is a *partial order* (X, \leq) such that every set $\{a, b\} \subseteq X$ has both a *supremum* and an *infimum*.

Definition B.2.2. Let (X, \leq) be a *lattice*. A set $S \subseteq X$ is a *sublattice* of (X, \leq) when S is a *lattice* and the *infimums* and *supremums* are computed as in X .

Definition B.2.3. A *lattice* (X, \leq) is a *complete lattice* if every subset $S \subseteq X$ has both a *supremum* and an *infimum*.

In particular, a *complete lattice* is non-empty.

Theorem B.2.4 (Knaster-Tarski). Let (X, \leq) be a *complete lattice* and $f: X \rightarrow X$ be a *monotone function*. Then, the set of *fixed points* of f is a *complete lattice*.

This is the *Knaster-Tarski fixed point theorem*.

B.3. Boolean Algebras

Definition B.3.1. Let X be a set. A **Boolean subalgebra** of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is a subset of $\mathcal{P}(X)$, stable under finite intersections, finite unions, complement, containing X , and containing \emptyset .

In this document, we will use the term **Boolean algebra** interchangeably with **Boolean subalgebras** of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ for some set X .

Definition B.3.2. Let $X' \subseteq X$, and \mathcal{B} be a **Boolean subalgebra** of $\mathcal{P}(X)$. The **induced Boolean algebra** over X' , written $\mathcal{B}|_{X'}$ is the collection of the sets $S \cap X'$ for $S \in \mathcal{B}$.

Definition B.3.3. Let X be a set and $S \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X)$. The **Boolean algebra generated by S** , written $\langle S \rangle_{\text{bool}}$, is the smallest **Boolean subalgebra** of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ containing S .

Equivalently, it is the **Boolean subalgebra** of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ composed of finite unions of finite intersections of subsets of the form $D \cap X \setminus D'$ where $D, D' \in S$.

Definition B.3.4. Let \mathcal{B} and \mathcal{B}' be two **Boolean subalgebras** respectively of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ and $\mathcal{P}(X')$. The **product algebra** written $\mathcal{B} \times_b \mathcal{B}'$ is the **Boolean subalgebra** of $X \times X'$ generated by the sets $D \times D'$ where D ranges over \mathcal{B} , and D' ranges over \mathcal{B}' .

For a family $(X_i, \mathcal{B}_i)_{i \in I}$ of sets with associated **Boolean subalgebras**, the **product algebra** is generated by the products $\prod_{i \in I} D_i$, where $D_i \in \mathcal{B}_i$ and $D_i = X_i$ for all but finitely many i 's. The **product algebra** is then written $\prod_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i$.

Definition B.3.5. Let \mathcal{B} and \mathcal{B}' be two **Boolean subalgebras** respectively of $\mathcal{P}(X)$ and $\mathcal{P}(X')$. The **sum algebra** $\mathcal{B} +_b \mathcal{B}'$ is the **Boolean subalgebra** of $X \uplus X'$ generated by the sets $D \cup D'$, where D ranges over \mathcal{B} and D' ranges over \mathcal{B}' .

For a family $(\mathcal{B}_i)_{i \in I}$ of **Boolean subalgebras**, the **sum algebra** is generated by the unions $\bigcup_{i \in I} D_i$, where $D_i \in \mathcal{B}_i$. The **sum algebra** is then written $\sum_{i \in I} \mathcal{B}_i$.

Definition B.3.6. A **Boolean algebra** is a **complete Boolean algebra** whenever it is stable under arbitrary intersections.

Equivalently, a **complete Boolean algebra** is a **Boolean algebra** that is stable under arbitrary unions.

Definition B.3.7. Let $S \subseteq \mathcal{X}$. The *complete Boolean subalgebra* of $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{X})$ generated by S , $\langle S \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}}$ is the smallest *complete Boolean subalgebra* of $\mathcal{P}(\mathcal{X})$ that contains S .

B.4. Rings

Definition B.4.1. We write \mathbb{N} for the set of *natural numbers*, \mathbb{Z} for the set of *integers*, \mathbb{Q} for the set of *fractions*, \mathbb{R} for the set of *real numbers*, and \mathbb{C} for the set of *complex numbers*.

Definition B.4.2. We write $K[X_1, \dots, X_n]$ for the ring of *polynomials* with *indeterminates* X_1, \dots, X_n and *coefficients* in the field K .

Definition B.4.3. A (bilateral) *ideal* of a ring is a subset S that is stable under addition, and such that $a \times S \times b \subseteq S$ for all a, b elements of the ring.

Definition B.4.4. A ring is a *Noetherian ring* whenever every increasing sequence $I_1 \subseteq I_2 \subseteq I_3 \subseteq \dots$ of *ideals* has a *maximal element*.

Well-Quasi-Orderings Cheat Sheet

C.

Definition C.0.1. Let (X, \leq) and (X', \leq') be two *quasi-orders*. The *co-product ordering* over $X \uplus X'$ is defined by

$$x \leq_{X \uplus X'} y \iff \vee \begin{cases} x \leq y & \text{and } x, y \in X \\ x \leq' y & \text{and } x, y \in X' \end{cases}.$$

Definition C.0.2. Let (X, \leq) and (X', \leq') be two *quasi-orders*. The *product ordering* over $X \times X'$ is defined by

$$(x, y) \leq_{X \times X'} (x', y') \iff \wedge \left\{ x \leq x', y \leq y' \right\}.$$

Definition C.0.3. Let (X, \leq) be a *quasi-order*. The *multiset ordering* relation \leq_{\oplus} over $M^{\diamond}(X)$ is defined inductively as follows:

- ▶ $\emptyset \leq_{\oplus} m$ for all $m \in M^{\diamond}(X)$,
- ▶ If $m \leq_{\oplus} m'$ and $a \in X$, then $m \leq_{\oplus} m' \uplus \{a\}$,
- ▶ If $a \leq b$ and $m \leq_{\oplus} m'$ then $m \uplus \{a\} \leq_{\oplus} m' \uplus \{b\}$.

Definition C.0.4. Let (X, \leq) be a *quasi-order*. The *Hoare quasi-ordering* relation $\leq_{\mathcal{H}}$ over $P_f(X)$ is defined as follows:

$$S \leq_{\mathcal{H}} S' \iff \forall x \in S, \exists y \in S', x \leq y.$$

Lemma C.0.5. Let (W, \leq) be a *quasi-ordered set*. Let $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a *bad sequence* in W , and $\alpha: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ be a strictly increasing map. Then, the sequence $(x_{\alpha(i)})_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a *bad sequence*.

Topology Cheat Sheet

D.

D.1. Basic Topology

Definition D.1.1. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. We write $\mathcal{H}(X)$ for the collection of *closed subsets* of X .

Definition D.1.2. Let (X, τ) and (X, θ) be two *topological spaces*. The topology τ is *coarser* than θ if $\tau \subseteq \theta$, in this case, we also say that θ is *finer* than τ .

Definition D.1.3. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. A subset $S \subseteq X$ is *dense* when for all non-empty subset $U \in \tau$, $S \cap U \neq \emptyset$.

Definition D.1.4. Let (X, τ) be a topological space, $x \in X$ be a point, and $U \in \tau$ be an *open subset*. We say that U is an *open neighbourhood* of x whenever $x \in U$.

Definition D.1.5. Let (X, τ) be a topological space, and $S \subseteq X$ be a subset. We write $\overset{\circ}{S}$ for the *interior* of S , i.e., the *maximal open subset* contained in S .

Similarly, we define the *closure* of S , written \overline{S} , as the *minimal closed subset* containing S .

Definition D.1.6. Let (X, τ) be a *topological space*. The space X is *irreducible* if all non-empty *open subsets* of X are *dense*, or equivalently if any two non-empty *open subsets* have a non-empty intersection.

A subset $S \subseteq X$ is *irreducible* if it is *irreducible* in its *induced topology*.

D.2. Building New Topologies

Definition D.2.1. The **co-finite topology** over a set X is the topology composed of the **co-finite** subsets of X .

Definition D.2.2. Let (X, τ) and (Y, θ) be two topological spaces. The **product topology** $\tau \times_t \theta$ over $X \times Y$ is the topology **generated by** the sets $U \times V$, where U ranges over τ and V ranges over θ .

For a family $(X_i, \tau_i)_{i \in I}$ of topological spaces, the **product topology** is **generated by** the products $\prod_{i \in I} U_i$, where $U_i \in \tau_i$ and $U_i = X_i$ for all but finitely many i 's. The **product topology** is then written $\prod_{i \in I} \tau_i$.

Definition D.2.3. Let (X, τ) and (Y, θ) be two topological spaces. The **sum topology** over $X \uplus Y$ is the topology **generated by** the sets $U \cup V$, where U ranges over τ and V ranges over θ .

For a family $(X_i, \tau_i)_{i \in I}$ of topological spaces, the **sum topology** is **generated by** the unions $\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i$, where $U_i \in \tau_i$. The **sum topology** is then written $\sum_{i \in I} \tau_i$.

Definition D.2.4. Let (X, τ) and (X, θ) be two topological spaces. The **join topology** over X is the topology **generated by** $\tau \cup \theta$.

For a family $(X, \tau_i)_{i \in I}$ of topological spaces, the **join topology** is **generated by** the union $\bigcup_{i \in I} \tau_i$. The **join topology** is then written $\bigvee_{i \in I} \tau_i$.

Definition D.2.5. Let (X, τ) be a topological space and $S \subseteq X$ be a subset of X . The **topology induced by** τ over S is the topology $\tau|_S \stackrel{\text{def}}{=} \{U \cap S : U \in \tau\}$.

Definition D.2.6. Let (X, τ) be a topological space and \equiv be an **equivalence relation** over X . The **quotient topology** over the **equivalence classes** of \equiv is the collection of sets

$$\{E : E \cap U \neq \emptyset\} \quad ,$$

where U ranges in τ .

D.3. Topological Maps

Definition D.3.1. Let X and Y be two *topological spaces*. A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is *continuous* when for all *open subset* U of Y , $f^{-1}(U)$ is an *open subset* of X .

Definition D.3.2. Let X and Y be two *topological spaces*. A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is an *homeomorphism* when f is a *bijection*, f is *continuous*, and f^{-1} is *continuous*.

Definition D.3.3. Let X and Y be two *topological spaces*. A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is a *topological embedding* if it is *injective*, *continuous* and $f: X \rightarrow f(X)$ is an *homeomorphism* when $f(X)$ is equipped with the *induced topology* of Y .

Definition D.3.4 ([26, Definition 1.2.2]). Let X and Y be two *topological spaces*. A map $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is a *spectral map* if it is *continuous* and for all $U \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(Y)$, $f^{-1}(U) \in \mathcal{K}^\circ(X)$.

D.4. Compactness

Theorem D.4.1. The *Tychonoff theorem* states that the *product of compact spaces is compact*.

Definition D.4.2. Let (X, τ) be a *topological space*. We write $\overline{\mathcal{K}}(X)$ for the *closed subsets* of X that are also *compact subsets* of X .

Lemma D.4.3. The *union of two compact subsets is compact*.

D.5. Separation

Definition D.5.1. A *topological space* (X, τ) is T_0 if and only if for every pair $x, y \in X$, there exists an *open subset* U such that $x \in U$ and $y \notin U$, or $y \in U$ and $x \notin U$. Equivalently, if \leq_τ is a *partial order*.

Definition D.5.2. The T_0 *quotient* of a *topological space* (X, τ) is the space obtained by considering *equivalence classes* for \leq_τ .

Definition D.5.3. A topological space (X, τ) is a **sober space** whenever every (non-empty) **irreducible closed subset** of X is the **topological closure** of a single point.

Definition D.5.4. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. The **sobrification** $\mathcal{S}(X)$ is the collection of all **irreducible closed subsets** of X equipped with the **lower Vietoris topology**.

The map $X \mapsto \mathcal{S}(X)$ is an **endofunctor** of **Top** that maps X to the “free **sober space**” generated by X .¹

1: See [45, Section 8.2.6].

D.5.1. Ordinal Invariants

Definition D.5.5. Let (X, τ) be a **Noetherian space**. Then the **stature** of τ , written $\|\tau\|$, is the **ordinal height** of $(\mathcal{H}(X), \subseteq)$ minus one.

D.6. Noetherian Spaces

Definition D.6.1. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. The **Zariski topology** over \mathbb{C}^n is generated by the following **closed subsets**:

$$\{ \vec{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n : P(x_1, \dots, x_n) = 0 \} \quad ,$$

where $P \in \mathbb{C}[X_1, \dots, X_n]$.

Definition D.6.2. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. Remark that $M^\diamond(X)$ is exactly the **quotient** of X^* by the **equivalence relation** \equiv that permutes letters. The **multiset topology** over $M^\diamond(X)$ is defined as the **quotient topology** of the **subword topology** over X^* by the **equivalence relation** \equiv .

Definition D.6.3. Let (X, τ) be a topological space. The **lower Vietoris** over $\mathcal{P}(X)$ is the topology generated by the following **open subsets**:

$$\{ E \in \mathcal{P}(X) : E \cap U \neq \emptyset \} \quad ,$$

where U ranges in τ .

Lemma D.6.4. The **product** of two **Noetherian spaces** is **Noetherian**.

Lemma D.6.5 ([45, Proposition 9.7.6]). A space (X, τ) is **Noetherian** if and only if for every increasing sequence of open subsets $(U_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$, there exists $j \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\bigcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} U_i = \bigcup_{i \leq j} U_i$.

Lemma D.6.6 ([45, Proposition 9.7.18]). If (X, τ) and (X, τ') are Noetherian spaces, then $(X, \tau \vee_t \tau')$ is a Noetherian space.

D.7. Strange Topologies

Definition D.7.1. Let (P, \leq) be a quasi-order. The **d-topology** is the coarsest topology having as closed subsets the subsets $S \subseteq P$ such that for all directed families $(x_i)_{i \in I}$ of elements in S that has a supremum $x = \sup_{i \in I} x_i$ in P , $x \in S$.

D.8. Topology of the Real Line

Definition D.8.1. Let $a \leq b$ be two real numbers. We define the open interval between a and b $]a, b[$ as the set $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : a < x < b\}$. Similarly, we define the closed interval between a and b $[a, b]$ as the set $\{x \in \mathbb{R} : a \leq x \leq b\}$.

For completeness, let us also introduce the notations for the natural closed/open variants $]a, b]$ and $[a, b[$.

Lemma D.8.2. Let $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, there exists a natural number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $n > x$.

This is called the Archimedean property.

Lemma D.8.3. Let $([a_i, b_i])_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ be a decreasing sequence of non-empty closed intervals. Formally, $a_i \leq b_j$ for all $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$, $(a_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a non-decreasing sequence, and $(b_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ is a non-increasing sequence. There exists $x \in \bigcap_{i \in \mathbb{N}} [a_i, b_i]$.

This is called the Nested Intervals Theorem.

E.1. Master Theorems of Model Theory

Theorem E.1.1. Let σ be a *countable relational signature*, and T be a *first order theory*. If T has a model \mathfrak{A} , then there exists a *countable model* \mathfrak{B} that satisfies T .

This is the consequence of the Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem for countable relational signatures.

Theorem E.1.2. Lyndon's positivity theorem states that a *first order formula* is *preserved under X -positive homomorphisms* on all structures if and only if it is logically equivalent to an *X -positive formula*.

E.2. Monadic Second Order Logic

Definition E.2.1. Let σ be a *relational signature*, \mathbb{V} be a *countable set of first order free variables*, and \mathbb{MV} be a *countable set of second order free variables*. The *Monadic Second Order formulas with first order free variables* $\vec{x} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{V}$, and *second order free variables* $\vec{X} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{MV}$ are defined inductively as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(\vec{x}, \vec{X}) ::= & \varphi(\vec{x}', \vec{X}') \wedge \varphi(\vec{x}'', \vec{X}'') \quad \text{when: } \vec{x} = \vec{x}' \cup \vec{x}'' \wedge \vec{X} = \vec{X}' \cup \vec{X}'' \\ & | R(x_1, \dots, x_n) \quad \text{when: } R \in \sigma \wedge \text{arity}(R) = n \\ & | x \in X \\ & | \neg \varphi(\vec{x}, \vec{X}) \\ & | \exists y. \varphi(\vec{x}y, \vec{X}) \\ & | \exists Y. \varphi(\vec{x}, \vec{X}Y) \\ & | \top \end{aligned}$$

We call $\text{MSO}[\sigma]$ the collection of *Monadic Second Order formulas*, and omit σ when the signature is irrelevant or clear from the context.

Definition E.2.2. The *satisfaction relation* \models is defined by induction on the formulas follows: given $\mathfrak{A} \in \text{Struct}(\sigma)$, $\vec{x} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{V}$,

$\vec{X} \subseteq_{\text{fin}} \mathbb{M}\mathbb{V}$, $v: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}$, $\Upsilon: \vec{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(\mathfrak{A})$, and $\varphi(\vec{x}, \vec{X}) \in \text{MSO}[\sigma]$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models R(\vec{y}) \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} (v(y_1), \dots, v(y_n)) \in R^{\mathfrak{A}}$$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models y \in Y \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} v(y) \in \Upsilon(Y)$$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \psi_1 \wedge \psi_2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \psi_1 \text{ and } \mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \psi_2$$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \neg\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \mathfrak{A}, v \not\models \psi_1$$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \exists z.\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{there exists } a \in \mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{A}, v[z \mapsto a], \Upsilon \models \psi$$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \exists Z.\psi \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{there exists } S \subseteq \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A}), \\ \mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon[Z \mapsto S] \models \psi$$

$$\mathfrak{A}, v, \Upsilon \models \top \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \text{always}$$

Definition E.2.3. Let σ be a *relational signature*, \mathcal{C} be a class of structures over σ , and $\varphi(\vec{x}) \in \text{MSO}[\sigma]$ be a *Monadic Second Order formula* that only has *first order free variables*. The formula $\varphi(\vec{x})$ is an *r -local MSO formula* over \mathcal{C} if and only if the following holds:

$$\forall \mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}, \forall v: \vec{x} \rightarrow \mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{A}, v \models \varphi \text{ if and only if } \mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(v(\vec{x}), r), v \models \varphi \quad .$$

E.3. Structural Properties

Definition E.3.1. Let σ be a *relational signature*. A class \mathcal{C} of structures has *bounded degree* whenever there exists $M \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$, for all $a \in \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$, the number of edges in $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$ that contain a is bounded by M .

Definition E.3.2. A *tree decomposition* of a graph G is a tree T with nodes X_1, \dots, X_n , where each X_i is a subset of the vertices of G , satisfying the following properties:

- Every vertex of G belongs to some X_i ,
- For every vertex v of G , the nodes of T that contain v form a (connected) subtree of T ,
- For every edge (u, v) in the graph G , there exists $1 \leq i \leq n$ such that $\{u, v\} \subseteq X_i$.

The *width* of a tree decomposition is the maximum of $|X_i| - 1$ when $1 \leq i \leq n$.

The *tree width* of a graph G is defined as the minimum width of a tree decomposition of G .

A class has *bounded tree width* whenever there exists $M \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all graph G in the class, the *tree width* of G is at most M .

Definition E.3.3. The *clique width* of a graph G is defined as the minimum number of labels needed to construct G using the following

operations:

- ▶ Creation of a labelled vertex
- ▶ Disjoint union of two labelled graphs
- ▶ Selecting a pair of labels (l, l') and connecting every vertex labelled by l to every vertex labelled by l' .
- ▶ Relabelling every vertex with label l into an l' labelled vertex.

A class of graphs has **bounded clique width** whenever there exists $M \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all graph G in the class, the **clique width** of G is at most M .

Definition E.3.4. An **m -partite cograph** is a graph that can be build using the following operations:

- ▶ Creating a node with a label $1 \leq i \leq m$,
- ▶ Taking the disjoint union of two graphs,
- ▶ Selecting two labels $1 \leq i, j \leq m$ and connecting every vertex labelled by i to every vertex labelled by j .

Definition E.3.5. A graph is **planar** whenever it can be drawn on the two-dimensional plane in such a way that edges intersect only at their endpoints.

Definition E.3.6. The definition of **Shrub Depth** is quite involved, and we unfortunately have to redirect the reader to [41, Definition 3.3].

Definition E.3.7. A class \mathcal{C} of finite structures is **quasi-wide** if there exists a function $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, $N: \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, such that for all $r, m \in \mathbb{N}$, for all structure $\mathfrak{A} \in \mathcal{C}$ with at least $N(r, m)$ elements, there exists a subset $C \subseteq \text{dom}(\mathfrak{A})$ of size at most $f(r)$, such that $\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A}) \setminus C \models \exists_{\neq}^m x. \top$.

Definition E.3.8. A class \mathcal{C} of finite graphs is **nowhere dense** if there exists a function $f: \mathbb{N} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, such that for all $r \in \mathbb{N}$ and every $G \in \mathcal{C}$, $K_{f(r)}$ is not an depth- r minor of G . We redirect the reader to [77, Chapter 4, Section 2, Shallow Minors] for the definition of depth- r minors.

One can interpret **m -partite cographs** as graphs of **clique width** m without relabelling functions.

[41]: Ganian, Hlinený, Nešetřil, Obdržálek and Mendez (2017), ‘Shrub-depth: Capturing Height of Dense Graphs’

[77]: Nešetřil and Ossona de Mendez (2011), ‘On nowhere dense graphs’

E.4. Positive Sentences

Definition E.4.1. Let σ be a **relational signature**, and X be a unary relational symbol inside σ . A sentence $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ is **X -positive** if and only if the symbol X occurs below an even number of negations

in the syntax tree of φ .

Definition E.4.2. Let σ be a *relational signature*, $\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$ be two *relational structures* over σ , and X be a unary relational symbol inside σ . A map $f: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow \mathfrak{B}$ is a *X -positive homomorphism* if and only if f is an *embedding* of \mathfrak{A} into \mathfrak{B} over the signature $\sigma \setminus \{(X, 1)\}$, and f is a *homomorphism* from \mathfrak{A} into \mathfrak{B} over the whole signature σ .

Definition E.4.3. Let σ be a *relational signature* containing a unary predicate X . A sentence $\varphi \in \text{FO}[\sigma]$ is in *X -positive Gaifman normal form* whenever it is a Boolean combination of *basic local sentences* $(\varphi_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n}$, where φ_i is of the form $\exists_{r_i}^{\geq k_i} x. \psi_i(x)$, $r_i, k_i \in \mathbb{N}$, and ψ_i is an *X -positive formula* for all $1 \leq i \leq n$.

Category Theory Cheat Sheet

F.

F.1. Basic Category

Definition F.1.1. A **category** \mathcal{C} is a collection of **object** together with collections $\text{Hom}(A, B)$ of **morphisms** between A and B , where A, B ranges over the objects of \mathcal{C} , and an associative composition operator $\circ: \text{Hom}(A, B) \times \text{Hom}(B, C) \rightarrow \text{Hom}(A, C)$, such that:

- For all **objects** A , there exists a **morphism** $\text{Id}_A \in \text{Hom}(A, A)$,
- For all $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B)$, $f \circ \text{Id}_A = f$ and $\text{Id}_B \circ f = f$.

Definition F.1.2. Let \mathcal{C} be a **category**. Two **objects** A, B of \mathcal{C} are **isomorphic** whenever there exists $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B)$ and $g \in \text{Hom}(B, A)$ such that $f \circ g = \text{Id}_B$ and $g \circ f = \text{Id}_A$.

Definition F.1.3. Let \mathcal{C} be a **category**. A **category** \mathcal{C}' is a **full subcategory** of \mathcal{C} if its **objects** belong to \mathcal{C} and for all A, B in \mathcal{C}' , $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}'}(A, B) = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}(A, B)$.

Definition F.1.4. Let \mathcal{C} be a **category** and A be an **object** of \mathcal{C} . We write $\text{Aut}(A)$ denotes the set of **automorphisms** of A , i.e., invertible elements of the monoid $(\text{Hom}(A, A), \circ)$.

Definition F.1.5. The **category Set** is defined as having **sets** as **objects**, and **functions** as **morphisms**.

Definition F.1.6. The **category Top** is defined as having **topological spaces** as **objects**, and **continuous functions** as **morphisms**.

Definition F.1.7. The **category Ord** is defined as having **quasi-orders** as **objects**, and **monotone maps** as **morphisms**.

Definition F.1.8. Let \mathcal{C} be a **category**. An **object** A of \mathcal{C} is an **initial object** if for every B , $\text{Hom}(A, B)$ contains exactly one **morphism**.

Definition F.1.9. Let \mathcal{C} be a **category**, and A, B be two **objects** of \mathcal{C} . The **product** of A and B is an **object** C with two **morphisms**

As per usual, we have to be extremely careful with the size issues, and for the sake of simplicity, we will avoid mentioning any of these issues here.

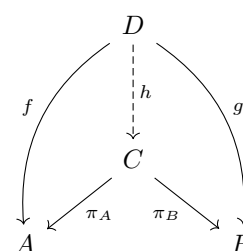


Figure F.1.: The commutative diagram of the product construction.

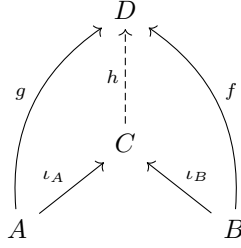


Figure F.2.: The commutative diagram of the co-product construction.

$\pi_A \in \text{Hom}(C, A)$ and $\pi_B \in \text{Hom}(C, B)$, such that for all D with morphisms $f \in \text{Hom}(D, A)$, and $g \in \text{Hom}(D, B)$, there exists a unique morphism $h \in \text{Hom}(D, C)$ such that $f = \pi_A \circ h$ and $g = \pi_B \circ h$.

We refer the reader to [Figure F.1](#) for a diagrammatic presentation of the above equations.

Definition F.1.10. Let \mathcal{C} be a category, and A, B be two objects of \mathcal{C} . The co-product of A and B is an object C with two morphisms $\iota_A \in \text{Hom}(A, C)$ and $\iota_B \in \text{Hom}(B, C)$, such that for all D with morphisms $f \in \text{Hom}(A, D)$, and $g \in \text{Hom}(B, D)$, there exists a unique morphism $h \in \text{Hom}(C, D)$ such that $f = h \circ \iota_A$ and $g = h \circ \iota_B$.

We refer the reader to [Figure F.2](#) for a diagrammatic presentation of the above equations.

Definition F.1.11. Let \mathcal{C} be a category. A projective system is a family of objects $(E_i)_{i \in I}$, together with a family of morphisms $(f_{i,j})_{i \geq j \in I}$, such that $f_{i,j} \in \text{Hom}(E_i, E_j)$, and such that $f_{i,i} = \text{Id}_{E_i}$, and $f_{i,j} \circ f_{j,k} = f_{i,k}$ for all $i \geq j \geq k \in I$,

Definition F.1.12. Let \mathcal{C} be a category. A limit of a projective system $(f_{i,j} \in \text{Hom}(E_i, E_j))_{i \geq j \in I}$, is an object A of \mathcal{C} together with morphisms $f_i \in \text{Hom}(A, E_i)$, and such that $f_i = f_{i,j} \circ f_j$ for all $i \geq j \in I$.

The limit of a projective system is unique up to isomorphism.

F.2. Functors

Definition F.2.1. Let \mathcal{C} and \mathcal{C}' be two categories. A functor F from \mathcal{C} to \mathcal{C}' is a mapping from objects A of \mathcal{C} to objects $F(A)$ of \mathcal{C}' , that associates with morphisms $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B)$ of \mathcal{C} a morphism $F(f) \in \text{Hom}(F(A), F(B))$ in \mathcal{C}' . Furthermore, a functor should satisfy that

- $F(\text{Id}_A) = \text{Id}_{F(A)}$ for all objects A of \mathcal{C} ,
- $F(f \circ g) = F(f) \circ F(g)$ for all morphisms f, g of \mathcal{C} .

Definition F.2.2. Let \mathcal{C} be a category. An endofunctor of \mathcal{C} is a functor from \mathcal{C} to itself.

Definition F.2.3. Let \mathcal{C} be a category, and F be an endofunctor of \mathcal{C} . An initial algebra of F is a pair $(\mu F, \delta)$ where μF is an object of \mathcal{C} and $\delta \in \text{Hom}(F(\mu F), \mu F)$, such that for all (A, ρ) where $\rho \in$

$\text{Hom}(F(A), A)$, there exists a unique $h \in \text{Hom}(\mu F, A)$ such that $h \circ \delta = \rho \circ F(h)$.

F.3. Liftings

Definition F.3.1. The *forgetful functor* from **Top** (resp. **Ord**) to **Set** is the mapping from (X, τ) (resp. (P, \leq)) to the underlying set X (resp. P), that furthermore associates the map f to the map f (forgetting that it was *continuous* or *monotone*).

Definition F.3.2. An *endofunctor* G' of **Top** is a *lift* of an *endofunctor* G of **Set** if the following diagram commutes, where \mathbf{U} is the forgetful functor

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbf{Top} & \xrightarrow{G'} & \mathbf{Top} \\ \downarrow \mathbf{U} & & \downarrow \mathbf{U} \\ \mathbf{Set} & \xrightarrow{G} & \mathbf{Set} \end{array}$$

Index

A

Alexander's subbase lemma 49–51, 159, 168, 186, 190, 192
 Alexandroff topology 54, 139, 140, 146, 174, 185, 186, 207, 208, 227–229
 analytic functor . . . 66, 215, 218–224, 227–229
 substructure ordering . . . 220, 221, 223, 226, 228
 antichain 38, 39, 43–45, 53, 124, 144
 Archimedean 50, 255
 asymptotic subword topology 210
 automorphism 217, 220, 261

B

bad sequence 3, 43, 123, 182, 192, 249
 basis of a Boolean algebra 160, 161, 247
 basis of a topology 48, 147, 209
 bilateral ideal of a ring ring 248
 Boolean subalgebra . 65, 137, 139, 140, 142, 143, 145–147, 149, 155, 160, 161, 163, 164, 203, 247
 bounded
 bounded tree-depth 45, 121–123, 125
 clique width 45, 259
 tree width 45, 258

C

categorical limit 155, 174, 175, 262
 category 142, 145, 214, 217, 218, 261, 262
 category of elements . . 215, 216, 219, 220
 endofunctor 66, 214–216, 218, 219, 254, 262, 263
 full subcategory 145, 261
 functor 222, 229, 262
 slice category 216–219
 chain of models 33, 34
 chase algorithm 26, 35, 234, 235
 classes of structures
 closed under disjoint unions . . 55, 64, 68, 97, 99, 117, 118, 120–122, 125–129, 131, 133, 134, 149, 165

co-homomorphism closed classes 38, 52, 55
 hereditary classes . 38, 45, 47, 52, 55, 64, 67, 97, 99, 117–122, 124–129, 131, 133, 134, 149, 165
 localisable classes . 118, 120, 126, 129, 133
 locally [...] classes . . 64, 121–125, 134, 149
 monotone classes 38, 44, 45, 52, 55
 quasi-wide classes 259
 wide classes 120–122
 clique width 46, 258, 259
 closed interval 50, 255
 closed subset . 33, 47–50, 147, 150, 151, 188, 201, 209, 210, 222, 251, 253–255
 co-finite subset 53, 54, 121, 174, 241, 252
 co-finite topology 53, 54, 252
 co-product 142, 152, 153, 262
 co-product ordering 139, 224, 249
 co-product topology 139, 152, 155, 252
 coarser topology 48, 66, 186, 251, 255
 compact open subset . 52, 54, 143, 144, 147–152, 155, 159, 162, 167, 171
 compactness of FO32, 36, 42, 47, 51, 64, 67, 140, 143, 144, 149
 complete Boolean algebra 161, 247, 248
 complete lattice 47, 54, 184, 197–199, 246
 consistent theory 32, 33
 continuous map 142, 151, 152, 174, 253, 261, 263

D

d-topology 33, 255
 decreasing sequence 43, 245
 definable open subsets . . 143, 150, 152–155, 162, 165, 169, 170, 175, 203, 234
 definable subsets of a logically presented space
 108, 138, 140, 143, 144, 147, 149, 150, 153–155, 160, 161, 165, 203, 234, 235
 degree of a vertex 121, 258
 dense subset 142, 251
 diagram sentence 24, 31, 36, 73, 88, 96, 134, 143, 144
 discrete topology 144, 153, 184, 185, 200
 divisibility preorder . . . 66, 215, 224, 226, 227
 divisibility topology 66, 221, 223, 224, 227, 233
 downward closure 35, 38, 99, 145

downwards closed set . . . 38, 39, 52, 105, 111, 124,
126, 144, 145, 184, 188, 189, 198, 209,
210, 226

E

elementary embedding 68, 74
expander
 asymptotic subword expander 210
 transfinite subtree expander 213, 214

F

Feferman-Vaught Technique 69, 78, 81, 138,
155–157, 163, 171, 172
finer topology *see* coarser topology
first order definable subset 38, 39, 65, 73,
98–101, 106–108, 111, 137, 140, 143,
148, 150, 165
first order fragment
 almost basic local sentence . 75, 76, 78, 83
 asymmetric basic local sentence 75–78,
83–88, 90
 basic local sentence . . . 72, 73, 75–77, 85, 86,
88–93, 96, 97, 121, 127, 131, 260
 existential basic local sentence 76, 93
 existential local sentence . . 64, 67–69, 74–78,
83–85, 90, 92–94, 96, 97, 99–101, 105,
106, 108–112, 118–120, 125, 126, 128,
133, 134
 local formula 71–76, 78, 83–86, 88–90,
93–96, 106–108, 112, 119, 121, 126,
127, 131
 quantifier free formula 20–23, 34, 71, 95, 96,
110, 144, 149, 150
first order free variable . . . 15, 21, 41, 81, 83, 126,
130, 257, 258
first order interpretation 16, 17, 39, 46, 124, 151,
152, 156, 158, 234
first order theory 31, 32, 40, 41, 49, 51, 148, 149,
257
fixed point 243, 246
forgetful functor 215, 221–224, 229, 263
formula 15, 16, 18, 20, 21, 29, 31, 32, 41, 73, 172,
257
fragment of first order logic 18, 19, 21–23, 29–33,
35, 40, 41, 48, 51, 52, 74, 113, 117, 118,
134, 140, 141, 143–145, 166–169, 172,
233

G

Gaifman graph . 16, 17, 24, 69, 98, 102, 104, 118,
121, 165
Gaifman locality theorem 40, 64, 73, 97, 112,
233
good sequence 43, 182

H

Higman’s lemma . . . 158, 163, 177, 178, 180, 182,
192, 215
Hoare quasi-order 139, 249
homeomorphism 167, 221, 253
homomorphism of relational structures . . 18, 23,
29, 260

I

induced Boolean algebra 142, 151, 247
induced substructure . . 18–23, 29, 30, 39, 45, 55,
64, 67–69, 73, 103, 110, 117–120, 123,
124, 126–129, 131, 133, 147, 148, 156,
174, 179
induced topology . 142, 148, 151, 188, 251–253
 ∞ -wqo 46, 65, 168
 ∞ -wqo with respect to a fragment 139, 168, 169,
171, 172, 234
initial
 initial algebra 220–224, 262
 initial object 261
interior 235, 251
irreducible closed subset 147, 201, 202, 251,
254
isomorphic objects in a category 261, 262

J

join topology 157, 210, 252

K

Knaster-Tarski fixed point theorem . . . 184, 191,
246

L

labelled class of structures 44, 99
 lattice 246
 lexicographic ordering 192
 local elementary embedding .. 64, 68, 74, 75, 93,
 94, 97, 98, 105, 106
 local neighbourhood ... 69–73, 77, 86, 91, 93, 94,
 100, 111, 113, 118, 119, 124, 127, 128,
 158
 local type 94
 logical map ... 124, 138, 142, 145, 151, 152, 156,
 157, 174, 175, 234, 235
 logically presented pre-spectral space
 co-product of lpps 138, 139, 152, 153, 163
 finite words over a lpps 139, 164
 inner product of lpps 139, 157
 product of lpps . 65, 138, 139, 153, 154, 162,
 163
 wreath product of lpps .. 138, 139, 150, 162,
 166, 167, 170, 175, 179, 233
 lower Vietoris topology 139, 254
 Löwenheim-Skolem Theorem 13, 257

M

minimal models . 36–38, 40, 51, 53, 74, 119, 126,
 127, 129, 133, 143–145
 minimal topology 195
 Monadic Second Order formula . 128, 257, 258
 monotone map 46, 156, 158, 243, 246, 261, 263
 monotyped formula .. 80, 83, 84, 156, 164, 173
 morphism in a category 216, 261, 262
 multiset 90, 241
 multiset ordering 123, 139, 249
 multiset topology 139, 254

N

Nested Intervals Theorem 49, 50, 255
 noetherian ring 53, 248
 noetherian theorems
 topological Higman lemma ... 159, 160, 162,
 175, 207, 208
 topological Kruskal theorem . 173, 175, 207,
 208, 228
 Noetherian topology 42, 52–55, 65, 66, 113,
 137–139, 145, 146, 150, 158, 159, 162,
 174, 175, 177–180, 184–187, 189–204,

207–215, 222, 223, 227, 229, 234, 254,
 255

normal form

 existential Gaifman normal form 67, 68, 75,
 76, 84, 93, 113
 Gaifman normal form 64, 67–69, 73, 93, 127,
 131
 positive Gaifman normal form ... 67, 68, 75,
 90, 93, 97

O

object in a category 216–218, 261, 262

open

 open cover .. 49–52, 144, 159, 160, 168, 192,
 203
 open neighbourhood .. 154, 162, 170, 251
 open subset . 47–52, 140, 142, 143, 146, 150,
 153–155, 159, 162, 167, 168, 170, 174,
 175, 186, 187, 192, 193, 196, 201, 209,
 210, 223, 227, 251, 253, 254

open diagram formula 31, 124, 172

open interval 48–50, 141, 255

ordering

 lexicographic .. *see* lexicographic ordering
 tree *see* tree orderings
 words *see* words orderings

ordinal branching trees 213, 214

ordinal height 246, 254

P

pointwise ordering 198, 199

prefix topology 185, 186

preorder *see* quasi-order

preservation theorem .. 17, 29, 30, 33–37, 42–44,
 47, 51–55, 64, 65, 67–69, 73, 74, 78, 93,
 97, 98, 106, 109, 113, 117, 118, 120,
 126, 134, 137, 138, 140, 141, 143–151,
 155, 156, 171, 175, 233, 234

preservation theorems

 Homomorphism Preservation Theorem . 29,
 35, 36, 42, 47, 55, 74, 174, 175, 177,
 235

 Lyndon's Positivity Theorem 68, 257

 preservation under extensions 29, 35, 36, 39,
 40, 47, 53, 55, 64, 67–69, 73, 97, 100,
 117–122, 124, 125, 127, 142, 144, 145,
 147, 149, 156, 158, 165

 preservation under surjective onto

 homomorphisms 29, 35

preservation under unions of chains...33–35,
 137, 235
 preservation under disjoint unions...97–101, 105,
 106, 108, 109
 preserved under unions of chains.....33, 34
 pro-constructible subset 148–150
 product.....142, 153, 155, 261
 product ordering 139, 224, 249
 product topology 139, 153, 154, 159, 168,
 252–254
 projective system 174, 175, 262

Q

QF-embedding...30, 64, 95, 119, 120, 166, 167
 quantifier rank . 24, 33, 40–42, 56, 81, 83, 94, 95,
 112, 126–128, 131, 164, 173, 175
 quasi-order 20, 29, 35, 38, 43, 44, 48, 52–54, 138,
 198, 243, 245, 249, 255, 261
 quotient topology 252, 254

R

refinement function.....184–187, 189–191, 194,
 197–199, 203, 209, 210, 215, 221, 222
 regular transfinite subword topology 139,
 210–212, 214
 relational signature 13, 16, 17, 19–25, 31–33, 36,
 38–42, 44–46, 48, 51, 52, 76, 78, 79, 94,
 100, 112, 124, 130, 134, 140, 144, 145,
 163, 167, 168, 172, 174, 179, 233,
 257–260
 relational structure . 3, 11, 13, 14, 16, 17, 21–24,
 33–35, 69, 163, 168, 171, 172, 179,
 260
 relativisation of a preservation theorem.....29,
 35–40, 42–44, 47, 51–55, 64, 67, 69, 73,
 74, 97, 98, 106, 113, 117–121, 124, 125,
 127, 134, 137, 142–146, 149, 156, 158,
 165, 174, 175, 234
 representation of a template graph 88

S

S-representation 201, 202
 second order free variable.....79, 257
 security cylinder 89
 sentence 15, 21–23, 29, 31–33, 35, 37–43, 48,
 51–54, 96, 140, 235
 existential positive sentence . 23, 142, 175

existential sentence20–22, 29, 36, 38, 53, 54,
 64, 67, 68, 76, 84, 85, 93, 95, 118–120,
 124, 125, 143, 147–149
 universal local sentence....74, 98, 103, 105,
 106
 universal sentence 20
 sentence preserved under a preorder..21–23, 29,
 31, 33–38, 40–42, 44, 48, 49, 52, 64, 67,
 68, 74, 105, 110, 111, 118–120, 124–129,
 131, 133, 134, 141, 147, 148, 257
 shortest path distance.....69
 sober space 147–149, 254
 sobrification functor 147, 148, 200, 254
 space
 bitopological space 146
 compact topological space30, 49–52, 54, 65,
 137, 143–147, 151–155, 160, 162, 163,
 168, 171, 174, 192, 234, 235, 253
 logically presented pre-spectral space ... 65,
 124, 137–139, 143–162, 164, 165, 167,
 169–175, 177, 180, 203, 234, 235
 logically presented space.137, 138, 140–143,
 146, 151–154, 156, 161, 165, 167, 169,
 172, 175, 235
 spectral space...65, 137, 138, 145–149, 153,
 160, 174
 specialisation preorder54, 72, 146, 188, 189, 227,
 228
 spectral map 174, 175, 253
 stature 200, 211, 254
 strong injective embedding 20, 21, 29, 87, 260
 structural subtree ordering...181, 192, 208, 209,
 214, 215, 219, 221, 224
 subbasis of a topology .. 48, 50–52, 54, 140, 141,
 143, 147, 161, 165–167, 169, 174,
 190–193, 201, 203, 209, 221, 222, 228,
 252, 254
 sublattice 147, 246
 subset restriction.....187–189, 194, 197, 222
 substructure.....18, 21–23, 29
 substructure embedding 21, 22
 subword topology ... 66, 139, 159, 162, 166, 178,
 186, 187, 199, 200, 208, 209, 223, 254
 suffix ordering 181, 192, 215, 219, 221, 223,
 225
 sum topology *see* co-product topology
 support of a functor 220, 225, 229

T

template graph 87–92
 the Kruskal Tree Theorem...159, 173, 177, 179,
 180, 182, 192, 208, 215, 228

topological closure.....251, 254
 topological embedding 221–223, 227, 229, 253
 topological sequence
 bad sequence.....192–195, 197, 200
 good sequence.....192, 195, 196
 topological space....3, 47, 48, 50, 140, 251, 253,
 261
 topologies
 Alexandroff.....*see* Alexandroff topology
 asymptotic subword.....*see* asymptotic
 subword topology
 co-finite.....*see* co-finite topology
 co-product.....*see* co-product topology
 d-topology.....*see* d-topology
 discrete.....*see* discrete topology
 divisibility.....*see* divisibility topology
 induced.....*see* induced topology, *see*
 Noetherian topology
 join.....*see* join topology
 Lower-Vietoris.....*see* Lower-Vietoris
 topology
 minimal.....*see* minimal topology
 multiset.....*see* multiset topology
 patch.....*see* patch topology
 prefix.....*see* prefix topology
 product.....*see* product topology
 subword.....*see* subword topology
 transfinite subtree...*see* transfinite subtree
 topology
 transfinite subword...*see* transfinite subword
 topology
 tree.....*see* tree topology
 trivial.....*see* trivial topology
 upper.....*see* upper topology
 Zariski.....*see* Zariski topology
 topology expander....65, 66, 178, 180, 184, 187,
 189–204, 207–212, 214, 215, 219,
 221–223
 divisibility expander.66, 207, 221, 222, 226,
 228
 effective topology expander.....202
 transfinite subtree topology.....213, 214
 transitive object.....217–220, 225
 tree depth.....24, 25, 44–46, 55, 122, 123
 tree embedding relation.139, 158, 173, 174, 177,
 179, 181, 208, 213, 223
 tree orderings
 embedding...*see* tree embedding relation
 gap embedding.....*see* gap embedding
 relation

 subtree...*see* structural subtree ordering
 tree topology.....139, 178, 208, 209, 223, 224
 tree width.....46, 55, 258
 trivial topology.....184, 187, 202
 the Tychonoff Theorem154, 155, 160, 168, 253

U

U-lift.....215, 221–224, 229, 263
 union of a chain.....33
 upper topology.....54
 upward closure...38, 39, 54, 124, 140, 141, 143,
 144, 163, 165, 184, 213, 215
 upwards closed set..38, 43, 44, 53, 54, 141, 142,
 149, 160, 185, 189, 227, 228

W

weak normal form 215, 216, 218–220, 224, 225
 weak normal form property.....215, 218
 well quasi order..3, 30, 40, 42–47, 52–55, 65, 66,
 113, 121–125, 137–139, 145, 146, 150,
 158, 162, 163, 168, 177–179, 181, 182,
 185, 195, 200, 207, 209, 214, 215, 224,
 227–229, 233, 234, 236
 well-founded ordering.....43, 44, 192, 193, 245,
 246
 word orderings
 prefix.....*see* prefix ordering
 subword.....*see* subword ordering
 subword ordering...66, 139, 158, 160, 177,
 179, 180, 186, 189, 223–225
 suffix.....*see* suffix ordering
 wreath product
 wreath topology.....167

X

X-positive Gaifman normal form.....68, 260
 X-positive homomorphism.....68, 257, 260
 X-positive sentence.....68, 257, 259, 260

Z

Zariski topology.....53, 139, 254
 Zorn's Lemma.....154, 162, 170, 246

Math Commands

$\text{Alex}(\leq)$ – the Alexandroff topology of \leq , 54,
140–145, 150, 152, 165, 174, 175,
184–186, 188, 200, 208, 224, 228, 234
 $\text{Aut}(A)$ – automorphisms of A , 217, 220, 261

categories

Elt – category of elements, 215, 216,
218–220, 224, 225
 LPPS – category logically presented
pre-spectral spaces and logical maps,
145, 152, 153, 155, 174, 175
 LPS – category of logically presented
spaces and logical maps, 142, 145, 152,
153, 155, 174
 Ord – category of quasi-orders and
monotone maps, 214, 215, 224, 261,
263
 Set – category of sets and functions, 66,
214–220, 261, 263
 Spec – category of spectral spaces and
spectral maps, 174
 Top – category of topological spaces and
continuous maps, 175, 214, 215,
221–223, 254, 261, 263

classes of structures

Δ_{deg}^d – finite structures of degree bounded
by d , 124, 149–151, 165, 234
 Cliques – finite cliques, 70, 123, 156–158
 Cycles – finite cycles, 35, 36, 38, 46, 53, 54,
70, 73, 96, 124, 125, 133, 144, 145, 150,
151, 174
 \mathcal{D} – finite diamonds, 123
 LinOrd – finite linear orders, 39, 163, 164,
166, 167
 $\text{Fin}(\sigma)$ – the collection of all finite
relational structures over σ , 4, 13, 17,
18, 21–25, 29, 31, 35, 36, 38, 39, 41, 42,
44–46, 48, 52, 55, 64, 72, 80, 93, 95,
97–100, 102–106, 108–113, 118,
120–122, 124, 126–129, 131, 133, 134,
140–144, 146, 150, 163–165, 167, 169,
172, 174, 175, 235
 Paths – finite paths, 40, 44, 70, 96, 99, 100,
125, 156–158
 $\text{Struct}(\sigma)$ – the collection of all relational
structures over σ , 13, 15–18, 20–24,
29–37, 39, 42, 44, 48, 49, 51, 52, 71–75,
77–79, 81–89, 93–96, 105, 122, 129,

130, 141–144, 147–149, 157, 163, 166,
167, 257

Stars – finite stars, 122, 123

classical set theory

$|A|$ – cardinal of the set A , 44, 45, 96, 119,
121, 133, 144, 145, 149, 241, 258
 $\mathcal{P}_{\text{fin}}(X)$ – the finitary powerset of X , 90, 91,
104, 119, 201, 202, 219, 229, 241
 $\mathcal{P}(X)$ – the powerset of X , 47, 48, 65, 121,
137, 139, 140, 143, 145–147, 153, 160,
161, 174, 177, 184, 203, 241, 247, 248,
254, 258
 $S_1 \subseteq_{\text{fin}} S_2$ – S_1 is a finite subset of S_2 , 15,
32, 33, 36, 43, 44, 49–52, 80, 154,
161–163, 167, 170, 171, 191, 241, 257,
258

closure operators

$\boxplus \mathcal{C}$ – closure of \mathcal{C} under disjoint unions, 99,
100, 123
 $\langle S \rangle_{\text{bool}}$ – the Boolean algebra generated by
 S , 141, 147–149, 151, 157, 162, 164,
170, 171, 175, 247
 $\langle S \rangle_{\text{bool}}^{\text{comp}}$ – the complete Boolean algebra
generated by S , 161, 162, 167, 172,
173, 248
 $\mathcal{S}(X)$ – the sobrification of X , 147, 160,
201–203, 254
 $\langle S \rangle_{\text{topo}}$ – the topology generated by S , 48,
49, 51, 52, 54, 124, 140–149, 157, 158,
161, 162, 167, 169, 171, 172, 174, 175,
190, 191, 193, 194, 210, 235
 $\llbracket \varphi \rrbracket_{\mathcal{C}}$ – the collection of models of a sentence, 4,
38–40, 42, 44, 48, 49, 51, 52, 98,
102–106, 110, 119, 124, 140–145,
163–165, 172, 173, 234, 235
 $\mathcal{K}^{\circ}(X)$ – the compact open subsets of X , 52, 143,
144, 146–149, 151, 162, 167, 171, 175,
235, 253

$\Delta_{\mathfrak{A}}^{\exists F}$ – diagram sentence of \mathfrak{A} in fragment $\exists \mathcal{B}$,
31, 36, 40, 73, 134, 172

τ_{disc} – the discrete topology, 153, 174, 184, 187,
199, 200

$d_{\mathfrak{A}}(a, b)$ – the shortest path distance between a
and b in the Gaifman graph of \mathfrak{A} , 69,
71, 81, 82, 87, 89, 92, 130

$\text{dom } \mathfrak{A}$ – domain of a relational structure, 13,
14, 16, 19, 21, 23, 30, 32, 33, 69, 258,
259

$\downarrow_{\leq} A$ – the downward closure of A for \leq , 35, 36, 38, 54, 99, 123, 125, 133, 145, 150, 151, 190, 203, 223

$\exists_r^{\geq k} x$ – basic local quantification, 4, 72, 73, 76, 85, 86, 90, 91, 93, 112, 121, 127, 131, 259, 260

first order fragment

EFO – existential first order formulas, 20–23, 29, 30, 35, 36, 38, 44, 54, 73, 93, 95, 97, 113, 117–119, 124, 133, 134, 141–149, 157, 158, 174

EPFO – existential first order formulas, 23, 24, 29, 30, 36, 38, 42, 44, 118, 134, 141, 144, 146, 175, 235

EPFO $^{\neq}$ – existential positive first order formulas with non-equality, 22, 23, 29, 30, 36, 38, 44, 118, 134, 141, 144–146

FO – first order formulas, 15–20, 23, 29–42, 44, 48, 49, 51, 52, 64, 65, 68, 71–76, 79–82, 93, 94, 96–98, 101, 105, 113, 124, 126–128, 131, 133, 134, 138–145, 147, 149, 150, 152, 155–158, 163–169, 172–175, 233–235, 259, 260, 265

FO_{Loc} – local formulas, 64, 69, 74, 98, 106, 109, 113, 117, 118, 126

PQF – positive quantifier free formulas, 23, 24, 26, 30, 31, 234

PQF – positive quantifier free formulas with non-equality, 22, 30, 31

QF – quantifier free formulas, 20, 21, 30, 31, 33, 34, 36, 64, 74, 95, 119, 120, 140, 166, 167, 174, 234, 235, 268

$h: \mathfrak{A} \rightarrow_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}$ – an \mathbf{F} -embedding from \mathfrak{A} to \mathfrak{B} , 30, 31, 119, 120, 168–171

$\text{fv}(\varphi)$ – the free variables of a formula, 15, 163, 172

$\text{Gaif}(\mathfrak{A})$ – the Gaifman graph of \mathfrak{A} , 17, 25, 55, 69, 70, 102, 104, 258, 259

$\text{Hom}(A, B)$ – morphism between A and B , 215–220, 224, 225, 261–263

Id_A – the identity morphism on A , 169, 174, 175, 217, 222, 261, 262

$\text{indep}^{\mathcal{N}}(\vec{x}, r)$ – formula stating the non intersection of the r -local neighbourhoods of the variables x_1, \dots, x_n , 72, 75, 76, 78, 82–85, 90, 121, 130, 132

\mathring{S} – the interior of S , 235, 251

$\text{Local}(\mathfrak{A}, r, k)$ – the collection of r -local neighbourhoods around k -tuples of

elements in \mathfrak{A} , 69–71, 73, 93–96, 117–129, 133, 134, 165

$|\varphi|_{\vec{r}}^{\vec{x}}$ – local restriction of a formula, 71, 72, 84, 93, 96, 119, 120, 126

$\text{Types}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A})$ – the collection of (q, r) -local types of size at most k in \mathfrak{A} , 94–96, 128

$\llbracket A \rightarrow B \rrbracket_{\text{mon}}$ – Monotone Functions from A to B , 198, 199

$\llbracket \text{Top}(\mathbf{X}) \rightarrow \text{Top}(\mathbf{X}) \rrbracket_{\text{mon}}^{\text{sub}}$ – pseudo topology expanders over \mathbf{X} , 199

$\mathcal{N}_{\mathfrak{A}}(\vec{a}, r)$ – the r -local neighbourhoods of the tuple \vec{a} inside \mathfrak{A} , 69, 71, 72, 77, 78, 82–84, 86, 88, 89, 91, 96, 99, 100, 102, 111, 112, 119–123, 126, 127, 129, 130, 132, 133, 258

$y \in \mathcal{N}(\vec{x}, r)$ – the first order sentence stating that y belongs to the r -local neighbourhood of \vec{x} , 71, 72, 76, 78, 87–89, 110

$\text{tp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$ – the (q, r) -local type of the tuple \vec{a} inside \mathfrak{A} , 94–96, 112, 126, 132

$\text{mtp}_{\mathfrak{A}}^q(\vec{a}, r)$ – the \mathbf{MSO} (q, r) -local type of the tuple \vec{a} inside \mathfrak{A} , 127–130, 132

ordering of structures

$\mathfrak{A} \leq_{\mathbf{F}} \mathfrak{B}$ – the preorder associated to \mathbf{F} , 30–32, 34, 35, 37, 38, 40–44, 48, 52, 54, 68, 134, 140, 141, 143–146, 168, 169, 171, 172, 233

$\mathfrak{A} \preceq_h \mathfrak{B}$ – \mathfrak{A} homomorphically embeds into \mathfrak{B} , 23, 24, 26, 29, 30, 38, 42, 55, 175, 234, 235

$\mathfrak{A} \subseteq_i \mathfrak{B}$ – \mathfrak{A} is an induced substructure of \mathfrak{B} , 18, 20, 21, 26, 29, 30, 33–36, 38–40, 43–47, 53–55, 69, 95, 117–121, 123–129, 131, 133, 134, 140, 142–145, 149–152, 165, 166, 168, 174, 234

$\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_q^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$ – \mathfrak{A} has fewer first order local behaviours than \mathfrak{B} , 68, 94–98, 101, 109–113, 117, 118, 126

$\mathfrak{A} \Rightarrow_{q, \mathbf{MSO}}^{r,k} \mathfrak{B}$ – \mathfrak{A} has fewer monadic second order local behaviours than \mathfrak{B} , 128, 129, 131, 132

$\mathfrak{A} \subseteq \mathfrak{B}$ – \mathfrak{A} is a substructure of \mathfrak{B} , 18, 21, 22, 26, 29, 30, 38, 44, 45

$\text{rk}(\varphi)$ – the quantifier rank of a formula, 24, 41, 42, 131, 132, 164, 173

$(\mathbf{F})^{\text{rk} \leq q}$ – quantifier rank restriction, 41, 42

$\text{real}_{\mathbf{T}^{\mathbf{MSO}}}^{\mathfrak{A}}$ – the collection of tuples $\vec{a} \in \mathfrak{A}$ that realise the \mathbf{MSO} type $\mathbf{T}^{\mathbf{MSO}}$, 129, 130

satisfaction relation

- $\varphi \models_C \psi$ – entailment of ψ from φ over a class C , 17, 18, 32, 33
- $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ – a model \mathfrak{A} satisfies a first order sentence φ , 15, 16, 18, 20–24, 26, 30–38, 40–42, 71–74, 78, 80–89, 91, 92, 94–97, 99, 100, 106–108, 111–113, 119–121, 124, 126, 127, 129–133, 144, 145, 149, 150, 156, 164, 169, 173, 259
- $\mathfrak{A} \models \varphi$ – a model \mathfrak{A} satisfies a monadic second order sentence φ , 128, 132, 257, 258
- $\mathfrak{A} \models T$ – a model \mathfrak{A} satisfies a theory T , 31, 32
- second order fragment
 - MSO** – monadic second order order formulas, 79, 127–133, 257, 258
- $\text{MTypes}_r^{q,k}(\mathfrak{A})$ – the collection of **MSO** (q, r) -local types of size at most k in \mathfrak{A} , 128–130
- C/A – the slice category, 215, 216, 218–220, 225
- \leq_τ – the specialisation preorder of τ , 54, 188, 253
- $\text{Th}(\mathfrak{A})$ – the theory of a structure \mathfrak{A} , 40–42, 95, 97
- \overline{S} – the topological closure of S , 147, 211, 251
- $\text{td}(\mathfrak{A})$ – the tree depth of \mathfrak{A} , 24, 25, 45, 122, 123
- CTrees_Σ – tree constructor over alphabet Σ , 178, 179, 182, 184, 217, 221, 224
- τ_{triv} – the trivial topology, 184–187, 189, 191–193, 198–203, 210, 223
- $\text{Alex}(\leq)$ – the Upper topology of \leq , 54
- $\uparrow_{\leq} A$ – the upward closure of A for \leq , 38, 39, 43, 44, 119, 150, 165, 166, 184, 185, 187, 190, 192, 210–212, 221–223, 227, 228, 234, 235
- CTrees_Σ – word constructor over alphabet Σ , 178, 179, 181, 182, 184, 215–219, 221, 223–225

Bibliography

- [1] Parosh Aziz Abdulla, Karlis Čerāns, Bengt Jonsson and Yih-Kuen Tsay. ‘General decidability theorems for infinite-state systems’. In: *Proceedings of LICS’96*. IEEE, 1996, pp. 313–321. DOI: [10.1109/LICS.1996.561359](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS.1996.561359) (cit. on p. 44).
- [2] Serge Abiteboul, Richard Hull and Victor Vianu. *Foundations of Databases*. Addison-Wesley, 1995 (cit. on p. 24).
- [3] Jiří Adámek, Horst Herrlich and George E. Strecker. *Abstract and Concrete Categories : The Joy of Cats*. Wiley, 1990 (cit. on p. 239).
- [4] Miklós Ajtai and Yuri Gurevich. ‘Monotone versus positive’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 34 (1987), pp. 1004–1015. DOI: [10.1145/31846.31852](https://doi.org/10.1145/31846.31852) (cit. on pp. 35, 37, 113).
- [5] Miklós Ajtai and Yuri Gurevich. ‘Datalog vs first-order logic’. In: *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* 49 (1994), pp. 562–588. DOI: [10.1016/S0022-0000\(05\)80071-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0022-0000(05)80071-6) (cit. on pp. 35, 37, 113).
- [6] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Martin Grohe. ‘Preservation under extensions on well-behaved finite structures’. In: *SIAM Journal on Computing* 38 (2008), pp. 1364–1381. DOI: [10.1137/060658709](https://doi.org/10.1137/060658709) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 64, 67, 68, 74, 97, 98, 117, 121, 127).
- [7] Albert Atserias, Anuj Dawar and Phokion G. Kolaitis. ‘On preservation under homomorphisms and unions of conjunctive queries’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 53 (2006), pp. 208–237. DOI: [10.1145/1131342.1131344](https://doi.org/10.1145/1131342.1131344) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 47, 55, 74).
- [8] Mikołaj Bojańczyk, Luc Segoufin and Szymon Toruńczyk. ‘Verification of Database-Driven Systems via Amalgamation’. In: *Proceedings of the 32nd ACM SIGMOD-SIGACT-SIGAI Symposium on Principles of Database Systems*. Association for Computing Machinery, 2013, pp. 63–74. DOI: [10.1145/2463664.2465228](https://doi.org/10.1145/2463664.2465228). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/2463664.2465228> (cit. on p. 234).
- [9] Édouard Bonnet, Eun Jung Kim, Stéphan Thomassé and Rémi Watrigant. ‘Twin-width I: tractable FO model checking’. In: *2020 IEEE 61st Annual Symposium on Foundations of Computer Science (FOCS)*. 2020, pp. 601–612 (cit. on p. 233).
- [10] Simone Bova and Hubie Chen. ‘How Many Variables are Needed to Express an Existential Positive Query?’ In: vol. 63. 2019, pp. 1573–1594. DOI: [10.1007/s00224-018-9884-z](https://doi.org/10.1007/s00224-018-9884-z). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00224-018-9884-z> (visited on 06/06/2023) (cit. on p. 56).
- [11] Robert Brignall, Michael Engen and Vincent Vatter. ‘A Counterexample Regarding Labelled Well-Quasi-Ordering’. In: *Graphs and Combinatorics* 34 (2018), pp. 1395–1409. DOI: [10.1007/s00373-018-1962-0](https://doi.org/10.1007/s00373-018-1962-0) (cit. on p. 46).
- [12] Florent Capelli, Arnaud Durand, Amélie Gheerbrant and Cristina Sirangelo. *A simple counter example of Lyndon’s Theorem in the finite*. 2020 (cit. on p. 35).
- [13] Donald D. Chamberlin and Raymond F. Boyce. ‘SEQUEL: A Structured English Query Language’. In: (1974), pp. 249–264. DOI: [10.1145/800296.811515](https://doi.org/10.1145/800296.811515). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/800296.811515> (cit. on p. 12).
- [14] Ashok K. Chandra and Philip M. Merlin. ‘Optimal implementation of conjunctive queries in relational databases’. In: *Proceedings of STOC’77*. 1977, pp. 77–90. DOI: [10.1145/800105.803397](https://doi.org/10.1145/800105.803397) (cit. on p. 23).
- [15] Chen Chung Chang and H. Jerome Keisler. *Model Theory*. Vol. 73. Elsevier, 1990 (cit. on pp. i, 29, 32–34, 68).
- [16] Yijia Chen and Jörg Flum. ‘Forbidden Induced Subgraphs and the Łoś-Tarski Theorem’. In: *2021 36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS)*. 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470742](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470742) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 98, 113).

- [17] Edgar F. Codd. ‘A relational model of data for large shared data banks’. In: *FIXME Conference of the ACM* 13 (1970), pp. 377–387. DOI: [10.1145/362384.362685](https://doi.org/10.1145/362384.362685) (cit. on pp. 11, 17).
- [18] Community. *The nLab wiki*. 2008. URL: <https://ncatlab.org/nlab/show/HomePage> (visited on 2023) (cit. on p. 239).
- [19] Jean Daligault, Michael Rao and Stéphan Thomassé. ‘Well-Quasi-Order of Relabel Functions’. In: *Order* 27 (2010), pp. 301–315. DOI: [10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0](https://doi.org/10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11083-010-9174-0> (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 44–46, 179, 235).
- [20] Anuj Dawar. ‘Homomorphism preservation on quasi-wide classes’. In: *Journal of Computer and System Sciences* 76 (2010), pp. 324–332. DOI: [10.1016/j.jcss.2009.10.005](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcss.2009.10.005) (cit. on pp. 47, 55, 74).
- [21] Anuj Dawar, Martin Grohe, Stephan Kreutzer and Nicole Schweikardt. ‘Approximation schemes for first-order definable optimisation problems’. In: *21st Annual IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science (LICS’06)*. 2006, pp. 411–420. DOI: [10.1109/lics.2006.13](https://doi.org/10.1109/lics.2006.13) (cit. on pp. 68, 130, 131).
- [22] Anuj Dawar and Abhisekh Sankaran. ‘Extension Preservation in the Finite and Prefix Classes of First Order Logic’. In: *29th EACSL Annual Conference on Computer Science Logic (CSL 2021)*. Ed. by Christel Baier and Jean Goubault-Larrecq. Vol. 183. Schloss Dagstuhl–Leibniz-Zentrum für Informatik, 2021, 18:1–18:13. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.18](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.18). URL: <https://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2021/13452> (cit. on pp. 35, 37).
- [23] Stéphane Demeri, Alain Finkel, Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Sylvain Schmitz and Philippe Schnoebelen. ‘Algorithmic Aspects of WQO Theory (MPRI course)’. 2012. URL: <https://cel.archives-ouvertes.fr/cel-00727025> (cit. on pp. 3, 139, 178, 181, 239).
- [24] Nachum Dershowitz and Iddo Tzameret. ‘Gap Embedding for Well-Quasi-Orderings’. In: *Electronic Notes in Theoretical Computer Science* 84 (2003), pp. 80–90. DOI: [10.1016/S1571-0661\(04\)80846-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S1571-0661(04)80846-6). URL: <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1571066104808466> (cit. on p. 179).
- [25] Alin Deutsch, Alan Nash and Jeffrey B. Remmel. ‘The chase revisited’. In: *Proceedings of PODS’08*. 2008, pp. 149–158. DOI: [10.1145/1376916.1376938](https://doi.org/10.1145/1376916.1376938) (cit. on pp. 27, 33, 35, 234, 235).
- [26] Max Dickmann, Niels Schwartz and Marcus Tressl. *Spectral Spaces*. Vol. 35. Cambridge University Press, 2019. DOI: [10.1017/9781316543870.003](https://doi.org/10.1017/9781316543870.003) (cit. on pp. 56, 146–148, 174, 239, 253).
- [27] Guoli Ding. ‘Subgraphs and well-quasi-ordering’. In: *Journal of Graph Theory* 16 (1992), pp. 489–502. DOI: [10.1002/jgt.3190160509](https://doi.org/10.1002/jgt.3190160509) (cit. on pp. 37, 40, 44, 45, 122).
- [28] Gaëtan Douéneau-Tabot and Aliaume Lopez. ‘Rejoindre l’administration publique après un doctorat’. 2022. URL: <https://www.irif.fr/~alopez/posts/2022-11-29-presentation-dptinfo.html> (cit. on p. 7).
- [29] Gaëtan Douéneau-Tabot, Aliaume Lopez and Laurent Prosperi. ‘Recrutement et emploi des docteurs dans les administrations publiques’. 2021. URL: <https://www.irif.fr/~alopez/ressources/docteurs-admin> (cit. on p. 7).
- [30] Jan Dreier, Nikolas Mühlmann, Sebastian Siebertz and Szymon Toruńczyk. *Indiscernibles and Width in Monadically Stable and Monadically NIP Classes*. 2022. DOI: [10.48550/arXiv.2206.13765](https://doi.org/10.48550/arXiv.2206.13765). URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/2206.13765> (cit. on p. 233).
- [31] Heinz-Dieter Ebbinghaus and Jörg Flum. *Finite Model Theory*. Springer, 1995 (cit. on p. 11).
- [32] William Ewald. ‘The Emergence of First-Order Logic’. In: *The Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy*. Ed. by Edward N. Zalta. Metaphysics Research Lab, Stanford University, 2019. URL: <https://plato.stanford.edu/archives/spr2019/entries/logic-firstorder-emergence/> (visited on 07/11/2022) (cit. on p. 13).
- [33] Solomon Feferman and Robert Vaught. ‘The first order properties of products of algebraic systems’. In: *Fundamenta Mathematicae* 47 (1959), pp. 57–103. DOI: [10.4064/fm-47-1-57-103](https://doi.org/10.4064/fm-47-1-57-103) (cit. on pp. 78, 155).

- [34] Alain Finkel and Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Forward analysis for WSTS, part I: completions’. In: *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science* 30 (2020), pp. 752–832. DOI: [10.1017/S0960129520000195](https://doi.org/10.1017/S0960129520000195). (Visited on 13/10/2022) (cit. on pp. 185, 201).
- [35] Alain Finkel and Philippe Schnoebelen. ‘Well-structured transition systems everywhere!’ In: *Theoretical Computer Science* 256 (2001), pp. 63–92. DOI: [10.1016/S0304-3975\(00\)00102-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-3975(00)00102-X). URL: <https://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S030439750000102X> (visited on 19/06/2023) (cit. on p. 44).
- [36] Anton Freund. ‘From Kruskal’s theorem to Friedman’s gap condition’. In: *Mathematical Structures in Computer Science* 30 (2020), pp. 952–975. DOI: [10.1017/s0960129520000298](https://doi.org/10.1017/s0960129520000298) (cit. on pp. 179, 184, 229).
- [37] Haim Gaifman. ‘On local and non-local properties’. In: *Proceedings of the Herbrand Symposium*. Vol. 107. Elsevier, 1982, pp. 105–135. DOI: [10.1016/S0049-237X\(08\)71879-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0049-237X(08)71879-2) (cit. on pp. 72, 73).
- [38] Jakub Gajarský, Maximilian Gorsky and Stephan Kreutzer. ‘Differential Games, Locality, and Model Checking for FO Logic of Graphs’. In: 216 (2022). Ed. by Florin Manea and Alex Simpson, 22:1–22:18. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2022.22](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2022.22) (cit. on pp. 71, 233).
- [39] Jakub Gajarský, Nikolas Mählmann, Rose McCarty, Pierre Ohlmann, Michał Pilipczuk, Wojciech Przybyszewski, Sebastian Siebertz, Marek Sokolowski and Szymon Toruńczyk. *Flipper games for monadically stable graph classes*. 2023. DOI: [10.48550/arXiv.2301.13735](https://doi.org/10.48550/arXiv.2301.13735). URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/2301.13735> (cit. on p. 233).
- [40] Jean H. Gallier. ‘Ann. Pure Appl. Logic: Erratum to “What’s so special about Kruskal’s Theorem and the ordinal Γ_0 ? A survey of some results in proof theory” [53 (1991) 199–260]’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 89 (1997), p. 275. DOI: [10.1016/S0168-0072\(97\)00043-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0168-0072(97)00043-2) (cit. on pp. 178, 179).
- [41] Robert Ganian, Petr Hliněný, Jaroslav Nešetřil, Jan Obdržálek and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. ‘Shrub-depth: Capturing Height of Dense Graphs’. In: *CoRR* abs/1707.00359 (2017). URL: [http://arxiv.org/abs/1707.00359](https://arxiv.org/abs/1707.00359) (cit. on p. 259).
- [42] Jean-Yves Girard. ‘ Π_2 -logic, Part 1: Dilators’. In: *Annals of Mathematical Logic* 21 (1981), pp. 75–219. DOI: [10.1016/0003-4843\(81\)90016-4](https://doi.org/10.1016/0003-4843(81)90016-4) (cit. on p. 229).
- [43] Kurt Gödel. ‘Über formal unentscheidbare Sätze der Principia Mathematica und verwandter Systeme’. In: *Monatshefte für Mathematik und Physik* 38 (1931), pp. 173–198. DOI: [10.1007/BF01700692](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01700692) (cit. on p. 18).
- [44] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Noetherian Spaces in Verification’. In: *Automata, Languages and Programming*. Ed. by Samson Abramsky, Cyril Gavoille, Claude Kirchner, Friedhelm Meyer auf der Heide and Paul G. Spirakis. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 2010, pp. 2–21. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-14162-1_2) (cit. on pp. 53, 139, 178).
- [45] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory*. Vol. 22. Cambridge University Press, 2013. DOI: [10.1017/cbo9781139524438](https://doi.org/10.1017/cbo9781139524438) (cit. on pp. 3, 50, 52–54, 139, 159, 178, 179, 185, 186, 192, 193, 203, 208, 224, 239, 254, 255).
- [46] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. *Aliaume Lopez’ master theorem of Noetherian spaces*. 2022. URL: <http://projects.lsv.ens-cachan.fr/topology/?p=6105> (visited on 08/02/2023) (cit. on p. 191).
- [47] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Infinitary Noetherian Constructions I. Infinite Words’. In: *Colloquium Mathematicum* 168 (2022), pp. 257–268. DOI: <https://doi.org/10.4064/cm8077-4-2021> (cit. on pp. 139, 175, 178, 179, 209–211).
- [48] Jean Goubault-Larrecq. ‘Non-Hausdorff Topology and Domain Theory. Electronic supplements to the book – Errata’. 2022. URL: https://projects.lsv.ens-cachan.fr/topology/?page_id=12 (visited on 10/12/2022) (cit. on pp. 178, 179).
- [49] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Simon Halfon and Aliaume Lopez. *Infinitary Noetherian Constructions II. Transfinite Words and the Regular Subword Topology*. 2022 (cit. on pp. 175, 178, 179, 209, 211).

- [50] Jean Goubault-Larrecq and Bastien Laboureix. ‘Statutes and Sobrification Ranks of Noetherian Spaces’. In: 2023, pp. 1–76. URL: <https://arxiv.org/abs/2112.06828> (cit. on p. 200).
- [51] Jean Goubault-Larrecq and Aliaume Lopez. ‘On the word topology, and beyond’. 2020. URL: https://projects.lsv.ens-cachan.fr/topology/?page_id=2735 (visited on 08/02/2023) (cit. on p. 177).
- [52] Jean Goubault-Larrecq and Sylvain Schmitz. ‘Deciding Piecewise Testable Separability for Regular Tree Languages’. In: *43rd International Colloquium on Automata, Languages, and Programming (ICALP 2016)*. Ed. by Ioannis Chatzigiannakis, Michael Mitzenmacher, Yuval Rabani and Davide Sangiorgi. Vol. 55. Schloss Dagstuhl–Leibniz-Zentrum fuer Informatik, 2016, 97:1–97:15. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.ICALP.2016.97](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.ICALP.2016.97). URL: <http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/6232> (visited on 02/02/2023) (cit. on pp. 3, 228).
- [53] Jean Goubault-Larrecq, Monika Seisenberger, Victor L. Selivanov and Andreas Weiermann. ‘Well Quasi-Orders in Computer Science (Dagstuhl Seminar 16031)’. In: *Dagstuhl Reports* 6 (2016), pp. 69–98. DOI: [10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69](https://doi.org/10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69). URL: <https://doi.org/10.4230/DagRep.6.1.69> (cit. on pp. 44, 178).
- [54] Erich Grädel, Phokion G Kolaitis, Leonid Libkin, Maarten Marx, Joel Spencer, Moshe Y Vardi, Yde Venema and Scott Weinstein. *Finite Model Theory and its Applications*. Springer, 2007 (cit. on p. 11).
- [55] Martin Grohe and Stefan Wöhrle. ‘An existential locality theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 129 (2004), pp. 131–148. DOI: [10.1016/j.apal.2004.01.005](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apal.2004.01.005) (cit. on pp. 67, 68, 75, 76, 85, 93, 113).
- [56] Yuri Gurevich. ‘Toward logic tailored for computational complexity’. In: *Computation and Proof Theory, Proceedings of LC’84*. Vol. 1104. Springer, 1984, pp. 175–216. DOI: [10.1007/BFb0099486](https://doi.org/10.1007/BFb0099486) (cit. on p. 35).
- [57] Frederik Harwath, Lucas Heimberg and Nicole Schweikardt. ‘Preservation and decomposition theorems for bounded degree structures’. In: *Logical Methods in Computer Science* Volume 11, Issue 4 (2015). DOI: [10.2168/LMCS-11\(4:17\)2015](https://doi.org/10.2168/LMCS-11(4:17)2015). URL: <https://lmcs.episciences.org/1618> (cit. on p. 74).
- [58] Ryu Hasegawa. ‘Two applications of analytic functors’. In: *Theoretical Computer Science* 272 (2002), pp. 113–175. DOI: [10.1016/S0304-3975\(00\)00349-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0304-3975(00)00349-2). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0304397500003492> (cit. on pp. 179, 184, 207, 215, 220, 221, 224, 225, 227, 229).
- [59] Graham Higman. ‘Ordering by divisibility in abstract algebras’. In: *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society* 3 (1952), pp. 326–336. DOI: [10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326](https://doi.org/10.1112/plms/s3-2.1.326) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 181).
- [60] Ehud Hrushovski, Joël Ouaknine, Amaury Pouly and James Worrell. ‘Polynomial Invariants for Affine Programs’. In: (2018), pp. 530–539. DOI: [10.1145/3209108.3209142](https://doi.org/10.1145/3209108.3209142). URL: <https://dl.acm.org/doi/10.1145/3209108.3209142> (cit. on p. 53).
- [61] Peter T Johnstone. *Stone Spaces*. Vol. 3. Cambridge university press, 1982 (cit. on p. 56).
- [62] André Joyal. ‘Foncteurs analytiques et espèces de structures’. In: *Combinatoire énumérative*. Ed. by Gilbert Labelle and Pierre Leroux. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, 1986, pp. 126–159 (cit. on pp. 215, 239).
- [63] J. C. Kelly. ‘Bitopological Spaces’. In: *Proceedings of the London Mathematical Society* s3-13 (1963), pp. 71–89. DOI: [10.1112/plms/s3-13.1.71](https://doi.org/10.1112/plms/s3-13.1.71). URL: <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1112/plms/s3-13.1.71> (visited on 15/11/2022) (cit. on p. 146).
- [64] Igor Kříž and Robin Thomas. ‘On well-quasi-ordering finite structures with labels’. In: *Graphs and Combinatorics* 6 (1990), pp. 41–49 (cit. on p. 44).
- [65] Joseph B. Kruskal. ‘The theory of well-quasi-ordering: A frequently discovered concept’. In: *Journal of Combinatorial Theory, Series A* 13 (1972), pp. 297–305. DOI: [10.1016/0097-3165\(72\)90063-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/0097-3165(72)90063-5) (cit. on pp. 44, 158, 178, 179, 181).

- [66] Denis Kuperberg. ‘Positive First-order Logic on Words’. In: *36th Annual ACM/IEEE Symposium on Logic in Computer Science, LICS 2021, Rome, Italy, June 29 - July 2, 2021*. IEEE, 2021, pp. 1–13. DOI: [10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS52264.2021.9470602) (cit. on pp. 37, 39, 68, 98, 113, 137).
- [67] Joachim Lambek. ‘A Fixpoint Theorem for complete Categories.’ In: *Mathematische Zeitschrift* 103 (1968), pp. 151–161. URL: <http://eudml.org/doc/170906> (cit. on p. 220).
- [68] Leonid Libkin. *Elements of finite model theory*. Springer, 2012. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-662-07003-1](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-07003-1) (cit. on pp. 11, 68, 239).
- [69] Aliaume Lopez. *On the word topology, and beyond*. 2020. URL: <https://www.irif.fr/~alopez/posts/2020-09-23-word-topology-and-beyond.html> (visited on 08/02/2023) (cit. on p. 177).
- [70] Aliaume Lopez. ‘Preservation Theorems Through the Lens of Topology’. In: *Proceedings of CSL’21*. Vol. 183. 2021, 32:1–32:17. DOI: [10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.32](https://doi.org/10.4230/LIPIcs.CSL.2021.32) (cit. on pp. 63, 138, 148, 174, 175).
- [71] Aliaume Lopez. ‘When Locality Meets Preservation’. In: *LICS’22* (2022), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 67, 117).
- [72] Aliaume Lopez. ‘Fixed Points and Noetherian Topologies’. In: *FOSSACS’23* (2023), pp. 1–14. DOI: [10.1145/3531130.3532498](https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1145/3531130.3532498> (cit. on pp. 63, 180, 191).
- [73] Saunders Mac Lane. *Categories for the Working Mathematician*. Vol. 5. Springer, 1978. DOI: [10.1007/978-1-4757-4721-8](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4757-4721-8). URL: <http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-1-4757-4721-8> (visited on 13/04/2023) (cit. on p. 239).
- [74] Johann A. Makowsky. ‘Algorithmic uses of the Feferman–Vaught Theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 126 (2004), pp. 159–213. DOI: [10.1016/j.apal.2003.11.002](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apal.2003.11.002) (cit. on pp. 78, 155).
- [75] Eric C Milner. ‘Basic wqo-and bqo-theory’. In: *Graphs and order*. Springer, 1985, pp. 487–502 (cit. on p. 53).
- [76] Crispin St. John Alvah Nash-Williams. ‘On well-quasi-ordering transfinite sequences’. In: *Mathematical Proceedings of the Cambridge Philosophical Society* 61 (1965), pp. 33–39 (cit. on pp. 177–181).
- [77] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. ‘On nowhere dense graphs’. In: *European Journal of Combinatorics* 32 (2011), pp. 600–617. DOI: [10.1016/j.ejc.2011.01.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejc.2011.01.006). URL: <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0195669811000151> (cit. on pp. 46, 121, 259).
- [78] Jaroslav Nešetřil and Patrice Ossona de Mendez. *Sparsity: Graphs, Structures, and Algorithms*. Springer, 2012. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-27875-4](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-27875-4) (cit. on pp. 25, 120).
- [79] Oleg Pikhurko and Oleg Verbitsky. ‘Descriptive complexity of finite structures: Saving the quantifier rank’. In: *The Journal of Symbolic Logic* 70 (2005), pp. 419–450 (cit. on p. 24).
- [80] R. Rado. ‘Partial well-ordering of sets of vectors’. In: *Mathematika* 1 (1954), pp. 89–95. DOI: [10.1112/S0025579300000565](https://doi.org/10.1112/S0025579300000565) (cit. on p. 53).
- [81] Eric Rosen. ‘Finite model theory and finite variable logics’. PhD thesis. 1995 (cit. on pp. 35, 55).
- [82] Eric Rosen. ‘Some aspects of model theory and finite structures’. In: *Bulletin of Symbolic Logic* 8 (2002), pp. 380–403. DOI: [10.2178/bs1/1182353894](https://doi.org/10.2178/bs1/1182353894) (cit. on p. 35).
- [83] Benjamin Rossman. ‘Homomorphism preservation theorems’. In: *Journal of the ACM* 55 (2008), 15:1–15:53. DOI: [10.1145/1379759.1379763](https://doi.org/10.1145/1379759.1379763) (cit. on pp. i, 24, 35, 37, 38, 40, 42, 55, 74, 175, 177, 235).
- [84] Abhisekh Sankaran, Bharat Adsul and Supratik Chakraborty. ‘A generalization of the Łoś–Tarski preservation theorem over classes of finite structures’. In: *International Symposium on Mathematical Foundations of Computer Science*. 2014, pp. 474–485. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-662-44522-8_40](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-662-44522-8_40) (cit. on p. 37).
- [85] Abhisekh Sankaran, Bharat Adsul and Supratik Chakraborty. ‘A generalization of the Łoś–Tarski preservation theorem’. In: *Annals of Pure and Applied Logic* 167 (2016), pp. 189–210 (cit. on pp. 137, 236).

- [86] Abhisekh Sankaran, Bharat Adsul, Vivek Madan, Pritish Kamath and Supratik Chakraborty. ‘Preservation under substructures modulo bounded cores’. In: *International Workshop on Logic, Language, Information, and Computation*. 2012, pp. 291–305. DOI: [10.1007/978-3-642-32621-9_22](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-642-32621-9_22) (cit. on pp. [34](#), [35](#)).
- [87] Thomas Schwentick and Klaus Barthelmann. ‘Local normal forms for first-order logic with applications to games and automata’. In: *Discrete Mathematics and Theoretical Computer Science* 3 (1999), pp. 109–124. DOI: [10.46298/dmtcs.254](https://doi.org/10.46298/dmtcs.254). URL: <https://www.dmtcs.org/dmtcs-ojs/index.php/dmtcs/article/view/101/234.html> (cit. on pp. [67](#), [75](#)).
- [88] Devendra Singh, Ali Maianguwa Shuaibu and Muhammad Ndayawo. ‘Simplified Proof of Kruskal’s Tree Theorem’. In: *Mathematical Theory and Modeling* 3 (2013), pp. 93–100. DOI: [10.13140/RG.2.2.12298.39363](https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.2.12298.39363) (cit. on p. [179](#)).
- [89] Alexei P. Stolboushkin. ‘Finitely monotone properties’. In: (1995), pp. 324–330. DOI: [10.1109/LICS.1995.523267](https://doi.org/10.1109/LICS.1995.523267) (cit. on pp. [35](#), [113](#), [137](#)).
- [90] William W. Tait. ‘A counterexample to a conjecture of Scott and Suppes’. In: *Journal of Symbolic Logic* 24 (1959), pp. 15–16. DOI: [10.2307/2964569](https://doi.org/10.2307/2964569) (cit. on pp. [i](#), [35](#), [37](#), [39](#), [97](#), [100](#), [113](#), [137](#)).
- [91] Boris Avraamovitch Trakhtenbrot. ‘The impossibility of an algorithm for the decision problem for finite classes’. In: *Doklady Akademii Nauk SSSR. Novaya Seriya* 70 (1950), pp. 569–572. DOI: [10.1090/trans2/023](https://doi.org/10.1090/trans2/023) (cit. on p. [18](#)).
- [92] Victor Vianu. ‘Databases and finite-model theory’. In: *Proceedings of a DIMACS Workshop on Descriptive Complexity and Finite Models*. Ed. by Neil Immerman and Phokion G. Kolaitis. Vol. 31. AMS, 1997, pp. 97–148 (cit. on p. [12](#)).

Titre : Théorèmes de préservation pour la logique au premier ordre : localité, topologie et constructions limites.

Mots clés : Théorème de Préservation, Topologie, Localité, Logique au Premier Ordre, Espaces Noethériens.

Résumé :

Les théorèmes de préservation en logique du premier ordre constituent une collection de résultats provenant de la théorie classique des modèles. Ceux-ci établissent une correspondance directe entre les propriétés sémantiques des formules et les contraintes syntaxiques imposées par le langage utilisé pour les exprimer. Cependant, l'étude de ces théorèmes devient particulièrement difficile lorsqu'on se restreint à des modèles finis, ce qui est d'autant plus regrettable que le domaine de la théorie des modèles finis est mieux adaptée pour décrire les phénomènes observés en informatique. Cette thèse propose une approche systématique pour étudier les théorèmes de préservation dans le cadre de la théorie des mo-

dèles finis. Les preuves ad-hoc déjà existantes sont comprises dans le cadre d'une théorie plus générale qui englobe les techniques basées sur la localité, reposant sur une présentation topologique des théorèmes de préservation appelée espaces préspectraux logiquement présentés. L'introduction de ces espaces topologiques permet le développement d'une théorie compositionnelle des théorèmes de préservation. De plus, cette thèse constitue une première étape vers l'examen systématique des théorèmes de préservation dans des classes de structures finies définies par induction. Cela est réalisé en démontrant un théorème de point fixe générique pour une classe restreinte d'espaces préspectraux logiquement présentés, plus précisément les espaces Noethériens.

Title : First Order Preservation Theorems in Finite Model Theory : Locality, Topology, and Limit Constructions

Keywords : Preservation Theorem, Topology, Locality, First Order Logic, Noetherian Space.

Abstract : Preservation Theorems in first-order logic are a collection of results derived from classical Model Theory. These results establish a direct correspondence between the semantic properties of formulas and the syntactic constraints imposed on the language used to express them. However, studying these theorems becomes notably challenging when focusing on finite models, which is unfortunate given that the field of Finite Model Theory is better equipped to describe phenomena occurring in Computer Science. This thesis presents a systematic approach to investigating Preservation Theorems within the realm of Finite Model Theory. The traditional ad-hoc proofs are

replaced with a theoretical framework that generalizes techniques based on locality, and introduces a topological presentation of preservation theorems called logically presented pre-spectral spaces. Introducing these topological spaces enables the development of a compositional theory for preservation theorems. Additionally, this thesis takes an initial stride towards systematically examining preservation theorems across inductively defined classes of finite structures. It accomplishes this by proving a generic fixed point theorem for a topological restriction of logically presented pre-spectral spaces, specifically Noetherian spaces.